A Deeply Layered Quranic Translation

A Root-Based Textual and Grammatical Analysis

Volume I



Achieve Noble Character

A Deeply Layered Quranic Translation

A Root-Based Textual and Grammatical Analysis

ShaykhPod Books

Published by ShaykhPod Books, 2026

While every precaution has been taken in the preparation of this book, the publisher assumes no responsibility for errors or omissions, or for damages resulting from the use of the information contained herein.

A Deeply Layered Quranic Translation: A Root-Based Textual and Grammatical Analysis

First edition. October 24, 2026.

Copyright © 2026 ShaykhPod Books.

Written by ShaykhPod Books.

Table of Contents

Table of Contents

Acknowledgements

Compiler's Notes

Introduction

Chapter 1 – The Opener

1:0

1:1

1:2

1:3

1:4

1:5

1:6-7

Chapter 2 – The Cow

2:1

2:2

2:3

2:4

2:5

2:6

2:7

2:8

2:9

2:10

2:11

2:12

2:13

2:14

2:15

2:16

2:17

2:18

2:19

2:20

2:21

2:22

2:23

2:24

2:25

2:26

2:27

2:28

2:29

2:30

2:31

2:32

2:33

2:34

2:35

2:36

2:37

2:38

2:39

2:40

2:41

2:42

2:43

2:44

2:45

2:46

2:47

2:48

2:49

2:50

2:51

2:52

2:53

2:54

2:55

2:56

2:57

2:58

2:59

2:60

2:61

2:62

2:63

2:64

2:65

2:66

2:67

2:68

2:69

2:70

2:71

2:72

2:73

2:74

2:75

2:76

2:77

2:78

2:79

2:80

2:81

2:82

2:83

2:84

2:85

2:86

2:87

2:88

2:89

2:90

2:91

2:92

2:93

2:94

2:95

2:96

2:97

2:98

2:99

2:100

2:101

2:102

2:103

2:104

2:105

2:106

2:107

2:108

2:109

2:110

2:111

2:112

2:113

2:114

2:115

2:116

2:117

2:118

2:119

2:120

2:121

2:122

2:123

2:124

2:125

2:126

2:127

2:128

2:129

2:130

2:131

2:132

2:133

2:134

2:135

2:136

2:137

2:138

2:139

2:140

2:141

2:142

2:143

2:144

2:145

2:146

2:147

2:148

2:149

2:150

2:151

2:152

2:153

2:154

2:155

2:156

2:157

2:158

2:159

2:160

2:161

2:162

2:163

2:164

2:165

2:166

2:167

2:168

2:169

2:170

2:171

2:172

2:173

2:174

2:175

2:176

2:177

2:178

2:179

2:180

2:181

2:182

2:183

2:184

2:185

2:186

2:187

2:188

2:189

2:190

2:191

2:192

2:193

2:194

2:195

2:196

2:197

2:198

2:199

2:200

2:201

2:202

2:203

2:204

2:205

2:206

2:207

2:208

2:209

2:210

2:211

2:212

2:213

2:214

2:215

2:216

2:217

2:218

2:219

2:220

2:221

2:222

2:223

2:224

2:225

2:226

2:227

2:228

2:229

Noun indicating estabilished and persisten trait

2:230

2:231

2:232

2:233

2:234

2:235

2:236

2:237

2:238

2:239

2:240

2:241

2:242

2:243

2:244

2:245

2:246

2:247

2:248

2:249

2:250

2:251

2:252

2:253

2:254

2:255

2:256

2:257

2:258

2:259

2:260

2:261

2:262

2:263

2:264

2:265

2:266

2:267

2:268

2:269

2:270

2:271

2:272

2:273

2:274

2:275

2:276

2:277

2:278

2:279

2:280

2:281

2:282

2:283

2:284

2:285

2:286

Chapter 3 – The Family of Imran

3:1

3:2

3:3

3:4

3:5

3:6

3:7

3:8

3:9

3:10

3:11

3:12

3:13

3:14

3:15

3:16

3:17

3:18

3:19

3:20

3:21

3:22

3:23

3:24

3:25

3:26

3:27

3:28

3:29

3:30

3:31

3:32

3:33

3:34

3:35

3:36

3:37

3:38

3:39

3:40

3:41

3:42

3:43

3:44

3:45

3:46

3:47

3:48

3:49

3:50

3:51

3:52

3:53

3:54

3:55

3:56

3:57

3:58

3:59

3:60

3:61

3:62

3:63

3:64

3:65

3:66

3:67

3:68

3:69

3:70

3:71

3:72

3:73

3:74

3:75

3:76

3:77

3:78

3:79

3:80

3:81

3:82

3:83

3:84

3:85

3:86

3:87

3:88

3:89

3:90

3:91

3:92

3:93

3:94

Noun indicating estabilished and persisten trait

3:95

3:96

3:97

3:98

3:99

3:100

3:101

3:102

3:103

3:104

3:105

3:106

3:107

3:108

3:109

3:110

3:111

3:112

3:113

3:114

3:115

3:116

3:117

3:118

3:119

3:120

3:121

3:122

3:123

3:124

3:125

3:126

3:127

3:128

3:129

3:130

3:131

3:132

3:133

3:134

3:135

3:136

3:137

3:138

3:139

3:140

3:141

3:142

3:143

3:144

3:145

3:146

3:147

3:148

3:149

3:150

3:151

3:152

3:153

3:154

3:155

3:156

3:157

3:158

3:159

3:160

3:161

3:162

3:163

3:164

3:165

3:166

3:167

3:168

3:169

3:170

3:171

3:172

3:173

3:174

3:175

3:176

3:177

3:178

3:179

3:180

3:181

3:182

3:183

3:184

3:185

3:186

3:187

3:188

3:189

3:190

3:191

3:192

3:193

3:194

3:195

3:196

3:197

3:198

3:199

3:200

Over 500 Free eBooks on Peace of Mind

Other ShaykhPod Media

Acknowledgements

All praises are for Allah, the Exalted, Lord of the worlds, who has given us the inspiration, opportunity and strength to complete this volume. Blessings and peace be upon the Prophet Muhammad whose path has been chosen by Allah, the Exalted, for the salvation of mankind.

We express our deepest appreciation to the entire ShaykhPod family—especially our young star, Yusuf—whose continuous support and insight have inspired the development of ShaykhPod Books. Special recognition is due to our brother, Hasan, whose dedicated support has elevated the ShaykhPod platform to new and unprecedented heights. We also acknowledge the significant, continuous contributions of our two colleagues and friends, Hikmah and Rafeeq; without their analytical partnership, this translation would not have achieved its structural clarity and profound depth.

We pray that Allah, the Exalted, completes His favour on us and accepts each letter of this book in His august court and allows it to testify on our behalf on the Last Day.

All praise to Allah, the Exalted, Lord of the worlds and endless blessings and peace by upon the Prophet Muhammad, on his blessed Household and Companions, may Allah be pleased with them all.

Compiler's Notes

We have tried diligently to do justice in this volume however if there are any short falls found then the compiler is personally and solely responsible for them.

We accept the possibility of faults and shortcomings in an effort to complete such a difficult task. We might have unconsciously stumbled and committed errors for which we ask for indulgence and forgiveness of our readers and the drawing of our attention thereto will be appreciated. We earnestly invite constructive suggestions which can be made to ShaykhPod.Books@gmail.com.

Introduction

The following is a deeply layered, root-based Quranic translation of Chapter 1, The Opener, through to Chapter 3, The Family of Imran, accompanied by comprehensive, fully supported explanatory notes.

This translation seeks to preserve, as far as possible, the linguistic experience conveyed by the Arabic text itself. Its primary foundation is the immediate grammatical structure, lexical range, syntactic sequence, rhetorical emphasis, and internal cross-textual consistency of the Quranic text. Historically, as the text spread across and beyond the Arabian Peninsula, early audiences primarily understood its teachings based strictly on universal Arabic grammar and cross-textual patterns. While Prophetic narrations and classical commentaries remain vital sources, this layout presents the verse's legal and theological boundaries exactly as they manifest within the text.

The objective is therefore not merely to produce idiomatic English, but to make the grammatical relationships, distinctions, emphases, and layers of meaning embedded within the Arabic as perceptible as possible in modern and easy-to-understand English, even where doing so produces wording or structures that are less conventional than those found in ordinary translations.

1. Methodological Framework: Root-Based Analysis

This translation was developed through analysis of the Arabic root letters of each word, considered within the classical Arabic language in which the Quran was revealed. Reputable classical and established Arabic lexicons—including *Lane's Lexicon, Hans Wehr,* and *Steingass*—are used to establish the range of meanings associated with each root and word.

A single English word does not often encompass the full semantic range of an Arabic word or expression. Accordingly, where the context warrants it, multiple English words or phrases are used to convey layers of meaning contained within the Arabic term. The intention is not to add meanings arbitrarily, but to select meanings within the established lexical range that are appropriate to the immediate context and consistent with the wider Quranic usage.

Where necessary, the precise lexical and contextual basis for these choices is unpacked in the explanatory notes. The translation therefore aims to preserve the density of meaning contained within the Arabic rather than reducing each term to a single fixed English equivalent.

2. Grammatical Framework: Structure, Sequence, and Tense

Particular attention is given to the grammatical force of each Arabic construction. This includes the functions of particles, verbal forms, noun

states, active particles, descriptive attributes, conditional constructions, relative clauses, ellipsis, coordination, emphasis, and shifts in grammatical number and tense.

This translation does not mechanically impose the Arabic verb tense upon English in every circumstance. Instead, tense is determined by the grammatical construction and rhetorical context. Conditional structures, narrative contexts, particles and perfect-tense verbs may therefore be rendered in ways that preserve their temporal, hypothetical, immediate, habitual, or certain force in English rather than merely reproducing their surface tense.

This translation also seeks to preserve the linear sequence of the Arabic wherever that sequence carries grammatical or rhetorical significance. This includes emphatic fronting, restrictive or exclusive constructions, conditional premises and their results, coordinated descriptions, and other shifts in syntactic arrangement.

The result may occasionally depart from conventional idiomatic English, but this is deliberate: the aim is to bring the reader closer to the rhetorical texture, structural precision, and progression of the original Arabic.

3. Typographic System and Safety Brackets

A deliberate punctuation system has been developed to preserve visible relationships between the Arabic components and their English renderings.

- **Semicolons (;)** are used where appropriate to separate major coordinated Arabic units, particularly where repeated conjunctions or parallel verbal or nominal structures would otherwise become obscured within a long English sentence. They allow each Arabic component to remain independently visible while preserving its relationship to the preceding and following components.
- **Colons (:)** are used where the material that follows explains, specifies, demonstrates, or unfolds what immediately precedes it. This is particularly useful where a general statement is followed by the actions or descriptions that demonstrate or define it.
- **Em dashes (—)** are used to preserve closely connected grammatical or rhetorical relationships, including explanatory expansions, appositional material, states, parenthetical qualifications, and continuing elements whose relationship to the preceding expression should remain immediately apparent.
- **Safety brackets ([…])** are used strictly for contextual clarification, explanatory information, supplied subjects or objects, implied material, or other information necessary to make the English more clearer. Such material is explicitly distinguished from the Arabic wording itself and is not presented as though it were literally contained in the verse.

This punctuation system is therefore not merely stylistic. It is intended to make the underlying Arabic relationships more visible within the English translation.

4. Grammatical Gender and General References

It should be noted that this translation systematically matches the gender of the Arabic text. By default, the masculine form is maintained as classical Arabic masculine pronouns naturally encompass feminine subjects unless a specific, contextually obvious exception alters the legal or historical target.

5. Consistency and Internal Cross-Textual Analysis

Where the same Arabic root, grammatical construction, particle, noun form, or attribute occurs repeatedly, its translation is considered in the light of its other Quranic occurrences.

Consistency is therefore pursued not by forcing every occurrence into an identical English expression, but by preserving the underlying grammatical or semantic relationship wherever the context permits. Where context requires a different rendering, the explanatory notes identify the reason for the distinction.

Particular attention is given to the relationship between grammatical form and meaning. For example, a noun-state, an active particle, and a finite verb may convey different temporal or semantic qualities even when they arise from the same root. Likewise, Arabic conditional structures may required different English tense choices depending on whether the condition is hypothetical, completed, recurring, or future-oriented.

6. Explanatory Notes and Navigation

Comprehensive explanatory notes accompany this translation. They serve two principal purposes:

1. To document and justify the lexical, grammatical, syntactic, structural, and punctuation choices made in this translation.

2. To explain how the Arabic text itself produces layers of meaning that may be obscured in a conventional, compressed translation.

The notes therefore distinguish, where necessary, between what the Arabic grammar directly established, what is derived from the lexical range of the Arabic, and what is an interpretive or contextual clarification.

These notes highlight how the original Arabic conveys intense layers of meaning that are often lost in a straightforward translation. In this way, the rendering not only communicates the text but also guides the reader into appreciating its deep linguistic and theological architecture.

Because each verse contains highly detailed explanatory notes, readers are strongly encouraged to use the Contents tab to navigate directly to the desired verse.

Ultimately, appreciating the depth of the Quranic language allows one to easily recognise the good characteristics they must adopt, and the bad characteristics they must avoid in order to achieve peace of mind and success in both worlds.

Adopting Positive Characteristics Leads to Peace of Mind.

Chapter 1 – The Opener



بِسْمِ اللّٰهِ الرَّحْمٰنِ الرَّحِيْمِ ○

1:0

By means of the exalted name of Allah [alone]—the One who innately and eternally grants continuous and abundant mercy, kindness, and relief to all, the One who especially grants constant mercy, kindness, and relief to those who earn it.

Notes:

There is a scholarly debate regarding whether this verse is part of chapter 1, Al Fatihah. However, according to a narration in Sahih Bukhari, number 4474, it is not considered part of the chapter, as the Prophet Muhammad, peace and blessings be upon him, did not recite it when informing a Companion, may Allah be pleased with him, that this chapter was the greatest chapter of the Quran

بِسْمِ اللّٰهِ الرَّحْمٰنِ الرَّحِيْمِ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

Structure shows exclusivity

بِسْمِ

Root letters are connected to something which is exalted and high

الرَّحْمٰنِ

Noun indicating an stabilized state

Root letters are connected to having mercy, compassion, sparing, letting off, saving, kindness, tenderness and pity

Intense structure form has been used

Universal and widespread mercy for all

Mercy – withholds punishment from those who deserve it

Kindness – a broader act of granting blessings

الرَّحِيْمُ

Noun indicating an stabilized state

Root letters are connected to having mercy, compassion, sparing, letting off, saving, kindness, tenderness and pity

Intense structure form has been used

Specific mercy for those who deserve and earn it

Mercy – withholds punishment from those who deserve it

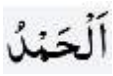
Kindness – a broader act of granting blessings



1:1

All praise and gratitude belong to Allah by right, the nurturing Lord—educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority—Lord of all generations [of humans and jinn] endowed with higher-level recognition, knowledge, and understanding—[marked for accountability].

Notes:



 indicates total inclusion

Root letters are connected to praising highly, thanks, commendation, laudation, approving and being praiseworthy

Are connected to giving someone their due/right

Praise – Allah, the Exalted, is deserving of it because of His blessed attributes

Gratitude – For the countless blessings of Allah, the Exalted



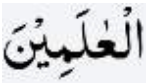
Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended



Root letters are connected to generation

Are connected to inquiring, asking and querying

Are connected to something which is marked e.g. landmark – Humans and Jinn are marked for accountability e.g. Quran 55:31

Are connected to knowledge, understanding, recognition, perception, discernment and learning – Humans and Jinn possess higher level of knowledge, intelligence and understanding in respect to divine guidance and accountability and are therefore marked for accountability unlike other creatures

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

Even though Allah, the Exalted, is Lord of all of creation but this term refers specifically to those marked for accountability—Humans and Jinn. Same term used in Quran 25:1 which mentions the Prophet Muhammad, peace and blessings be upon him, being sent as a warner. He was sent only to those marked for accountability as a warner and not the entire creation

الرَّحۡمَٰنِ الرَّحِيمِ ۝٢

1:2

The One who innately and eternally grants continuous and abundant mercy, kindness, and relief to all, the One who especially grants constant mercy, kindness, and relief to those who earn it.

Notes:

الرَّحۡمَٰنِ

Noun indicating an stabilized state

Root letters are connected to having mercy, compassion, sparing, letting off, saving, kindness, tenderness and pity

Intense structure form has been used

Universal and widespread mercy for all

Mercy – withholds punishment from those who deserve it

Kindness – a broader act of granting blessings

الرَّحِيمُ

Noun indicating an stabilized state

Root letters are connected to having mercy, compassion, sparing, letting off, saving, kindness, tenderness and pity

Intense structure form has been used

Specific mercy for those who deserve and earn it

Mercy – withholds punishment from those who deserve it

Kindness – a broader act of granting blessings

مٰلِكِ يَوْمِ الدِّيْنِ ۝٣

1:3

The One who innately and eternally owns all things, possessing complete authority and control—the Master of the Momentous Day of submission, accountability, and the repayment of the debt resulting from one's way of life.

Notes:

مٰلِكِ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

Root letters are connected to rule, reign, authority, domination and ownership

Are connected to possessor, owner, master, and king

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

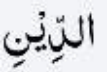
Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

Ownership - full possession and belonging

الْيَوْمِ

Root letters are connected to days, age, era and time

Are connected to momentous and important days



Root letters are connected to under power, obedience, owe allegiance and submissive

Are connected to way of acting, doctrine, custom, habit, creed and religion

Are connected to debt, indebted, to owe and to repay

Are connected to judgement, reckoning and recompense

اِيَّاكَ نَعۡبُدُ وَاِيَّاكَ نَسۡتَعِيۡنُ ؕ ۴

1:4

To You [alone] we direct our humble worship and obedience—doing only what You approve of and approving of whatever You do. And to You [alone] we direct our seeking of refuge, relief, and support after applying every possible effort.

Notes:

اِيَّاكَ نَعۡبُدُ and وَاِيَّاكَ نَسۡتَعِيۡنُ

Structures show exclusivity

اِيَّا

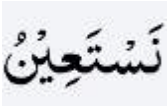
Structure used for emphasis

Root letters are connected to directing oneself and one's aims

نَعۡبُدُ

Root letters are connected to worshipping, serving, adoring, obeying with humility and enslaving

Are connected to only doing what Allah, the Exalted, approves of and approving what He decrees



Root letters are connected to helping, aiding and assisting

Are connected to freeing, relieving and liberating

Are connected to seeking help after full effort to accomplish a task

اِهْدِنَا الصِّرَاطَ الْمُسْتَقِيْمَ ۙ﴿۵﴾

1:5

Gift us guidance by showing and leading us to and along the right way of life: the firmly established, upright, and natural open path—ensuring the correct management of all affairs.

Notes:

اِهْدِ

Root letters are connected to guidance, direction, showing, being led, being supplied and a way of life

Are connected to gifting and bestowing

Are connected to direction and discovering the right way

الصِّرَاطَ

No preposition used in the verse so includes towards and upon the path

Root letters are connected to a long and open way or path

الْمُسْتَقِيْمَ

Noun indicating an established state

Root letters are connected to preserve, established, managing affairs, fix and rectify, arrange well, reform, upright and be in a right state

Are connected to natural normal state

صِرَاطَ الَّذِيْنَ اَنْعَمْتَ عَلَيْهِمْ ۙ غَيْرِ الْمَغْضُوْبِ عَلَيْهِمْ وَلَا الضَّآلِّيْنَ ۝٧

1:6-7

The open path of those whom You have granted favour upon with a pleasant life [through divine guidance]; other than [the path[1]] which is firmly established in, and persists in, being an object of wrath directed upon them [who follow it]; and other than [the paths[2] of] those who are firmly established in, and persist in, misguidance—deviating from the right path, perishing as a result.

Notes:

1 – the singular noun is used to reflect a single path taken by those who incurred divine wrath

2 – the plural noun is used to reflect the many paths of misguidance

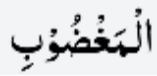
الصِّرَاطَ

Root letters are connected to a long and open way or path

اَنْعَمْتَ

Root letters are connected to making nice, comfortable, pleasant and to bestow favours

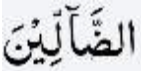
Are connected to living in comfort and luxury, leading a life of ease and leading a comfortable life



Singular

Noun indicating an established and persistent state

Root letters are connected to anger, exasperation and rage



Plural

Noun indicating an established and persistent state

Root letters are connected to stray, err, deviate from right course, to perish and become hidden

Chapter 2 – The Cow

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَٰنِ الرَّحِيمِ

الٓمٓ ١

2:1

Alif, Lam, Meem.

Notes:

Certain chapters of the Quran commence with distinct, separate letters, the meanings of which remain unknown to mankind

This concealment of knowledge could serve as a subtle yet powerful reminder for the reader to approach the Quran with humility and reverence. It encourages an attitude of submission to divine wisdom—accepting and acting upon the guidance of Allah, the Exalted, even when some of deeper reasons or hidden meanings behind specific teachings are beyond human comprehension

This verse may also signify the open challenge of the Quran—to produce anything comparable to it in terms of its vast benefits for both individuals

and societies—despite the fact that the Quran is composed of the very letters that people know and use

ذٰلِكَ الْكِتٰبُ لَا رَيْبَ ۛ فِيْهِ ۛ هُدًى لِّلْمُتَّقِيْنَ ۙ ٢

2:2

That divine code of conduct[1]—there is absolutely no cause of disturbance, suspicion, or question concerning it. A guidance which shows and leads to and along the right way of life for those who are firmly established in, and persist in, devoutly fulfilling their duties—thereby protecting themselves from harm and arranging all their matters correctly.

Notes:

1 - The Quran is being pointed at as it is the answer to the guidance requested in chapter 1, Al Fatihah

ذٰلِكَ الْكِتٰبُ

A pointer fragment

الْكِتٰبُ

Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document

لَا رَيْبَ

Structure indicates absolute negation



Root letters are connected to being suspicious, doubting, questioning and disturbance of the mind

Doubt - uncertain between options

Disturbance - inner unease

Suspicion - leaning toward doubt/negation

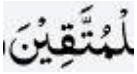
Question - seeking clarity through inquiry



Root letters are connected to guidance, direction, showing, being led, being supplied and a way of life

Are connected to gifting and bestowing

Are connected to direction and discovering the right way



Noun indicating an established and persistent state

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious

الَّذِيْنَ يُؤْمِنُوْنَ بِالْغَيْبِ وَيُقِيْمُوْنَ الصَّلٰوةَ وَمِمَّا رَزَقْنٰهُمْ يُنْفِقُوْنَ ۙ﴿۳﴾

2:3

Those [are the ones] who believe, as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind: they believe in the unseen things which are beyond the perception of human senses—discoverable only through divine revelation; they sincerely establish the prayer[1]—each one of them—which disciplines conduct [through the remembrance of the Hereafter], while fulfilling its conditions and etiquettes; and from whatever provision We have provided them, materially and spiritually, as a means of living—they readily use them [in good ways].

Notes:

1 - The prayers are mentioned in the singular, indicating that the five obligatory prayers are regarded as one unified act of worship, and therefore none of them can be left out

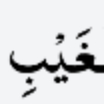
يُؤْمِنُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

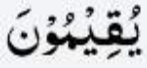
Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit



Root letters are connected to something which is absent, hidden, invisible, discoverable through divine revelation and beyond the reach of mental perception



Root letters are connected to guarding, preserving, being sincere, honest, rectifying and establishing

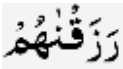
Are connected to doing properly, putting in order and arranging well



Root letters are connected to praying and worshipping

Are connected to straightening something or making it soft by fire

The stages of the prayer mirror the stages of the Hereafter, serving as a continual reminder of it e.g. Quran 83:4-6, 77:48, 68:42-43 and 45:28



Root letters are connected to means of survival and living, to bestow, to nourish, to provide provision, grant material or spiritual provision, and derive benefit from something

Material provision – worldly things e.g. food, shelter and clothing

Spiritual provision – inward qualities e.g. wisdom, knowledge, peace and inner strength



Root letters are connected to disposing of something quickly

Are connected to exhausting, using up and spending

وَالَّذِيْنَ يُؤْمِنُوْنَ بِمَآ اُنْزِلَ اِلَيْكَ وَمَآ اُنْزِلَ مِنْ قَبْلِكَ ۚ وَبِالْاٰخِرَةِ
هُمْ يُوْقِنُوْنَ ۝٤

2:4

And those [are the ones] who believe in what has been gradually revealed to you—to hold a special position [of supreme authority]; and in whatever was revealed before you; and in the life of the Hereafter—belief demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind. They—they [in particular] are firmly grounded in knowledge leading to certainty, thereby making sound and correct judgements.

Notes:

يُؤْمِنُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit



Root letters are connected to something which is sent down, comes down, descends, stops over and is granted

Are connected to something which is sent down slowly and gradually

Are connected to something which holds a special position or place



Root letters are connected to the hereafter, the final abode, life to come, and something which is delayed and deferred



Pronoun “they” is used twice for added emphasis



Root letters are connected to being certain, making sure of something

Are connected to be well grounded in knowledge and to form the right judgements

Sound – refers to the integrity of the process of making judgements

Correct – refers to the accuracy of the outcome of the judgements

أُولَٰئِكَ عَلَىٰ هُدًى مِّن رَّبِّهِمْ ۖ وَأُولَٰئِكَ هُمُ الْمُفْلِحُونَ ﴿٥﴾

2:5

Those are upon guidance, which shows and leads to and along the right way of life, originating from their nurturing Lord—educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority. And those—they [in particular] are firmly established in, and persist in, cultivating spiritual well-being and permanent success.

Notes:

هُدًى

Root letters are connected to guidance, direction, showing, being led, being supplied and a way of life

Are connected to gifting and bestowing

Are connected to direction and discovering the right way

رَبِّ

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

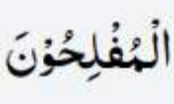
Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended



Pronoun “they” is used twice for added emphasis



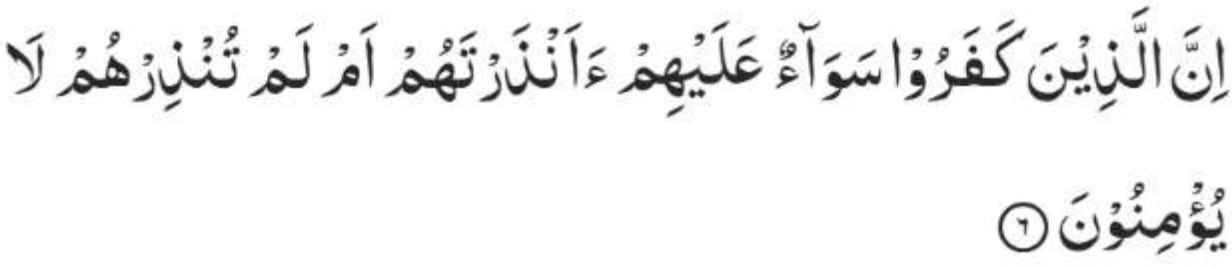
Noun indicating an established and persistent state

Root letters are connected to cultivating, growing, nurturing

Are connected to achieving success, safety, security, comfort and enjoyment of ease

Are connected to remaining in a good state

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit



2:6

Certainly, those who have neglected, dissociated from, and denied their obligations to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them]—it is of no concern to them whether you have warned them in advance [of the consequences of disobeying Allah] or have not warned them. They do not believe, as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind.

Notes:

كَفَرُوْا

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

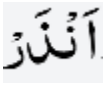
Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge and ingratitude

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

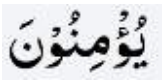
سَوَآءٌ

Root letters connected to something being equal, same, equivalent

Are connected to being indifferent to something



Root letters connected to warning, advising, cautioning against danger, calling attention to the consequences



Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

خَتَمَ اللّٰهُ عَلٰى قُلُوْبِهِمْ وَعَلٰى سَمْعِهِمْ ؕ وَعَلٰٓى اَبْصَارِهِمْ غِشَاوَةٌ ۖ وَّلَهُمْ عَذَابٌ عَظِيْمٌ ۝٧

2:7

Allah has sealed off [from guidance] their inverted spiritual hearts; their ability to learn through listening; and their ability to understand through perception, reflection, and discernment—a disastrous veiling. And for them is an agonising, deterring punishment—greatly terrible and distressing.

Notes:

خَتَمَ

Root letters are connected to sealing, closing, terminating, closing in order to cut off from something

قُلُوْبِهِمْ

Root letters are connected to turn around, inverse, overturned, transformed, to become perverted

Are connected to being fickle and inconsistent, changeable and fluctuating

Inverted – the internal order is backwards valuing the bad and hating the good

سَمْعِهِمْ

Root letters are connected to hearing, listening, paying attention and learning

Are connected to understanding and this been expressed in the Quran in other places e.g. Quran 8:23 and Quran 2:285

اَبْصَارِهِمْ

Root letters are connected to the ability of reasoning, mental perception, understanding, insight, to reflect, learn, perceive and discern

Perceptive – detecting/noticing

Reflection – reviewing/considering

Discerning – judging/evaluating

غِشَاوَةٌ

Root letters are connected to cover, veil, wrap, overwhelm and encompass

Are connected to a disaster and calamity

عَذَابٌ

Root letters are connected to prevent, hinder, deter and obstruct

Are connected to punishment, torture, agony, painful and suffering

Agonising - causing intense pain and torment



Root letters are connected to something which is great, magnificent, powerful, supreme and mighty

Are connected to something which painful, oppressive, distressing, terrible and grievous

Terrible - extremely fearful and severe

Distressing - causing emotional pain and anguish

وَمِنَ النَّاسِ مَنْ يَّقُوْلُ اٰمَنَّا بِاللّٰهِ وَبِالْيَوْمِ الْاٰخِرِ وَمَا هُمْ

بِمُؤْمِنِيْنَ ۘ﴿۸﴾

2:8

And from amongst the people is he who [boldly] claims, "We have believed in Allah and the Last Momentous Day," yet they are certainly not—in any time or in any state—those who are firmly established in, and persist in, sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind.

Notes:

يَّقُوْلُ

Root letters are connected to saying, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

اٰمَنَّا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

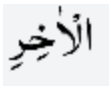
Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security



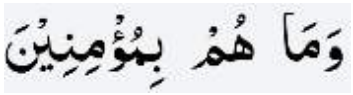
Root letters are connected to days, age, era and time

Are connected to momentous and important days



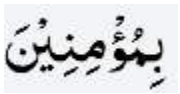
Root letters are connected to something that is last, ultimate, end, utmost and extreme

The Last Momentous Day refers to the Day of Judgement as eternity begins after that



Structure gives a strong negation and refutation meaning

And gives an absolute and complete negation in state, time and possibility



Noun indicating an established and persistent state

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

يُخٰدِعُوْنَ اللّٰهَ وَالَّذِيْنَ اٰمَنُوْاۚ وَمَا يَخْدَعُوْنَ اِلَّآ اَنْفُسَهُمْ وَمَا يَشْعُرُوْنَ ۝٩

2:9

They attempt to outsmart and deceive Allah and those who have believed—belief demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind; yet they do not deceive or mislead except themselves, and they do not perceive, realise, or become truly aware.

Notes:

يُخٰدِعُوْنَ and يَخْدَعُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to hiding, concealing, deceiving, misleading, outwitting, and pretending

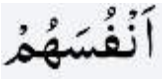
Are connected to attempting to deceive, cheat and outwit

اٰمَنُوْا

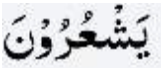
Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security



Root letters are connected to soul, person, mind, human being and an individual



Root letters are connected to being aware, to notice, realise, to sense, perceive and to understand with depth

Perceive - initial sensing / noticing

Realise - intellectual recognition / understanding

Become aware - conscious acknowledgement

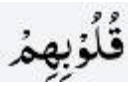
فِيْ قُلُوْبِهِمْ مَّرَضٌ ۙ فَزَادَهُمُ اللّٰهُ مَرَضًا ۚ وَلَهُمْ عَذَابٌ اَلِيْمٌ ۢ بِمَا كَانُوْا يَكْذِبُوْنَ ⑩

2:10

Within their inverted spiritual hearts is weakness and disease [of hypocrisy]. Then Allah has increased them—further intensifying weakness and disease[1]. And for them is a deterring punishment—the utmost degree of pain and suffering—because they persist in lying, deceiving, and misleading.

Notes:

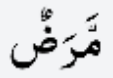
1 - Allah, the Exalted, did not increase their sickness directly but through revealing more of the Quran which became a source of disease and destruction for them because of their behaviour towards it – Quran 17:82



Root letters are connected to turn around, inverse, overturned, transformed, to become perverted

Are connected to being fickle and inconsistent, changeable and fluctuating

Inverted – the internal order is backwards valuing the bad and hating the good

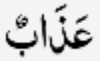


Root letters are connected to being sick, ill, and diseased.

In respect to the spiritual heart it refers to doubts, hypocrisy and weak faith



Root letters are connected to growing, increasing, multiplying, expanding and intensifying



Root letters are connected to prevent, hinder, deter and obstruct

Are connected to punishment and torture

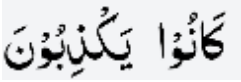
Agonising - causing intense pain and torment



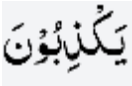
Root letters are connected pain, suffering, grievous pain, excruciating and the utmost degree of pain

Pain - refers to the physical sensation (the body)

Suffering - refers to the emotional or mental distress (the mind/soul)



Structure indicates repetitive action



Root letters are connected to lying, deceiving, deluding and misleading

Are connected to failing to fulfil or justify a claim

وَإِذَا قِيلَ لَهُمْ لَا تُفْسِدُوا فِي الْأَرْضِ قَالُوا إِنَّمَا نَحْنُ مُصْلِحُونَ ﴿١١﴾

2:11

And whenever it is said in opposition to them, "Do not cause and spread corruption and disorder throughout the land—depriving it of goodness." They [boldly] claim, "We are only those who are [firmly established in, and persist in,] making peace, amending, reconciling, and correctly arranging affairs—thereby spreading prosperity."

Notes:

وَإِذَا قِيلَ

Structure indicates repetitive action

قِيلَ and قَالُوٓا

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, speaking against, standing up, supporting, professing, declaring, alleging, claiming and asserting sternly

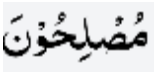
تُفْسِدُوا

Root letters are connected to spoiling, corruption, causing disorder, rebellion, spreading discord, hostility, trouble and depriving of virtue

Corrupt - moral/ethical degradation

Disordered - structural/functional breakdown

Devoid of good - absence of benefit or blessing



Noun indicating an established and persistent state

Root letters are , making peace, fixing things, repairing things, amending, making thrive, making prosperous and putting in a good state

Peace – acts to stop conflict

Amend – acts to mend, fix or compensate harm done

Reconciliation – acts to restore broken relationships

اَلَآ اِنَّهُمْ هُمُ الْمُفْسِدُوْنَ وَلٰكِنْ لَّا يَشْعُرُوْنَ ⑫

2:12

Pay attention, certainly they—they [in particular] are those who are firmly established in, and persist in, causing and spreading corruption and disorder—removing goodness. However, they do not perceive, realise, or become truly aware.

Notes:

اَلَآ

Used to grab attention e.g. behold, pay attention, indeed

اِنَّهُمْ هُمُ

Pronoun “they” is used twice for added emphasis

الْمُفْسِدُوْنَ

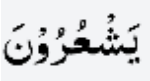
Noun indicating an established and persistent state

Root letters are connected to spoiling, corruption, causing disorder, rebellion, spreading discord, hostility, trouble and depriving of virtue

Corrupt - moral/ethical degradation

Disordered - structural/functional breakdown

Devoid of good - absence of benefit or blessing



Root letters are connected to being aware, to notice, realise, to sense, perceive and to understand with depth

Perceive - initial sensing / noticing

Realise - intellectual recognition / understanding

Become aware - conscious acknowledgement

وَإِذَا قِيلَ لَهُمْ ءَامِنُوا۟ كَمَآ ءَامَنَ ٱلنَّاسُ قَالُوٓا۟ أَنُؤْمِنُ كَمَآ ءَامَنَ
ٱلسُّفَهَآءُ ۗ أَلَآ إِنَّهُمْ هُمُ ٱلسُّفَهَآءُ وَلَٰكِن لَّا يَعْلَمُونَ ﴿١٣﴾

2:13

And whenever it is said to them, "Believe [as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind], in the same manner the people have believed." They [boldly] question, "Shall we believe in the same manner the weak in judgement and deficient in intellect have believed?" Pay attention, certainly they—they [in particular] are the weak in judgement and deficient in intellect. However, they do not recognise, know, or understand.

Notes:

وَإِذَا قِيلَ

Structure indicates repetitive action

قِيلَ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

اٰمِنُوْا , اٰمَنَ and نُؤْمِنُ

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

السُّفَهَآءُ

Noun indicating an established state

Root letters are connected to incompetent, weak of judgement, poor in understanding and deficient in intellect

Weak of Judgement - an inability to distinguish between what is truly beneficial and what is harmful (illusions vs. reality)

Deficient in Intellect - a lack of the deep reasoning required to recognise complex truths or moral imperatives.

اَلَآ

Used to grab attention e.g. behold, pay attention, indeed

اِنَّهُمْ هُمُ

Pronoun "they" is used twice for added emphasis

يَعْلَمُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

وَإِذَا لَقُوا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا قَالُوا آمَنَّا ۖ وَإِذَا خَلَوْا إِلَىٰ شَيَاطِينِهِمْ قَالُوا إِنَّا
مَعَكُمْ إِنَّمَا نَحْنُ مُسْتَهْزِئُونَ ﴿١٤﴾

2:14

And whenever they encounter those who have believed, as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind—they declare, "We have believed." Whereas, whenever they withdraw, seeking counsel, to their devilish companions—arrogantly corrupt, who deter others from obeying Allah—they declare, "Certainly, we are with you. We are only those who are [firmly established in, and persist in,] ridiculing and disdaining."

Notes:

وَإِذَا لَقُوا and وَإِذَا خَلَوْا

Structure indicates repetitive action

لَقُوْا

Root letters are connected to encountering and meeting, to perceive and lean upon

اٰمَنُوْا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

وَاِذَا لَقُوا الَّذِيْنَ اٰمَنُوْا قَالُوْٓا

Structure indicates a conditional and habitual action

قَالُوْٓا

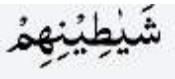
Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

وَاِذَا خَلَوْا اِلٰى شَيٰطِيْنِهِمْ ۙ قَالُوْٓا

Structure indicates a conditional and habitual action

خَلَوْا

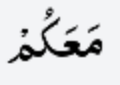
Root letters are connected to withdraw to take counsel, to seclude, be alone, withdraw, devote oneself and give one's attention



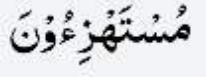
Root letters are connected to behaving like a devil, rebellious, corrupt and arrogant

Are connected to opposing others, turning them away from their purpose

Are connected to becoming remote and distant from the mercy of Allah, the Exalted



Preposition – with, in the company of, in the presence of, in despite of, together and in the estimation



Noun indicating an established and persistent state

Root letters connected to mocking, disdaining, deriding, laughing at and making an object of ridicule

Ridicule - making jokes, laughing, and actively mocking others

Disdain - feeling superior and believing others are beneath them

اَللّٰهُ يَسْتَهْزِئُ بِهِمْ وَيَمُدُّهُمْ فِيْ طُغْيَانِهِمْ يَعْمَهُوْنَ ﴿١٥﴾

2:15

Allah—He turns their ridiculing and disdaining back upon them, reducing them to utter insignificance. Yet He grants them respite in their transgression—exceeding all bounds of goodness while they remain unable to see the right course—utterly confused and perplexed.

Notes:

اَللّٰهُ يَسْتَهْزِئُ

Pronoun “He” is used twice for added emphasis

يَسْتَهْزِئُ

Root letters connected to mocking, disdaining, deriding, laughing at, making an object of ridicule and to make light of someone

Ridicule - making jokes, laughing, and actively mocking others

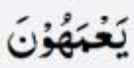
Disdain - feeling superior and believing others are beneath them

يَمُدُّهُمْ

Root letters are connected to extending, granting respite or delay for a specific time



Root letters are connected to transgress, being arrogant, corrupt and disobedient, exceeding proper limits, rebellion, being excessive and overstepping bounds



Root letters are connected to wandering, unable to see the right course, to be confused, perplexed and confounded

Confused - describes lack of mental clarity

Perplexed - describes deeper mental puzzlement and inability to understand

أُولَٰئِكَ الَّذِينَ اشْتَرَوُا الضَّلَالَةَ بِالْهُدَىٰ فَمَا رَبِحَت تِّجَارَتُهُمْ وَمَا كَانُوا مُهْتَدِينَ ﴿١٦﴾

2:16

Those—the ones who have persisted in preferring and purchasing misguidance, loss, and destruction in exchange for guidance which shows and leads to and along the right way of life. Therefore, their transaction has not been profitable—they are not those who are firmly established in seeking and following right guidance.

Notes:

اشْتَرَوُا

Root letters are connected to buying, selling, preferring and exchanging

And are connected to persisting and persevering

الضَّلَالَةَ

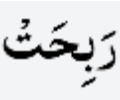
Root letters are connected to stray, err, deviate from right course, to perish and become hidden

بِالْهُدَىٰ

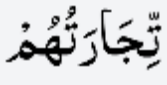
Root letters are connected to guidance, direction, showing, being led, being supplied and a way of life

Are connected to gifting and bestowing

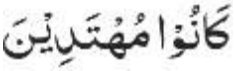
Are connected to direction and discovering the right way



Root letters are connected to gaining a profit, a win and making a gain



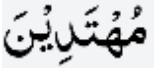
Root letters are connected to commerce, traffic, trade, merchandise and selling and buying



Structure indicates an established state not a temporary action



Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place



Noun indicating an established and persistent state

Root letters are connected to guidance, direction, seeking to be rightly guided and following right guidance

مَثَلُهُمْ كَمَثَلِ الَّذِي اسْتَوْقَدَ نَارًا ۖ فَلَمَّا أَضَاءَتْ مَا حَوْلَهُ ذَهَبَ اللَّهُ
بِنُورِهِمْ وَتَرَكَهُمْ فِي ظُلُمَاتٍ لَّا يُبْصِرُونَ ﴿١٧﴾

2:17

The example of their condition is like the state of the one who ignited an enlightening fire[1]—burning brightly. Then when it radiated—illuminating and enlightening whatever was around him, Allah removed their radiant light and left them in various forms of darkness and gloom, while they do not understand through perception, reflection or discernment.

Notes:

1 – This could be referring to the Prophet Muhammad, peace and blessings be upon him, who ignited the fire of divine revelation which enlightened the minds and lives of people but some turned away from it

مَثَلُهُمْ and كَمَثَلِ

Root letters are connected to an example, to resemble, to copy and compare

Are connected to similar case, simile, parable, precedent, state and condition

اسْتَوْقَدَ

Root letters are connected to igniting, burning, kindling a fire

نَارًا

Root letters are connected to fire

Are connected to blossoming, flourishing, lighting, illumination and enlightenment

اَضَآءَتْ

Root letters are connected to radiate, beam and to shine

Are connected to shed light, to illuminate and to enlighten

ذَهَبَ

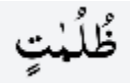
Root letters are connected to take away, to remove and to destroy

بِنُوْرِهِمْ

Root letters are connected to blossoming, flourishing, lighting, illumination, enlightenment and radiant

تَرَكَهُمْ

Root letters are connected to leaving, abandoning, renouncing and abstaining

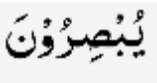


Root letters are connected to darkness and gloom

Darkness - absence of light; a state of ignorance, concealment, confusion, or misguidance

Gloom - a state of spiritual, emotional, or moral heaviness, despair, or oppression accompanying that darkness

Plural form of darkness i.e. various forms of darkness e.g. darkness of sins, desires, bad companionship, negative characteristics, etc.



Root letters are connected to the ability of reasoning, mental perception, understanding, insight, to reflect, learn, perceive and discern

Perceptive – detecting/noticing

Reflection – reviewing/considering

Discerning – judging/evaluating

صُمٌّۢ بُكۡمٌ عُمۡيٞ فَهُمۡ لَا يَرۡجِعُونَ ١٨

2:18

A state of wilful determination to behave deaf; weakness in understanding and deliberate silence [regarding the truth]; and feigned blindness of the eyes and mind. Then they—they [in particular] do not turn back [from misguidance].

Notes:



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to deafness, obstruction and blocking

Are connected to making up one's mind, determined, resolved, persisting and acting deaf



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

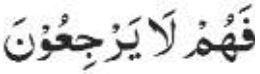
Root letters are connected to being dumb, weak in understanding and being intentionally silent about something



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being blind in the eyes and mind e.g. Quran 22:46

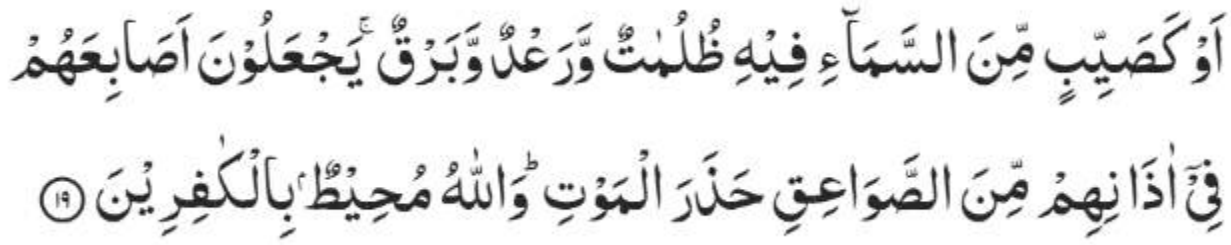
Are connected to pretending not to see, shutting one’s eyes and failing to see something



Pronoun “they” is used twice for added emphasis



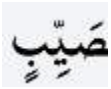
Root letters are connected to coming back, returning, resorting and reverting


أَوْ كَصَيِّبٍ مِّنَ السَّمَآءِ فِيْهِ ظُلُمٰتٌ وَّرَعْدٌ وَّبَرْقٌ ۚ يَجْعَلُوْنَ اَصَابِعَهُمْ
فِيْٓ اٰذَانِهِمْ مِّنَ الصَّوَاعِقِ حَذَرَ الْمَوْتِ ۭ وَاللّٰهُ مُحِيْطٌۢ بِالْكٰفِرِيْنَ ⑲

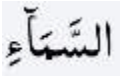
2:19

Or [the example of their condition is] like [the state of] a heavy rainstorm from the lofty sky. Within it are layers of darkness and gloom, terrifying thunder, and threatening lightning. They insert their fingers into their ears because of the thunderclaps out of caution fearing death. And Allah is innately and eternally the One who completely encompasses—in authority and control, and in knowledge and understanding—those who are firmly established in, and persist in, neglecting, dissociating from, and denying their obligations to Him, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them].

Notes:


صَيِّبٍ

Root letters are connected to a rain cloud, heavy shower and heavy rain


السَّمَآءِ

Root letters are connected to sky, heaven and ceiling

Are connected to raised, elevated, high, lofty and tall



Root letters are connected to darkness and gloom

Darkness - absence of light; a state of ignorance, concealment, confusion, or misguidance

Gloom - a state of spiritual, emotional, or moral heaviness, despair, or oppression accompanying that darkness

Plural form of darkness i.e. various forms of darkness



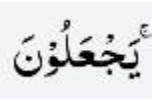
Root letters are connected to cause to tremble, to frighten and terrify

Are connected to thunder



Root letters are connected to lightning, bolts of lightning and lightning flashes

Are connected to threaten and dazzling



Root letters are connected to placing, inserting, making, fixing and appointing

الصَّوَاعِقِ

Root letters are connected to lightning, thunderbolt and thunderclap

حَذَرَ

Root letters are connected to being cautious, on guard, fearing and precaution

الْمَوْتِ

Root letters are connected to dying, perishing, losing life and subsiding

وَاللَّهُ مُحِيطٌۢ بِالْكٰفِرِيْنَ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

مُحِيطٌ

Noun indicating an established and persistent state

Root letters are connected to encompassing, enclosing and surrounding

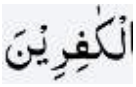
Are connected to know thoroughly, understand fully, within grasp and control

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

Knowing - awareness of information

Understanding - grasping its meaning, significance, and connections



Noun indicating an established and persistent state

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge and ingratitude

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

يَكَادُ الْبَرْقُ يَخْطَفُ اَبْصَارَهُمْ ؕ كُلَّمَاۤ اَضَآءَ لَهُمْ مَّشَوْا فِيْهِ ۙ وَاِذَاۤ اَظْلَمَ
عَلَيْهِمْ قَامُوْا ؕ وَلَوْ شَآءَ اللّٰهُ لَذَهَبَ بِسَمْعِهِمْ وَاَبْصَارِهِمْ ؕ اِنَّ اللّٰهَ عَلٰى
كُلِّ شَىْءٍ قَدِيْرٌ ۝٢٠

2:20

The threatening lightning is on the verge of rapidly and forcibly snatching away their ability to understand through perception, reflection, and discernment. Every time it illuminates and enlightens for them, they move along in it; yet whenever it darkens on them, they stand still. And had Allah willed, He would have certainly removed and destroyed their ability to learn through listening and to understand through perception, reflection, and discernment. Certainly, Allah is innately and eternally the One who has full power, control, and ability over each and every matter, who determines and decrees according to exact measure.

Notes:

يَكَادُ

Root letters are connected to almost, on the verge or near to doing something

بَرْقٌ

Root letters are connected to lightning, bolts of lightning and lightning flashes

Are connected to threaten and dazzling

يَخۡطَفُ

Root letters are connected to seizing, grabbing, kidnapping and snatching

Are connected to seize something with force, quickly and violently

أَبۡصَٰرَهُمۡ and أَبۡصَٰرِهِمۡ

Root letters are connected to the ability of reasoning, mental perception, understanding, insight, to reflect, learn, perceive and discern

Perceptive – detecting/noticing

Reflection – reviewing/considering

Discerning – judging/evaluating

كُلَّمَآ أَضَآءَ and وَإِذَآ أَظۡلَمَ

Structures indicate repetitive action

أَضَآءَ

Root letters are connected to radiate, beam and to shine

Are connected to shed light, to illuminate and to enlighten

مَّشَوْا

Root letters are connected to walking, moving along, proceed and march

Are connected to going along, being compatible, to agree, fit and suit

Are connected to adapting, adjusting and accommodating

اَظْلَمَ

Root letters are connected to growing dark and murky

قَامُوْا

Root letters are connected to standing up, rising, standing still and rest

شَآءَ

Root letters are connected to wanting, willing and wishing

ذَهَبَ

Root letters are connected to take away, to remove and to destroy

سَمْعِهِمْ

Root letters are connected to hearing, listening, paying attention and learning

Are connected to understanding and this been expressed in the Quran in other places e.g. Quran 8:23 and Quran 2:285



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



Root letters are connected to a thing, matter or affair



Root letters are connected to possessing control, strength, power and ability

Are connected to determine, decree, ordain, assess, evaluate, calculate and measurement

يَٰٓأَيُّهَا ٱلنَّاسُ ٱعۡبُدُواْ رَبَّكُمُ ٱلَّذِي خَلَقَكُمۡ وَٱلَّذِينَ مِن قَبۡلِكُمۡ لَعَلَّكُمۡ تَتَّقُونَ ٢١

2:21

People! Humbly worship and obey your nurturing Lord—educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority—doing only what He approves of and approving of whatever He does—the One who has brought you into existence, in a perfectly suitable and precise manner, and those from before you, so that you may devoutly fulfil your duties—thereby protecting yourselves from harm and arranging all your matters correctly.

Notes:

اعْبُدُوْا

Root letters are connected to worshipping, serving, adoring, obeying with humility and enslaving

Are connected to only doing what Allah, the Exalted, approves of and approving what He decrees

رَبَّكُمُ

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

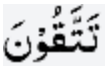
Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended



Root letters are connected to creating, originating, making, determining according to specific weight and measure and bringing into existence from nothing

Are connected to being fitting and suitable



Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious

الَّذِیْ جَعَلَ لَكُمُ الْاَرْضَ فِرَاشًا وَّالسَّمَآءَ بِنَآءً وَّاَنْزَلَ مِنَ السَّمَآءِ
مَآءً فَاَخْرَجَ بِهٖ مِنَ الثَّمَرٰتِ رِزْقًا لَّكُمْ ۚ فَلَا تَجْعَلُوْا لِلّٰهِ اَنْدَادًا
وَّاَنْتُمْ تَعْلَمُوْنَ ﴿٢٢﴾

2:22

The One who has prepared and appointed, for the benefit of you all, the Earth as a convenience and comfort, and the lofty sky as a raised [faultless] construction. And He has gradually [and precisely] sent down and caused to abide from the lofty sky—water. Then He has produced and brought forth through it from all types of profitable crops—provision as a means of living for you. Therefore, do not consider, attribute, or appoint equals, partners, or rivals for Allah, while you recognise, know, and understand.

Notes:

جَعَلَ and تَجْعَلُوْا

Root letters are connected to placing, inserting, making, preparing, fixing and appointing

Are connected to considering, regarding, believing, deeming, attributing, pronouncing and to make known

Consider - internal/cognitive level

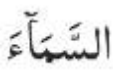
Attribute - conceptual/theological assignment

Appoint - formal/intentional designation



Root letters are connected to making easy and convenient

Are connected to items of comfort such as cushion, pillow, bed, blanket and mattress



Root letters are connected to sky, heaven and ceiling

Are connected to raised, elevated, high, lofty and tall



Root letters are connected to building, erecting, construction, roof, ceiling and a wall

Faultless sky is discussed in the Quran e.g. Quran 67:3-4



Root letters are connected to sending down, to abide, to stay, to bestow and grant

Precise amount of rainwater mentioned in other verses e.g. Quran 23:18

فَأَخْرَجَ

Root letters are connected to bringing out, pulling out and producing

الثَّمَرٰتِ

Root letters are connected to fruit, yield, produce, harvest and crops

Are connected to profit, gain benefit and to invest profitably

رِزْقًا

Root letters are connected to means of survival and living, to bestow, to nourish, to provide provision and derive benefit from something

اَنْدَادًا

Root letters are connected to an equal, a peer, partners, rivals or opposition

Equality - status

Partnership - shared function

Rivalry - competing opposition

تَعْلَمُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

وَاِنْ كُنْتُمْ فِيْ رَيْبٍ مِّمَّا نَزَّلْنَا عَلٰى عَبْدِنَا فَاْتُوْا بِسُوْرَةٍ مِّنْ مِّثْلِهٖ ۪
وَادْعُوْا شُهَدَآءَكُمْ مِّنْ دُوْنِ اللّٰهِ اِنْ كُنْتُمْ صٰدِقِيْنَ ﴿٢٣﴾

2:23

And if you all are, in fact, in a state of doubt, disturbance, suspicion, and questioning concerning what We have gradually revealed—to hold a special position [of supreme authority]—upon Our humble and obedient slave—doing only what We approve of and approving of whatever We do—then, in that case, produce and bring forward any chapter similar to any of its all-encompassing, noble, and exalted chapters. And call upon your knowledgeable witnesses from besides Allah, if you are, in fact, firmly established as those who are sincere and truthful.

Notes:

وَاِنْ كُنْتُمْ فِيْ رَيْبٍ

Structure indicates an established state

كُنْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place



Root letters are connected to being suspicious, doubting, questioning and disturbance of the mind

Doubt - uncertain between options

Disturbance - inner unease

Suspicion - leaning toward doubt/negation

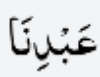
Question - seeking clarity through inquiry



Root letters are connected to something which is sent down, comes down, descends, stops over and is granted

Are connected to something which is sent down slowly and gradually

Are connected to something which holds a special position or place



Root letters are connected to a male servant and male slave

Are connected to worshipping, serving, adoring, obeying with humility and enslaving

Are connected to only doing what Allah, the Exalted, approves of and approving what He decrees



Root letters are connected to coming, arriving, producing, accomplishing, bringing, advancing and accomplishing



Root letters are connected to enclosing and encompassing

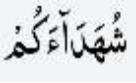
Are connected to eminence, nobility and an exalted rank and station



Root letters are connected to likeness, similar case, example, likeness, resemble, imitate and copy



Root letters are connected to calling, summoning, sending for, assigning and inviting

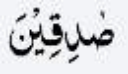


Root letters are connected to witnessing, attending, experiencing, giving evidence

Are connected to those who possess knowledge and provide evidence



Structure indicates an established state



Noun indicating an established state

Root letters are connected to being truthful, sincere and keeping one’s word

Sincere - pure inner intention

Truthful - outward truth in word and action

فَإِنْ لَّمْ تَفْعَلُوْا وَلَنْ تَفْعَلُوْا فَاتَّقُوا النَّارَ الَّتِيْ وَقُوْدُهَا النَّاسُ

وَالْحِجَارَةُ ۚ أُعِدَّتْ لِلْكٰفِرِيْنَ ﴿٢٤﴾

2:24

Then if you all have not accomplished it—and you will never accomplish it—protect yourselves from the harm of the Fire by devoutly fulfilling your duties—thereby arranging all your matters correctly—the Fire whose fuel is people and stones, prepared accurately for those who are firmly established in, and persist in, neglecting, dissociating from, and denying their obligations to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them].

Notes:

تَفْعَلُوْا

Root letters are connected to doing an action, activity and accomplishing a task

فَاتَّقُوْا

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious

النَّارَ

Root letters are connected to fire

وَقُودُهَا

Root letters are connected to fuel

أُعِدَّتْ

Root letters are connected to preparing, getting ready and adjusting

Are connected to counting, numbering, reckoning, enumerating, computing and calculating

لِلْكَٰفِرِينَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent state

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge and ingratitude

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

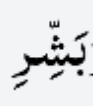
وَبَشِّرِ الَّذِيْنَ اٰمَنُوْا وَعَمِلُوا الصّٰلِحٰتِ اَنَّ لَهُمْ جَنّٰتٍ تَجْرِيْ مِنْ
تَحْتِهَا الْاَنْهٰرُ ۭ كُلَّمَا رُزِقُوْا مِنْهَا مِنْ ثَمَرَةٍ رِّزْقًا ۙ قَالُوْا هٰذَا الَّذِيْ رُزِقْنَا
مِنْ قَبْلُ ۙ وَاُتُوْا بِهٖ مُتَشَابِهًا ۭ وَلَهُمْ فِيْهَآ اَزْوَاجٌ مُّطَهَّرَةٌ ۙ وَّهُمْ فِيْهَا
خٰلِدُوْنَ ۝٢٥

2:25

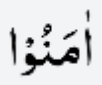
Announce good news of positive future prospects to those who have believed, as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind: having strived to be firmly established in, and persist in, acts of righteous conduct—that for them are secure gardens, with streams and rivers flowing abundantly beneath them. Every time they are provided provision from them of any fruit as a blessing[1], they will say, "This is what we were provided [as a means of living] from before," whereas they will be granted things similar in appearance. And for them, in them [the secure gardens], are purified companions and spouses in body and character. And they, in them, will be firmly established—abiding forever.

Notes:

1 - In Paradise, food is not consumed for survival, but purely for enjoyment



Root letters are connected to giving and announcing good news, giving good and hopeful prospects for the future

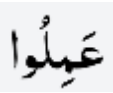


Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

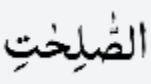
Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

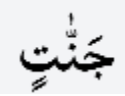


Root letters are connected to working, doing and acting

Are connected to working with effort and difficulty, taking pains, exerting effort and laboring

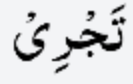


Root letters are connected to being good, just, being in order, being righteous and pious and to do appropriate things

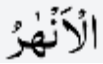


Root letters are connected to protection, shield and safety

Are connected to a garden and a walled garden



Root letters are connected to flowing, running, rushing, hurrying and passing



Root letters are connected to flowing copiously and gushing forth

Are connected to river and stream

Are connected to abundant, plentiful and much

 , and

Root letters are connected to means of survival and living, to bestow, to nourish, to provide provision, grant material or spiritual provision, and derive benefit from something

Are connected to boon, blessing and gift

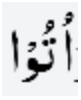


Root letters are connected to fruit, yield, produce, harvest and crops

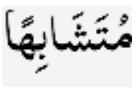


Past tense conveys certainty and vivid, recurring experience (often future in context)

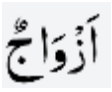
Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging



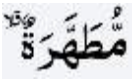
Root letters are connected to bring, give, grant and bestow



Root letters are connected to things which are similar and resemble each other and causes confusion



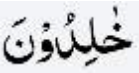
Root letters are connected to pairs, spouses, companions, species and classes



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

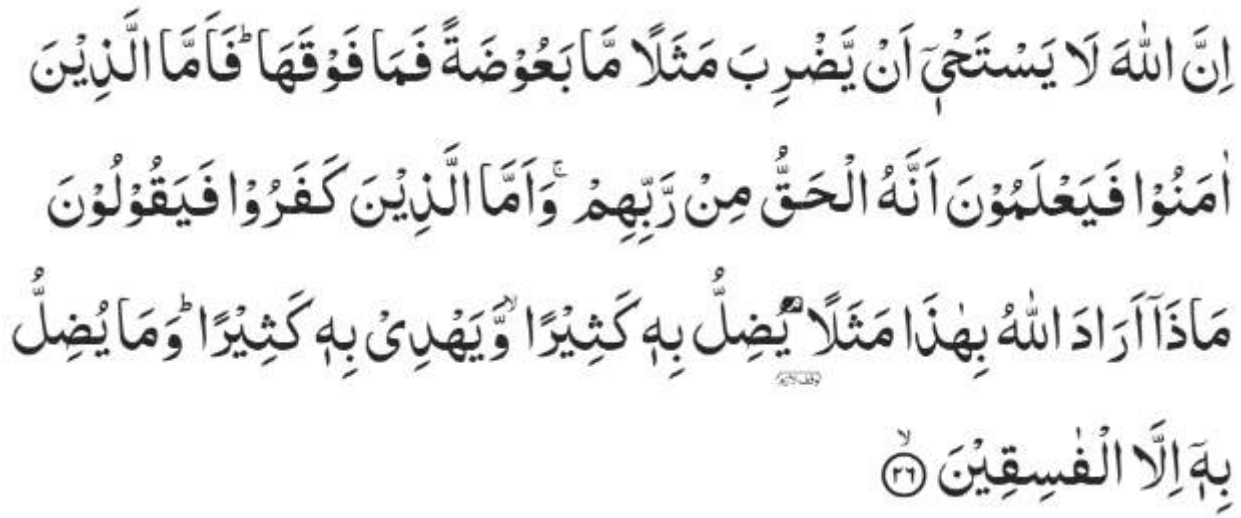
Root letters are connected to clean and purity

Are connected to chastity, refraining from sins, purification of character and purification from bad habits



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to be everlasting, being immortal and abiding forever


إِنَّ اللّٰهَ لَا يَسْتَحْيٖٓ اَنْ يَّضْرِبَ مَثَلًا مَّا بَعُوْضَةً فَمَا فَوْقَهَا ؕ فَاَمَّا الَّذِيْنَ
اٰمَنُوْا فَيَعْلَمُوْنَ اَنَّهُ الْحَقُّ مِنْ رَّبِّهِمْ ۚ وَاَمَّا الَّذِيْنَ كَفَرُوْا فَيَقُوْلُوْنَ
مَاذَآ اَرَادَ اللّٰهُ بِهٰذَا مَثَلًا ۘ يُضِلُّ بِهٖ كَثِيْرًا ۙ وَّيَهْدِيْ بِهٖ كَثِيْرًا ؕ وَمَا يُضِلُّ
بِهٖٓ اِلَّا الْفٰسِقِيْنَ ۙ﴿۲۶﴾

2:26

Certainly, Allah does not look down upon, nor is He shy of, giving an example of even a fly as a lesson, nor whatever is beyond it [which may appear insignificant]. Then as for those who have believed, as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind—they recognise, know, and understand that it [the example] is the truth—correct, appropriate, and purposeful—originating from their nurturing Lord—educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority. Whereas, those who have neglected, dissociated from, and denied their obligations to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them]—they question [dismissively], "What exactly has Allah intended to achieve through this as an example?" He allows a great many to go astray through it, and He gifts guidance through it—by showing and leading to and along the right way of life—to a great many. Yet He does not allow anyone to go astray through it except those who are firmly established in, and persist in, openly transgressing the limits of goodness.

Notes:

يَسْتَحْيِۦٓ

Root letters are connected to be ashamed, embarrassed and shy

Are connected to disdain, looking down upon and scorning

يَضْرِبَ

Root letters are connected to striking, making using of a proverb, framing or propounding a simile, setting forth a parable and giving an example

مَثَلًا

Root letters are connected to an example, to resemble, to copy, compare and a lesson

مَّا بَعُوضَةً

مَّا is a supplemental particle which increases the statement i.e. an example of even a fly

فَوْقَهَا

Root letters are connected to above, beyond, more than and besides

اٰمَنُوْا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

يَعْلَمُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

الْحَـقُّ

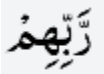
Root letters are connected to what is right, correct, true, proper, suitable, fitting and purposeful

True - matches reality

Correct - accurate and right

Appropriate - properly fitting

Purposeful - meaningful and intentional



Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

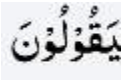
Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended



Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge and ingratitude

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty



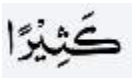
Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging



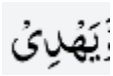
Root letters are connected to have in mind, desire, intend, mean, aim at and purpose



Root letters are connected to allowing someone to get lost, to abandon, to cause to perish, to declare someone misguided and consider someone misguided

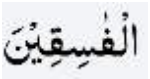


Root letters are connected to increase, plentiful, multiply, grow, many, a great many and abundance



Root letters are connected to guiding, showing and leading

Are connected to a way of life



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to straying from right course, deviating, sinful, immoral and transgressing the limits of the law

Are connected to emerging outwardly and openly

الَّذِيْنَ يَنْقُضُوْنَ عَهْدَ اللّٰهِ مِنْۢ بَعْدِ مِيْثَاقِهٖ ۠ وَيَقْطَعُوْنَ مَآ اَمَرَ اللّٰهُ
بِهٖٓ اَنْ يُّوْصَلَ وَيُفْسِدُوْنَ فِى الْاَرْضِ ۗ اُولٰۤىِٕكَ هُمُ الْخٰسِرُوْنَ ﴿٢٧﴾

2:27

Those [are the ones] who violate and undo the pledge of [obeying] Allah from after its firm confirmation and binding. And they cut and sever what Allah has instructed and entrusted to join and establish—they cause and spread corruption and disorder throughout the land—depriving it of goodness. Those—they [in particular] are firmly established in, and persist in, being misguided losers—heading toward destruction.

Notes:

يَنْقُضُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to destroying, demolishing, undoing, taking apart, tearing apart and violating

عَهْدَ

Root letters are connected to a charge, injunction, command, bidding, pledge, vow, promise, contract and covenant

مِيثَاقِهِ

Root letters are connected to a covenant, agreement, pledge and pact

Are connected to firmly establishing, to tie, to fasten and bind

Confirmation - the covenant has been ratified and affirmed

Binding - that confirmation has legal and moral force

يَقْطَعُونَ

Root letters are connected to cutting, dividing, tearing apart, breaking off and severing

أَمَرَ

Root letters are connected to ordering, commanding, instructing, charging and entrusting

يُوصَلَ

Root letters are connected to connecting, joining, uniting and establishing

يُفْسِدُونَ

Root letters are connected to spoiling, corruption, causing disorder, rebellion, spreading discord, hostility, trouble and depriving of virtue

Corrupt - moral/ethical degradation

Disordered - structural/functional breakdown

Devoid of good - absence of benefit or blessing

هُمُ الْخٰسِرُوْنَ

Pronoun “they” is used twice for added emphasis

الْخٰسِرُوْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to losing, getting lost and perishing

كَيْفَ تَكْفُرُوْنَ بِاللّٰهِ وَكُنْتُمْ اَمْوَاتًا فَاَحْيَاكُمْ ۚ ثُمَّ يُمِيْتُكُمْ ثُمَّ يُحْيِيْكُمْ ثُمَّ اِلَيْهِ تُرْجَعُوْنَ ﴿٢٨﴾

2:28

How can you all neglect, dissociate from, and deny your obligations to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted you], while you were in a state of non-existence. Then He brought you into existence, allowing you to experience life. Thereafter, He will decree death for you. Eventually, He will grant you new life, and ultimately, to Him [alone] you will be returned and presented for critical examination?

Notes:

تَكْفُرُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge and ingratitude

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

كُنْتُمْ اَمْوَاتًا

Structure indicates an established state

كُنْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

اَمْوَاتًا and يُمِيْتُكُمْ

Root letters connected to death, lifelessness and nonexistent

Are connected to making die, letting perish, killing and causing death

فَاَحْيَا and يُحْيِيْكُمْ

Root letters are connected to giving life, call into existence, reviving, reanimating and giving new life

Are connected to experiencing, witnessing, living through a time and live to see

تُرْجَعُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to coming back, returning, resorting or reverting to a former place/state/quality

Are connected to present oneself and examine critically

هُوَ الَّذِیْ خَلَقَ لَكُمْ مَّا فِی الْاَرْضِ جَمِیْعًا ثُمَّ اسْتَوٰۤی اِلَی السَّمَآءِ
فَسَوّٰىهُنَّ سَبْعَ سَمٰوٰتٍ ؕ وَهُوَ بِكُلِّ شَیْءٍ عَلِیْمٌ ﴿۲۹﴾

2:29

He is the One who has created—without any prior model and in a perfectly suitable and precise manner—for the benefit of you all, whatever is in the Earth without exception. Thereafter, He specifically directed His purpose to the lofty sky and arranged it into seven lofty skies—each proportioned exactly and perfectly. And He is innately and eternally the One who, concerning each and every thing, completely knows and fully understands.

Notes:

خَلَقَ

Root letters are connected to creating, originating, making, determining according to specific weight and measure and bringing into existence from nothing

Are connected to being fitting and suitable

جَمِيْعًا

Root letters are connected to whole, entire, all, entirety and altogether

Indicates all without exception

اسْتَوٰٓى and فَسَوّٰىهُنَّ

هُنَّ indicates precision and perfection for each sky

Root letters are connected to moving from one finished task to another, directing oneself, taking holding of, turning towards and setting oneself a task

Are connected to purpose, aim and end

Are connected to arranging, putting into order, to settle, to even, make equal, to straighten and to level

السَّمَآءِ

Root letters are connected to sky, heaven and ceiling

Are connected to raised, elevated, high, lofty and tall

وَهُوَ بِكُلِّ شَىْءٍ عَلِيْمٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

عَلِيْمٌ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

وَإِذْ قَالَ رَبُّكَ لِلْمَلٰٓئِكَةِ إِنِّي جَاعِلٌ فِي الْأَرْضِ خَلِيفَةً ۖ قَالُوٓا أَتَجْعَلُ
فِيهَا مَن يُفْسِدُ فِيهَا وَيَسْفِكُ الدِّمَآءَ ۖ وَنَحْنُ نُسَبِّحُ بِحَمْدِكَ
وَنُقَدِّسُ لَكَ ۖ قَالَ إِنِّيٓ أَعْلَمُ مَا لَا تَعْلَمُونَ ﴿٣٠﴾

2:30

And [reflect on] when your nurturing Lord—educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority—declared to the Angels, "Certainly, I am the One [whose enduring practice is firmly established in, and persists in,] placing and appointing on the Earth a successive representative[1]." The Angels replied [surprised], "Will you place and appoint in it who will cause and spread corruption and disorder throughout it—depriving it of goodness—and shed a great deal of blood? Whereas, we—we constantly declare You free from every imperfection and quickly respond in obedience to You with praise and gratitude—as is Your due right—and we dedicate ourselves to purification through veneration and worship for You [seeking Your pleasure]." Allah replied, "Certainly, I completely know and fully understand what you do not recognise, know, or understand."

Notes:

1 - A successive representative refers to each person who succeeds others and is in turn succeeded, within an ongoing cycle of succession on the earth

قَالَ and قَالُوٓا

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

رَبُّكَ

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

جَاعِلٌ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to placing, creating, inserting, making, fixing, giving, granting and appointing

تَجْعَلُ

Root letters are connected to placing, creating, inserting, making, fixing, giving, granting and appointing

خَلِيْفَةً

Root letters are connected to successor, successive generations appointed to take the place of others before them, a representative, a substitute, to follow and replace

يُّفْسِدُ

Root letters are connected to spoiling, corruption, causing disorder, rebellion, spreading discord, hostility, trouble and depriving of virtue

Corrupt - moral/ethical degradation

Disordered - structural/functional breakdown

Devoid of good - absence of benefit or blessing

يَسْفِكُ

Root letters are connected to shedding and causing to run and flow blood and other liquids

وَنَحْنُ نُسَبِّحُ

Pronoun “we” is used twice for added emphasis

نُسَبِّحُ

Root letters are connected to glorifying Allah by declaring that He is free from all negative things

Are connected to moving swiftly in the obedience of Allah

Are connected to swimming constantly on the surface

بِحَمْدِكَ

Root letters are connected to praising highly, thanks, approving and being praiseworthy

And are connected to giving someone their due/right

Praise – Allah, the Exalted, is deserving of it because of His blessed attributes

Gratitude – For the countless blessings of Allah, the Exalted

نُقَدِّسُ

Root letters are connected to dedicating, sanctifying, to hold sacred, to revere and worship

Are connected to purifying oneself

Veneration - honour and deep respect

Worship - devotion and adoration

أَعْلَمُ and تَعْلَمُونَ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

وَعَلَّمَ اٰدَمَ الْاَسْمَآءَ كُلَّهَا ثُمَّ عَرَضَهُمْ عَلَى الْمَلٰٓئِكَةِ ۙ فَقَالَ اَنْۢبِـُٔوْنِيْ
بِاَسْمَآءِ هٰٓؤُلَآءِ اِنْ كُنْتُمْ صٰدِقِيْنَ ﴿٣١﴾

2:31

And He taught and clarified to Adam the names—all of them. Thereafter, He presented them [those things] to the Angels for inspection. Then He questioned [challenging them], "Inform Me of the names of these, if you are, in fact, [firmly established as] those who are sincere and truthful [in your earlier claim]?"

Notes:

عَلَّمَ

Root letters are connected to teaching, instructing and educating

Are connected to distinguishing, differentiating and making apparent

الْاَسْمَآءَ and بِاَسْمَآءِ

Root letters are connected to naming, calling, designating and giving a name

عَرَضَهُمْ

Root letters are connected to showing, presenting, displaying and laying open

Are connected to inspecting and reviewing

قَالَ

Root letters are connected to saying, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging.

اَنۡبِـُٔوۡ

Root letters are connected to informing, notifying, advising telling and announcing

اِنۡ كُنۡتُمۡ صٰدِقِيۡنَ

Structure indicates an established state

كُنۡتُمۡ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

صٰدِقِيۡنَ

Root letters are connected to being truthful, sincere and keeping one’s word

Sincere - pure inner intention

Truthful - outward truth in word and action

قَالُوْا سُبْحٰنَكَ لَا عِلْمَ لَنَآ اِلَّا مَا عَلَّمْتَنَا ؕ اِنَّكَ اَنْتَ الْعَلِيْمُ
الْحَكِيْمُ ﴿٣٢﴾

2:32

They replied [declaring], "You are free from every imperfection. We have absolutely no knowledge or understanding except what You have taught and clarified to us.[1] Certainly, You—You are innately and eternally the One who completely knows and fully understands everything, the One who rules over and controls everything, determining every affair with perfect wisdom."

Notes:

1 - The Angels' lack of this knowledge indicates that they did not possess the knowledge and understanding required to judge mankind as they did in an earlier verse - Quran 2:30

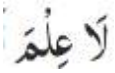
قَالُوْا

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

سُبْحٰنَكَ

Root letters are connected to glorifying Allah by declaring that He is free from all negative things

Are connected to moving swiftly in the obedience of Allah



Structure indicates absolute negation

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications



Root letters are connected to teaching, instructing and educating

Are connected to distinguishing, differentiating and making apparent



Pronoun “You” is used twice for added emphasis



Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

الْحَكِيْمُ

Root letters are connected to judging, deciding and decreeing

Are connected to wisdom

Are connected to accuracy, perfection and precision

Are connected to governing, ruling, dominating and controlling

Rule - authority and command (who has the right to decide)

Control - execution and outcome (ensuring decisions take effect)

قَالَ يٰٓاٰدَمُ اَنۢبِئۡهُمۡ بِاَسۡمَآئِهِمۡ ۚ فَلَمَّاۤ اَنۡۢبَاَهُمۡ بِاَسۡمَآئِهِمۡ ۙ قَالَ اَلَمۡ
اَقُلۡ لَّكُمۡ اِنِّىۡۤ اَعۡلَمُ غَيۡبَ السَّمٰوٰتِ وَالۡاَرۡضِ ۙ وَاَعۡلَمُ مَا تُبۡدُوۡنَ وَمَا
كُنۡتُمۡ تَكۡتُمُوۡنَ ﴿۳۳﴾

2:33

He said, “Adam! Inform them of their names.” Then at the very moment he informed them of their names, He [Allah] affirmed, “Have I not declared to you all, certainly, I completely know and fully understand the unseen things of the lofty skies and the Earth, [which are beyond the perception of human senses—discoverable only through divine revelation], and am more knowing and understanding of whatever you openly express or reveal—verbally or physically—and whatever you are [persisting in] withholding or concealing?”

Notes:

قَالَ and اَقُلۡ

Root letters are connected to saying, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

اَنۡۢبِئۡهُمۡ and اَنۡۢبَاَهُمۡ

Root letters are connected to informing, notifying, advising telling and announcing



Root letters are connected to naming, calling, designating and giving a name



Root letters are connected to when, since and after

Emphasizes moment of occurrence



Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

Can be present tense first-person verb or a comparative i.e. more knowing



Root letters are connected to something which is absent, hidden, invisible, discoverable through divine revelation and beyond the reach of mental perception

السَّمٰوٰتِ

Root letters are connected to sky, heaven and ceiling

Are connected to raised, elevated, high, lofty and tall

تُبْدُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to disclosing, revealing, declaring openly, expressing verbally and physically

Express - to bring something outwardly into manifestation through speech or action

Reveal - to uncover or make something hidden or internal externally visible or known

كُنْتُمْ تَكْتُمُوْنَ

Structure indicates repetitive action

كُنْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

تَكْتُمُوْنَ

Root words are connected to hiding, concealing, making secret and to withhold

Withhold - deliberately hold back or not give

Conceal - actively hide or keep secret

وَإِذْ قُلْنَا لِلْمَلٰٓئِكَةِ اسْجُدُوْا لِاٰدَمَ فَسَجَدُوْٓا اِلَّآ اِبْلِيْسَ ۭ اَبٰى وَاسْتَكْبَرَ ڮ وَكَانَ مِنَ الْكٰفِرِيْنَ ﴿٣٤﴾

2:34

And [reflect on] when We declared to the Angels [commanding them], "Bow down in reverence for Adam—honouring him." Then they bowed down except Iblees; he refused with disdain and he was stubbornly proud and arrogant—seeking to exalt himself. And he became and exists from amongst those who are firmly established in, and persist in, neglecting, dissociating from, and denying their obligations to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted him].

Notes:

قُلْنَا

Root letters are connected to saying, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

اسْجُدُوْا and فَسَجَدُوْٓا

Root letters are connected to bowing down, prostrating, bending down, being humble, submissive, honouring, paying respect, bowing in reverence and saluting

أَبَىٰ

Root letters are connected to refusing, rejecting, turning down, distaining and scorning

وَٱسْتَكْبَرَ

Root letters are connected to pride, arrogance, seeking to magnify oneself, trying to excel and trying to be great

Are connected to insist stubbornly on one's opinion

Proud - inward sense of self-importance and superiority

Arrogant - outward display of superiority over others

Exalting - attempt to raise oneself above one's rightful position or limits

وَكَانَ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

ٱلْكَٰفِرِينَ

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

وَقُلْنَا يٰٓاٰدَمُ اسْكُنْ اَنْتَ وَزَوْجُكَ الْجَنَّةَ وَكُلَا مِنْهَا رَغَدًا حَيْثُ

شِئْتُمَا ۪ وَلَا تَقْرَبَا هٰذِهِ الشَّجَرَةَ فَتَكُوْنَا مِنَ الظّٰلِمِيْنَ ﴿٣٥﴾

2:35

And We declared, "Adam! Reside in peace, you and your wife, in the Secure Garden—Paradise—and both of you eat and utilise from it in ease, comfort, and affluence from wherever you have wished. However, neither of you approach this tree[1]; otherwise, you will become and exist from amongst those who are firmly established in, and persist in, being unjust—transgressing proper limits."

Notes:

1 - The prohibition was not to eat from the tree but for the sake of caution they were warned not to even approach it

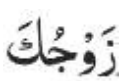
قُلْنَا

Root letters are connected to saying, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

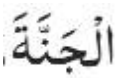
اسْكُنْ

Root letters are connected to becoming still, peaceful, rest and repose

Are connected to living, dwelling, inhabiting and settling



Root letters are connected to pairs, spouses, companions, species and classes



Root letters are connected to Paradise

Are connected to protection, shield and safety

Are connected to a garden and a walled garden



Root letters are connected to eat, swallow, consume, to enjoy and make use of



Root letters are connected to comfort, carefree, amble means and living in ease and affluence

Ease - absence of difficulty, strain, or hardship

Comfort - feeling of physical/mental ease, satisfaction, and settled well-being

Affluence - abundance and availability

شِئْتُمَآ

Root letters are connected to wanting, willing and wishing

تَقْرَبَا

Root letters are connected to coming near, close and approaching in respect time and place

فَتَكُوْنَا

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

الظّٰلِمِيْنَ

Root letters are connected to be unjust, act tyrannically, do wrong, do evil, harm, oppress and transgress proper limits

فَأَزَلَّهُمَا الشَّيْطٰنُ عَنْهَا فَأَخْرَجَهُمَا مِمَّا كَانَا فِيْهِ ۠ وَقُلْنَا اهْبِطُوْا
بَعْضُكُمْ لِبَعْضٍ عَدُوٌّ ۚ وَلَكُمْ فِي الْأَرْضِ مُسْتَقَرٌّ وَّمَتَاعٌ إِلٰى حِيْنٍ ﴿٣٦﴾

2:36

Then the Devil—arrogantly corrupt, who deters others from obeying Allah—caused them both to stumble concerning it [the tree] thereby expelling them from the state in which they existed. Therefore, We declared, "Descend [to the Earth] in a state of being an enemy[1]—some of you all for others [by exceeding proper bounds through hostility and aggression]. And for your benefit, in the Earth, is an established residence and provision as a means of living and enjoyment for some time [until death]."

Notes:

1 - The singular noun describes the quality and established state of enmity rather than indicating numerical singularity

فَأَزَلَّهُمَا

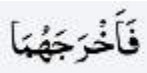
Root letters are connected to making someone slip, stumble, trip up and fall

الشَّيْطٰنُ

Root letters are connected to behaving like a devil, rebellious, corrupt and arrogant

Are connected to opposing others, turning them away from their purpose

Are connected to becoming remote and distant from the mercy of Allah, the Exalted



Root letters are connected to bringing out, pulling out, dislodging and expelling



Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place



Root letters are connected to saying, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging



Root letters are connected to descending, coming down and falling down



Phrase can mean to one another, mutually and reciprocally



Singular

Root letters are connected to hostility, violating, aggression, exceeding proper bounds and transgressing

Are connected to treating like an enemy

Enemies - the state of opposition

Hostility - inner attitude of enmity

Aggression - outward expression through harmful action



Noun indicating an established

Root letters are connected to settling, establishing, taking up residence, lodging and a temporary stay



Noun indicating an established

Root letters are connected to things of use e.g. commodities, utensils, goods and property

Are connected to enjoying, savoring, relishing, equipping and supplying



Root letters are connected to approaching and arriving

Are connected to a set period of time

Are connected to death and destruction

فَتَلَقَّىٰٓ اٰدَمُ مِنْ رَّبِّهٖ كَلِمٰتٍ فَتَابَ عَلَيْهِ ۭ اِنَّهٗ هُوَ التَّوَّابُ الرَّحِيْمُ ۝۳۷

2:37

Then Adam learned a lesson and received from his nurturing Lord—educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority—some important words. Then he [Adam] turned to Him [Allah] in sincere repentance. Certainly, He—He is the One whose enduring practice is firmly established in, and persists in, immediately and repeatedly accepting repentance, the One who, innately and eternally, especially grants constant mercy, kindness, and relief to those who earn it.

Notes:



Root letters are connected to meeting, receiving, taking, being informed, learning, taking lessons and being instructed

Are connected to experiencing, undergoing and enduring



Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended



Root letters are connected to word, speech, address, utterance, saying, importance and prophecy



Root letters are connected to repenting, turning and renouncing disobedience and sins



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



Pronoun “He” is used twice for added emphasis



Intense structure form has been used

Root letters are connected to repenting, turning and renouncing disobedience and sins

Are connected to forgiveness and turning to someone



Intense structure form has been used

Root letters are connected to having mercy, compassion, sparing, letting off, saving, kindness, tenderness and pity

Intense structure form has been used

Specific mercy for those who deserve and earn it

Mercy – withholds punishment from those who deserve it

Kindness – a broader act of granting blessings

قُلْنَا اهْبِطُوْا مِنْهَا جَمِيْعًا ۚ فَاِمَّا يَاْتِيَنَّكُمْ مِّنِّيْ هُدًى فَمَنْ تَبِعَ هُدَايَ
فَلَا خَوْفٌ عَلَيْهِمْ وَلَا هُمْ يَحْزَنُوْنَ ﴿٣٨﴾

2:38

We declared, "Descend [to the Earth] from it [Paradise] all of you—without exception. Then, no doubt, if ever guidance [which shows and leads to and along the right way of life] certainly reaches you from Me—whoever has been in agreement with, pursued, and adhered to My guidance, thereby living under its authority, fear of the future will not dominate them, and they—they [in particular] will not grieve or mourn over the past.[1]

Notes:

1 - The one who adheres to divine guidance may feel fear but will not be dominated by it; they may feel sadness but will not fall into grief and despair

قُلْنَا

Root letters are connected to saying, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging.

اهْبِطُوْا

Root letters are connected to descending, coming down and falling down

جَمِيْعًا

Root letters are connected to whole, entire, all, entirety and altogether

Indicates all without exception

اِمَّا

A conditional particle used when the chance of occurrence is inevitable or high

يَاْتِيَنَّكُمْ

Structure indicates two layers of emphasis

Root letters are connected to coming, arriving, bringing, advancing and accomplishing

هُدًى

Root letters are connected to guidance, direction, showing, being led, being supplied and a way of life

Are connected to gifting and bestowing

Are connected to direction and discovering the right way

Are connected to direction and discovering the right way

تَبِعَ

Root letters are connected to following, pursuing, walking behind and adhering

Are connected to being under authority and command

Are connected to concurring, being in agreement and being in conformity

In agreement - accepting the guidance internally (belief/acceptance)

Pursues - actively seeking and following it

Adheres to - remaining firm and consistent upon it

خَوْفٌ

Root letters are connected to being frightened and scared of a future event

هُمْ يَحْزَنُوْنَ

Pronoun “they” is used twice for added emphasis

يَحْزَنُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to being sad, grieving and mourning over something in the past

Grieve - deep internal sorrow

Mourn - outward expression of sorrow

وَالَّذِيْنَ كَفَرُوْا وَكَذَّبُوْا بِاٰيٰتِنَآ اُولٰۤىِٕكَ اَصْحٰبُ النَّارِ ۚ هُمْ فِيْهَا خٰلِدُوْنَ ﴿۳۹﴾

2:39

However, those who have neglected, dissociated from, and denied Our miraculous and evident signs [divine revelation[1]] and called them a lie, seeking to discredit them, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings We granted them]—those are the inmates of the Fire; they, in it, will be firmly established—abiding forever."

Notes:

1 - The miraculous signs refer to the divine guidance mentioned in the previous verse – Quran 2:38

كَفَرُوْا

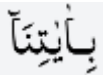
Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

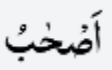
Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

كَذَّبُوْا

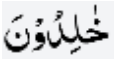
Root letters are connected to disproving, refuting, denying, calling a lie, rejecting, discrediting and repelling



Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof



Root letters are connected to companionship, association, closely associated, inmates and occupants



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to be everlasting, being immortal and abiding forever

يٰبَنِيٓ اِسۡرَآءِيۡلَ اذۡكُرُوۡا نِعۡمَتِىَ الَّتِىۡٓ اَنۡعَمۡتُ عَلَيۡكُمۡ وَاَوۡفُوۡا بِعَهۡدِىۡٓ اُوۡفِ بِعَهۡدِكُمۡ ۚ وَاِيَّاىَ فَارۡهَبُوۡنِ ﴿۴۰﴾

2:40

Descendants of Israel! Reflect on and be mindful of My favour that leads to a pleasant life, which I granted you [through divine guidance]. Therefore, faithfully and completely fulfil My command—I will fully compensate your commitment. And direct to Me [alone] devotion with awe of Me.

Notes:

بَنِيٓ

Root letters are connected to son, daughter and descendant

اذْكُرُوا

Root letters are connected to bearing in mind, thinking, recalling, remembering, studying and reflecting

Reflect on - to think deeply, consider, and recognise

Be mindful of - to actively keep awareness of and not neglect

نِعْمَتِيَ and اَنْعَمْتُ

Root letters are connected to benefit, blessing, benefaction, favour, grace and kindness

Are connected to making nice, comfortable, pleasant and to bestow favours

Are connected to living in comfort and luxury, leading a life of ease and leading a comfortable life

اَوْفُوْا and اُوْفِ

Root letters are connected to living up to a promise, redeeming, fulfilling, discharging and compensating fully

Are connected to doing full justice and carry out fully

Are connected to being faithful, sincere, trustworthy, loyal and keep one's word

Faithfully - quality of commitment

Completely - extent of fulfilment

بِعَهْدِيْٓ and بِعَهْدِكُمْ

Root letters are connected to a charge, injunction, command, bidding, pledge, vow, promise, contract, commitment and covenant

Are connected to adhering, heeding, looking after and keeping one's promise

وَإِيَّايَ فَارْهَبُونِ

Pronoun “Me” is used twice for added emphasis

Structure shows exclusivity

إِيَّا

Structure used for emphasis

Root letters are connected to directing oneself and one’s aims

فَارْهَبُونِ

Root letters are connected to being frightened, afraid and dreading

Are connected to devoting oneself to Allah

وَاٰمِنُوْا بِمَآ اَنْزَلْتُ مُصَدِّقًا لِّمَا مَعَكُمْ وَلَا تَكُوْنُوْٓا اَوَّلَ كَافِرٍۢ بِهٖ ۪ وَلَا
تَشْتَرُوْا بِاٰيٰتِيْ ثَمَنًا قَلِيْلًا ۫ وَّاِيَّايَ فَاتَّقُوْنِ ﴿٤١﴾

2:41

And believe—all of you—in what I have gradually revealed to hold a special position [of supreme authority]—as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind—revelation which is in a firmly established and persistent state of verifying and bearing witness to what is with you. Therefore, do not become and exist as the foremost one who is firmly established in, and persists in, neglecting, dissociating from, and denying it, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings I granted you]. And do not exchange My miraculous and evident signs [divine revelation] for a small, inferior, and insufficient price. And direct to Me [alone] the devout fulfilment of your duties—thereby protecting yourselves from harm and arranging all your matters correctly through Me.

Notes:

اٰمِنُوْا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

اَنْزَلْتُ

Root letters are connected to something which is sent down, comes down, descends, stops over and is granted

Are connected to something which is sent down slowly and gradually

Are connected to something which holds a special position or place

مُصَدِّقًا

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to certifying, verifying, confirming, substantiating, attesting and bearing witness

Verifies - confirms correctness, establishes truth

Bears witness to - testifies in favour or against

عِنْدَ

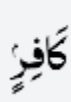
Preposition – with, in the company of, in the presence of, in despite of, together and in the estimation

تَكُوْنُوْا

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place



Root letters are connected to being first, foremost and main

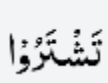


Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty



Root letters are connected to buying, selling, preferring and exchanging

And are connected to persisting and persevering



Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof



Root letters are connected to price, cost, value and sum



Root letters are connected to few, inconsiderable, insufficient, sparse, small, little and inferior



Pronoun “Me” is used twice for added emphasis

Structure shows exclusivity



Structure used for emphasis

Root letters are connected to directing oneself and one’s aims



Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious

وَلَا تَلْبِسُوا الْحَقَّ بِالْبَاطِلِ وَتَكْتُمُوا الْحَقَّ وَأَنْتُمْ تَعْلَمُونَ ﴿٤٢﴾

2:42

And do not, all of you, deceptively cover the truth—correct, appropriate, and purposeful—with what is firmly established in, and persists in, being vain, false, or corrupt, thereby making it unclear and causing confusion. And do not withhold, subdue, or conceal the truth while you recognise, know, and understand.

Notes:

This verse refers specifically to those who possessed and understood the previous divine scriptures—the scholars—not the ordinary followers, who were not allowed direct access to them. This is evident from history and is supported by the Quran, for example, Quran 2:78

تَلْبِسُوا

Root letters are connected to dressing, covering, draping

Are connected to making obscure, unclear, confusing, ambiguous and to deceive

Unclear – refers to the condition - not easily understood

Confusion – refers to the consequence - lack of understanding

الْحَقَّ

Root letters are connected to what is right, correct, true, proper, suitable, fitting and purposeful

True - matches reality

Correct - accurate and right

Appropriate - properly fitting

Purposeful - meaningful and intentional



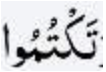
Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to false, vain, worthless, lies, falsehood, unsound and corruption

Vain - lacking real value or benefit

False - not true; contrary to reality

Corrupt - morally or functionally spoiled; distorted from what is right



Root words are connected to hiding, subduing, curbing, suppressing, repressing, concealing, making secret and to withhold

Withhold - to hold back or not disclose

Subdue - to suppress, weaken, or keep under control

Conceal - to hide completely from view or knowledge



Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

وَاَقِيْمُوا الصَّلٰوةَ وَاٰتُوا الزَّكٰوةَ وَارْكَعُوْا مَعَ الرّٰكِعِيْنَ ﴿٤٣﴾

2:43

And sincerely establish, all of you, the prayer[1]—each one of them—which disciplines conduct [through the remembrance of the Hereafter], while fulfilling its conditions and etiquettes. And give the obligatory charity, which purifies the spiritual heart [from greed] and causes increase [in blessings]. And humbly bow down with those who are firmly established in, and persist in, humbly bowing down [to Allah in obedience].

Notes:

1 - The prayers are mentioned in the singular, indicating that the five obligatory prayers are regarded as one unified act of worship, and therefore none of them can be left out

اَقِيْمُوا

Root letters are connected to guarding, preserving, being sincere, honest, rectifying and establishing

Are connected to doing properly, putting in order and arranging well

الصَّلٰوةَ

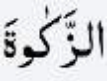
Root letters are connected to praying and worshipping

Are connected to straightening something or making it soft by fire

The stages of the prayer mirror the stages of the Hereafter, serving as a continual reminder of it e.g. Quran 83:4-6, 77:48, 68:42-43 and 45:28



Root letters are connected to performing, executing, giving and granting



Root letters are connected to growing, increasing, purification and purity of heart

Are connected to the obligatory charity, alms and charity

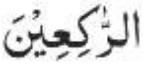


Root letters are connected to bowing down, knelling down and bending the body

Are connected to humbling oneself, turning to Allah and worshipping Allah



Preposition – with, in the company of, in despite of, together and in the estimation



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to bowing down, knelling down and bending the body

Are connected to humbling oneself, turning to Allah and worshipping Allah

اَتَاْمُرُوْنَ النَّاسَ بِالْبِرِّ وَتَنْسَوْنَ اَنْفُسَكُمْ وَاَنْتُمْ تَتْلُوْنَ الْكِتٰبَ ؕ
اَفَلَا تَعْقِلُوْنَ ﴿۴۴﴾

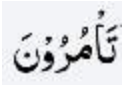
2:44

Do you [the scholars] instruct the people to righteous conduct towards Allah and others while you all neglect and ignore yourselves, even as you recite and study the divine code of conduct [the Torah and Gospel[1]]? Then will you not use your faculties correctly—applying reason and common sense—to understand and refrain [from such behaviour]?

Notes:

This verse refers specifically to those who possessed and understood the previous divine scriptures—the scholars—not the ordinary followers, who were not allowed direct access to them. This is evident from history and is supported by the Quran, for example, Quran 2:78

1 - The divine code of conduct is mentioned in the singular form to emphasise the shared and unified divine guidance originally granted through the Torah and affirmed by the Gospel

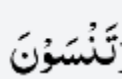


Root letters are connected to ordering, commanding, instructing, charging and entrusting



Root letters are connected to being dutiful, devout, to do good, obey Allah, treat others with respect and good treatment of people

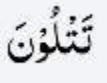
Are connected to piety, reverence and righteousness



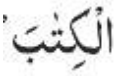
Root letters are connected to forgetting, neglecting, omitting, being oblivious and ignoring

Neglect - fail to care for or give proper attention to

Ignore - deliberately pay no attention to or disregard



Root letters are connected to following, reading, reciting, relating and rehearsing



Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document



Root letters are connected to being reasonable, using intelligence, using common sense, using one’s senses and understanding

Are connected to confining, detaining, arresting, restraining and refraining

Reason - structured, analytical thinking

Common sense - intuitive, practical application

وَاسْتَعِيْنُوْا بِالصَّبْرِ وَالصَّلٰوةِ ؕ وَاِنَّهَا لَكَبِيْرَةٌ اِلَّا عَلَى الْخٰشِعِيْنَ ۙ﴿۴۵﴾

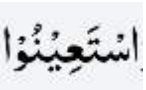
2:45

And seek—all of you—refuge, relief, and support after applying every possible effort through patience, perseverance [in obedience], and self-restraint [from complaint]; and through the prayer[1]—each one of them—which disciplines conduct [through the remembrance of the Hereafter]. And certainly, they[2] appear extremely hateful and intolerable except upon those who are firmly established in, and persist in, humble submission [to Allah].

Notes:

1 - The prayers are mentioned in the singular, indicating that the five obligatory prayers are regarded as one unified act of worship, and therefore none of them can be left out

2 – The feminine pronoun used in the Arabic text can connect back to both patience and prayer combined



Root letters are connected to helping, aiding and assisting

Are connected to freeing, relieving and liberating

Are connected to seeking help after full effort to accomplish a task

لَصَّبْرِ

Root letters are connected to binding and shackling

Are connected to being patient, persevering, forbearing, enduring, refraining, abstaining, desisting and self-control

Patience - enduring difficulty without panic or loss of steadiness

Perseverance - continuing steadily in obedience over time without giving up

Self-restraining [from complaint] - controlling oneself from expressing objection or dissatisfaction

الصَّلٰوةَ

Root letters are connected to praying and worshipping

Are connected to straightening something or making it soft by fire

The stages of the prayer mirror the stages of the Hereafter, serving as a continual reminder of it e.g. Quran 83:4-6, 77:48, 68:42-43 and 45:28

وَاِنَّهَا

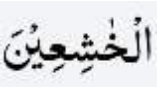
هَا feminine pronoun is connected to the prayer, which is also considered feminine in Arabic

لَكَبِيْرَةٌ

This refers to the prayer, as both are grammatically feminine

لَ at the beginning is used for added emphasis

Root letters are connected to becoming too great, too distressing and painful, too burdensome, to appear intolerable, insurmountable, hateful, odious and disdainful



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being humble, submissive and lowering oneself

Humility – inward quality recognising one’s real worth and dependence on Allah, the Exalted

Submissive – practically submitting to the obedience of Allah, the Exalted

الَّذِيْنَ يَظُنُّوْنَ اَنَّهُمْ مُّلٰقُوْا رَبِّهِمْ وَاَنَّهُمْ اِلَيْهِ رٰجِعُوْنَ ﴿٤٦﴾

2:46

Those [are the ones] who are certain, through thoughtful reflection [of divine knowledge], that they are firmly established in, and persisting in, meeting their nurturing Lord—educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority. And that they, to Him [alone], are firmly established in, and persisting in, returning and presenting themselves for critical examination.

Notes:

يَظُنُّوْنَ

Root letters are connected to believing, being certain and perceiving

Root letters are connected to understanding through careful thought and effort and not through eye witnessing

مُّلٰقُوْا

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to meet, come to meet, encounter, experience and achieve



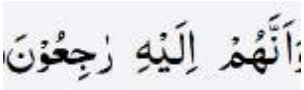
Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended



Structures show exclusivity and completeness



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to coming back, returning, resorting or reverting to a former place/state/quality

Are connected to present oneself and examine critically

يٰبَنِيۡۤ اِسۡرَآءِيۡلَ اذۡكُرُوۡا نِعۡمَتِىَ الَّتِىۡۤ اَنۡعَمۡتُ عَلَيۡكُمۡ وَاَنِّىۡ فَضَّلۡتُكُمۡ عَلَى الۡعٰلَمِيۡنَ ﴿۴۷﴾

2:47

Descendants of Israel! Reflect on and be mindful of My favour that leads to a pleasant life, which I granted you [through divine guidance]; thus, I generously distinguished you [as its responsible representatives] over all [preceding] generations [of humans and jinn] endowed with higher-level recognition, knowledge, and understanding—[marked for accountability].

Notes:

بَنِيٓ

Root letters are connected to son, daughter and descendant

اذۡكُرُوۡا

Root letters are connected to bearing in mind, thinking, recalling, remembering, studying and reflecting

Reflect on - to think deeply, consider, and recognise

Be mindful of - to actively keep awareness of and not neglect

نِعْمَتِيَ and اَنْعَمْتُ

Root letters are connected to benefit, blessing, benefaction, favour, grace and kindness

Are connected to making nice, comfortable, pleasant and to bestow favours

Are connected to living in comfort and luxury, leading a life of ease and leading a comfortable life

فَضَّلْتُكُمْ

Root letters are connected to favouring, giving preference and distinguishing

Are connected to treating kindly and bestowing benefits

لْعٰلَمِيْنَ

Root letters are connected to generation

Are connected to inquiring, asking and querying

Are connected to something which is marked e.g. landmark – Humans and Jinn are marked for accountability e.g. Quran 55:31

Are connected to knowledge, understanding, recognition, perception, discernment and learning – Humans and Jinn possess higher level of knowledge, intelligence and understanding in respect to divine guidance and accountability and are therefore marked for accountability unlike other creatures

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

Same term used in Quran 25:1 which mentions the Prophet Muhammad, peace and blessings be upon him, being sent as a warner. He was sent only to those marked for accountability as a warner and not the entire creation

وَاتَّقُوا يَوْمًا لَّا تَجْزِي نَفْسٌ عَن نَّفْسٍ شَيْـًٔا وَّلَا يُقْبَلُ مِنْهَا شَفَاعَةٌ وَّلَا يُؤْخَذُ مِنْهَا عَدْلٌ وَّلَا هُمْ يُنصَرُونَ ﴿٤٨﴾

2:48

And protect yourselves from the harm of a Momentous Day by devoutly fulfilling your duties—thereby arranging all your matters correctly—a Day when a person will not be able to settle the recompense on behalf of another, nor take their place—at all. And pleading on their behalf from another will not be allowed or accepted[1]. And any ransom [from accountability] will not be taken from them. And they—they [in particular] will not be protected, supported, or granted success.

Notes:

1 - Pleading on behalf of another will only be allowed and accepted after permission has been granted by Allah, the Exalted, as discussed in many Islamic teachings, such as Quran 2:255

اتَّقُوا

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious

يَوْمًا

Root letters are connected to days, age, era and time

Are connected to momentous and important days

تَجْزِىْ

Root letters are connected to repaying, rewarding and settling a debt on someone’s behalf

Are connected to taking the place, replacing and serving instead

Are connected to requite, recompense, repayment and compensation

يُقْبَلُ

Root letters are connected to accepting, agreeing and taking

Allowed - permitted to occur

Accepted - approved or received

شَفَاعَةٌ

Root letters are connected to advocacy, mediating, intercession, pleading for someone else and putting in a good word for another

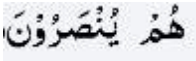
يُؤْخَذُ

Root letters are connected to taking, accepting, obtaining and seizing

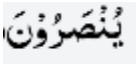


Root letters are connected to a ransom a price

Are connected to rectifying, straightening out, to balance something and bring about settlement



Pronoun “they” is used twice for added emphasis



Root letters are connected to helping, assisting, victory and success

Are connected to protecting and defending

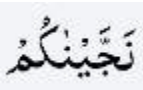
وَاِذۡ نَجَّيۡنٰكُمۡ مِّنۡ اٰلِ فِرۡعَوۡنَ يَسُوۡمُوۡنَكُمۡ سُوۡٓءَ الۡعَذَابِ
يُذَبِّحُوۡنَ اَبۡنَآءَكُمۡ وَيَسۡتَحۡيُوۡنَ نِسَآءَكُمۡ ؕ وَفِىۡ ذٰلِكُمۡ بَلَآءٌ مِّنۡ
رَّبِّكُمۡ عَظِيۡمٌ ﴿۴۹﴾

2:49

And [reflect on] when We rescued and brought you all to safety from the followers of Pharaoh. They [consistently] forced upon you difficult tasks beyond your ability—an evil and disgraceful state of torture. They [consistently] massacred large numbers of your sons without mercy and disdainfully allowed to live your women. And in that was a great and distressing trial, testing your worth, from your nurturing Lord—educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority.

Notes:

The Arabic employs the present tense within a past-time framework to convey habitual, repeated, or continuous action



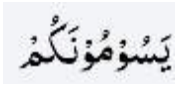
Root letters are connected to deliver, save, rescue and bring to safety

Rescued - saved from immediate danger or harm

Brought you to safety - ensured arrival at a secure and stable state



Root letters are connected to family, followers, relatives, kinsfolk, companions and people



Root letters are connected to imposing, forcing and demanding something beyond one’s power and ability

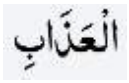


Noun indicating an established state

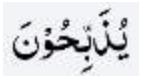
Root letters are connected to evil, torment, calamity, treating badly and an evilness of state or condition

Are connected to disadvantage, offense and sin

Are connected to disgrace and shame

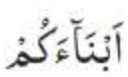


Root letters are connected to pain, torment, punishment and torture

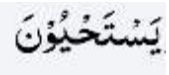


Root letters are connected to killing, slaughtering, and butchering

Are connected to killing in large numbers and doing so mercilessly



Root letters are connected to son and descendant



Root letters are connected to keeping alive and sparing

Are connected to disdain, looking down upon



Root letters are connected to trial, tribulation, affliction, bravery, gallantry, proving the worth of someone through tests and trials and a trial whereby one’s mettle is tried and tested



Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended



Root letters are connected to something which is great, magnificent, powerful, supreme and mighty

Are connected to something which painful, oppressive, distressing, terrible and grievous

Terrible - extremely fearful and severe

Distressing - causing emotional pain and anguish

وَإِذْ فَرَقْنَا بِكُمُ الْبَحْرَ فَأَنجَيْنَاكُمْ وَأَغْرَقْنَا آلَ فِرْعَوْنَ وَأَنتُمْ تَنظُرُونَ ﴿٥٠﴾

2:50

And [reflect on] when We parted for you all the sea—rescuing and bringing you to safety. And We overcame and drowned the followers of Pharaoh, while you were looking on in contemplation.

Notes:

فَرَقْنَا

Root letters are connected to separating, parting, dividing and severing

أَنجَيْنَاكُمْ

Root letters are connected to deliver, save, rescue and bring to safety

Rescued - saved from immediate danger or harm

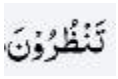
Brought you to safety - ensured arrival at a secure and stable state

وَأَغْرَقْنَا

Root letters are connected to overcoming, drowning and sinking



Root letters are connected to family, followers, relatives, kinsfolk, companions and people



Root letters are connected to looking, gazing, directing one’s attention, observing, contemplating, reflecting and examining

وَاِذۡ وٰعَدۡنَا مُوۡسٰۤی اَرۡبَعِیۡنَ لَیۡلَۃً ثُمَّ اتَّخَذۡتُمُ الۡعِجۡلَ مِنۡۢ بَعۡدِہٖ وَاَنۡتُمۡ ظٰلِمُوۡنَ ﴿۵۱﴾

2:51

And [reflect on] when We arranged for Musa forty nights [of worship in solitude]. Thereafter, you all hastily took and adhered to the calf [statue, as an object of worship[1]] from after him, while you were in a firmly established and persistent state of being unjust—transgressing proper limits.

Notes:

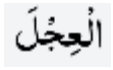
1 - Worshipping the statue of the calf is discussed in other verses e.g. Quran 20:88

وٰعَدۡنَا

Root letters are connected to making an arrangement and making an appointment

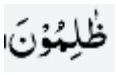
اتَّخَذۡتُمُ

Root letters are connected to taking firmly, gripping, seizing, occupying, adhering, adopting and making use



Root letters are connected to be in a hurry, to speed, rush, hasten and come quickly

Are connected to a calf



Noun indicating an entrenched and persistent behaviour

Root letters are connected to be unjust, act tyrannically, do wrong, do evil, harm, oppress and transgress proper limits

ثُمَّ عَفَوْنَا عَنكُم مِّن بَعْدِ ذَٰلِكَ لَعَلَّكُمْ تَشْكُرُونَ ﴿٥٢﴾

2:52

Thereafter, We overlooked [the sin], pardoned, and erased it from you all, even after that, so that you might show gratitude [by using your blessings in the obedience of Allah].

Notes:

عَفَوْنَا

Root letters are connected to wiping out, obliterating, forgiving, pardoning and overlooking

تَشْكُرُونَ

Root letters are connected to being thankful, grateful, and praising

Are connected to showing gratitude with the heart, tongue and limbs

وَاِذْ اٰتَيْنَا مُوْسَى الْكِتٰبَ وَالْفُرْقَانَ لَعَلَّكُمْ تَهْتَدُوْنَ ﴿٥٣﴾

2:53

And [reflect on] when We granted Musa the divine code of conduct [the Torah]—the Criterion—which clearly separates guidance from misguidance—so that you might seek and follow right guidance.

Notes:

The Arabic employs the present tense rhetorically to bring the scene into immediate view and, where applicable, to convey habitual or repeated action

اٰتَيْنَا

Root letters are connected to giving, granting and bestowing

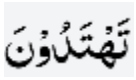
الْكِتٰبَ

Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document

الْفُرْقَانَ

Root letters are connected to making a separation, distinction between truth and falsehood, between lawful and unlawful, between good and evil and between right and wrong

Criterion - a standard or measure used to distinguish and judge between things



Root letters are connected to guidance, direction, seeking to be rightly guided and following right guidance

وَاِذْ قَالَ مُوْسٰى لِقَوْمِهٖ يٰقَوْمِ اِنَّكُمْ ظَلَمْتُمْ اَنْفُسَكُمْ بِاتِّخَاذِكُمُ
الْعِجْلَ فَتُوْبُوْٓا اِلٰى بَارِئِكُمْ فَاقْتُلُوْٓا اَنْفُسَكُمْ ؕ ذٰلِكُمْ خَيْرٌ لَّكُمْ عِنْدَ
بَارِئِكُمْ ؕ فَتَابَ عَلَيْكُمْ ؕ اِنَّهٗ هُوَ التَّوَّابُ الرَّحِيْمُ ﴿۵۴﴾

2:54

And [reflect on] when Musa declared to his people, “My people! Certainly, you have committed injustice to and amongst yourselves—transgressing proper limits—through your state of firmly taking and adhering to the calf [statue, as an object of worship]. Therefore, turn to your Maker in sincere repentance—abandoning sinful behaviour. Then kill from amongst yourselves [the guilty, thereby reducing the seriousness of your sin]. That is preferred and better for your well-being in the presence of your Maker.” Then He turned to you all with pardon and mercy. Certainly, He—He is the One whose enduring practice is firmly established in, and persists in, immediately and repeatedly accepting repentance, the One who, innately and eternally, especially grants constant mercy, kindness, and relief to those who earn it.

Notes:

قَالَ

Root letters are connected to saying, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

ظَلَمْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to be unjust, act tyrannically, do wrong, do evil, harm, oppress and transgress proper limits

اَنْفُسَكُمْ

Root letters are connected to soul, person, mind, human being and an individual

بِاتِّخَاذِكُمُ

Noun used to present the action as an established wrongdoing rather than a temporal action

Root letters are connected to taking firmly, occupying, adhering, adopting and making use

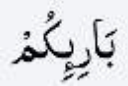
الْعِجْلَ

Root letters are connected to be in a hurry, to speed, rush, hasten and come quickly

Are connected to a calf

فَتُوْبُوْٓا

Root letters are connected to repenting, turning and renouncing disobedience and sins



Root letters are connected to making from preexisting parts i.e. humans from gametes



Root letters are connected to killing and murdering

Are connected to weakening the strength or intensity of something



A comparative

Root letters are connected to good, virtuous and generous

Are connected to choosing and preferring

Are connected to something better and superior

Are connected to a good state and well-being



Preposition – with, in the company of, in the presence of, in despite of, together and in the estimation



Root letters are connected to forgiveness, pardon and turning to someone

إِنَّهُۥ هُوَ التَّوَّابُ الرَّحِيمُ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

إِنَّهُۥ هُوَ

Pronoun “He” is used twice for added emphasis

التَّوَّابُ

Intense structure form has been used

Root letters are connected to repenting, turning and renouncing disobedience and sins

Are connected to forgiveness and turning to someone

الرَّحِيمُ

Intense structure form has been used

Root letters are connected to having mercy, compassion, sparing, letting off, saving, kindness, tenderness and pity

Intense structure form has been used

Specific mercy for those who deserve and earn it

Mercy – withholds punishment from those who deserve it

Kindness – a broader act of granting blessings

وَاِذْ قُلْتُمْ يٰمُوْسٰى لَنْ نُّؤْمِنَ لَكَ حَتّٰى نَرَى اللّٰهَ جَهْرَةً فَاَخَذَتْكُمُ الصّٰعِقَةُ وَاَنْتُمْ تَنْظُرُوْنَ ﴿٥٥﴾

2:55

And [reflect on] when you all [arrogantly] declared, "Musa! We will not believe in you [as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind] until we see Allah openly and clearly." Then the thunderbolt seized you as punishment while you were looking on.

Notes:

قُلْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to saying, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

نُّؤْمِنَ

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

نَرَى

Root letters are connected to seeing, perceiving, discerning and considering

جَهْرَةً

Root letters are connected to something open, public, overt, frank, plain, manifest and apparent

Openly - without concealment; in a visible, unobstructed manner

Clearly - with full clarity; without confusion, blur, or ambiguity

فَأَخَذَتْكُمُ

Root letters are connected to seizing, punishing, blaming and censuring

الصَّعِقَةُ

Root letters are connected to lightning, thunderbolt and thunderclap

تَنْظُرُونَ

Root letters are connected to looking, gazing, observing, contemplating, reflecting and examining

ثُمَّ بَعَثْنٰكُمْ مِّنْۢ بَعْدِ مَوْتِكُمْ لَعَلَّكُمْ تَشْكُرُوْنَ ﴿٥٦﴾

2:56

Thereafter, We resurrected you all after your physical [and spiritual[1]] death, so that you might show gratitude [by using your blessings in the obedience of Allah].

Notes:

1 – The physical resurrection was also a means of a spiritual awakening of their faithlessness discussed in the previous verse – Quran 2:55

بَعَثْنٰكُمْ

Root letters are connected to being revived, resurrected and awakened

مَوْتِكُمْ

Root letters are connected to being dead, perishing and lifeless

Are connected to a spiritual death e.g. Quran 30:52

تَشْكُرُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to being thankful, grateful, and praising

Are connected to showing gratitude with the heart, tongue and limbs

وَظَلَّلْنَا عَلَيْكُمُ الْغَمَامَ وَاَنْزَلْنَا عَلَيْكُمُ الْمَنَّ وَالسَّلْوٰى ؕ كُلُوْا مِنْ
طَيِّبٰتِ مَا رَزَقْنٰكُمْ ؕ وَمَا ظَلَمُوْنَا وَلٰكِنْ كَانُوْۤا اَنْفُسَهُمْ يَظْلِمُوْنَ ﴿۵۷﴾

2:57

And [reflect on when] We shaded you all with a large cloud as protection and comfort, and We granted you hospitality: mushroom and delightful quail—gracious blessings. “Eat and utilise from the lawful, healthy, and pleasant provision We have provided for you [materially and spiritually] as a means of living.” They were not unjust to Us; however, it was to and amongst themselves they were persisting in committing injustice—transgressing proper limits.

Notes:

ظَلَّلْنَا

Root letters are connected to a shadow, protection and shade

Are connected to pleasant shade

الْغَمَامِ

Singular indicating a continuous mass of cloud

Root letters are connected to clouds, hail and white clouds

Are connected to concealing, covering, veiling and overcast

وَاَنْزَلْنَا

Root letters are connected to sending down, causing to descend, to bestow and grant

Are connected to providing hospitality and accommodating

الْمَنَّ

Root letters are connected being gracious, being kind and grant a favour or a blessing

According to the narration in Sahih Bukhari, number 5708, it is like a type of mushroom

السَّلْوٰى

Quail – different types of bird

Root letters are connected to delighting, taking pleasure, having a good time and amusement

كُلُوْا

Root letters are connected to eat, swallow, consume, to enjoy and make use of

طَيِّبٰتِ

Root letters are connected to something good, pleasant, agreeable, healthy, delightful, delicious and lawful

رَزَقْنٰكُمْ

Root letters are connected to means of survival and living, to bestow, to nourish, to provide provision, grant material or spiritual provision, and derive benefit from something

Material provision – worldly things e.g. food, shelter and clothing

Spiritual provision – inward qualities e.g. wisdom, knowledge, peace and inner strength

ظَلَمُوْنَا and يَظْلِمُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to be unjust, act tyrannically, do wrong, do evil, harm, oppress and transgress proper limits

كَانُوْٓا اَنْفُسَهُمْ يَظْلِمُوْنَ

Structure indicates repetitive action

Structure shows emphasis

كَانُوْٓا

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

اَنْفُسَهُمْ

Root letters are connected to soul, person, mind, human being and an individual

وَاِذْ قُلْنَا ادْخُلُوْا هٰذِهِ الْقَرْيَةَ فَكُلُوْا مِنْهَا حَيْثُ شِئْتُمْ رَغَدًا
وَّادْخُلُوا الْبَابَ سُجَّدًا وَّقُوْلُوْا حِطَّةٌ نَّغْفِرْ لَكُمْ خَطٰيٰكُمْ ؕ وَسَنَزِيْدُ
الْمُحْسِنِيْنَ ﴿٥٨﴾

2:58

And [reflect on] when We declared, "Enter and take possession—all of you—of this town. Then eat from and utilise it from wherever you have wished, in ease, comfort, and affluence. And enter the [town's] entrance in a [firmly established and persistent] state of humbly submitting [to Allah], and declare words of repentance that will remove your burden of sins—We will conceal, forgive, and correct, for your benefit, your actions that deviate from right guidance. And We will raise [in rank] and give more [reward] to those who are firmly established in, and persist in, showing excellent conduct [towards Allah and people]—leading to a good state."

Notes:

قُلْنَا and وَّقُوْلُوْا

Root letters are connected to saying, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

ادْخُلُوْا

Root letters are connected to entering, taking possession and making one’s own

الْقَرْيَةَ

Root letters are connected to village, small town, town and rural community

كُلُوْا

Root letters are connected to eat, swallow, consume, to enjoy and make use of

شِئْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to wanting, willing and wishing

رَغَدًا

Root letters are connected to comfort, carefree, amble means and living in ease and affluence

Ease - absence of difficulty, strain, or hardship

Comfort - feeling of physical/mental ease, satisfaction, and settled well-being

Affluence - abundance and availability

الْبَابَ

Root letters are connected to a door, entrance, gate and opening



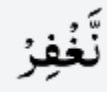
Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to bowing down, prostrating, bending down, being humble, submissive, honouring and paying respect



Root letters are connected to putting down, setting down and taking down a load

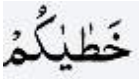
Are connected to a petition for the removal of a heavy burden and for the removal of the burden of sins



Root letters are connected to covering, concealing, veiling and hiding

Are connected to forgiving and pardoning

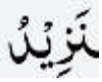
Are connected to correcting and rectifying affairs



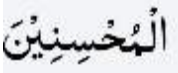
Root letters are connected to committing an error, a mistake, a wrong, disobedience

Are connected to missing the mark and deviating

Are connected to committing a fault in religion



Root letters are connected to growing, increasing, multiplying, giving more, making additions, raising, expanding and intensifying



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being excellent, good, nice and lovely

Are connected to suitable, be in a proper state and in a desirable condition

فَبَدَّلَ الَّذِيْنَ ظَلَمُوْا قَوْلًا غَيْرَ الَّذِىْ قِيْلَ لَهُمْ فَاَنْزَلْنَا عَلَى الَّذِيْنَ
ظَلَمُوْا رِجْزًا مِّنَ السَّمَآءِ بِمَا كَانُوْا يَفْسُقُوْنَ ﴿٥٩﴾

2:59

Yet those who were unjust—transgressing proper limits—replaced it [the declaration of repentance] with a statement other than what was stated to them. Therefore, We sent down to befall those who were unjust, a degrading, surging plague from the lofty sky because they were persisting in openly transgressing the limits of goodness.

Notes:

بَدَّلَ

Root letters are connected to changing, replacing, altering, exchanging and substituting

ظَلَمُوْا

Root letters are connected to be unjust, act tyrannically, do wrong, do evil, harm, oppress and transgress proper limits

قَوْلاً and قِيْلَ

Root letters are connected to a word, speech, saying, remark, statement and declaration

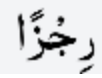
Are connected to saying, stating, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging



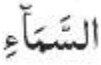
Root letters are connected to sending down and causing to descend

Are connected to befall, to hit, attack and assault

Are connected to abasing and degrading

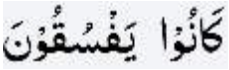


Root letters are connected to surging, punishment, filth, disease and plague



Root letters are connected to sky, heaven and ceiling

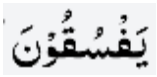
Are connected to raised, elevated, high, lofty and tall



Structure indicates repetitive action



Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place



Root letters are connected to straying from right course, deviating, sinful, immoral and transgressing the limits of the law

Are connected to emerging outwardly and openly

وَإِذِ اسْتَسْقٰى مُوْسٰى لِقَوْمِهٖ فَقُلْنَا اضْرِبْ بِّعَصَاكَ الْحَجَرَ ؕ فَانْفَجَرَتْ
مِنْهُ اثْنَتَا عَشْرَةَ عَيْنًا ؕ قَدْ عَلِمَ كُلُّ اُنَاسٍ مَّشْرَبَهُمْ ؕ كُلُوْا وَاشْرَبُوْا
مِنْ رِّزْقِ اللّٰهِ وَلَا تَعْثَوْا فِي الْاَرْضِ مُفْسِدِيْنَ ﴿٦٠﴾

2:60

And [reflect on] when Musa supplicated for water on behalf of his people. Then We replied, "Strike with your staff the stone." Then twelve springs [of water] burst forth from it. Certainly, each distinct group clearly recognised, knew, and understood their place and time of drinking. "Eat and utilise, and drink from the provision of Allah as a means of living, and do not act wrongfully in the Earth in a firmly established and persistent state of causing and spreading corruption and disorder—depriving it of goodness.

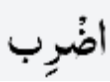
Notes:

اسْتَسْقَىٰ

Root letters are connected to asking, seeking and praying for water or rain

فَقُلْنَا

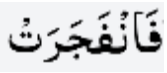
Root letters are connected to saying, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging



Root letters are connected to beating, hitting and striking



Root letters are connected to a staff, rod, stick, walking stick and cane



Root letters are connected to bursting forth, exploding and overflowing



Root letters are connected to source of water, springs of water, fountainhead of water and running spring



Used for emphasis with past tense action i.e. certainly



Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

مَّشۡرَبَهُمۡ and وَاشۡرَبُوۡا

Refers to circumstance i.e. time and place

Root letters are connected to drinking

كُلُوۡا

Root letters are connected to eat, swallow, consume, to enjoy and make use of

رِّزۡقِ

Root letters are connected to means of survival and living, to bestow, to nourish, to provide provision, grant material or spiritual provision, and derive benefit from something

تَعۡثَوۡا

Root letters are connected to act wickedly, do harm, be unjust and cause corruption excessively

مُفۡسِدِيۡنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to spoiling, corruption, causing disorder, rebellion, spreading discord, hostility, trouble and depriving of virtue

Corrupt - moral/ethical degradation

Disordered - structural/functional breakdown

Devoid of good - absence of benefit or blessing

وَاِذْ قُلْتُمْ يٰمُوْسٰى لَنْ نَّصْبِرَ عَلٰى طَعَامٍ وَّاحِدٍ فَادْعُ لَنَا رَبَّكَ يُخْرِجْ
لَنَا مِمَّا تُنْۢبِتُ الْاَرْضُ مِنْۢ بَقْلِهَا وَقِثَّآئِهَا وَفُوْمِهَا وَعَدَسِهَا وَبَصَلِهَا ؕ
قَالَ اَتَسْتَبْدِلُوْنَ الَّذِىْ هُوَ اَدْنٰى بِالَّذِىْ هُوَ خَيْرٌ ؕ اِهْبِطُوْا مِصْرًا فَاِنَّ
لَكُمْ مَّا سَاَلْتُمْ ؕ وَضُرِبَتْ عَلَيْهِمُ الذِّلَّةُ وَالْمَسْكَنَةُ ۗ وَبَآءُوْ بِغَضَبٍ
مِّنَ اللّٰهِ ؕ ذٰلِكَ بِاَنَّهُمْ كَانُوْا يَكْفُرُوْنَ بِاٰيٰتِ اللّٰهِ وَيَقْتُلُوْنَ النَّبِيّٖنَ
بِغَيْرِ الْحَقِّ ؕ ذٰلِكَ بِمَا عَصَوْا وَّكَانُوْا يَعْتَدُوْنَ ﴿٦١﴾

2:61

And [reflect on] when you all declared, “Musa! We will not endure a single type of meal [of mushroom and quail[1]] any longer. Therefore, supplicate on our behalf to your nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority] to produce and bring forth, for our benefit, from what the Earth causes to grow, such as herbs, cucumbers, garlic, lentils, and onions.” He [astonishingly] questioned, “Do you seek to obtain what is inferior in exchange for what is more preferred and better for your well-being? Descend, at a loss, to any city; certainly then you will have what you demanded,”—weakness, humiliation, and subjugation, together with spiritual and material poverty, were imposed upon them—an evil state. And they arrogantly drew upon themselves wrath from Allah. That was because they were persisting in neglecting, dissociating from, and denying the miraculous and evident signs of Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them]; and were persisting in

opposing, fighting, and murdering the honoured Prophets—who conveyed divine knowledge from Allah—without any justification [aiming to weaken the strength of divine guidance]. That was due to them stubbornly abandoning obedience [to Allah] and persisting in exceeding proper bounds through hostility and aggression.

Notes:

1 - Single type of meal of mushroom and quail is mentioned in Quran 2:57

قُلْتُمْ and قَالَ

Root letters are connected to saying, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

نَّصْبِرَ

Root letters are connected to being patient, persevering and enduring

طَعَامٍ

Root letters are connected to food, meal and diet

وَّاحِدٍ

Root letters are connected to one and single



Root letters are connected to calling, calling upon, appealing and implore



Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

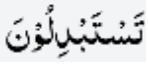
Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended



Root letters are connected to bringing out, pulling out and producing



Root letters are connected to causing to grow, to nurture and to grow



Root letters are connected to changing, altering, exchanging, substituting and receive in exchange

اَدْنٰى

A comparative

Root letters are connected to being low

خَيْرٌ

A comparative

Root letters are connected to good, virtuous and generous

Are connected to choosing and preferring

Are connected to something better and superior

Are connected to a good state and well-being

اِهْبِطُوْا

Root letters are connected to descending, coming down and falling down

Are connected to suffering loss and a reduction in state and position

مِصْرًا

In common form i.e. any city

سَاَلْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to asking, requesting and demanding

ضُرِبَتْ

Root letters are connected to striking, hitting and imposing

الذِّلَّةُ

Root letters are connected to being lowly, submissive, subdued, conquered, despised, disgraced, humiliated and weak

Subjugation - external control

Weakness - internal incapacity

Humiliation - loss of dignity and status

الْمَسْكَنَةُ

Root letters are connected to abasement, poverty, destitution, evil state/condition, poverty of the mind, and lowliness

وَبَآءُو

Root letters are connected to taking upon oneself, bearing the burden, drawing upon oneself and brining in

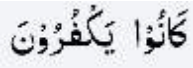
Are connected to being proud and arrogant

بِغَضَبٍ مِّنَ اللّٰهِ

Indicates source and origin, not possession; “wrath from Allah” emphasizes a manifestation sent upon them rather than defining wrath as an abstract attribute



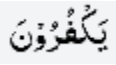
Root letters are connected to being angry, irritated, furious and wrath



Structure indicates repetitive action



Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place



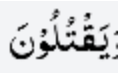
Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty



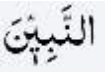
Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof



Root letters are connected to killing and murdering

Are connected to fighting, battling, opposing, and combat

Are connected to weakening the strength or intensity of something



Root letters are connected to informing, notifying, advising telling and announcing

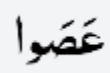
Are connected to being high in rank, raised, elevated and prominent

Are connected to someone who receives unseen knowledge from Allah and conveys them to people



Root letters are connected to what is right, correct, proper, suitable, fitting and purposeful

Are connected to being deserving, to be due and to have a claim

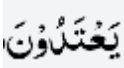


Root letters are connected to disobeying, defying, renouncing obedience and rebelling

Are connected to becoming difficult and stubborn



Structure indicates repetitive action



Root letters are connected to hostility, violating, aggression, exceeding proper bounds and transgressing

Are connected to treating like an enemy

Hostility - inner attitude of enmity

Aggression - outward expression through harmful action

إِنَّ الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا وَالَّذِينَ هَادُوا وَالنَّصَارَىٰ وَالصَّابِئِينَ مَنْ آمَنَ بِاللَّهِ
وَالْيَوْمِ الْآخِرِ وَعَمِلَ صَالِحًا فَلَهُمْ أَجْرُهُمْ عِنْدَ رَبِّهِمْ وَلَا خَوْفٌ
عَلَيْهِمْ وَلَا هُمْ يَحْزَنُونَ ﴿٦٢﴾

2:62

Certainly, those who have believed, and those who are Jews, Christians, and who have renounced the religion of their people for another faith—whoever [from amongst them] has believed in Allah and the Last Momentous Day, as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith: having strived to be firmly established in, and persist in, righteous conduct—for them [such people alone] is the reward of their efforts in the presence of their nurturing Lord—educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority: spiritual well-being and peace of mind. And fear of the future will not dominate them, and they—they [in particular] will not grieve or mourn over the past.[1]

Notes:

1 - The one who adheres to divine guidance may feel fear but will not be dominated by it; they may feel sadness but will not fall into grief and despair

آمَنُوا and آمَنَ

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

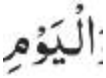
Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit



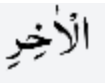
Root letters are connected to someone who departs from the religion of their people/tribe/clan to another religion

The Prophet Muhammad, peace and blessings be upon him, was called this as he did not follow the religion of his people and instead advocated Islam. This has been recorded in Imam Ibn Kathir's, the Life of the Prophet, Volume 1, Page 335



Root letters are connected to days, age, era and time

Are connected to momentous and important days



Root letters are connected to something that is last, ultimate, end, utmost and extreme

The Last Momentous Day refers to the Day of Judgement as eternity begins after that

عَمِلَ

Root letters are connected to working, doing, striving to accomplish, and acting

Are connected to working with effort and difficulty, taking pains, exerting effort and laboring

صَالِحًا

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being good, just, being in order, being righteous and pious and to do appropriate things

لَّهُمْ اَجْرُهُمْ عِنْدَ رَبِّهِمْ

Structure shows exclusivity and entitlement to reward

اَجْرُهُمْ

Root letters are connected to reward, recompense and wages for work done

عِنْدَ

Preposition – with, in the company of, in despite of, together and in the estimation



Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

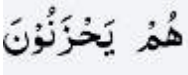
Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

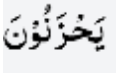
Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended



Root letters are connected to being frightened and scared of a future event



Pronoun “they” is used twice for added emphasis



Root letters are connected to being sad, grieving and mourning over something in the past

Grieve - deep internal sorrow

Mourn - outward expression of sorrow

وَإِذْ أَخَذْنَا مِيثَاقَكُمْ وَرَفَعْنَا فَوْقَكُمُ الطُّورَ خُذُوا مَا آتَيْنَاكُمْ بِقُوَّةٍ
وَاذْكُرُوا مَا فِيهِ لَعَلَّكُمْ تَتَّقُونَ ﴿٦٣﴾

2:63

And [reflect on] when We accepted from you all your firmly established pledge [of obeying Us], and We raised above you the mountain[1] [thereby encouraging you to fulfil it], "Firmly take and adhere to what We have granted you [of divine guidance] with strength, courage, and determination: studying, reflecting on, and being mindful of what is in it, so that you may devoutly fulfil your duties—thereby protecting yourselves from harm and arranging all your matters correctly."

Notes:

1 - The mountain was raised above them to encourage them to fulfil their pledge to Allah, the Exalted, after they had accepted it, not to force them to accept it in the first place

أَخَذْنَا and خُذُوا

Root letters are connected to accepting, taking, obtaining and seizing

Are connected to taking firmly, gripping, seizing, occupying, adhering, adopting and making use

مِيثَاقَكُمْ

Root letters are connected to a covenant, agreement, pledge and pact

Are connected to firmly establishing, to tie, to fasten and bind

رَفَعْنَا

Root letters are connected to raising, elevating and lifting

فَوْقَكُمُ

Preposition – above

اٰتَيْنٰكُمْ

Root letters are connected to giving, granting and bestowing

بِقُوَّةٍ

Root letters are connected to strength, vigor, potency, power, force, firmness, resolution, determination and courage

Strength - internal capacity and stability

Courage - action in the face of challenge

Determination - continuation over time

اذْكُرُوْا

Root letters are connected to bearing in mind, thinking, recalling, remembering, studying and reflecting

Study - acquiring knowledge

Reflect on - internalising and processing it

Be mindful - continuous awareness and application of it

تَتَّقُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious

ثُمَّ تَوَلَّيْتُمْ مِّنْۢ بَعْدِ ذٰلِكَ ۚ فَلَوْلَا فَضْلُ اللّٰهِ عَلَيْكُمْ وَرَحْمَتُهٗ

لَكُنْتُمْ مِّنَ الْخٰسِرِيْنَ ﴿٦٤﴾

2:64

Thereafter, you all refrained and turned away even after that. Then had it not been for the kindness and favour of Allah upon you, and His mercy and relief, you would have certainly existed from amongst those who are firmly established in, and persist in, being misguided losers—heading toward destruction.

Notes:

تَوَلَّيْتُمْ

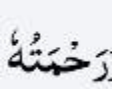
Root letters are connected to turning, turning away, turning back, fleeing, desisting, refraining and forgoing

فَضْلُ

Root letters are connected to grace, favour, kindness, graciousness, grace and bounty

Kindness - the manner of Allah's dealing (gentle, merciful approach)

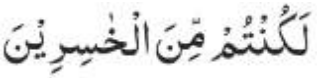
Favour - the substance of what is given (blessings, help, protection)



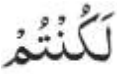
Root letters are connected to having mercy, compassion, sparing, letting off, saving, kindness, tenderness and pity

Mercy – withholds punishment from those who deserve it

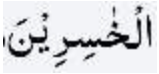
Kindness – a broader act of granting blessings



Structure indicates an established state



Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to losing, getting lost and perishing

وَلَقَدْ عَلِمْتُمُ الَّذِيْنَ اعْتَدَوْا مِنْكُمْ فِي السَّبْتِ فَقُلْنَا لَهُمْ كُوْنُوْا قِرَدَةً خٰسِـِٕيْنَ ﴿٦٥﴾

2:65

And there is absolutely no doubt that you all have known and understood those who exceeded proper bounds, from amongst you [your ancestors], concerning the Sabbath—a day of rest and refraining from work. Then We declared to them, "Be and exist as humiliated apes [in appearance and manner] in a [firmly established and persistent] state of divine displeasure, shame, and rejection [from My mercy]."

Notes:

لَقَدْ

لَ added for emphasis

قَدْ Used for emphasis with past tense action i.e. certainly

عَلِمْتُمُ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

اعْتَدَوْا

Root letters are connected to hostility, violating, aggression, exceeding proper bounds and transgressing

Are connected to treating like an enemy

السَّبْتِ

Root letters are connected to resting, being idle, a holiday and refraining from work

نَقُلْنَا

Root letters are connected to saying, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

كُونُوا

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

Are connected to being lowly, miserable and abased

قِرَدَةً

Root letters are connected to becoming abject, spoiled, devilish

Are connected to monkeys and apes



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being chased away, driven away, rejected, an outcast, despised, hated and shameful

Displeasure - inner stance directed toward them (divine displeasure)

Shame - visible condition (humiliation and dishonour)

Rejection - final outcome (being distanced from mercy)

فَجَعَلْنٰهَا نَكَالًا لِّمَا بَيْنَ يَدَيْهَا وَمَا خَلْفَهَا وَمَوْعِظَةً لِّلْمُتَّقِيْنَ ٦٦

2:66

Then We appointed and established them [the apes] as a deterrent punishment—a lesson for whatever existed in their presence and for whatever came after them[1], and a spiritual counsel appealing to conscience and a warning of negative consequences, for those who are firmly established in, and persist in, devoutly fulfilling their duties—thereby protecting themselves from harm and arranging all their matters correctly.

Notes:

1 - The deterrent punishment is a lesson for entire cities, historical societies, surrounding towns, architectural settlements, and future civilisations

جَعَلْنٰهَا

Root letters are connected to placing, setting, inserting, making, preparing, fixing and appointing

نَكٰلًا

Root letters are connected to a deterrent, exemplary punishment, drive back, hold off, warning example and teach a lesson

بَيْنَ يَدَيْهَا

Term refers to something in front, before and in the presence of

خَلْفَهَا

Root letters are connected to successors and after

مَوْعِظَةٌ

Root letters are connected to preaching, admonishing and warning

Are connected to spiritual counsel, religious advice and a reminder of consequences

Spiritual counsel - inward moral guidance

Warning - outward consequence alert

لِّلْمُتَّقِينَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious

وَاِذْ قَالَ مُوْسٰى لِقَوْمِهٖٓ اِنَّ اللّٰهَ يَاْمُرُكُمْ اَنْ تَذْبَحُوْا بَقَرَةً ۭ قَالُوْٓا

اَتَتَّخِذُنَا هُزُوًا ۭ قَالَ اَعُوْذُ بِاللّٰهِ اَنْ اَكُوْنَ مِنَ الْجٰهِلِيْنَ ۝٦٧

2:67

And [reflect on] when Musa declared to his people, "Certainly, Allah commands you all to sacrifice[1] any cow." They [rudely] replied, "Are you taking us as an object of ridicule and disdain?" He replied [forbearingly], "I seek protection and preservation with Allah that I become and exist from amongst those who are [firmly established in, and persist in,] behaving ignorantly."

Notes:

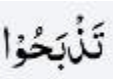
1 - Sacrifice instead of slaughter is used as this was also a symbolic act of purging their attachment to the golden calf statue and the disobedience to Allah, the Exalted, that it represented

قَالَ

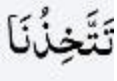
Root letters are connected to saying, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

يَاْمُرُكُمْ

Root letters are connected to ordering, commanding, instructing and entrusting



Root letters are connected to killing, slaughtering and sacrificing



Root letters are connected to taking, perceiving, obtaining and seizing



Root letters connected to mocking, disdaining, deriding, laughing at and making an object of ridicule

Ridicule - making jokes, laughing, and actively mocking others

Disdain - feeling superior and believing others are beneath them



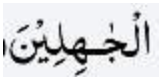
Root letters are connected to seek protection, seeking preservation, take refuge and place trust in someone for protection

Protection - being shielded from harm, danger, or wrongdoing

Preservation - being kept safe, maintained, and prevented from corruption or loss



Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being ignorant, irrational and behaving foolishly

Are connected to uninhibited and unrestrained in behaviour

قَالُوا ادْعُ لَنَا رَبَّكَ يُبَيِّنْ لَّنَا مَا هِيَ ۭ قَالَ اِنَّهٗ يَقُوْلُ اِنَّهَا بَقَرَةٌ لَّا

فَارِضٌ وَّلَا بِكْرٌ ۭ عَوَانٌۢ بَيْنَ ذٰلِكَ ۭ فَافْعَلُوْا مَا تُؤْمَرُوْنَ ۝٦٨

2:68

They said [demandingly], "Supplicate, on our behalf, your nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority] to clearly explain for our benefit what it is." He replied, "No doubt, He responds that it is certainly a cow that is neither old, weak nor too large, and neither a virgin nor young—[rather,] middle-aged, in between that. Then accomplish what you have been instructed and entrusted with."

Notes:

By asking foolish questions, they only made their task harder for themselves

قَالُوا , قَالَ and يَقُوْلُ

Root letters are connected to saying, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

ادْعُ

Root letters are connected to calling, calling upon, appealing and implore



Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

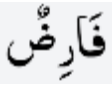
Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended



Root letters are connected to making clear, showing, explaining, differentiating and distinguishing



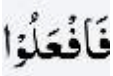
Root letters are connected to a cow – old, fat, large, weak, bulky, advanced and aged



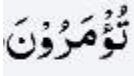
Root letters are connected to a virgin cow and a young cow



Root letters are connected to middle aged



Root letters are connected to doing an action, activity and accomplishing a task



Root letters are connected to ordering, commanding, instructing, charging and entrusting

قَالُوا ادْعُ لَنَا رَبَّكَ يُبَيِّنْ لَّنَا مَا لَوْنُهَا ۭ قَالَ اِنَّهٗ يَقُوْلُ اِنَّهَا بَقَرَةٌ
صَفْرَاۗءُ ۙ فَاقِعٌ لَّوْنُهَا تَسُرُّ النّٰظِرِيْنَ ۝٦٩

2:69

They said [stubbornly persisting], “Supplicate, on our behalf, your nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority] to clearly explain for our benefit its external appearance.” He replied, “No doubt, He responds that it is certainly a bright yellow cow. Its colour is [established as] pure, vivid, and beautifully clear—pleasing to those who [continue to] look at and examine it.”

Notes:

By persisting on asking foolish questions, they only made their task harder for themselves

قَالُوا , قَالَ and يَقُوْلُ

Root letters are connected to saying, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

ادْعُ

Root letters are connected to calling, calling upon, appealing and implore



Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended



Root letters are connected to making clear, showing, explaining, differentiating and distinguishing



Root letters are connected to colour, tint, tinge, hue, shape and external form



Root letters are connected to yellow colour

فَاقِعٌ

Root letters are connected to bright, intense, brilliant, vivid, pure, free from admixture, intense, beautiful and clear in colour

Bright - visually strong and highly noticeable in lightness and intensity

Pure - unmixed, free from dullness or blending with other shades

Vivid - deeply saturated and strongly expressed in colour

Beautifully clear - strikingly distinct and sharply defined to the eye

تَسُرُّ

Root letters are connected to make happy, gladden, cheer, take pleasure and satisfy

النّٰظِرِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to looking, gazing, observing, contemplating, reflecting and examining

قَالُوا ادْعُ لَنَا رَبَّكَ يُبَيِّنْ لَّنَا مَا هِيَ ۚ إِنَّ الْبَقَرَ تَشٰبَهَ عَلَيْنَا ۗ وَإِنَّآ إِنْ شَآءَ اللّٰهُ لَمُهْتَدُوْنَ ۝٧٠

2:70

They said [stubbornly persisting], "Supplicate, on our behalf, your nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority] to clearly explain for our benefit what it is, for certainly cows appear similar to one another to us—causing confusion. And certainly we, if Allah willed, will no doubt be [firmly established in, and persisting in,] seeking and following right guidance."

Notes:

By persisting on asking foolish questions, they only made their task harder for themselves

قَالُوا

Root letters are connected to saying, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

ادْعُ

Root letters are connected to calling, calling upon, appealing and implore

رَبَّكَ

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

يُبَيِّنُ

Root letters are connected to making clear, showing, explaining, differentiating and distinguishing

تَشٰبَهَ

Root letters are connected to things which are similar, resemble each other and causes confusion

شَآءَ

Root letters are connected to wanting, willing and wishing

لَمُهْتَدُوْنَ

لَ at the beginning adds emphasis

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to guidance, direction, seeking to be rightly guided and following right guidance

قَالَ اِنَّهٗ يَقُوْلُ اِنَّهَا بَقَرَةٌ لَّا ذَلُوْلٌ تُثِيْرُ الْاَرْضَ وَلَا تَسْقِى الْحَرْثَ ۚ
مُسَلَّمَةٌ لَّا شِيَةَ فِيْهَا ۗ قَالُوا الْـٰٔنَ جِئْتَ بِالْحَقِّ ۗ فَذَبَحُوْهَا وَمَا كَادُوْا
يَفْعَلُوْنَ ﴿٧١﴾

2:71

He replied, “No doubt, He responds that it is certainly a cow neither tamed nor trained for tilling the land nor for irrigating cultivated soil. Physically sound and unblemished—absolutely no defects in it.” They [finally] replied, “Now you have set forth the truth.” Then they sacrificed[1] it, even though they were on the verge of not accomplishing it.

Notes:

By persisting on asking foolish questions, they only made their task harder for themselves

1 - Sacrifice instead of slaughter is used as this was also a symbolic act of purging their attachment to the golden calf statue and the disobedience to Allah, the Exalted, that it represented

قَالُوا , قَالَ and يَقُوْلُ

Root letters are connected to saying, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

ذَلُوْلٌ

Root letters are connected to humbled, subdued, subjected and submissive

Are connected to being well-trained

تُثِيْرُ

Root letters are connected to arouse, stir up and to put into action

Are connected to ploughing, tilling the land and cultivate land by ploughing and sowing

تَسْقِي

Root letters are connected to providing water, irrigating and giving drink

الْحَـرْثَ

Root letters are connected to tillage, land for agriculture, cultivated ground, cultivating of the soil, arable land and land ploughed for sowing

مُسَلَّمَةٌ

Root letters are connected to being safe and sound, unharmed, faultless, unimpaired, undamaged and unblemished



Structure indicates absolute negation

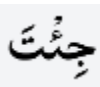


Root letters are connected to embroidery with different colors and eloquence

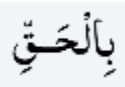
Are connected to blotch, spot, blemish, flaw, fault and defect



Can carry a sarcastic tone



Root letters are connected to come, produce, confront, set forth and reaching

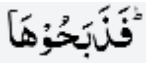


Root letters are connected to what is right, correct, true, proper, suitable, fitting and purposeful

Correct - accurate and right

Appropriate - properly fitting

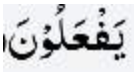
Purposeful - meaningful and intentional



Root letters are connected to killing, slaughtering and sacrificing



Root letters are connected to almost, on the verge or near to doing something



Root letters are connected to doing an action, activity and accomplishing a task

وَاِذْ قَتَلْتُمْ نَفْسًا فَادّٰرَءْتُمْ فِيْهَا ۗ وَاللّٰهُ مُخْرِجٌ مَّا كُنْتُمْ تَكْتُمُوْنَ ۝٧٢

2:72

And [reflect on] when you all killed a person, then you argued concerning them—deflecting [the act] from yourselves onto one another. And Allah is the One whose enduring practice is firmly established in, and persists in, bringing out into the open whatever you have persisted in withholding, subduing, or concealing.

Notes:

قَتَلْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to killing and murdering

نَفْسًا

Root letters are connected to soul, person, mind, human being and an individual

فَادّٰرَءْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to averting, arguing, preventing, deflecting, defending, repelling one another in altercation and pushing one another back in a quarrel

وَاللَّهُ مُخْرِجٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

مُخْرِجٌ

Noun indicating permeance and an inherent attribute

Root letters are connected to bringing out, pulling out, producing, making public and bring out into the open

كُنْتُمْ تَكْتُمُونَ

Structure indicates repetitive action

كُنْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

تَكْتُمُونَ

Root words are connected to hiding, subduing, curbing, suppressing, repressing, concealing, making secret and to withhold

Withhold - to hold back or not disclose

Subdue - to suppress, weaken, or keep under control

Conceal - to hide completely from view or knowledge

فَقُلْنَا اضْرِبُوْهُ بِبَعْضِهَا ۭ كَذٰلِكَ يُحْيِ اللّٰهُ الْمَوْتٰى ۙ وَيُرِيْكُمْ اٰيٰتِهٖ

لَعَلَّكُمْ تَعْقِلُوْنَ ۝٧٣

2:73

Then We declared, "Strike him [the dead person[1]] with a part of it [the sacrificed cow]." In that way, Allah gives new life to the dead, and He demonstrates to you all His miraculous and evident signs for reflection so that you may use your faculties correctly—applying reason and common sense—in order to understand.

Notes:

1 - They were commanded to strike the dead person with a part of the sacrificed cow discussed in earlier verses - Quran 2:67-71

فَقُلْنَا

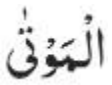
Root letters are connected to saying, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

اضْرِبُوْهُ

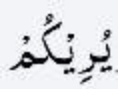
Root letters are connected to striking, hitting and beating



Root letters are connected to giving life, call into existence, reviving, reanimating and giving new life



Root letters are connected to dying, perishing, losing life and subsiding



Root letters are connected to seeing and perceiving

Are connected to showing, demonstrating and pointing out

Are connected to reflecting, contemplating and considering



Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof



Root letters are connected to being reasonable, using intelligence, using common sense, using one’s senses and understanding

Reason - structured, analytical thinking

Common sense - intuitive, practical application

ثُمَّ قَسَتْ قُلُوْبُكُمْ مِّنْۢ بَعْدِ ذٰلِكَ فَهِيَ كَالْحِجَارَةِ اَوْ اَشَدُّ قَسْوَةً ؕ وَاِنَّ
مِنَ الْحِجَارَةِ لَمَا يَتَفَجَّرُ مِنْهُ الْاَنْهٰرُ ؕ وَاِنَّ مِنْهَا لَمَا يَشَّقَّقُ فَيَخْرُجُ
مِنْهُ الْمَآءُ ؕ وَاِنَّ مِنْهَا لَمَا يَهْبِطُ مِنْ خَشْيَةِ اللّٰهِ ؕ وَمَا اللّٰهُ بِغَافِلٍ عَمَّا
تَعْمَلُوْنَ ﴿۷۴﴾

2:74

Thereafter, your spiritual hearts became stubborn, unyielding, and hard, even after that. Then they became like stones, or even more severe in hardness. Yet certainly, from amongst stones are those from which streams and rivers flowing abundantly burst out. And certainly from amongst them are those which narrowly crack open with difficulty, then water emerges therefrom. And certainly from amongst them are those which fall down out of fear of and deep reverence for Allah. And Allah is never—at any time or in any state—the One who is unmindful or disregarding of whatever you do.

Notes:

قَسَتْ and قَسْوَةً

Root letters are connected to being harsh, hard, difficult, stubborn, unyielding, barren and stern

Stubborn → refusal to accept truth

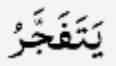
Unyielding → resistance to influence or correction

Hard → final state of emotional/spiritual rigidity



A comparative

Root letters are connected to becoming firm, solid, hard, strong and harsh



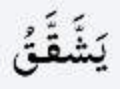
Root letters are connected to bursting forth, breaking out, erupting and bursting out



Root letters are connected to flowing copiously and gushing forth

Are connected to river and stream

Are connected to abundant, plentiful and much



Masculine verb used instead of feminine to emphasize each stone

Root letters are connected to splitting, tearing, ripping, slitting, cracking and a narrow opening

Are connected to difficulty, fatigue and weariness

فَيَخْرُجُ

Root letters are connected to emerging, leaving, going out and departing

يَهْبِطُ

Root letters are connected to descending, dropping down and falling down

خَشْيَةِ

Root letters are connected to fear, anxiety and dread

Are connected to deep respect, reverence and honour

Fear - response to power and authority

Reverence - response to greatness and majesty

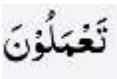
وَمَا اللهُ بِغَافِلٍ عَمَّا تَعْمَلُوْنَ

Structure gives a strong negation and refutation meaning

And gives an absolute and complete negation in state, time and possibility

بِغَافِلٍ

Root letters are connected to neglect, being heedless, disregard, ignore, be unmindful and carelessness


تَعْمَلُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to working, doing and acting

اَفَتَطْمَعُوْنَ اَنْ يُّؤْمِنُوْا لَكُمْ وَقَدْ كَانَ فَرِيْقٌ مِّنْهُمْ يَسْمَعُوْنَ كَلٰمَ
اللّٰهِ ثُمَّ يُحَرِّفُوْنَهٗ مِنْۢ بَعْدِ مَا عَقَلُوْهُ وَهُمْ يَعْلَمُوْنَ ﴿٧٥﴾

2:75

Then do you all [the believers] eagerly hope that they [the people of the book] will believe in response to you?—belief demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind; even though certainly a group from amongst them persist in learning through listening attentively to the discourse of Allah; thereafter, they misinterpret and distort it, thereby corrupting it, even after they had been endowed with reason and understanding of it—while they recognise, know, and understand.

Notes:

تَطْمَعُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to expecting, coveting, desiring, wishing, hoping and craving with eagerness

يُّؤْمِنُوْا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

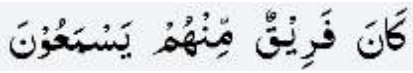
Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit



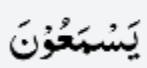
Used for emphasis with past tense action and an already established reality



Structure indicates repetitive action



Root letters are connected to a band, company, troop, detachment, unit, part, faction and team



Root letters are connected to hearing, listening, paying attention and learning



Root letters are connected to an address, utterance, remark and discourse

يُحَرِّفُوْنَهٗ

Root letters are connected to distorting, corrupting, perverting, falsifying, misconstruing and misinterpreting

Misinterpret - incorrect understanding of meaning

Distort - deliberate alteration of form or intent

Corrupting it - final outcome: overall damage and spoilage

عَقَلُوْهُ

Root letters are connected to being endowed with reason, being reasonable, having intelligence, comprehending and understanding

Reason - structured, analytical thinking

يَعْلَمُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

وَإِذَا لَقُوا الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا قَالُوا آمَنَّا ۖ وَإِذَا خَلَا بَعْضُهُمْ إِلَىٰ بَعْضٍ قَالُوا
أَتُحَدِّثُونَهُمْ بِمَا فَتَحَ اللَّهُ عَلَيْكُمْ لِيُحَاجُّوكُمْ بِهِ عِندَ رَبِّكُمْ ۚ أَفَلَا
تَعْقِلُونَ ﴿٧٦﴾

2:76

And whenever they [a group from amongst the people of the book] encounter those who have believed, as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind—they declare, "We have believed." Whereas, whenever some of them withdraw to others seeking counsel, they question [disapprovingly], "Do you all narrate to them what Allah has disclosed and explained to you, so that they dispute with, raise objections against, and defeat you with it in the presence of your nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority]? Then will you not use your faculties correctly—applying reason and common sense—to understand and refrain [from such behaviour]?"

Notes:

وَإِذَا لَقُوا and وَإِذَا خَلَوْا

Structure indicates repetitive action

لَقُوْا

Root letters are connected to encountering and meeting, to perceive and lean upon

اٰمَنُوْا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

وَاِذَا لَقُوا الَّذِيْنَ اٰمَنُوْا قَالُوْٓا

Structure indicates a conditional and habitual action

قَالُوْٓا

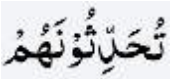
Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

وَاِذَا خَلَا بَعْضُهُمْ اِلٰى بَعْضٍ قَالُوْٓا

Structure indicates a conditional and habitual action

خَلَا

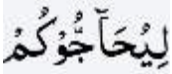
Root letters are connected to withdraw to take counsel, to seclude, be alone, withdraw, devote oneself and give one’s attention



Root letters are connected to telling, relating, narrating, speaking and reporting



Root letters are connected to disclosing, explaining and informing



Root letters are connected to defeating and overcoming

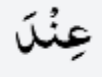
Are connected to disputing, debating and arguing

Are connected to pleading, raising objections and objecting

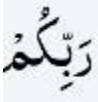
Dispute with - engage in argument

Raise objections against - challenge specific points

Defeat you with it - aim for rhetorical or argumentative victory



Preposition – with, in the company of, in the presence of, in despite of, together and in the estimation



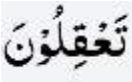
Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended



Root letters are connected to arresting, restraining and refraining

Are connected to being reasonable, using intelligence, using common sense

Reason - structured, analytical thinking

Common sense - intuitive, practical application

أَوَلَا يَعْلَمُونَ أَنَّ اللَّهَ يَعْلَمُ مَا يُسِرُّونَ وَمَا يُعْلِنُونَ ﴿٧٧﴾

2:77

And do they not recognise, know, or understand that Allah completely knows and fully understands whatever they disguise, confide secretly, or conceal, and whatever they declare publicly?

Notes:

يَعْلَمُونَ and يَعْلَمُ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

يُسِرُّونَ

Root letters are connected to keeping secret, to hide, conceal, disguise and confide

Disguise – outward masking

Confide secretly – selective disclosure

Conceal - complete concealment

مَا يُسِرُّوْنَ وَمَا يُعْلِنُوْنَ

مَا repeated shows emphasis and completeness

يُعْلِنُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to declaring, disclosing, publicizing, announcing, and proclaiming and making public

وَمِنْهُمْ أُمِّيُّونَ لَا يَعْلَمُونَ الْكِتٰبَ اِلَّآ اَمَانِيَّ وَاِنْ هُمْ اِلَّا يَظُنُّوْنَ ﴿٧٨﴾

2:78

And from amongst them [the people of the book] are those who are uneducated. They do not know or understand the divine code of conduct [the Torah and Gospel[1]] except its recitation—possessing vain hopes, desires, and demands [of success and salvation]. And they do nothing except guess and assume.

Notes:

1 - The divine code of conduct is mentioned in the singular form to emphasise the shared and unified divine guidance originally granted through the Torah and affirmed by the Gospel

أُمِّيُّونَ

Root letters are connected to someone uneducated, cannot read or write, ignorant, without formal education or knowledge and ignorant of divine scriptures

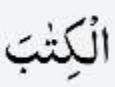
يَعْلَمُونَ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications



Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document



Root letters are connected to desiring, wishing, hoping, demanding, wishing and reading

Are connected to inventing and devising

Are connected to vain imaginations and desires

Hopes - expectations about the future

Desires - inner wishes or cravings

Demands - outward insistence or entitlement



Root letters are connected to suspecting, supposing, assuming, deeming, holding and conjecture

Guessing - forming an opinion without sufficient evidence

Assuming - accepting something as true without proof

فَوَيْلٌ لِّلَّذِيْنَ يَكْتُبُوْنَ الْكِتٰبَ بِاَيْدِيْهِمْ ثُمَّ يَقُوْلُوْنَ هٰذَا مِنْ عِنْدِ
اللّٰهِ لِيَشْتَرُوْا بِهٖ ثَمَنًا قَلِيْلًا ؕ فَوَيْلٌ لَّهُمْ مِّمَّا كَتَبَتْ اَيْدِيْهِمْ وَوَيْلٌ
لَّهُمْ مِّمَّا يَكْسِبُوْنَ ﴿۷۹﴾

2:79

Then disgrace and destruction for those [the scholars] who [re]write the divine code of conduct [the Torah and Gospel[1]] with their hands of power, authority, and influence. Thereafter, they declare, "This is from the presence of Allah," so that they persist in exchanging it for a small, inferior, and insufficient price. Then disgrace and destruction for them for what their hands have written and prescribed, and disgrace and destruction for them for what they work hard to earn.

Notes:

This verse refers specifically to those who possessed and understood the previous divine scriptures—the scholars—not the ordinary followers, who were not allowed direct access to them. This is evident from history and is supported by the Quran, for example, Quran 2:78

1 - The divine code of conduct is mentioned in the singular form to emphasise the shared and unified divine guidance originally granted through the Torah and affirmed by the Gospel

فَوَيْلٌ

Root letters are connected to disgrace, affliction, distress, punishment, calamity, revenge and a valley of hell

Are connected to warning of an impending calamity

يَكْتُبُوْنَ and الْكِتٰبَ and كَتَبَتْ

Root letters are connected to writing, ordaining, prescribing, decreeing and enjoining

Are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document

بِاَيْدِيْهِمْ

Root letters are connected to hand, power, control, influence and authority

Power - ability or capacity to act or carry out something

Authority - recognised right or legitimacy to act or decide

Influence - ability to affect or shape others' thoughts or actions

يَقُوْلُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to saying, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

عِنْدَ

Preposition – with, in the company of, in despite of, together and in the estimation

لِيَشْتَرُوْا

Root letters are connected to buying, selling, preferring and exchanging

And are connected to persisting and persevering

ثَمَنًا

Root letters are connected to price, cost, value and sum

قَلِيْلًا

Root letters are connected to few, inconsiderable, insufficient, sparse, small, little and inferior

يَكْسِبُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to acquiring, earning, gathering, obtaining and gaining

Are connected to working hard and diligent

وَقَالُوا لَنْ تَمَسَّنَا النَّارُ إِلَّا أَيَّامًا مَّعْدُودَةً ۚ قُلْ أَتَّخَذْتُمْ عِندَ اللَّهِ
عَهْدًا فَلَن يُخْلِفَ اللَّهُ عَهْدَهُ ۖ أَمْ تَقُولُونَ عَلَى اللَّهِ مَا لَا تَعْلَمُونَ ﴿٨٠﴾

2:80

And [that is because[1]] they have [boldly] claimed, "The Fire will not touch us except, perhaps, for a very limited number of days." Reply, "Have you received and accepted from the presence of Allah a firm pledge [to that effect]? Then, in that case, Allah will never fail to keep nor break His promise, or do you claim against Allah what you do not recognise, know, or understand?"

Notes:

1 - This verse explains their behaviour discussed in the previous verse – Quran 2:79

قَالُوا , قُلْ and تَقُولُونَ

Root letters are connected to saying, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

تَمَسَّنَا

Root letters are connected to touching, touching slightly, to handle, to befall, to be struck

أَيَّامًا

Root letters are connected to days, age, era and time

مَّعْدُودَةً

Root letters are connected to counting, few, little, reckoning, limited in number, easily countable and numbered

أَتَّخَذْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to taking firmly, accepting, receiving, obtaining and seizing

عِندَ

Preposition – with, in the company of, in the presence of, in despite of, together and in the estimation

عَهْدًا and عَهْدَهُۥٓ

Root letters are connected to a charge, injunction, command, bidding, pledge, vow, promise, contract, commitment and covenant

يُخْلِفَ

Root letters are connected to breaking, failing to keep, to disappoint and going back on one’s word

Fail to keep - omission / neglect / not fulfilling

Break - active violation / going against it



Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

بَلٰى مَنْ كَسَبَ سَيِّئَةً وَّاَحَاطَتْ بِهٖ خَطِيْٓـَٔتُهٗ فَاُولٰٓئِكَ اَصْحٰبُ النَّارِ ۚ
هُمْ فِيْهَا خٰلِدُوْنَ ﴿٨١﴾

2:81

But certainly, whoever has worked hard to earn evil, and his deviation from right guidance has encompassed and controlled him, then those [such people] are the inmates of the Fire; they, in it, will be firmly established—abiding forever.

Notes:

كَسَبَ

Root letters are connected to acquiring, earning, gathering, obtaining and gaining

Are connected to working hard and diligently

سَيِّئَةً

Singular used to indicate a state rather than actions

Root letters are connected to sin, offense, evil and evilness of state or condition

أَحَاطَتْ

Root letters are connected to encompassing, enclosing, encircling, within grasp and control and have in custody

خَطِيٓـَٔـتُهُۥ

Singular used to indicate a state rather than actions

Root letters are connected to committing an error, a mistake, a wrong, disobedience

Are connected to missing the mark and deviating

Are connected to committing a fault in religion

أَصْحٰبُ

Root letters are connected to companionship, association, closely associated, inmates and occupants

خٰلِدُوْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to be everlasting, being immortal and abiding forever

وَالَّذِيْنَ اٰمَنُوْا وَعَمِلُوا الصّٰلِحٰتِ اُولٰٓئِكَ اَصْحٰبُ الْجَنَّةِ ۚ هُمْ فِيْهَا خٰلِدُوْنَ ﴿٨٢﴾

2:82

Whereas, those who have believed, as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind: having strived to be firmly established in, and persist in, acts of righteous conduct—those are the inhabitants of the Secure Garden—Paradise—they, in it, will be firmly established—abiding forever.

Notes:

اٰمَنُوْا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

عَمِلُوا

Root letters are connected to working, doing and acting

Are connected to working with effort and difficulty, taking pains, exerting effort and laboring

الصّٰلِحٰتِ

Root letters are connected to being good, just, being in order, being righteous and pious and to do appropriate things

اَصْحٰبُ

Root letters are connected to companionship, association, closely associated, inmates and occupants

الْجَنَّةِ،

Root letters are connected to Paradise

Are connected to protection, shield and safety

Are connected to a garden and a walled garden

خٰلِدُوْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to be everlasting, being immortal and abiding forever

وَإِذْ أَخَذْنَا مِيثَاقَ بَنِيٓ إِسْرَٰٓءِيلَ لَا تَعْبُدُونَ إِلَّا ٱللَّهَ ۖ وَبِٱلْوَٰلِدَيْنِ
إِحْسَانًا وَذِى ٱلْقُرْبَىٰ وَٱلْيَتَٰمَىٰ وَٱلْمَسَٰكِينِ وَقُولُوا۟ لِلنَّاسِ حُسْنًا
وَأَقِيمُوا۟ ٱلصَّلَوٰةَ وَءَاتُوا۟ ٱلزَّكَوٰةَ ثُمَّ تَوَلَّيْتُمْ إِلَّا قَلِيلًا مِّنكُمْ وَأَنتُم
مُّعْرِضُونَ ﴿٨٣﴾

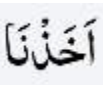
2:83

And [reflect on] when We accepted the firmly established pledge of the descendants of Israel: you all do not worship or obey except Allah—doing only what He approves of and approving of whatever He does. And concerning both parents—excellent conduct; and to those possessing closeness in lineage, and in physical proximity; and to orphans; and to those who cannot financially support themselves. And speak to people in an excellent manner. And sincerely establish the prayer[1]—each one of them—which disciplines conduct [through the remembrance of the Hereafter], while fulfilling its conditions and etiquettes. And give the obligatory charity, which purifies the spiritual heart [from greed] and causes increase [in blessings]. Thereafter, you refrained and turned away except a few from amongst you, while you were in a firmly established and persistent state of aversion, abandonment, and opposition.

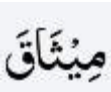
Notes:

The Arabic employs the present tense rhetorically to bring the scene into immediate view and, where applicable, to convey habitual or repeated action

1 - The prayers are mentioned in the singular, indicating that the five obligatory prayers are regarded as one unified act of worship, and therefore none of them can be left out



Root letters are connected to accepting, taking, obtaining and seizing



Root letters are connected to a covenant, agreement, pledge and pact

Are connected to firmly establishing, to tie, to fasten and bind



Root letters are connected to son, daughter and descendant



A declaration rather than a prohibition—showing that this is a permanent state and identity, not merely a momentary instruction, but a lifelong obligation

تَعْبُدُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to worshipping, serving, adoring, obeying with humility and enslaving

Are connected to only doing what Allah, the Exalted, approves of and approving what He decrees

وَّبِالْوَالِدَيْنِ

Root letters are connected to both parents

اِحْسَانًا and حُسْنًا

Root letters are connected to being excellent, good, suitable, nice and treating others with kindness

وَّذِى

Root letters are connected to possessing, owning and being endowed with

الْقُرْبٰى

Root letters are connected to kinship and relative

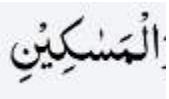
Are connected to nearness, closeness and proximity

Are connected to taking an associate

Are connected to coming to a close relationship, come near someone and to seek someone’s favour

Lineage - family ties

Physical – those nearby



Root letters are connected to severe poverty, destitution, in a bad financial state and subdued by financial issues



Root letters are connected to saying, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging



Root letters are connected to guarding, preserving, being sincere, honest, rectifying and establishing

Are connected to doing properly, putting in order and arranging well



Root letters are connected to praying and worshipping

Are connected to straightening something or making it soft by fire

The stages of the prayer mirror the stages of the Hereafter, serving as a continual reminder of it e.g. Quran 83:4-6, 77:48, 68:42-43 and 45:28

اٰتُوا

Root letters are connected to performing, executing, giving and granting

الزَّكٰوةَ

Root letters are connected to growing, increasing, purification and purity of heart

Are connected to the obligatory charity, alms and charity

تَوَلَّيْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to turning, turning away, turning back, fleeing, desisting, refraining and forgoing

قَلِيْلًا

Root letters are connected to few, inconsiderable, insufficient, sparse, small, little and inferior

مُّعْرِضُوْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being averse, disclaiming, abandoning, and discarding

Are connected to opposing, resisting, working against someone and contradicting

Aversion - internal dislike / emotional turning away

Abandonment - practical withdrawal / leaving something behind

Opposition - active resistance / standing against

وَإِذْ أَخَذْنَا مِيثَاقَكُمْ لَا تَسْفِكُونَ دِمَاءَكُمْ وَلَا تُخْرِجُونَ أَنْفُسَكُمْ
مِنْ دِيَارِكُمْ ثُمَّ أَقْرَرْتُمْ وَأَنْتُمْ تَشْهَدُونَ ﴿٨٤﴾

2:84

And [reflect on] when We accepted from you all your firmly established pledge [of obeying Allah]: you do not shed your[1] blood [the blood of your own people], and you do not expel amongst yourselves from your homes and land. Thereafter, you acknowledged, consented to, and affirmed [it] while you were in a state of bearing witness.

Notes:

The Arabic employs the present tense within a past-time framework to convey habitual, repeated, or continuous action

1 - The pronoun ‘yourselves’ is often used in the Quran when referring to others, in order to encourage a sense of unity and collective identity

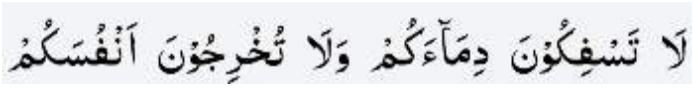
أَخَذْنَا

Root letters are connected to accepting, taking, obtaining and seizing

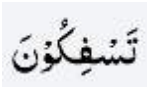
مِيثَاقَكُمْ

Root letters are connected to a covenant, agreement, pledge and pact

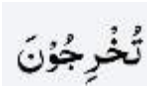
Are connected to firmly establishing, to tie, to fasten and bind



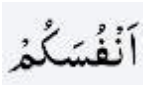
A declaration rather than a prohibition—showing that this is a permanent state and identity, not merely a momentary instruction, but a lifelong obligation



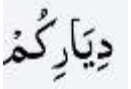
Root letters are connected to shedding and causing to run and flow blood and other liquids



Root letters are connected to bringing out, pulling out, dislodging, expelling and excluding



Root letters are connected to soul, person, mind, human being and an individual



Root letters are connected to a home, habitation, area, region, land, city, country and town

أَقْرَرْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to consenting, acknowledging, affirming, establishing, confirming and agreeing

Acknowledged - recognised or admitted something as true

Consented - agreed or gave permission willingly

Affirmed - declared or confirmed something firmly

تَشْهَدُونَ

Root letters are connected to witness, experience personally, eyewitness, attend, give evidence, to testify and to bear witness

ثُمَّ اَنۡتُمۡ هٰٓؤُلَآءِ تَقۡتُلُوۡنَ اَنۡفُسَكُمۡ وَتُخۡرِجُوۡنَ فَرِيۡقًا مِّنۡكُمۡ مِّنۡ
دِيَارِهِمۡ تَظٰهَرُوۡنَ عَلَيۡهِمۡ بِالۡاِثۡمِ وَالۡعُدۡوَانِ ؕ وَاِنۡ يَّاۡتُوۡكُمۡ اُسٰرٰى
تُفٰدُوۡهُمۡ وَهُوَ مُحَرَّمٌ عَلَيۡكُمۡ اِخۡرَاجُهُمۡ ؕ اَفَتُؤۡمِنُوۡنَ بِبَعۡضِ الۡكِتٰبِ
وَتَكۡفُرُوۡنَ بِبَعۡضٍ ۚ فَمَا جَزَآءُ مَنۡ يَّفۡعَلُ ذٰلِكَ مِنۡكُمۡ اِلَّا خِزۡىٌ فِى
الۡحَيٰوةِ الدُّنۡيَا ۚ وَيَوۡمَ الۡقِيٰمَةِ يُرَدُّوۡنَ اِلٰٓى اَشَدِّ الۡعَذَابِ ؕ وَمَا اللّٰهُ
بِغَافِلٍ عَمَّا تَعۡمَلُوۡنَ ﴿۸۵﴾

2:85

Thereafter, you all—these very people—oppose, fight, and kill amongst yourselves, and you expel a group from amongst you from their homes and land—clearly supporting others [with haste and intensity] in dominating them through intentional sinful behaviour and hostility and aggression—exceeding proper bounds. And if they [the people you wronged] come to you as prisoners of war, you purchase their freedom, even though their expulsion is in a firmly established and persistent state of being unlawful upon you. Then do you believe in some parts of the divine code of conduct [the Torah] by fulfilling its duties, and neglect, dissociate from, and deny other parts, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted you]? Then what is the recompense for whoever influences or engages in doing that from amongst you except disgrace and abasement in the worldly life—the lowest state of living—and on the Momentous Day of upheaval, raising of the dead, and rectifying affairs, they will be driven back[1] to [the consequence of their actions] the most severe, agonising

punishment. And Allah is never—at any time or in any state—the One who is unmindful or disregarding of whatever you do.

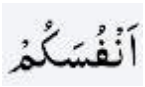
Notes:

1 - In this world consequences of actions may not be experienced fully, therefore in the hereafter people will be returned to their actions to face the consequences – thus the word “driven back” is used

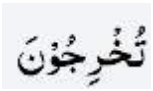
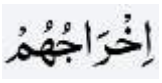


Root letters are connected to killing

Are connected to fighting, battling, opposing, and combat



Root letters are connected to soul, person, mind, human being and an individual

 and 

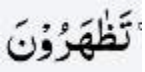
Root letters are connected to bringing out, pulling out, dislodging, expelling and excluding



Root letters are connected to a band, company, troop, detachment, unit, part, faction and team



Root letters are connected to a home, habitation, area, region, land, city, country and town

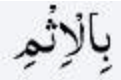


The second ت has been dropped, leaving a single ت which can reflect the action occurring quickly or with great intensity

Root letters are connected to becoming visible, manifest and clear

Are connected to helping, assisting and supporting

Are connected to winning, overcoming and conquering



Root letters are connected to sin, err, slip, crime and offense

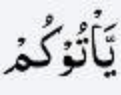
Are connected to intentional sin



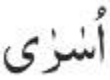
Root letters are connected to enmity, hostility, aggression, military aggression, exceeding proper bounds and transgressing

Hostility - inner attitude of enmity

Aggression - outward expression through harmful action



Root letters are connected to coming, arriving, bringing, advancing and accomplishing



Root letters are connected to prisoner, captive and prisoner of war

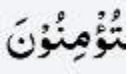


Root letters are connected to redeeming, ransoming, freeing and liberating



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

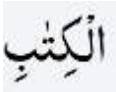
Root letters are connected to declaring sacred, inviolable, unlawful, forbidden



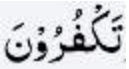
Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security



Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document



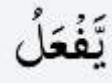
Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty



Root letters are connected to repaying, recompense, rewarding and punishing



Root letters are connected to doing an action, to influence, activity and accomplishing a task



Root letters are connected to disgrace, dishonour and abasement

Disgrace - social humiliation / loss of honour

Abasement - being lowered in status / degradation

الْحَيٰوةِ

Root letters are connected to living, experiencing and witnessing

الدُّنْيَا

A superlative

Root letters are connected to being low and near

Are connected to world, life in this world, worldly existence, temporal things or possessions and earthly things and concerns

يَوْمَ

Root letters are connected to days, age, era and time

Are connected to momentous and important day

الْقِيٰمَةِ

Root letters are connected to standing, rising up, rectifying and managing affairs

Are connected to resurrection, upheaval, tumult, turmoil and raising the dead

يُرَدُّوْنَ

Root letters are connected to sending back and returning

اَشَدِّ

A superlative

Root letters are connected to becoming firm, solid, hard, strong and harsh

الْعَذَابِ

Root letters are connected to prevent, hinder, deter and obstruct

Are connected to punishment, torture, agony, painful and suffering

Agonising - causing intense pain and torment

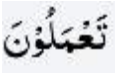
وَمَا اللّٰهُ بِغَافِلٍ عَمَّا تَعْمَلُوْنَ

Structure gives a strong negation and refutation meaning

And gives an absolute and complete negation in state, time and possibility

بِغَافِلٍ

Root letters are connected to neglect, being heedless, disregard, ignore, be unmindful and carelessness



Root letters are connected to working, doing and acting

أُولَٰئِكَ الَّذِينَ اشْتَرَوُا الْحَيٰوةَ الدُّنْيَا بِالْاٰخِرَةِ ۟ فَلَا يُخَفَّفُ عَنْهُمُ

الْعَذَابُ وَلَا هُمْ يُنْصَرُوْنَ ﴿٨٦﴾

2:86

Those—the ones who have persisted in preferring and purchasing the temporal things of the worldly life—the lowest state of living—in exchange for the life of the Hereafter. Therefore, the agonising, deterrent punishment will not be lightened for them and they—they [in particular] will not be protected, supported, or granted success.

Notes:

اشْتَرَوُا

Root letters are connected to buying, selling, preferring and exchanging

And are connected to persisting and persevering

الْحَيٰوةِ

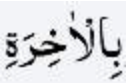
Root letters are connected to living, experiencing and witnessing

الدُّنْيَا

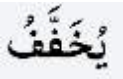
A superlative

Root letters are connected to being low and near

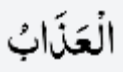
Are connected to world, life in this world, worldly existence, temporal things or possessions and earthly things and concerns



Root letters are connected to the hereafter, the final abode, life to come, and something which is delayed and deferred



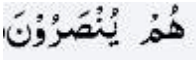
Root letters are connected to making lighter, reducing the weight, relieving, diminishing and reducing



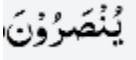
Root letters are connected to prevent, hinder, deter and obstruct

Are connected to punishment, torture, agony, painful and suffering

Agonising - causing intense pain and torment



Pronoun “they” is used twice for added emphasis



Root letters are connected to helping, assisting, victory and success

Are connected to protecting and defending

وَلَقَدْ اٰتَيْنَا مُوْسَى الْكِتٰبَ وَقَفَّيْنَا مِنْۢ بَعْدِهٖ بِالرُّسُلِ ۖ وَاٰتَيْنَا عِيْسَى
ابْنَ مَرْيَمَ الْبَيِّنٰتِ وَاَيَّدْنٰهُ بِرُوْحِ الْقُدُسِ ۗ اَفَكُلَّمَا جَآءَكُمْ رَسُوْلٌۢ
بِمَا لَا تَهْوٰٓى اَنْفُسُكُمُ اسْتَكْبَرْتُمْ ۚ فَفَرِيْقًا كَذَّبْتُمْ ۖ وَفَرِيْقًا
تَقْتُلُوْنَ ﴿٨٧﴾

2:87

There is absolutely no doubt that We granted Musa the divine code of conduct [the Torah]. And We caused to succeed, from after him, Messengers—who sincerely conveyed a divine code of conduct from Allah. And We granted Eesa, the son of Maryam, clear proofs and explanations, and We further supported and made him firm with the Spirit of Purity [the Archangel Jibraeel]. Then is it not the case that every time any Messenger came to you all with what your souls did not incline to, wish for, or desire, you became stubbornly proud and arrogant—exalting yourselves in disdain and opposition? Thus, a group [of the Messengers] you refuted, declaring them liars—seeking to discredit them—and a group you [consistently] fought and killed [aiming to weaken the strength of divine guidance].

Notes:

The Arabic employs the present tense within a past-time framework to convey habitual, repeated, or continuous action

لَقَدْ

لَ added for emphasis

قَدْ Used for emphasis with past tense action i.e. certainly

اٰتَيْنَا

Root letters are connected to giving, granting and bestowing

الْكِتٰبَ

Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document

وَقَفَّيْنَا

Root letters are connected to following tracks, pursuing, following footsteps and causing to follow and succeed

بِالرُّسُلِ and رَسُوْلٌ

Root letters are connected to dispatching, a message and corresponding

Are connected to a messenger, delegate and apostle

Are connected to being friendly, intimate and free of affectation

Are connected to the one who carries by consecutive progressions the relation of the tidings of Him who has sent him



Root letters are connected to clarification, explanation, clear evidence and proof

Proofs – undeniable evidence that establish truth decisively

Explanations – making meaning clear and understandable



Root letters are connected to supporting, confirming, endorsing, making firm, and strengthening

Supported - external aid

Made him firm - internal stability



Root letters are connected to a spirit, ghost and soul



Root letters are connected to holy, pure and being sacred

جَآءَكُمْ

Root letters are connected to come, produce, set forth and confront

تَهْوَىٰٓ

Root letters are connected to loving, liking and desiring

أَنفُسُكُمُ

Root letters are connected to soul, person, liking, appetite, desire, wish, will, desire and inclination

ٱسْتَكْبَرْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to pride, arrogance, seeking to magnify oneself, trying to excel and trying to be great

Are connected to insist stubbornly on one’s opinion

Are connected to treating with disdain and contempt, to oppose and resist

Proud - inward sense of self-importance and superiority

Arrogant - outward display of superiority over others

Exalting - attempt to raise oneself above one’s rightful position or limits

Opposition - active resistance or refusal

Disdain - treating something as unworthy or beneath oneself

فَفَرِيقًا

Root letters are connected to a band, company, troop, detachment, unit, part, faction and team

كَذَّبْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to lying, refuting, denying, discrediting and calling something a lie

تَقْتُلُونَ

Root letters are connected to killing and murdering

Are connected to weakening the strength or intensity of something

وَقَالُوا قُلُوبُنَا غُلْفٌ ۢ بَل لَّعَنَهُمُ اللَّهُ بِكُفْرِهِمْ فَقَلِيلًا مَّا يُؤْمِنُونَ ﴿٨٨﴾

2:88

And they have claimed [arrogantly], "Our spiritual hearts are vessels of divine knowledge—securely wrapped and sealed off [from misguidance]." Rather, Allah has expelled them from all good in disgrace as a punishment for their neglect of, dissociation from, and denial of their obligations due to Him, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them]. Thus, how insufficiently and rarely do they fulfil the duties of faith.

Notes:

This verse refers specifically to those who possessed and understood the previous divine scriptures—the scholars—not the ordinary followers, who were not allowed direct access to them. This is evident from history and is supported by the Quran, for example, Quran 2:78

قَالُوا

Root letters are connected to saying, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

قُلُوبِهِمْ

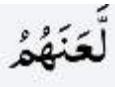
Root letters are connected to turn around, inverse, overturned, transformed, to become perverted

Are connected to being fickle and inconsistent



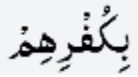
Root letters are connected to enveloping, covering and wrapping

Are connected to a container of knowledge



Root letters are connected to cursing, disgracing, expelling and removing someone from good

Are connected to punishing and torturing



Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

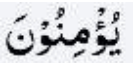
Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty



How little, insufficiently and rarely do they

insufficient – rarely — little

Root letters are connected to inconsiderable, insufficient, rarely and lacking goodness



Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

وَلَمَّا جَآءَهُمْ كِتٰبٌ مِّنْ عِنْدِ اللّٰهِ مُصَدِّقٌ لِّمَا مَعَهُمْ ۙ وَكَانُوْا مِنْ قَبْلُ
يَسْتَفْتِحُوْنَ عَلَى الَّذِيْنَ كَفَرُوْا ۚ فَلَمَّا جَآءَهُمْ مَّا عَرَفُوْا كَفَرُوْا بِهٖ ۚ
فَلَعْنَةُ اللّٰهِ عَلَى الْكٰفِرِيْنَ ﴿٨٩﴾

2:89

And at the very moment a divine code of conduct [the Quran] came to them [the scholars] from the presence of Allah, firmly established in, and persisting in, verifying and bearing witness to what is with them—while from before they were persisting in seeking assistance and victory [through it] against those who neglected, dissociated from, and denied their obligations to Allah—then at the very moment when what they had clearly recognised as truthful, through their prior knowledge, came to them, they neglected, dissociated from, and denied it. Therefore, the punishment of Allah—expulsion from good in disgrace—is upon those who are firmly established in, and persist in, neglecting, dissociating from, and denying their obligations to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them].

Notes:

This verse refers specifically to those who possessed and understood the previous divine scriptures—the scholars—not the ordinary followers, who were not allowed direct access to them. This is evident from history and is supported by the Quran, for example, Quran 2:78

لَمَّا

Root letters are connected to when, since and after

Emphasizes moment of occurrence

جَآءَهُمْ

Root letters are connected to come, produce and set forth

كِتَٰبٌ

Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document

عِنْدَ

Preposition – with, in the company of, in the presence of, in despite of, together and in the estimation

مُصَدِّقٌ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to certifying, verifying, confirming, substantiating, attesting and bearing witness

Verifies - confirms correctness, establishes truth

Bears witness to - testifies in favour or against

كَانُوا مِنْ قَبْلُ يَسْتَفْتِحُوْنَ

Structure indicates repetitive action

كَانُوْا

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

يَسْتَفْتِحُوْنَ

Root letters are connected seeking assistance

Are connected to conquer and grant victory

كَفَرُوْا

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

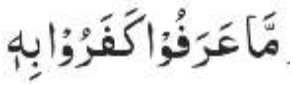
Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

عَرَفُوْا

Root letters are connected to recognising, perceiving and being acquainted

Are connected to know by specific and distinct knowledge

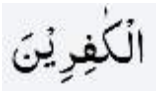


No conjunction indicating immediate and complete response



Root letters are connected to cursing, disgracing, expelling and removing someone from good

Are connected to punishing and torturing



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

بِئْسَمَا اشْتَرَوْا بِهٖٓ اَنْفُسَهُمْ اَنْ يَّكْفُرُوْا بِمَآ اَنْزَلَ اللّٰهُ بَغْيًا اَنْ يُّنَزِّلَ
اللّٰهُ مِنْ فَضْلِهٖ عَلٰى مَنْ يَّشَآءُ مِنْ عِبَادِهٖ ۚ فَبَآءُوْ بِغَضَبٍ عَلٰى غَضَبٍ ۭ
وَلِلْكٰفِرِيْنَ عَذَابٌ مُّهِيْنٌ ۝٩٠

2:90

How evil is what they have persistently preferred and purchased in exchange for their souls by neglecting, dissociating from, and denying what Allah has gradually revealed—to hold a special position [of supreme authority]—motivated by evil desires, arrogance, and transgression, solely because Allah sends down from His favour and kindness upon whoever He wills from His humble and obedient slaves—doing only what He approves of and approving of whatever He does. Therefore, they have arrogantly drawn upon themselves wrath upon wrath. And for those who are firmly established in, and persist in, neglecting, dissociating from, and denying their obligations to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them], is an agonising, deterring punishment in disdain and humiliation.

Notes:

بِئْسَمَا

Root letters are connected to showing the evil of something

Are connected to miserable and wretched

اشْتَرَوْا

Root letters are connected to buying, selling, preferring and exchanging

And are connected to persisting and persevering

يَكْفُرُوْا

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

اَنْزَلَ and يُنَزِّلَ

Root letters are connected to something which is sent down, comes down, descends, stops over and is granted

Are connected to something which is sent down slowly and gradually

Are connected to something which holds a special position or place

بَغْيًا

Root letters are connected to exalting oneself, behaving proudly, transgression, disobedience, wrongdoing and corruption

Are connected to seeking, desiring, coveting and seeking to attain

Evil desires - inner motivation (base, corrupt inclinations)

Arrogance - attitude and mindset (sense of superiority and self-exaltation)

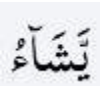
Transgression - outward action (acting beyond what is right or permitted)



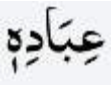
Root letters are connected to grace, favour, kindness, graciousness, grace and bounty

Kindness - the manner of Allah’s dealing (gentle, merciful approach)

Favour - the substance of what is given (blessings, help, protection)



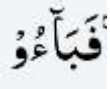
Root letters are connected to wanting, willing and wishing



Root letters are connected to a male servant and male slave

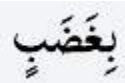
Are connected to worshipping, serving, adoring, obeying with humility and enslaving

Are connected to only doing what Allah, the Exalted, approves of and approving what He decrees



Root letters are connected to taking upon oneself, bearing the burden, drawing upon oneself and brining in

Are connected to being proud and arrogant



Root letters are connected to being angry, irritated and furious



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty



Root letters are connected to prevent, hinder, deter and obstruct

Are connected to punishment, torture, agony, painful and suffering

Agonising - causing intense pain and torment



Root letters are connected to disgrace, disdain, despise, degrade and humiliate

Disdain - looked down upon as unworthy

Humiliation - being lowered in dignity and honour

وَإِذَا قِيلَ لَهُمْ آمِنُوا بِمَا أَنْزَلَ اللَّهُ قَالُوا نُؤْمِنُ بِمَا أُنْزِلَ عَلَيْنَا
وَيَكْفُرُونَ بِمَا وَرَاءَهُ وَهُوَ الْحَقُّ مُصَدِّقًا لِمَا مَعَهُمْ قُلْ فَلِمَ
تَقْتُلُونَ أَنْبِيَاءَ اللَّهِ مِنْ قَبْلُ إِنْ كُنْتُمْ مُؤْمِنِينَ ﴿٩١﴾

2:91

And whenever it is said to them, "Believe in what Allah has gradually revealed—[to hold a special position of supreme authority—belief demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind]." They assert, "We [only] believe in what was revealed upon us," whereas they neglect, dissociate from, and deny whatever is beyond it, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings Allah granted them], even though it [the Quran] is the truth—correct, appropriate, and purposeful—in a firmly established and persistent state of verifying and bearing witness to what is with them. Reply, "Then why did you oppose, fight, and murder the honoured Prophets of Allah from before, [thereby aiming to weaken the strength of the divine knowledge conveyed by them], if you are, in fact, [firmly established as] those who sincerely fulfil the duties of faith?"

Notes:

The Arabic employs the present tense within a past-time framework to convey habitual, repeated, or continuous action

وَاِذَا قِيْلَ

Structure indicates repetitive action

قِيْلَ , قَالُوْا and قُلْ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

اٰمِنُوْا and نُؤْمِنُ

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

اَنْزَلَ and اُنْزِلَ

Root letters are connected to something which is sent down, comes down, descends, stops over and is granted

Are connected to something which is sent down slowly and gradually

Are connected to something which holds a special position or place

يَكْفُرُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

وَرَآءَهُ

Preposition – behind, in the rear of, after, beyond, past, beside and in addition to

الْحَقُّ

Root letters are connected to what is right, correct, true, proper, suitable, fitting and purposeful

True - matches reality

Correct - accurate and right

Appropriate - properly fitting

Purposeful - meaningful and intentional

مُصَدِّقًا

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to certifying, verifying, confirming, substantiating, attesting and bearing witness

Verifies - confirms correctness, establishes truth

Bears witness to - testifies in favour or against

تَقْتُلُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to killing and murdering

Are connected to fighting, battling, opposing, and combat

Are connected to weakening the strength or intensity of something

اَنْۢبِيَآءَ

Root letters are connected to informing, notifying, advising telling and announcing

Are connected to being high in rank, raised, elevated and prominent

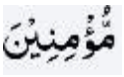
Are connected to someone who receives unseen knowledge from Allah and conveys them to people

اِنْ كُنْتُمْ مُّؤْمِنِيْنَ

Structure indicates an established state

كُنْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place



Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

وَلَقَدْ جَآءَكُمْ مُّوْسٰى بِالْبَيِّنٰتِ ثُمَّ اتَّخَذْتُمُ الْعِجْلَ مِنْۢ بَعْدِهٖ وَاَنْتُمْ ظٰلِمُوْنَ ﴿٩٢﴾

2:92

And there is absolutely no doubt that Musa came with clear proofs and explanations. Thereafter, you all hastily took and adhered to the calf [statue, as an object of worship[1]] from after him, while you were in a firmly established and persistent state of being unjust—transgressing proper limits.

Notes:

1 - Worshipping the statue of the calf is discussed in other verses e.g. Quran 20:88

لَقَدْ

لَ added for emphasis

قَدْ Used for emphasis with past tense action i.e. certainly

جَآءَكُمْ

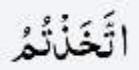
Root letters are connected to come, produce, set forth and reaching



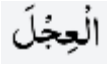
Root letters are connected to clarification, explanation, clear evidence and proof

Proofs – undeniable evidence that establish truth decisively

Explanations – making meaning clear and understandable

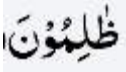


Root letters are connected to taking firmly, accepting, gripping, seizing, occupying, adhering, adopting and making use



Root letters are connected to be in a hurry, to speed, rush, hasten and come quickly

Are connected to a calf



Noun indicating an entrenched and persistent behaviour

Root letters are connected to be unjust, act tyrannically, do wrong, do evil, harm, oppress and transgress proper limits

وَإِذْ أَخَذْنَا مِيثَاقَكُمْ وَرَفَعْنَا فَوْقَكُمُ الطُّورَ ۖ خُذُوا مَا آتَيْنَاكُمْ بِقُوَّةٍ
وَاسْمَعُوا ۖ قَالُوا سَمِعْنَا وَعَصَيْنَا ۚ وَأُشْرِبُوا فِي قُلُوبِهِمُ الْعِجْلَ
بِكُفْرِهِمْ ۚ قُلْ بِئْسَمَا يَأْمُرُكُمْ بِهِ إِيمَانُكُمْ إِنْ كُنْتُمْ مُؤْمِنِينَ ﴿٩٣﴾

2:93

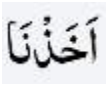
And [reflect on] when We accepted from you all your firmly established pledge [of obeying Allah], and We raised above you the mountain[1] [thereby encouraging you to fulfil it], "Firmly take and adhere to what We have granted you [of divine guidance] with strength, courage, and determination: learning through listening attentively." They responded[2] [through their actions], "We have heard and stubbornly abandoned the obedience [of Allah]." And they were saturated and dominated within their inverted spiritual hearts by the calf [statue[3]] because of their neglect of, dissociation from, and denial of their obligations due to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them]. Declare, "How evil is what your faith instructs you with, if you are, in fact, [firmly established as] those who sincerely fulfil the duties of faith [thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind]."

Notes:

1 - The mountain was raised above them to encourage them to fulfil their pledge to Allah, the Exalted, after they had accepted it, not to force them to accept it in the first place

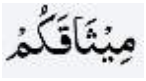
2 - The reply of the descendants of Israel was most likely non-verbal, i.e., through their actions, but is represented in words in this verse

3 - The calf statue symbolised a life without divine commands or prohibitions, which then dominated their behaviour

 and 

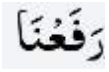
Root letters are connected to accepting, taking, obtaining and seizing

Are connected to taking firmly, gripping, seizing, occupying, adhering, adopting and making use

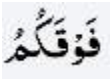


Root letters are connected to a covenant, agreement, pledge and pact

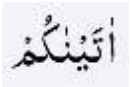
Are connected to firmly establishing, to tie, to fasten and bind



Root letters are connected to raising, elevating and lifting



Preposition – above



Root letters are connected to giving, granting and bestowing

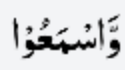
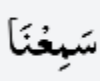


Root letters are connected to strength, vigor, potency, power, force, firmness, resolution, determination and courage

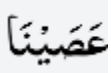
Strength - internal capacity and stability

Courage - action in the face of challenge

Determination - continuation over time

 and 

Root letters are connected to hearing, listening, paying attention and learning



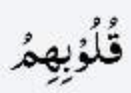
Root letters are connected to disobeying, defying, renouncing obedience and rebelling

Are connected to becoming difficult and stubborn



Root letters are connected to drinking, giving drink, making drink

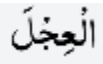
Are connected to soaking up, saturating, absorbing and dominating



Root letters are connected to turn around, inverse, overturned, transformed and to become perverted

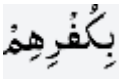
Are connected to being fickle and inconsistent, changeable and fluctuating

Inverted – the internal order is backwards valuing the bad and hating the good



Root letters are connected to be in a hurry, to speed, rush, hasten and come quickly

Are connected to a calf



Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty



Root letters are connected to showing the evil of something

Are connected to miserable and wretched

يَأْمُرُكُمْ

Root letters are connected to ordering, commanding, instructing, charging and entrusting

اِيْمَانُكُمْ

Root letters are connected to faith, belief, trust and confidence

اِنْ كُنْتُمْ مُّؤْمِنِيْنَ

Structure indicates an established state

كُنْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

مُّؤْمِنِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

قُلْ إِنْ كَانَتْ لَكُمُ الدَّارُ الْآخِرَةُ عِنْدَ اللَّهِ خَالِصَةً مِنْ دُونِ النَّاسِ
فَتَمَنَّوُا الْمَوْتَ إِنْ كُنْتُمْ صَادِقِينَ ﴿٩٤﴾

2:94

Declare, "If the Hereafter abode exists for the benefit of you all [the people of the book], in the presence of Allah—exclusively, to the exclusion of [all other] people—then desire, wish for, and demand death, if you are, in fact, [firmly established as] those who are sincere and truthful."

Notes:

قُلْ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

كَانَتْ لَكُمُ الدَّارُ الْآخِرَةُ

Structure indicates an established state

كَانَتْ and كُنْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

لَكُمُ الدَّارُ الْاٰخِرَةُ

Structure creates meaning of exclusivity

الدَّارُ

Root letters are connected to an abode, home, habitation, area, region, land, city, country and town

الْاٰخِرَةُ

Root letters are connected to the hereafter, the final abode and something which is delayed and deferred

عِنْدَ

Preposition – with, in the company of, in the presence of, in despite of, together and in the estimation

خَالِصَةً

Root letters are connected to pure and exclusively

Are connected to choosing

تَمَنَّوُا

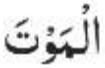
Root letters are connected to desiring and wishing

Are connected to hoping and demanding

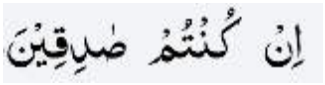
Desire - inner feeling (an internal inclination toward something)

Wish for - conscious expression (a conscious, expressed wanting)

Demand - outward insistence (a strong, forceful request)



Root letters are connected to dying, perishing, losing life and subsiding



Structure indicates an established state



Root letters are connected to being truthful, sincere and keeping one's word

Sincere - pure inner intention

Truthful - outward truth in word and action

وَلَنْ يَّتَمَنَّوْهُ اَبَدًا ۢبِمَا قَدَّمَتْ اَيْدِيْهِمْ ۗ وَاللّٰهُ عَلِيْمٌۢ بِالظّٰلِمِيْنَ ﴿٩٥﴾

2:95

Yet they will not desire, wish for or demand it [death]—ever—because of what their hands of power, authority, and influence have preferred and boldly sent forward in preparation for the future [the Hereafter]. And Allah is innately and eternally the One who completely knows and fully understands those who are firmly established in, and persist in, being unjust—transgressing proper limits.

Notes:

تَمَنَّوْا

Root letters are connected to desiring and wishing

Are connected to hoping and demanding

Desire - inner feeling (an internal inclination toward something)

Wish for - conscious expression (a conscious, expressed wanting)

Demand - outward insistence (a strong, forceful request)

اَبَدًا

Root letters are connected to endless, forever, ever and eternity

قَدَّمَتْ

Root letters are connected to send forward, send ahead and send on in advance

Are connected to preparing

Are connected to preferring and prioritizing

Are connected to being bold, audacious and daring

اَيْدِيْهِمْ

Root letters are connected to hand, power, control, influence and authority

Power - ability or capacity to act or carry out something

Authority - recognised right or legitimacy to act or decide

Influence - ability to affect or shape others' thoughts or actions

وَاللّٰهُ عَلِيْمٌۢ بِالظّٰلِمِيْنَ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

عَلِيْمٌ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to be unjust, act tyrannically, do wrong, do evil, harm, oppress and transgress proper limits

وَلَتَجِدَنَّهُمْ اَحْرَصَ النَّاسِ عَلٰى حَيٰوةٍ ۛ وَمِنَ الَّذِيْنَ اَشْرَكُوْا ۛ يَوَدُّ
اَحَدُهُمْ لَوْ يُعَمَّرُ اَلْفَ سَنَةٍ ۚ وَمَا هُوَ بِمُزَحْزِحِهٖ مِنَ الْعَذَابِ اَنْ يُّعَمَّرَ ؕ
وَاللّٰهُ بَصِيْرٌۢ بِمَا يَعْمَلُوْنَ ﴿۹۶﴾

2:96

And no doubt, you will most certainly find and experience them [the people of the book] as the most desirous and greediest of people for the present life [for the sake of worldly profit], even more than those who have associated partners with Allah. Any one of them loves if only he had been granted a prosperous lifespan of a thousand years [to cultivate this world]. Yet it will never—at any time or in any state—be able to push him away or remove him from the agonising, deterrent punishment—that he is granted a long life. And Allah is innately and eternally the One who sees whatever they do, whether apparent or hidden, the One who is perfectly perceptive and discerning.

Notes:

لَتَجِدَنَّهُمْ

Structure shows three layers of emphasis

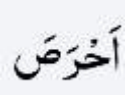
Root letters are connected to finding, experiencing and coming across

Find - outward observation (to observe or come to realise)

Experience - direct interaction (to witness through interaction)



Superlative structure



Root letters are connected to desiring, coveting, aspiring and being excessively greedy

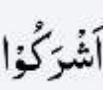
Desirous - natural or strong wanting

Greediest - having excessive, insatiable desire



Root letters are connected to life, experience and the present worldly life

Are connected to gaining an advantage or profit



Root letters are connected to making a partner, associating and committing polytheism

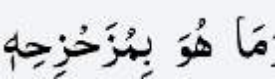


Root letters are connected to loving, wishing and wanting

 and 

Root letters are connected to prospering, living long, flourishing and having plenty

Are connected to restoring, develop, bring growth, building up and to cultivate



Structure gives a strong negation and refutation meaning

And gives an absolute and complete negation in state, time and possibility

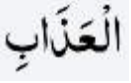


Noun indicating permeance and certainty

Root letters are connected to removing someone from their place, push away and thrusting away

Push away - to drive back or repel

Remove from - to take out completely



Root letters are connected to prevent, hinder, deter and obstruct

Are connected to punishment, torture, agony, painful and suffering

Agonising - causing intense pain and torment

وَاللَّهُ بَصِيرٌ بِمَا يَعْمَلُونَ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

بَصِيرٌ

Root letters are connected to seeing, witnessing and perception

Are connected to discerning, understanding, intelligent and mental perception

يَعْمَلُونَ

Root letters are connected to working, doing and acting

قُلْ مَنْ كَانَ عَدُوًّا لِّجِبْرِيْلَ فَاِنَّهٗ نَزَّلَهٗ عَلٰى قَلْبِكَ بِاِذْنِ اللّٰهِ مُصَدِّقًا
لِّمَا بَيْنَ يَدَيْهِ وَهُدًى وَّبُشْرٰى لِلْمُؤْمِنِيْنَ ﴿٩٧﴾

2:97

Declare, "Whoever becomes or exists as an enemy—exceeding proper bounds through hostility and aggression—of Jibraeel," then certainly he descended with it [the Quran] to gradually reveal it upon your spiritual heart, through the authorisation of Allah and as an announcement from Him—to hold a special position [of supreme authority]—in a firmly established and persistent state of verifying and bearing witness to what came before it; of guidance which shows and leads to and along the right way of life; and of good news of positive future prospects for those who are firmly established in, and persist in, sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind.

Notes:

قُلْ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

كَانَ عَدُوًّا

Structure indicates an established state

كَانَ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

عَدُوًّا

Root letters are connected to hostility, violating, aggression, exceeding proper bounds and transgressing

Are connected to treating like an enemy

Enemies - the state of opposition

Hostility - inner attitude of enmity

Aggression - outward expression through harmful action towards divine guidance

نَزَّلَهُۥ

Root letters are connected to something which is sent down, comes down, descends, stops over, to reveal, and is granted

Are connected to something which is sent down slowly and gradually

Are connected to something which holds a special position or place

بِإِذْنِ

Root letters are connected to permission

Are connected to announcing and notifying

مُصَدِّقًا

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to certifying, verifying, confirming, substantiating, attesting and bearing witness

Verifies - confirms correctness, establishes truth

Bears witness to - testifies in favour or against

بَيْنَ يَدَيْهِ

Term refers to something in front, before and in the presence of

هُدًى

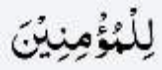
Root letters are connected to guidance, direction, showing, being led, being supplied and a way of life

Are connected to gifting and bestowing

Are connected to direction and discovering the right way

بُشْرٰى

Root letters are connected to giving and announcing good news, giving good and hopeful prospects for the future



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

مَنْ كَانَ عَدُوًّا لِّلّٰهِ وَمَلٰٓئِكَتِهٖ وَرُسُلِهٖ وَجِبْرِيْلَ وَمِيْكٰىلَ فَاِنَّ اللّٰهَ عَدُوٌّ لِّلْكٰفِرِيْنَ ﴿٩٨﴾

2:98

Whoever becomes or exists as an enemy—exceeding proper bounds through hostility and aggression—of Allah, His Angels, His Messengers—who sincerely conveyed a divine code of conduct from Allah—and of Jibraeel and Mikaeel, then certainly Allah is an enemy to those who are firmly established in, and persist in, neglecting, dissociating from, and denying their obligations to Him, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them].

Notes:

كَانَ عَدُوًّا

Structure indicates an established state

كَانَ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place



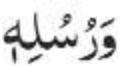
Root letters are connected to hostility, violating, aggression, exceeding proper bounds and transgressing

Are connected to treating like an enemy

Enemies - the state of opposition

Hostility - inner attitude of enmity

Aggression - outward expression through harmful action towards divine guidance

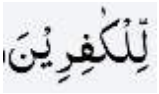


Root letters are connected to dispatching, a message and corresponding

Are connected to a messenger, delegate and apostle

Are connected to being friendly, intimate and free of affectation

Are connected to the one who carries by consecutive progressions the relation of the tidings of Him who has sent him



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

وَلَقَدْ اَنْزَلْنَآ اِلَيْكَ اٰيٰتٍۢ بَيِّنٰتٍ ۚ وَمَا يَكْفُرُ بِهَآ اِلَّا الْفٰسِقُوْنَ ﴿٩٩﴾

2:99

And there is absolutely no doubt that We have gradually revealed to you—to hold a special position [of supreme authority]—miraculous and evident signs [verses of the Quran] as clear proofs and explanations. And no one neglects, dissociates from, and denies them, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings Allah granted them], except those who are firmly established in, and persist in, openly transgressing the limits of goodness.

Notes:

لَقَدْ

لَ added for emphasis

قَدْ Used for emphasis with past tense action i.e. certainly

اَنْزَلْنَآ

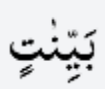
Root letters are connected to something which is sent down, comes down, descends, stops over and is granted

Are connected to something which is sent down slowly and gradually

Are connected to something which holds a special position or place



Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof



Root letters are connected to clarification, explanation, clear evidence and proof

Proofs – undeniable evidence that establish truth decisively

Explanations – making meaning clear and understandable



Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to straying from right course, deviating, sinful, immoral and transgressing the limits of the law

Are connected to emerging outwardly and openly

اَوَكُلَّمَا عٰهَدُوْا عَهْدًا نَّبَذَهٗ فَرِيْقٌ مِّنْهُمْ ۭ بَلْ اَكْثَرُهُمْ لَا يُؤْمِنُوْنَ ۝١٠٠

2:100

And is it not the case that every time they [the people of the book] took a firm pledge—any pledge [to obey Allah]—a group from amongst them violated, discarded, and abandoned it? Rather, most of them do not believe, as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind.

Notes:

عٰهَدُوْا

Root letters are connected to a charge, injunction, command, bidding, pledge, vow, promise, contract, commitment and covenant

نَّبَذَ

Root letters are connected to violating, breaking, discarding, rejecting, dismissing, abandoning and giving no value to something

Violated - broke or went against the terms

Discarded - treated as unimportant or worthless

Abandoned - completely left behind

فَرِيقٌ

Root letters are connected to a band, company, troop, detachment, unit, part, faction and team

اَكْثَرَ

A superlative

Root letters are connected to numerous, to be more and to increase

يُؤْمِنُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

وَلَمَّا جَآءَهُمْ رَسُوْلٌ مِّنْ عِنْدِ اللّٰهِ مُصَدِّقٌ لِّمَا مَعَهُمْ نَبَذَ فَرِيْقٌ مِّنَ
الَّذِيْنَ اُوْتُوا الْكِتٰبَ ۘ كِتٰبَ اللّٰهِ وَرَآءَ ظُهُوْرِهِمْ كَاَنَّهُمْ لَا يَعْلَمُوْنَ ۝١٠١

2:101

And at the very moment any Messenger—who sincerely conveyed a divine code of conduct from Allah—came to them from the presence of Allah, firmly established in, and persisting in, verifying and bearing witness to what is with them—a group from amongst those [the scholars] who have been granted the divine code of conduct [the Torah and Gospel[1]] violated, discarded, and abandoned the divine code of conduct of Allah behind their backs [behaving] as though they do not recognise, know, or understand.

Notes:

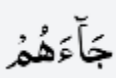
This verse refers specifically to those who possessed and understood the previous divine scriptures—the scholars—not the ordinary followers, who were not allowed direct access to them. This is evident from history and is supported by the Quran, for example, Quran 2:78

1 - The divine code of conduct is mentioned in the singular form to emphasise the shared and unified divine guidance originally granted through the Torah and affirmed by the Gospel

لَمَّا

Root letters are connected to when, since and after

Emphasizes moment of occurrence



Root letters are connected to come, produce, set forth and reaching



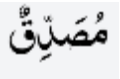
Root letters are connected to dispatching, a message and corresponding

Are connected to a messenger, delegate and apostle

Are connected to being friendly, intimate and free of affectation



Preposition – with, in the company of, in the presence of, in despite of, together and in the estimation



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to certifying, verifying, confirming, substantiating, attesting and bearing witness

Verifies - confirms correctness, establishes truth

Bears witness to - testifies in favour or against



Root letters are connected to violating, breaking, discarding, rejecting, dismissing, abandoning and giving no value to something

Violated - broke or went against the terms

Discarded - treated as unimportant or worthless

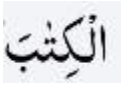
Abandoned - completely left behind



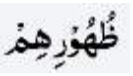
Root letters are connected to a band, company, troop, detachment, unit, part, faction and team



Root letters are connected to bring, give, grant and bestow



Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document



Root letters are connected to back, reverse, rear, rear part and reverse

يَعْلَمُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

وَاتَّبَعُوْا مَا تَتْلُوا الشَّيٰطِيْنُ عَلٰى مُلْكِ سُلَيْمٰنَ ۚ وَمَا كَفَرَ سُلَيْمٰنُ
وَلٰكِنَّ الشَّيٰطِيْنَ كَفَرُوْا يُعَلِّمُوْنَ النَّاسَ السِّحْرَ ۗ وَمَآ اُنْزِلَ عَلَى
الْمَلَكَيْنِ بِبَابِلَ هَارُوْتَ وَمَارُوْتَ ۭ وَمَا يُعَلِّمٰنِ مِنْ اَحَدٍ حَتّٰى يَقُوْلَآ
اِنَّمَا نَحْنُ فِتْنَةٌ فَلَا تَكْفُرْ ۭ فَيَتَعَلَّمُوْنَ مِنْهُمَا مَا يُفَرِّقُوْنَ بِهٖ بَيْنَ
الْمَرْءِ وَزَوْجِهٖ ۭ وَمَا هُمْ بِضَاۗرِّيْنَ بِهٖ مِنْ اَحَدٍ اِلَّا بِاِذْنِ اللّٰهِ ۭ وَيَتَعَلَّمُوْنَ
مَا يَضُرُّهُمْ وَلَا يَنْفَعُهُمْ ۭ وَلَقَدْ عَلِمُوْا لَمَنِ اشْتَرٰىهُ مَا لَهٗ فِي الْاٰخِرَةِ
مِنْ خَلَاقٍ ۭ وَلَبِئْسَ مَا شَرَوْا بِهٖٓ اَنْفُسَهُمْ ۭ لَوْ كَانُوْا يَعْلَمُوْنَ ۝١٠٢

2:102

And [instead] they were in agreement with, pursued, and adhered to what the human devils[1]—arrogantly corrupt, who deterred others from obeying Allah—followed and conveyed in opposition to the authority and control of Suleiman, thereby living under its authority. And never did Suleiman neglect, dissociate from, or deny his obligations to Allah; however, the human devils neglected, dissociated from, and denied their obligations to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude—knowingly instructing people to [participate in] sorcery—changing the purpose of what was revealed upon the two Angels, Harut and Marut—to hold a special position [of supreme authority], specifically in Babylon. And the two would not teach or clarify to even a single person until they would [consistently] declare, "We are only a

test, therefore do not neglect, dissociate from, or deny what Allah revealed [by misusing it].” Then they would study and learn from both of them what they would [mis]use [habitually] to cause dissension and separation between a man and his wife. Yet they would never—at any time or in any state—be able to harass, harm, or coerce a single person with it except with the permission of Allah. And, [in reality,] they would study and learn what would harass, harm, and coerce them[selves] and would not help or benefit them. And there is absolutely no doubt that they recognised, knew, and understood that, certainly, whoever purchased it will not have, in the life of the Hereafter, even a single share of good. And how utterly evil is what they persistently preferred and purchased in exchange for their souls. Had they only been those who recognise, know, or understand.

Notes:

The Arabic employs the present tense within a past-time framework to convey habitual, repeated, or continuous action

1 - The word “devils” is used for humans elsewhere in the same chapter of the Quran - Quran 2:14. Therefore, this verse may also be referring to humans, not supernatural beings



Root letters are connected to following, pursuing, walking behind and adhering

Are connected to being under authority and command

Are connected to concurring, being in agreement and being in conformity

In agreement - accepting the guidance internally (belief/acceptance)

Pursues - actively seeking and following it

Adheres to - remaining firm and consistent upon it

تَتْلُوا

Root letters are connected to following, reading, reciting, relating and rehearsing

الشَّيٰطِيْنُ and الشَّيٰطِيْنَ

Root letters are connected to behaving like a devil, rebellious, corrupt and arrogant

Are connected to opposing others, turning them away from their purpose

Are connected to becoming remote and distant from the mercy of Allah, the Exalted

عَلٰى مُلْكِ سُلَيْمٰنَ

عَلٰى preposition in this verse used in the context of “against”

مُلْكِ

Root letters are connected to rule, reign, authority, domination and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

مَا كَفَرَ سُلَيْمٰنُ

Structure gives a strong negation and refutation meaning

كَفَرَ , كَفَرُوْا and تَكْفُرْ

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

كَفَرُوْا يُعَلِّمُوْنَ

No conjunction between the two actions indicates how their disbelief manifested

يُعَلِّمُوْنَ , يُعَلِّمٰنِ , يَتَعَلَّمُوْنَ , عَلِمُوْا and يَعْلَمُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Are connected to teaching, instructing and educating

Are connected to studying and learning

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

السِّحْرَ

Root letters are connected to magic, sorcery, enchanting and deceiving

Are connected to spoiling something and causing corruption

Are connected to turning something away from its course, purpose and proper manner

أُنْزِلَ عَلَى الْمَلَكَيْنِ بِبَابِلَ

بِ on بِبَابِلَ shows specific and restricted location i.e. specifically

أُنْزِلَ

Root letters are connected to something which is sent down, comes down, descends, stops over and is granted

Are connected to something which is sent down slowly and gradually

Are connected to something which holds a special position or place

يَقُولَآ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

فِتْنَةٌ

Root letters are connected to a test, trial and temptation

يُفَرِّقُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to separating, distinguish, parting, dividing, severing and dissension

مَا هُمْ بِضَآرِّيْنَ بِهٖ مِنْ اَحَدٍ

Structure gives a strong negation and refutation meaning

And gives an absolute and complete negation in state, time and possibility

بِضَآرِّيْنَ and يَضُرُّهُمْ

Root letters are connected to harm, impair, damage, hurt and injure

Are connected to forcing, compelling, coercing and obliging

Harass - to trouble, intimidate, or repeatedly subject someone to unwanted and distressing treatment

Harm - to cause injury, damage, or suffering, whether physical, emotional, or otherwise

Coerce - to compel or pressure someone to act against their will through force, threats, or intimidation

بِإِذْنِ

Root letters are connected to permitting

يَنْفَعُهُمْ

Root letters are connected to being beneficial, useful and helpful

Help - immediate or short-term assistance

Benefit - to bring lasting good or gain

لَقَدْ

لَ added for emphasis

قَدْ Used for emphasis with past tense action i.e. certainly

اشْتَرٰىهُ and شَرَوْا

Root letters are connected to buying, acquiring, selling, preferring and exchanging

And are connected to persisting and persevering

مَا لَهٗ فِي الْاٰخِرَةِ مِنْ خَلَاقٍ

Noun sentence indicating established state and a strong negation



Root letters are connected to the hereafter, the final abode and something which is delayed and deferred



Root letters are connected to being fitting and suitable

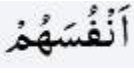
Are connected to a share, portion and a righteous share



 used for emphasis

Root letters are connected to showing the evil of something

Are connected to miserable and wretched



Root letters are connected to soul, person, mind, human being and an individual



Structure indicates repetitive action

وَلَوْ اَنَّهُمْ اٰمَنُوْا وَاتَّقَوْا لَمَثُوْبَةٌ مِّنْ عِنْدِ اللّٰهِ خَيْرٌ لَّوْ كَانُوْا يَعْلَمُوْنَ ۝١٠٣

2:103

Although, had they believed and devoutly fulfilled their duties, certainly, reward from the presence of Allah would have been preferred and better for their well-being: the correct arrangement of their matters, protection from harm, spiritual well-being, and peace of mind. Had they only been those who recognise, know, or understand.

Notes:

اٰمَنُوْا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

اتَّقَوْا

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious

لَمَثُوبَةٌ

لَ added for emphasis

Root letters are connected to reward, recompense and merit

عِنْدَ

Preposition – with, in the company of, in the presence of, in despite of, together and in the estimation

خَيْرٌ

A comparative

Root letters are connected to good, virtuous and generous

Are connected to choosing and preferring

Are connected to something better and superior

Are connected to a good state and well-being

كَانُوا يَعْلَمُونَ

Structure indicates repetitive action

يَعْلَمُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

يٰٓاَيُّهَا الَّذِيْنَ اٰمَنُوْا لَا تَقُوْلُوْا رَاعِنَا وَقُوْلُوا انْظُرْنَا وَاسْمَعُوْا ؕ
وَلِلْكٰفِرِيْنَ عَذَابٌ اَلِيْمٌ ﴿۱۰۴﴾

2:104

Those who have claimed to believe! Do not say [to the Prophet], "Give us your attention," but [instead] say, "Direct your attention to and consider us," and learn through listening attentively. And for those who are firmly established in, and persist in, neglecting, dissociating from, and denying their obligations to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them], is a deterring punishment—the utmost degree of pain and suffering.

Notes:

Some of the people of the book would intentionally mispronounce certain words to use them as insults directed at the Prophet Muhammad, peace and blessings be upon him. In response, Allah, the Exalted, commanded people to abandon the use of such words (Imam Al Wahidi's Asbab Al Nuzul, Page 21, 2:104)

اٰمَنُوْا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

تَقُوْلُوْا and قُوْلُوا

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

رَاعِنَا

Root letters are connected to listening, observing, giving attention and consideration

انْظُرْنَا

Root letters are connected to view, see, observe, pay attention, consider, regard and direct one’s attention

اسْمَعُوْا

Root letters are connected to hearing, listening, paying attention and learning

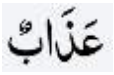
لِلْكٰفِرِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty



Root letters are connected to prevent, hinder, deter and obstruct

Are connected to punishment, torture, agony, painful and suffering

Agonising - causing intense pain and torment



Root letters are connected pain, suffering, grievous pain, excruciating and the utmost degree of pain

Pain - refers to the physical sensation (the body)

Suffering - refers to the emotional or mental distress (the mind/soul)

مَا يَوَدُّ الَّذِيْنَ كَفَرُوْا مِنْ اَهْلِ الْكِتٰبِ وَلَا الْمُشْرِكِيْنَ اَنْ يُّنَزَّلَ
عَلَيْكُمْ مِّنْ خَيْرٍ مِّنْ رَّبِّكُمْ ؕ وَاللّٰهُ يَخْتَصُّ بِرَحْمَتِهٖ مَنْ يَّشَآءُ ؕ وَاللّٰهُ
ذُو الْفَضْلِ الْعَظِيْمِ ﴿١٠٥﴾

2:105

Those who have neglected, dissociated from, and denied their obligations to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them], from amongst those [the scholars] possessing and familiar with the divine code of conduct [the Torah and Gospel[1]], and those who are firmly established in, and persist in, associating partners with Allah, do not like or want even the slightest good to be sent down upon you all from your nurturing Lord—educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority. Whereas, Allah—He distinguishes and favours with His mercy, kindness, and relief whoever He wills. And Allah is innately and eternally the Possessor and Owner of favour and kindness—great and immense.

Notes:

This verse refers specifically to those who possessed and understood the previous divine scriptures—the scholars—not the ordinary followers, who were not allowed direct access to them. This is evident from history and is supported by the Quran, for example, Quran 2:78

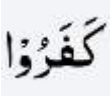
1 - The divine code of conduct is mentioned in the singular form to emphasise the shared and unified divine guidance originally granted through the Torah and affirmed by the Gospel



Root letters are connected to loving, liking, wishing and wanting

Like - inward feeling

Want - outward intention



Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

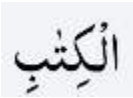
Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

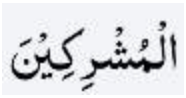


Root letters are connected to be on familiar terms with something

Are connected to possessors, adherents and followers

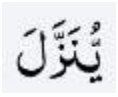


Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

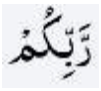
Root letters are connected to making a partner, associating and committing polytheism



Root letters are connected to sending down, causing to descend, to bestow and grant



Root letters are connected to good, virtuous and generous



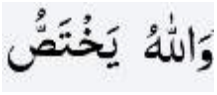
Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

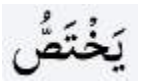
Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

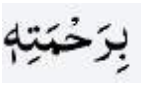
Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended



Pronoun “He” is used twice for added emphasis



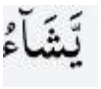
Root letters are connected to distinguishing, favouring and choosing



Root letters are connected to having mercy, compassion, sparing, letting off, saving, kindness, tenderness and pity

Mercy – withholds punishment from those who deserve it

Kindness – a broader act of granting blessings



Root letters are connected to wanting, willing and wishing



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

ذُو

Root letters are connected to possessing, owning and being endowed with

الْفَضْلِ

Root letters are connected to grace, favour, kindness, graciousness, grace and bounty

Kindness - the manner of Allah's dealing (gentle, merciful approach)

Favour - the substance of what is given (blessings, help, protection)

الْعَظِيْمِ

Root letters are connected to something which is great, magnificent, powerful, supreme, immense and mighty

Great - qualitative excellence and rank

Immense - quantitative vastness and scale

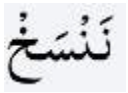
مَا نَنْسَخْ مِنْ اٰيَةٍ اَوْ نُنْسِهَا نَاْتِ بِخَيْرٍ مِّنْهَآ اَوْ مِثْلِهَا ۗ اَلَمْ تَعْلَمْ اَنَّ
اللّٰهَ عَلٰى كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيْرٌ ﴿١٠٦﴾

2:106

Whatever We replace from any miraculous and evident sign [verse of the Quran], or cause it to be forgotten—We bring forward what is preferred and better than it, or [at least] equivalent to it [in providing guidance].[1] Have you not recognised, known, and understood that Allah is innately and eternally the One who has full power, control, and ability over each and every matter, who determines and decrees according to exact measure?

Notes:

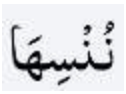
1 - Abrogation involves replacing one command or prohibition with another. This concept also applies to worldly scenarios, like medical prescriptions. To prevent side effects in patients who cannot initially tolerate a full dose, doctors often start with a lower dose and frequency, gradually increasing both over time so the body can safely benefit



Root letters are connected to superseding, abrogating, replacing and substituting



Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof



Root letters are connected to making someone forget



Root letters are connected to coming, arriving, bringing, advancing and accomplishing



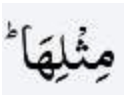
A comparative

Root letters are connected to good, virtuous and generous

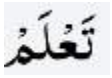
Are connected to choosing and preferring

Are connected to something better and superior

Are connected to a good state and well-being



Root letters are connected to imitate, equivalent, copy and be equal



Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



Root letters are connected to a thing, matter or affair



Root letters are connected to possessing control, strength, power and ability

Are connected to determine, decree, ordain, assess, evaluate, calculate and measurement

اَلَمۡ تَعۡلَمۡ اَنَّ اللّٰهَ لَهٗ مُلۡكُ السَّمٰوٰتِ وَالۡاَرۡضِ ؕ وَمَا لَكُمۡ مِّنۡ دُوۡنِ
اللّٰهِ مِنۡ وَّلِىٍّ وَّلَا نَصِيۡرٍ ﴿۱۰۷﴾

2:107

Have you not recognised, known, and understood that to Allah [alone], innately and eternally, belongs supreme authority, control, and ownership of the lofty skies and the Earth? And there is not for you all, from besides Allah, even a single one who is ever firmly established in, and persists in, being a powerful, protecting friend who takes responsibility for you, nor the one who defends, supports, or grants success.

Notes:

تَعۡلَمۡ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

لَهٗ مُلۡكُ السَّمٰوٰتِ وَالۡاَرۡضِ

Structure creates meaning of exclusivity

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

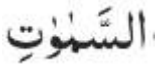


Root letters are connected to rule, reign, authority, domination and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

Ownership - full possession and belonging



Root letters are connected to sky, heaven and ceiling

Are connected to raised, elevated, high, lofty and tall



Structure shows emphasis

Root letters are connected to having power and command

Are connected to protecting, supporting, befriending, managing and assuming responsibility



Structure shows emphasis

Root letters are connected to helping, assisting and rendering victorious

Are connected to defending, saving and protecting

أَمْ تُرِيدُونَ أَنْ تَسْـَٔلُوا رَسُولَكُمْ كَمَا سُئِلَ مُوسَىٰ مِنْ قَبْلُ ۗ وَمَنْ
يَتَبَدَّلِ الْكُفْرَ بِالْإِيمَانِ فَقَدْ ضَلَّ سَوَاءَ السَّبِيلِ ﴿١٠٨﴾

2:108

Or do you all intend and seek to question and demand of your Messenger—who sincerely conveys a divine code of conduct from Allah—in the same manner as Musa was questioned and demanded of from before?[1] And whoever accepts neglect of, dissociation from, and denial of the obligations due to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them], in exchange for faith, as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling its duties, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind, has certainly become misguided—deviating from the balanced, just, and correct path, perishing as a result.

Notes:

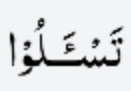
1 - The verse refers to pointless and foolish questions and demands, such as those asked by the descendants of Israel of the Prophet Musa, peace be upon him e.g. Quran 2:61 and Quran 2:67-71

تُرِيدُونَ

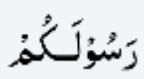
Root letters are connected to have in mind, desire, intend, mean, aim at, purpose, be bound, to drive, strive and plan to do

Intend - internal decision to act

Seek - an external effort to obtain a specific result

 and 

Root letters are connected to asking, questioning, requesting and demanding

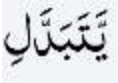


Root letters are connected to dispatching, a message and corresponding

Are connected to a messenger, delegate and apostle

Are connected to being friendly, intimate and free of affectation

Are connected to the one who carries by consecutive progressions the relation of the tidings of Him who has sent him



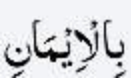
Root letters are connected to changing, altering, exchanging, substituting and receives in exchange



Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty



Root letters are connected to faith, belief, trust and confidence

Are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit



Used for emphasis with past tense action i.e. certainly



Root letters are connected to stray, err, deviate from right course, to perish and become hidden

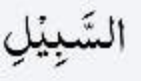


Root letters are connected to correct, the middle, midst, justice, right, equitable and uniformity

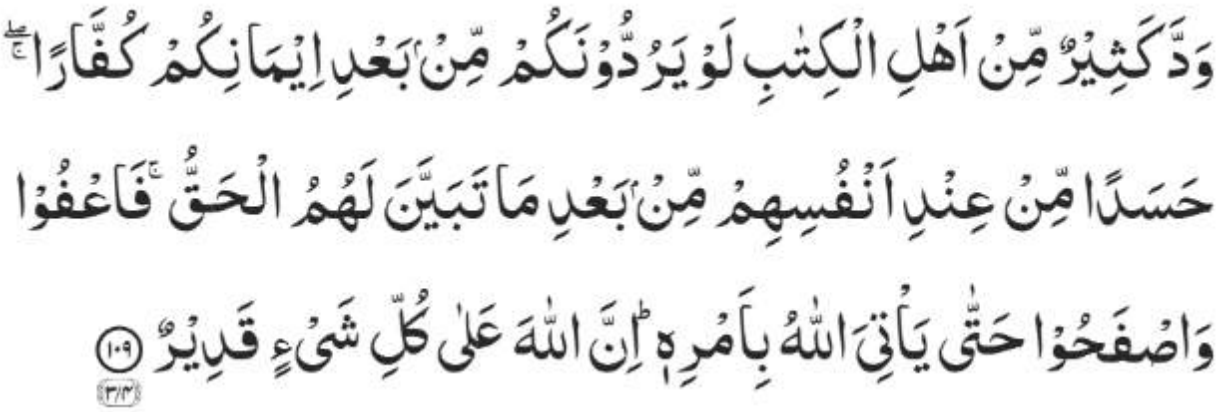
Balanced - avoids extremes and stays in the stable center

Just - built on fairness, truth, and integrity

Correct - free from error and leading to the right destination



Root letters are connected to a way, path and road


وَدَّ كَثِيْرٌ مِّنْ اَهْلِ الْكِتٰبِ لَوْ يَرُدُّوْنَكُمْ مِّنْۢ بَعْدِ اِيْمَانِكُمْ كُفَّارًا ۚ
حَسَدًا مِّنْ عِنْدِ اَنْفُسِهِمْ مِّنْۢ بَعْدِ مَا تَبَيَّنَ لَهُمُ الْحَقُّ ۚ فَاعْفُوْا
وَاصْفَحُوْا حَتّٰى يَاْتِيَ اللّٰهُ بِاَمْرِهٖ ۭ اِنَّ اللّٰهَ عَلٰي كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيْرٌ ﴿١٠٩﴾

2:109

A great many from amongst those [the scholars] possessing and familiar with the divine code of conduct [the Torah and Gospel[1]] have loved and wanted that if only they could drive you all back, after your faith—as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling its duties, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind—to a firmly established and persistent state of neglecting, dissociating from, and denying your obligations to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted you]—motivated by [self-generated and unjustified] envy from the presence of and amongst themselves, even after the truth—correct, appropriate, and purposeful—has been clearly evident, distinguished, and explained to them. Even then excuse, overlook, and forgive—while turning away [as your standard behaviour[2]] until Allah executes His command. Certainly, Allah is innately and eternally the One who has full power, control, and ability over each and every matter, who determines and decrees according to exact measure.

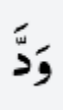
Notes:

This verse refers specifically to those who possessed and understood the previous divine scriptures—the scholars—not the ordinary followers, who

were not allowed direct access to them. This is evident from history and is supported by the Quran, for example, Quran 2:78

1 - The divine code of conduct is mentioned in the singular form to emphasise the shared and unified divine guidance originally granted through the Torah and affirmed by the Gospel

2 - The pronoun “them” has been omitted in order to encourage a general pattern of behaviour towards others, rather than a single, situation-specific response



Root letters are connected to loving, liking, wishing and wanting

Love - inward feeling

Want - outward intention

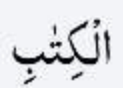


Root letters are connected to increase, plentiful, multiply, grow, many, a great many and abundance

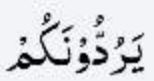


Root letters are connected to be on familiar terms with something

Are connected to possessors, adherents and followers

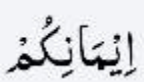


Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document



Root letters are connected to sending back, returning and driving back

Are connected to returning to a former state



Root letters are connected to faith, belief, trust and confidence

Are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit



Structure shows emphasis

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

حَسَدًا مِّنْ عِنْدِ اَنْفُسِهِمْ

Structure indicates that the envy and resentment were self-generated and not due to any justified external cause

حَسَدًا

Root letters are connected to envy and grudge

عِنْدَ

Preposition – with, in the company of, in the presence of, in despite of, together and in the estimation

اَنْفُسِهِمْ

Root letters are connected to soul, person, mind, human being and an individual

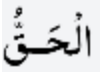
تَبَيَّنَ

Root letters are connected to becoming clear and evident, clearly distinguished and explained

Evident - openly visible and apparent

Distinguished - separated and set apart from falsehood

Explained - clarified through detailed communication



Root letters are connected to what is right, correct, proper, suitable, fitting and purposeful

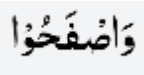


Root letters are connected to wiping out, excusing, obliterating, forgiving, pardoning and overlooking

Excuse - suspend blame (refrain from blaming or holding accountable)

Overlook - avoid dwelling on the offence (ignore or pass over something intentionally)

Forgive - internally release it (release resentment or punishment)



Root letters are connected to turning away, pardon, forgive, overlook, disregard and ignore

Turn away - outwardly disengage from it (withdraw from confrontation or retaliation)



Root letters are connected to coming, arriving, bringing, advancing, accomplishing and executing



Root letters are connected to a command, thing, affair, business and a matter



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



Root letters are connected to a thing, matter or affair



Root letters are connected to possessing control, strength, power and ability

Are connected to determine, decree, ordain, assess, evaluate, calculate and measurement

وَاَقِيْمُوا الصَّلٰوةَ وَاٰتُوا الزَّكٰوةَ ؕ وَمَا تُقَدِّمُوْا لِاَنْفُسِكُمْ مِّنْ خَيْرٍ
تَجِدُوْهُ عِنْدَ اللّٰهِ ؕ اِنَّ اللّٰهَ بِمَا تَعْمَلُوْنَ بَصِيْرٌ ﴿۱۱۰﴾

2:110

And sincerely establish, all of you, the prayer[1]—each one of them—which disciplines conduct [through the remembrance of the Hereafter], while fulfilling its conditions and etiquettes. And give the obligatory charity, which purifies the spiritual heart [from greed] and causes increase [in blessings]. And whatever you prioritise and send forward in preparation for the future, for the benefit of yourselves, from any good—you will find, obtain, and experience it in the presence of Allah. Certainly, Allah is innately and eternally the One who sees whatever you do, whether apparent or hidden, the One who is perfectly perceptive and discerning.

Notes:

1 - The prayers are mentioned in the singular, indicating that the five obligatory prayers are regarded as one unified act of worship, and therefore none of them can be left out



Root letters are connected to guarding, preserving, being sincere, honest, rectifying and establishing

Are connected to doing properly, putting in order and arranging well

الصَّلٰوةَ

Root letters are connected to praying and worshipping

Are connected to straightening something or making it soft by fire

The stages of the prayer mirror the stages of the Hereafter, serving as a continual reminder of it e.g. Quran 83:4-6, 77:48, 68:42-43 and 45:28

اٰتُوا

Root letters are connected to performing, executing, giving and granting

الزَّكٰوةَ

Root letters are connected to growing, increasing, purification and purity of heart

Are connected to the obligatory charity, alms and charity

تُقَدِّمُوْا

Root letters are connected to send forward, send ahead and send on in advance

Are connected to preparing

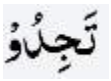
Are connected to preferring and prioritizing

لِاَنْفُسِكُمْ

Root letters are connected to soul, person, mind, human being and an individual



Root letters are connected to good, virtuous and generous



Root letters are connected to finding, obtaining, meeting with, getting, feeling, sensing, experiencing and coming across

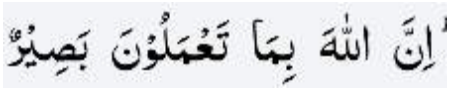
Find - discovery/encounter

Obtain - possession/acquisition

Experience - lived reality and effect



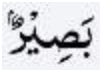
Preposition – with, in the company of, in the presence of, in despite of, together and in the estimation



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



Root letters are connected to working, doing and acting



Root letters are connected to seeing, witnessing and perception

Are connected to discerning, understanding, intelligent and mental perception

Perceptive – detecting/noticing

Discerning – judging/evaluating

وَقَالُوا لَنْ يَّدْخُلَ الْجَنَّةَ اِلَّا مَنْ كَانَ هُوْدًا اَوْ نَصٰرٰى ؕ تِلْكَ اَمَانِيُّهُمْ ؕ
قُلْ هَاتُوْا بُرْهَانَكُمْ اِنْ كُنْتُمْ صٰدِقِيْنَ ﴿۱۱۱﴾

2:111

And they have [boldly] claimed, "No one will enter the Secure Garden—Paradise—except whoever becomes and exists as a Jew or a Christian." Those are their vain hopes, desires, and demands [of success and salvation]. Reply, "Bring forward your undeniable proof if you are, in fact, [firmly established as] those who are sincere and truthful."

Notes:

قَالُوْا and قُلْ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

يَّدْخُلَ

Root letters are connected to entering, taking possession and making one's own

الْجَنَّةَ

Root letters are connected to Paradise

Are connected to protection, shield and safety

Are connected to a garden and a walled garden

مَنْ كَانَ هُوْدًا اَوْ نَصٰرٰى

Structure indicates an established state and identity

كَانَ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

اَمَانِيُّهُمْ ؕ

Root letters are connected to desiring, wishing, hoping, demanding, wishing and reading

Are connected to inventing and devising

Are connected to vain imaginations and desires

Hopes - expectations about the future

Desires - inner wishes or cravings

Demands - outward insistence or entitlement

هَاتُوْا

Root letters are connected to giving, showing and bringing forward

بُرْهَانَكُمْ

Root letter are connected to decisive evidence and proof

Are connected to sign, evidence and argument

إِنْ كُنْتُمْ صٰدِقِيْنَ

Structure indicates an established state

صٰدِقِيْنَ

Root letters are connected to being truthful, sincere and keeping one’s word

Sincere - pure inner intention

Truthful - outward truth in word and action

بَلٰى مَنْ اَسْلَمَ وَجْهَهٗ لِلّٰهِ وَهُوَ مُحْسِنٌ فَلَهٗۤ اَجْرُهٗ عِنْدَ رَبِّهٖ ۪ وَلَا خَوْفٌ عَلَيْهِمْ وَلَا هُمْ يَحْزَنُوْنَ ﴿۱۱۲﴾

2:112

But certainly, whoever has surrendered, submitted, and committed his face, by directing his purpose to the obedience of Allah, while he is in a firmly established and persistent state of showing excellent conduct [towards Allah and people]—then for him [alone] is the reward of his efforts: a good state in the presence of his nurturing Lord—educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority. And fear of the future will not dominate them [such people], and they—they [in particular] will not grieve or mourn over the past.[1]

Notes:

1 - The one who adheres to divine guidance may feel fear but will not be dominated by it; they may feel sadness but will not fall into grief and despair

اَسْلَمَ

Root letters are connected to deserting, abandoning, surrendering, submitting, becoming muslim, and committing oneself to the will of Allah

Are connected to being safe, sound, secure and well-being

Surrenders - relinquishing resistance and competing attachments

Submits - places oneself under authority

Commits - actively dedicating oneself to obedience

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

وَجْهَهٗ

Root letters are connected to face

Are connected to intention, direction, purpose, aim, goal, objective, mode and method

مُحْسِنٌ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being excellent, good, nice and lovely

Are connected to suitable, be in a proper state and in a desirable condition

فَلَهٗٓ اَجْرُهٗ عِنْدَ رَبِّهٖ

Structure shows exclusivity and entitlement to reward

اَجْرُهٗ

Root letters are connected to reward, recompense and wages for work done

عِنْدَ

Preposition – with, in the company of, in despite of, together and in the estimation

رَبِّهِمْ

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

خَوْفٌ

Root letters are connected to being frightened and scared of a future event

هُمْ يَحْزَنُوْنَ

Pronoun “they” is used twice for added emphasis

يَحْزَنُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to being sad, grieving and mourning over something in the past

Grieve - deep internal sorrow

Mourn - outward expression of sorrow

وَقَالَتِ الْيَهُوْدُ لَيْسَتِ النَّصٰرٰى عَلٰى شَيْءٍ ۖ وَّقَالَتِ النَّصٰرٰى لَيْسَتِ
الْيَهُوْدُ عَلٰى شَيْءٍ ۙ وَّهُمْ يَتْلُوْنَ الْكِتٰبَ ۗ كَذٰلِكَ قَالَ الَّذِيْنَ لَا يَعْلَمُوْنَ
مِثْلَ قَوْلِهِمْ ۚ فَاللّٰهُ يَحْكُمُ بَيْنَهُمْ يَوْمَ الْقِيٰمَةِ فِيْمَا كَانُوْا فِيْهِ
يَخْتَلِفُوْنَ ﴿١١٣﴾

2:113

The Jews have [boldly] claimed, "The Christians' [belief] has no basis in anything [truthful]," and the Christians have [boldly] claimed, "The Jews' [belief] has no basis in anything [truthful]," even though they [their scholars] recite and study the divine code of conduct [the Torah and Gospel[1]]. In the same manner, those who do not recognise, know, or understand [divine knowledge] assert the same as their claims. Therefore, Allah—He will judge with perfect wisdom between them on the Momentous Day of upheaval, raising of the dead, and rectifying affairs, concerning whatever they persist in disagreeing, disputing, and opposing each other over.

Notes:

This verse refers specifically to those who possessed and understood the previous divine scriptures—the scholars—not the ordinary followers, who were not allowed direct access to them. This is evident from history and is supported by the Quran, for example, Quran 2:78

1 - The divine code of conduct is mentioned in the singular form to emphasise the shared and unified divine guidance originally granted through the Torah and affirmed by the Gospel

قَالَتِ and قَالَ and قَوْلِهِمْ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

شَيْءٍ

Root letters are connected to a thing, matter or affair

يَتْلُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to following, reading, reciting, relating and rehearsing

يَعْلَمُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

مِثْلَ

Root letters are connected to imitate, copy and be equal

فَاللَّهُ يَحْكُمُ

Pronoun “He” is used twice for added emphasis

يَحْكُمُ

Root letters are connected to judging, deciding and decreeing

Are connected to wisdom

Are connected to accuracy, perfection and precision

يَوْمَ

Root letters are connected to days, age, era and time

Are connected to momentous and important days

الْقِيٰمَةِ

Root letters are connected to standing, rising up, rectifying and managing affairs

Are connected to resurrection, upheaval, tumult, turmoil and raising the dead

كَانُوا فِيهِ يَخْتَلِفُونَ

Structure indicates repetitive action

كَانُوا

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

يَخْتَلِفُونَ

Root letters are connected to differ, dispute, argue, disagreeing, different in opinion, debate and opposing

Disagreeing - difference in belief or opinion

Disputing - active argumentative conflict

Opposing - entrenched resistance and hostility

وَمَنْ اَظْلَمُ مِمَّنْ مَّنَعَ مَسٰجِدَ اللّٰهِ اَنْ يُّذْكَرَ فِيْهَا اسْمُهٗ وَسَعٰى فِيْ
خَرَابِهَا ؕ اُولٰٓئِكَ مَا كَانَ لَهُمْ اَنْ يَّدْخُلُوْهَآ اِلَّا خَآئِفِيْنَ ؕ لَهُمْ فِي الدُّنْيَا
خِزْيٌ وَّلَهُمْ فِي الْاٰخِرَةِ عَذَابٌ عَظِيْمٌ ﴿۱۱۴﴾

2:114

And who is more unjust than the one who opposes the places of humble obedience and worship of Allah—the Mosques—forbidding, obstructing, and preventing His exalted name from being remembered, mentioned, and studied therein—striving relentlessly, in the pursuit of their ruin, abandonment, and destruction? Those [such people]—it was never appropriate for them to enter them except in a firmly established and persistent state of fear [of Allah]. For them, in the world—the lowest state of living—is disgrace and abasement, and for them, in the life of the Hereafter, is an agonising punishment—greatly terrible and distressing.

Notes:

اَظْلَمُ

A comparative

Root letters are connected to be unjust, act tyrannically, do wrong, do evil, harm, oppress and transgress proper limits



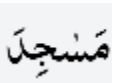
Root letters are connected to opposing, stopping, obstructing, hindering preventing, forbidding, prohibiting and blocking

Forbids - imposes restriction or prohibition

Obstructs - creates barriers or difficulties

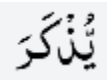
Opposes - actively resists or stands against something

Prevents - completely stops something from occurring



Noun for place and time

Root letters are connected to bowing down, prostrating, bending down, being humble, submissive, worship, honouring and paying respect



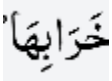
Root letters are connected to bearing in mind, mentioning, thinking, recalling, remembering, studying and reflecting



Root letters are connected to something which is exalted and high



Root letters are connected to moving around actively, making an effort, working hard, pursue, chase, to work for, striving and taking steps to accomplish a task



Root letters are connected to destroying, ruining, wrecking, demolishing, devastating, deserting and depopulating

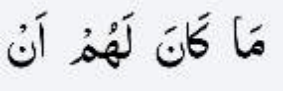
Ruin - loss of proper function and goodness

Abandonment - being neglected and left empty

Destruction - complete demolition or devastation



Root letters are connected to entering



Structure gives a timeless and absolute meaning

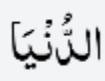


Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being frightened and scared



A superlative

Root letters are connected to being low and near

Are connected to world, life in this world, worldly existence, temporal things or possessions and earthly things and concerns



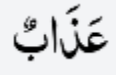
Root letters are connected to disgrace, dishonour and abasement

Disgrace - social humiliation / loss of honour

Abasement - being lowered in status / degradation



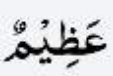
Root letters are connected to the hereafter, the final abode, life to come, and something which is delayed and deferred



Root letters are connected to prevent, hinder, deter and obstruct

Are connected to punishment, torture, agony, painful and suffering

Agonising - causing intense pain and torment



Root letters are connected to something which is great, magnificent, powerful, supreme and mighty

Are connected to something which painful, oppressive, distressing, terrible and grievous

Terrible - extremely fearful and severe

Distressing - causing emotional pain and anguish

وَلِلّٰهِ الْمَشْرِقُ وَالْمَغْرِبُ ۚ فَاَيْنَمَا تُوَلُّوْا فَثَمَّ وَجْهُ اللّٰهِ ۗ اِنَّ اللّٰهَ وَاسِعٌ عَلِيْمٌ ﴿١١٥﴾

2:115

And to Allah [alone], innately and eternally, belong the East and the West. Therefore, wherever you all turn or flee to, then there is the honourable presence of Allah. Certainly, Allah is innately and eternally the One who is infinitely vast in resources, capabilities, and generosity, whose power, authority, and knowledge encompass all things, the One who completely knows and fully understands everything.

Notes:

وَلِلّٰهِ الْمَشْرِقُ وَالْمَغْرِبُ ۚ

Structures shows exclusivity

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

تُوَلُّوْا

Root letters are connected to turning to, turning away, turning back and fleeing

وَجۡهُ

Root letters are connected to face

Are connected to honour, esteem, repute and rank

ۗ اِنَّ اللّٰهَ وَاسِعٌ عَلِيۡمٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

وَاسِعٌ

Root letters are connected to vast, wide, extensive, encompass, be able

Are connected to power, strength, capability, authority and ability

Are connected to being rich, wealthy, having vast means, plenty, abundance and generous

Power - ability or capacity to act or carry out something

Authority - recognised right or legitimacy to act or decide

عَلِيۡمٌ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

وَقَالُوا اتَّخَذَ اللّٰهُ وَلَدًا سُبْحٰنَهٗ ؕ بَلْ لَّهٗ مَا فِی السَّمٰوٰتِ وَالْاَرْضِ ؕ كُلٌّ
لَّهٗ قٰنِتُوْنَ ﴿۱۱۶﴾

2:116

And they have [boldly] claimed, "Allah has taken offspring as His own[1]." He is free from every imperfection. Rather, to Him [alone], innately and eternally, belongs whatever is in the lofty skies and the Earth. Every one of them, to Him [alone], are firmly established in, and persist in, submission [subjected to His will[2]].

Notes:

1 - The term used includes attributing every form of offspring to Allah, the Exalted, whether biologically or through adoption

2 - The submission mentioned in this verse refers to being under the full control of the decrees of Allah, the Exalted, which are inescapable

قَالُوا

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

اتَّخَذَ

Root letters are connected to taking firmly, accepting, gripping, seizing, occupying, adhering, adopting, making one's own, and making use

وَلَدًا

Root letters are connected to a child, son, offspring and descendant

سُبْحٰنَهٗ

Root letters are connected to glorifying Allah by declaring that He is free from all negative things

Are connected to moving swiftly in the obedience of Allah

Are connected to swimming constantly on the surface

لَّهٗ مَا فِي السَّمٰوٰتِ وَالْاَرْضِ and كُلٌّ لَّهٗ قٰنِتُوْنَ

Structure indicates exclusivity and totality

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

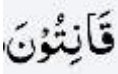
السَّمٰوٰتِ

Root letters are connected to sky, heaven and ceiling

Are connected to raised, elevated, high, lofty and tall



Root letters are connected to totality, entirety, everyone, each one, anyone, whole and all



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected obedience, humility and submission

بَدِيْعُ السَّمٰوٰتِ وَالْاَرْضِ ؕ وَاِذَا قَضٰٓى اَمْرًا فَاِنَّمَا يَقُوْلُ لَهٗ كُنْ فَيَكُوْنُ ﴿۱۱۷﴾

2:117

The One who, innately and eternally, marvellously originated the lofty skies and the Earth—uniquely, without any prior model. And whenever He decisively executes any matter, then He only declares concerning it, "Occur"—then it comes into existence.

Notes:

بَدِيْعُ السَّمٰوٰتِ وَالْاَرْضِ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

بَدِيْعُ

Root letters are connected to marvelous, wonderful, amazing, admirable, original, unique, and uncommon

Are connected to introduce, originate, do for the first time and to invent without a prior model

السَّمٰوٰتِ

Root letters are connected to sky, heaven and ceiling

Are connected to raised, elevated, high, lofty and tall

وَإِذَا قَضٰٓى

Structure indicates repetitive action

قَضٰٓى

Root letters are connected to discharging, decreeing, fulfilling, judging and executing

اَمْرًا

Common instead of proper i.e. any

Root letters are connected to a command, thing, affair, business and a matter

فَاِنَّمَا

Indicates immediate action and effortless execution

يَقُوْلُ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

كُنْ and فَيَكُوْنُ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

وَقَالَ الَّذِيْنَ لَا يَعْلَمُوْنَ لَوْلَا يُكَلِّمُنَا اللّٰهُ اَوْ تَاْتِيْنَآ اٰيَةٌ ۭ كَذٰلِكَ قَالَ
الَّذِيْنَ مِنْ قَبْلِهِمْ مِّثْلَ قَوْلِهِمْ ۭ تَشَابَهَتْ قُلُوْبُهُمْ ۭ قَدْ بَيَّنَّا الْاٰيٰتِ
لِقَوْمٍ يُّوْقِنُوْنَ ﴿١١٨﴾

2:118

And those who do not recognise, know, or understand questioned [arrogantly], "Why does Allah not [directly] speak to us, or a miraculous and evident sign [a miracle] not come to us?" In that way, those from before them spoke the same as their statement. Their inverted spiritual hearts have resembled one another. Certainly, We have clearly explained the miraculous and evident signs [verses of the Quran] for the benefit of any upright people who are firmly grounded in knowledge leading to certainty, thereby making sound and correct judgements.

Notes:

قَالَ and قَوْلِهِمْ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

يَعْلَمُوْنَ

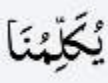
Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications



Root letters are connected to an speaking, conversing, addressing and talking



Root letters are connected to coming, arriving, producing, accomplishing, bringing, advancing and accomplishing

 and 

First one is common instead of proper i.e. any

Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof



Root letters are connected to imitate, copy and be equal

تَشَابَهَتْ

Root letters are connected to things which are similar, resemble each other, be equal to each other and causes confusion

قُلُوبُهُمْ

Root letters are connected to turn around, inverse, overturned, transformed and to become perverted

Are connected to being fickle and inconsistent, changeable and fluctuating

Inverted – the internal order is backwards valuing the bad and hating the good

قَدْ

Used for emphasis with past tense action i.e. certainly

بَيَّنَّا

Root letters are connected to making clear, showing, explaining, differentiating and distinguishing

لِقَوْمٍ

Root letters are connected to standing up, support, being straight and correct and being upright

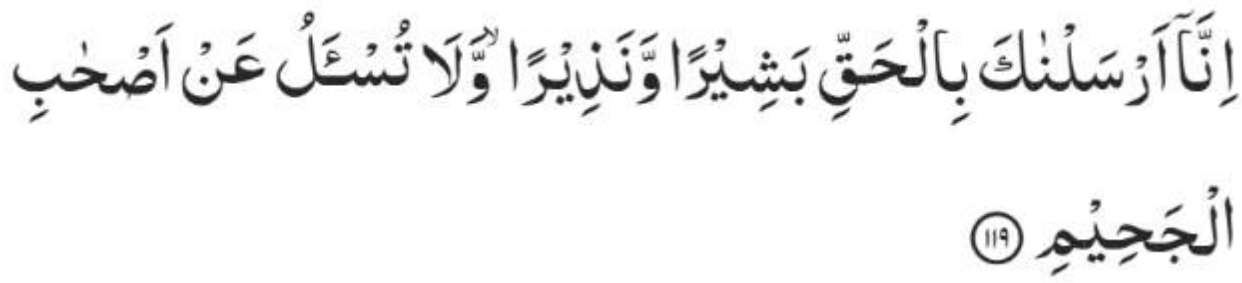
يُوقِنُونَ

Root letters are connected to being certain, making sure of something

Are connected to be well grounded in knowledge and to form the right judgements

Sound – refers to the integrity of the process of making judgements

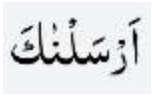
Correct – refers to the accuracy of the outcome of the judgements



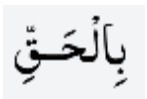
2:119

Certainly, We dispatched you according to the truth—correct, appropriate, and purposeful—in an ever firmly established and persistent state of announcing good news of positive future prospects and warning in advance [of the consequences of disobeying Allah]. And you will not be asked, interrogated, or held accountable concerning the inmates of the fiercely burning and great Fire.

Notes:



Root letters are connected to dispatching, sending out, releasing and discharging



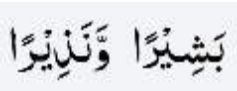
Root letters are connected to what is right, correct, true, proper, suitable, fitting and purposeful

True - matches reality

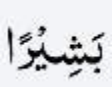
Correct - accurate and right

Appropriate - properly fitting

Purposeful - meaningful and intentional



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait



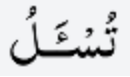
Structure shows emphasis

Root letters are connected to giving and announcing good news, giving good and hopeful prospects for the future



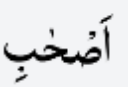
Structure shows emphasis

Root letters connected to warning, advising, cautioning against danger, notify in advance and calling attention to the consequences

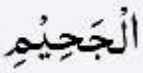


Root letters are connected to asking, requesting and demanding

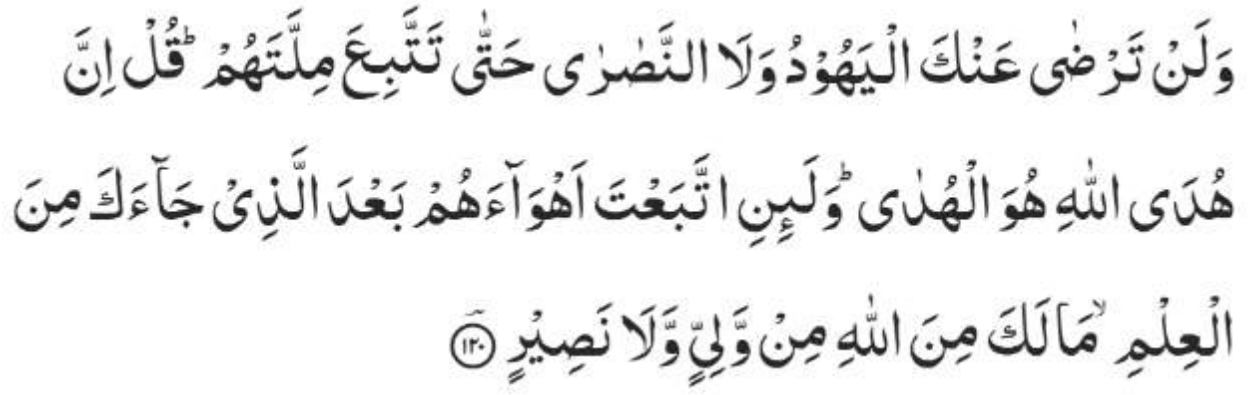
Are connected to calling to account and interrogating



Root letters are connected to companionship, association, closely associated, inmates and occupants



Root letters are connected to hell, Fire, fiercely burning Fire and a huge Fire

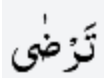

وَلَنْ تَرْضٰى عَنْكَ الْيَهُوْدُ وَلَا النَّصٰرٰى حَتّٰى تَتَّبِعَ مِلَّتَهُمْ ۭ قُلْ اِنَّ
هُدَى اللّٰهِ هُوَ الْهُدٰى ۭ وَلَىِٕنِ اتَّبَعْتَ اَهْوَاۗءَهُمْ بَعْدَ الَّذِيْ جَاۗءَكَ مِنَ
الْعِلْمِ ۙ مَا لَكَ مِنَ اللّٰهِ مِنْ وَّلِيٍّ وَّلَا نَصِيْرٍ ۝١٢٠

2:120

Neither the Jews nor the Christians will ever be pleased with, approve of, or accept you until you are in agreement with, pursue, and adhere to their religious values and principles, thereby living under their authority. Declare, "Certainly, the guidance of Allah—it is the [only] guidance [which shows and leads to and along the right way of life]." And certainly, had you been in agreement with, pursued, or adhered to their empty desires[1] after what has reached you from certain knowledge [divine revelation], there would not be for you, against Allah, even a single one who is ever firmly established in, and persists in, being a powerful, protecting friend who takes responsibility for you, nor the one who defends, supports, or grants success.

Notes:

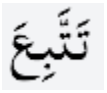
1 - This verse refers to their religious values and principles being shaped by empty desires, as their original divine teachings had been altered to suit those desires


تَرْضٰى

Root letters are connected to being satisfied, pleased, to consent, agree, approve and accept

Pleased with - emotionally satisfied and comforted by

Approve of - regard as correct, fitting, and acceptable

 and 

Root letters are connected to following, pursuing, walking behind and adhering

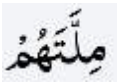
Are connected to being under authority and command

Are connected to concurring, being in agreement and being in conformity

In agreement - accepting the guidance internally (belief/acceptance)

Pursues - actively seeking and following it

Adheres to - remaining firm and consistent upon it



Root letters are connected to religious community, creed, religion, faith and a way

Values - inward beliefs and priorities

Principles - governing rules and foundations



Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

هُدَى and الْهُدٰى

Root letters are connected to guidance, direction, showing, being led, being supplied and a way of life

Are connected to gifting and bestowing

Are connected to direction and discovering the right way

لَئِنِ اتَّبَعْتَ

Conditional statement with past tense can indicate, in some cases, an impossible condition

لَئِنِ

لَ indicates emphasis

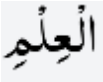
اَهْوَآءَ

Root letters are connected to passion, inclination, wish, desire, longing, whims, caprice and deviated opinions

Are connected to being to be empty and void



Root letters are connected to come, produce, set forth and reaching



Root letters are connected to knowledge, learning, information, intellect, perception and certainty



Structure shows emphasis

Root letters are connected to having power and command

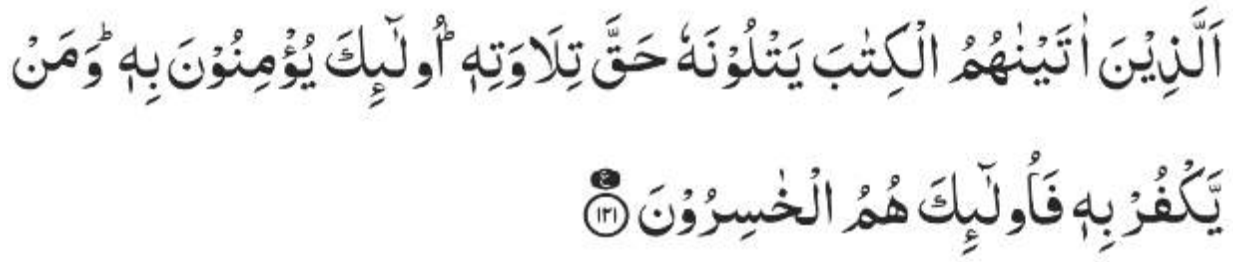
Are connected to protecting, supporting, befriending, managing and assuming responsibility



Structure shows emphasis

Root letters are connected to helping, assisting and rendering victorious

Are connected to defending, saving and protecting



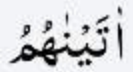
2:121

Those to whom We have granted the divine code of conduct [the Torah and Gospel[1]]—reciting, studying, and following it: establishing it according to its due right, those—they believe in it [the Quran[2]], as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind. And whoever neglects, dissociates from, and denies it, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them], then those—they [in particular] are firmly established in, and persist in, being misguided losers—heading toward destruction.

Notes:

1 - The divine code of conduct is mentioned in the singular form to emphasise the shared and unified divine guidance originally granted through the Torah and affirmed by the Gospel

2 – The pronoun referring to the Quran is indicated in the previous verse Quran 2:120



Root letters are connected to giving, granting and bestowing

الْكِتٰبَ

Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document

يَتْلُوْنَهٗ and تِلَاوَتِهٖ

Root letters are connected to following, reading, reciting, relating and rehearsing

حَقَّ

Root letters are connected to what is right, correct, proper, suitable, fitting and purposeful

Are connected to one’s due, in a proper manner, be deserving, be due, be entitled to, and a have right

Are connected to implementing, establishing and producing

يُؤْمِنُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

يَكْفُرْ

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

هُمُ الْخٰسِرُوْنَ

Pronoun “they” is used twice for added emphasis

الْخٰسِرُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to losing, getting lost and perishing

يٰبَنِيٓ اِسۡرَآءِيۡلَ اذۡكُرُوۡا نِعۡمَتِىَ الَّتِىۡۤ اَنۡعَمۡتُ عَلَيۡكُمۡ وَاَنِّىۡ فَضَّلۡتُكُمۡ عَلَى الۡعٰلَمِيۡنَ ﴿۱۲۲﴾

2:122

Descendants of Israel! Reflect on and be mindful of My favour that leads to a pleasant life, which I granted you [through divine guidance]; thus, I generously distinguished you [as its responsible representatives[1]] over all [preceding] generations [of humans and jinn] endowed with higher-level recognition, knowledge, and understanding—[marked for accountability].

Notes:

1 - Being distinguished was a responsibility, not a means for boasting over others

بَنِيٓ

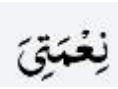
Root letters are connected to son, daughter and descendant

اذۡكُرُوۡا

Root letters are connected to bearing in mind, thinking, recalling, remembering, studying and reflecting

Reflect on - to think deeply, consider, and recognise

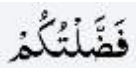
Be mindful of - to actively keep awareness of and not neglect

 and 

Root letters are connected to benefit, blessing, benefaction, favour, grace and kindness

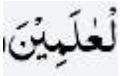
Are connected to making nice, comfortable, pleasant and to bestow favours

Are connected to living in comfort and luxury, leading a life of ease and leading a comfortable life



Root letters are connected to favouring, giving preference and distinguishing

Are connected to treating kindly and bestowing benefits



Root letters are connected to generation

Are connected to inquiring, asking and querying

Are connected to something which is marked e.g. landmark – Humans and Jinn are marked for accountability e.g. Quran 55:31

Are connected to knowledge, understanding, recognition, perception, discernment and learning – Humans and Jinn possess higher level of knowledge, intelligence and understanding in respect to divine guidance

and accountability and are therefore marked for accountability unlike other creatures

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

Same term used in Quran 25:1 which mentions the Prophet Muhammad, peace and blessings be upon him, being sent as a warner. He was sent only to those marked for accountability as a warner and not the entire creation

وَاتَّقُوْا يَوْمًا لَّا تَجْزِيْ نَفْسٌ عَنْ نَّفْسٍ شَيْـًٔا وَّلَا يُقْبَلُ مِنْهَا عَدْلٌ
وَّلَا تَنْفَعُهَا شَفَاعَةٌ وَّلَا هُمْ يُنْصَرُوْنَ ﴿١٢٣﴾

2:123

And protect yourselves from the harm of a Momentous Day by devoutly fulfilling your duties—thereby arranging all your matters correctly—a Day when a person will not be able to settle the recompense on behalf of another, nor take their place—at all. And any ransom [from accountability] will not be allowed or accepted. And pleading on their behalf from another will not help or benefit them[1]. And they—they [in particular] will not be protected, supported, or granted success.

Notes:

1 - Pleading on behalf of another will only help after permission has been granted by Allah, the Exalted, as discussed in many Islamic teachings, such as Quran 2:255

اتَّقُوْا

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious

يَوْمًا

Root letters are connected to days, age, era and time

Are connected to momentous and important days

تَجْزِىْ

Root letters are connected to repaying, rewarding and settling a debt on someone’s behalf

Are connected to taking the place, replacing and serving instead

Are connected to requite, recompense, repayment and compensation

يُقْبَلُ

Root letters are connected to accepting, agreeing and taking

Allowed - permitted to occur

Accepted - approved or received

عَدْلٌ

Root letters are connected to a ransom a price

Are connected to rectifying, straightening out, to balance something and bring about settlement

تَنْفَعُهَا

Root letters are connected to being beneficial, useful and helpful

Help - immediate or short-term assistance

Benefit - to bring lasting good or gain

شَفَاعَةٌ

Root letters are connected to advocacy, mediating, intercession, pleading for someone else and putting in a good word for another

هُمْ يُنْصَرُوْنَ

Pronoun “they” is used twice for added emphasis

يُنْصَرُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to helping, assisting, victory and success

Are connected to protecting and defending

وَاِذِ ابْتَلٰٓى اِبْرٰهٖمَ رَبُّهٗ بِكَلِمٰتٍ فَاَتَمَّهُنَّ ؕ قَالَ اِنِّىْ جَاعِلُكَ لِلنَّاسِ اِمَامًا ؕ
قَالَ وَمِنْ ذُرِّيَّتِىْ ؕ قَالَ لَا يَنَالُ عَهْدِى الظّٰلِمِيْنَ ﴿۱۲۴﴾

2:124

And [reflect on] when his nurturing Lord—educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority—purified, toughened, and proved the worth of Ibrahim through weighty decrees—extremely difficult tests. Then he precisely and perfectly accomplished every single one. He [therefore] declared, "Certainly, I am the One [whose enduring practice is firmly established in, and persists in,] entrusting, appointing, and establishing you, for all people, as an exemplar—a perfect example of right guidance." He [Ibrahim] questioned, "And also some from my descendants?" He replied, "My entrustment [to you] does not extend to those who are [firmly established in, and persist in, being] unjust—transgressing proper limits."

Notes:

ابْتَلٰٓى

Root letters are connected to trying, testing, putting to the test, cleansing and proving someone through tests and trials

Are connected to inuring, toughening and conditioning

Are connected to affliction, distress, tribal and tribulation



Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

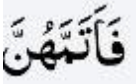
Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended



Root letters are connected to something weighty, important, words, prophecy and decree



 the attached pronoun indicates the severity of the tests and the successful completion of every single one of them

Root letters are connected to perfection, completing, executing, accomplishing and free from deficiency

Precisely - accurately and exactly

Perfectly - completely and flawlessly

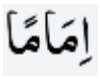


Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

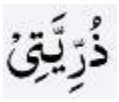


Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

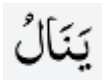
Root letters are connected to placing, inserting, making, fixing, entrusting and appointing



Root letters are connected to an exemplar, example, leading the way, leading by example and a person who is imitated



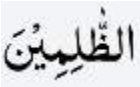
Root letters are connected to children, descendants, young children and offspring



Root letters are connected to obtaining, attaining, possessing and reaching

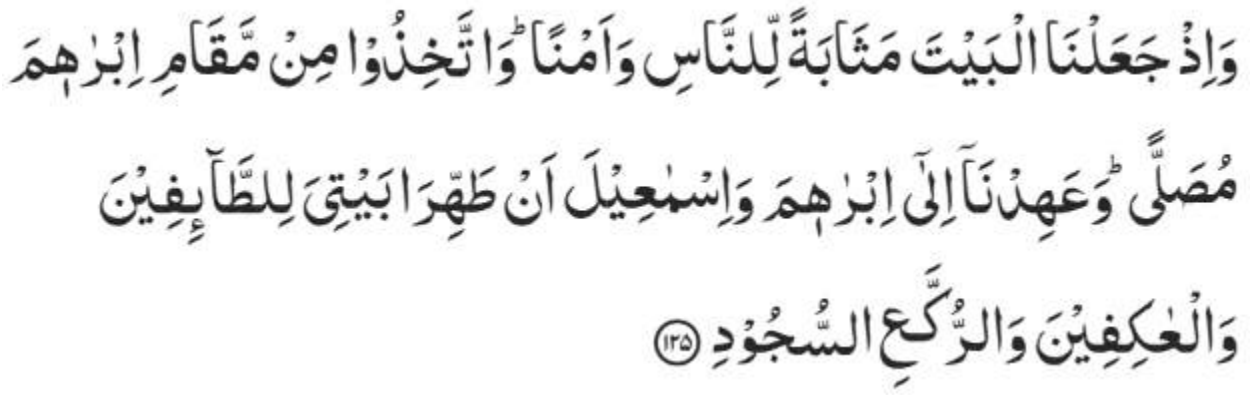


Root letters are connected to charging, entrusting, assigning and empowering



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to be unjust, act tyrannically, do wrong, do evil, harm, oppress and transgress proper limits


وَإِذْ جَعَلْنَا الْبَيْتَ مَثَابَةً لِّلنَّاسِ وَأَمْنًا ۖ وَاتَّخِذُوا مِن مَّقَامِ إِبْرَاهِيمَ
مُصَلًّى ۖ وَعَهِدْنَا إِلَىٰ إِبْرَاهِيمَ وَإِسْمَاعِيلَ أَن طَهِّرَا بَيْتِيَ لِلطَّائِفِينَ
وَالْعَاكِفِينَ وَالرُّكَّعِ السُّجُودِ ﴿١٢٥﴾

2:125

And [reflect on] when We appointed and established the House [the Kaaba] as a permanent place of great reward, safety, and constant return for all people, and as a source of peace, protection, and faith. And single out—all of you—by taking and adhering to [physically and spiritually] the established station of Ibrahim [as an exemplar—a perfect example of right guidance[1]] as a state of devotion [to Allah]. And We entrusted to Ibrahim and Ismaeel, "Purify My House—both of you—[physically and spiritually] for those who are [firmly established in, and persist in,] performing circuits around it; and those who are [firmly established in, and persist in,] devoting and secluding themselves therein [for worship]; and for those who are [firmly established in, and persist in,] humbly bowing down—prostrating in submission and worship."

Notes:

1 - The Prophet Ibrahim, peace be upon him, being an exemplar is discussed in the previous verse Quran 2:124

جَعَلْنَا

Root letters are connected to placing, inserting, making, fixing and appointing

الْبَيْتَ and بَيْتِيَ

Root letters are connected to a home, house, room and apartment

مَثَابَةً

A noun indicating time and place

Noun form indicating firmness and permanence

Root letters are connected to refuge, resort and place of return

Are connected to reward, recompense and merit

اَمْنًا

Root letters are connected to faith, belief, trust and confidence

Are connected to safety, peace, security, protection and freedom from fear

اتَّخِذُوْا

Root letters are connected to taking, obtaining and seizing

Are connected to taking firmly, occupying, occupying, adhering adopting, making use and singling out



Noun indicating time and place including a physical and spiritual state

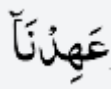
Root letters are connected to standing up, support, being straight, correct, being upright and established



Noun indicating time and place including a physical and spiritual state

Root letters are connected to ritual devotion, praying, worshipping, a ritual role or practice

And connected to closely following someone



Root letters are connected to charging, entrusting, assigning, empowering and entrusting



Root letters are connected to clean and purity



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to circumambulate, circuit and circle

الْعٰكِفِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to clinging, sticking, devoting, engaging and remaining uninterrupted

Are connected to restoring, mending and rearranging something out of order

Are connected to applying oneself to the service of Allah, the Exalted

Are connected to seclusion, isolation and withdrawing in the Mosques

الرُّكَّعِ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to bowing down, knelling down and bending the body

Are connected to humbling oneself and worshipping Allah

السُّجُوْدِ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to bowing down, prostrating, bending down

Are connected to becoming humble, submissive and worship

وَاِذْ قَالَ اِبْرٰهٖمُ رَبِّ اجْعَلْ هٰذَا بَلَدًا اٰمِنًا وَّارْزُقْ اَهْلَهٗ مِنَ الثَّمَرٰتِ
مَنْ اٰمَنَ مِنْهُمْ بِاللّٰهِ وَالْيَوْمِ الْاٰخِرِ ؕ قَالَ وَمَنْ كَفَرَ فَاُمَتِّعُهٗ قَلِيْلًا
ثُمَّ اَضْطَرُّهٗۤ اِلٰى عَذَابِ النَّارِ ؕ وَبِئْسَ الْمَصِيْرُ ﴿۱۲۶﴾

2:126

And [reflect on] when Ibrahim supplicated, "My nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority], appoint and establish this [Makkah] as a city in a [firmly established and persistent] state of peace, protection, and faith; and provide provision as a means of living for its worthy inhabitants from all types of crops and profitable investments: whoever has believed, from amongst them, in Allah and the Last Momentous Day, [as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind]." He replied, "And whoever has neglected, dissociated from, and denied their obligations to Me, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings I granted them]—I will [also] supply him with provision as a means of living and allow him to enjoy it—little and insignificant. Thereafter, I will force him towards ultimate loss and harm—to the agonising punishment of the Fire. And how evil is the journey, destination, and outcome."

Notes:

قَالَ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging



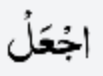
Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended



Root letters are connected to placing, setting, inserting, making, preparing, fixing and appointing



Root letters are connected to country, town, city, place, community, village and land



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to faith, belief, trust and confidence

Are connected to safety, peace, security, protection and freedom from fear

وَٱرۡزُقۡ

Root letters are connected to means of survival and living, to bestow, to nourish, to provide provision and derive benefit from something

اَهۡلَهٗ

Root letters are connected to family, native, resident, indigenous, inhabitant and home

Are connected to suiting, qualified, being worthy and deserving

الثَّمَرٰتِ

Root letters are connected to fruit, yield, produce, harvest and crops

Are connected to profit, gain benefit and to invest profitably

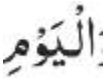
اٰمَنَ

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

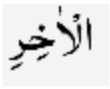
Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit



Root letters are connected to days, age, era and time

Are connected to momentous and important days



Root letters are connected to something that is last, ultimate, end, utmost and extreme

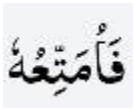
The Last Momentous Day refers to the Day of Judgement as eternity begins after that



Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty



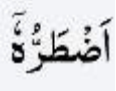
Root letters are connected to things of use e.g. commodities, utensils, goods, property, etc

Are connected to making enjoy, equipping, furnishing and supplying

Are connected to give a compensation and a gift



Root letters are connected to few, inconsiderable, insignificant, insufficient, sparse, small, little and inferior



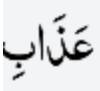
Root letters are connected to harming, damaging, hurting and injuring

Are connected to forcing, compelling and coercing

Are connected to adversity, loss and harm

Loss - deprivation and ruin

Harm - pain, injury, and suffering



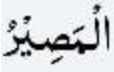
Root letters are connected to punishment, torture, agony, painful and suffering

Agonising - causing intense pain and torment



Root letters are connected to showing the evil of something

Are connected to miserable and wretched



Root letters are connected to end, outcome, result, journey, destination and end

Journey - the transition

Destination - the location

Outcome – the finality

وَاِذْ يَرْفَعُ اِبْرٰهٖمُ الْقَوَاعِدَ مِنَ الْبَيْتِ وَاِسْمٰعِيْلُ ؕ رَبَّنَا تَقَبَّلْ مِنَّا ؕ
اِنَّكَ اَنْتَ السَّمِيْعُ الْعَلِيْمُ ﴿۱۲۷﴾

2:127

And [reflect on] when Ibrahim was raising the foundations and the [religious] principles of the House [the Kaaba], along with Ismaeel, "Our nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority], approve of and accept from us. Certainly, You—You are [innately and eternally] the One whose hearing encompasses all things, the One who completely knows and fully understands everything.

Notes:

The Arabic employs the present tense rhetorically to bring the scene into immediate view and, where applicable, to convey habitual or repeated action

يَرْفَعُ

Root letters are connected to raising, elevating and lifting

الْقَوَاعِدَ

Root letters are connected to foundation, groundwork, base, precept, rule and principle



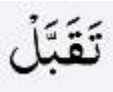
Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended



Root letters are connected to accepting, agreeing and taking

Are connected to approving, acquiesce, agree and consent



Pronoun “You” is used twice for added emphasis



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

السَّمِيْعُ

Root letters are connected to hearing, listening and paying attention

الْعَلِيْمُ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

رَبَّنَا وَاجْعَلْنَا مُسْلِمَيْنِ لَكَ وَمِنْ ذُرِّيَّتِنَآ أُمَّةً مُّسْلِمَةً لَّكَ ۖ وَأَرِنَا

مَنَاسِكَنَا وَتُبْ عَلَيْنَآ ۚ إِنَّكَ أَنتَ التَّوَّابُ الرَّحِيمُ ﴿١٢٨﴾

2:128

Our nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority], establish us as two who are [firmly established in, and persist in,] surrendering, submitting, and committing ourselves to Your obedience, [thereby attaining spiritual well-being], and establish from some of our descendants a community—an example of right guidance—that is [firmly established in, and persists in,] surrendering, submitting, and committing themselves to Your obedience. And show us our religious practices [that lead to spiritual purification and a virtuous life], and turn to us with mercy and pardon. Certainly, You—You are the One [whose enduring practice is firmly established in, and persists in,] immediately and repeatedly accepting repentance, the One who, [innately and eternally], especially grants constant mercy, kindness, and relief to those who earn it.

Notes:

رَبَّنَا

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

وَاجْعَلْنَا

Root letters are connected to placing, inserting, making, setting, fixing and appointing

مُسْلِمَيْنِ and مُّسْلِمَةً

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to deserting, abandoning, surrendering, submitting, becoming muslim, and committing oneself to the will of Allah

Are connected to being safe, sound, secure and well-being

Surrenders - relinquishing resistance and competing attachments

Submits - places oneself under authority

Commits - actively dedicating oneself to obedience

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

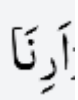
ذُرِّيَّتِنَآ

Root letters are connected to children, descendants, young children and offspring

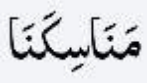


Root letters are connected to an exemplar, example, leading the way, leading by example and a person who is imitated

Are connected to a group of people from one religion, a nation, a people and race



Root letters are connected to showing, demonstrating and pointing out



Noun can be used to indicate time and place

Root letters are connected religious exercises, rites and ceremonies

Are connected to washing and purifying something

Are connected to a devout life, pious life and practicing virtue

 and 

Root letters are connected to forgiveness, pardon and turning to someone

Root letters are connected to repenting, turning and renouncing disobedience and sins

التَّوَّابُ

Intense form of “turning” has been used

اِنَّكَ اَنْتَ

Pronoun “You” is used twice for added emphasis

اِنَّكَ اَنْتَ التَّوَّابُ الرَّحِيْمُ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

الرَّحِيْمُ

Intense structure form has been used

Root letters are connected to having mercy, compassion, sparing, letting off, saving, kindness, tenderness and pity

Intense structure form has been used

Specific mercy for those who deserve and earn it

Mercy – withholds punishment from those who deserve it

Kindness – a broader act of granting blessings

رَبَّنَا وَابْعَثْ فِيهِمْ رَسُولًا مِّنْهُمْ يَتْلُوا عَلَيْهِمْ اٰيٰتِكَ وَيُعَلِّمُهُمُ
الْكِتٰبَ وَالْحِكْمَةَ وَيُزَكِّيهِمْ ۭ اِنَّكَ اَنْتَ الْعَزِيْزُ الْحَكِيْمُ ﴿١٢٩﴾

2:129

Our nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority], appoint and dispatch from within them [the residents of Makkah] a Messenger [who sincerely conveys a divine code of conduct from You] from amongst them [in lineage][1], following and reciting to them Your miraculous and evident signs [divine revelation]; and teaching and clarifying to them the divine code of conduct and wisdom [perfect judgement, self-restraint, and leadership—ensuring knowledge is used correctly]: increasing them in spiritual purity and right conduct [leading to a pleasant life]. Certainly, You—You are innately and eternally the One who overcomes all things, the Owner of respect and nobility, raising in honour and lowering whoever You will, the One who rules over and controls everything, determining every affair with perfect wisdom."

Notes:

The Prophet Muhammad, peace and blessings be upon him, is the final Messenger, peace be upon them, sent to all of mankind. Although he was appointed from amongst the Arabs, he was dispatched to all people without exception

1 - The Prophet Muhammad, peace and blessings be upon him, was both a resident of Makkah and from its people by lineage, thereby ensuring that his entire life was an open book for all to witness

رَبَّنَا

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

ابْعَثْ

Root letters are connected to raising, sending out, dispatching, delegating and appointing

رَسُوْلًا

Root letters are connected to dispatching, a message and corresponding

Are connected to a messenger, delegate and apostle

Are connected to being friendly, intimate and free of affectation

Are connected to the one who carries by consecutive progressions the relation of the tidings of Him who has sent him

يَتْلُوْا

Root letters are connected to following, reading, reciting, relating and rehearsing

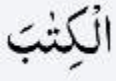


Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof

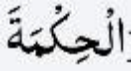


Root letters are connected to teaching, instructing and educating

Are connected to distinguishing, differentiating and making apparent



Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document



Root letters are connected to judging, deciding and decreeing

Are connected to governing, ruling, dominating and controlling

Are connected to wisdom

Are connected to accuracy, perfection and precision

Are connected to restraining the intellect from bad things

يُزَكِّيهِمْ

Root letters are connected to be just, righteous, good, be fit, suitable and be pure in heart

Are connected to increasing, making grow, purifying and chastening

Are connected to enjoying a plentiful and pleasant life

اِنَّكَ اَنْتَ

Pronoun “You” is used twice for added emphasis

اِنَّكَ اَنْتَ الْعَزِيْزُ الْحَكِيْمُ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

الْعَزِيْزُ

Root letters are connected to power, respect, honour and nobility,

Are connected to overwhelming, overcoming and dominating

Are connected to raising in esteem, elevating and exalting

Respect - honour, esteem, and recognised worth

Nobility - elevated rank, dignity, and excellence

الْحَكِيْمُ

Root letters are connected to judging, deciding and decreeing

Are connected to wisdom

Are connected to accuracy, perfection and precision

Are connected to governing, ruling, dominating and controlling

Rule - authority and command (who has the right to decide)

Control - execution and outcome (ensuring decisions take effect)

وَمَنْ يَّرْغَبُ عَنْ مِّلَّةِ اِبْرٰهٖمَ اِلَّا مَنْ سَفِهَ نَفْسَهٗ ؕ وَلَقَدِ اصْطَفَيْنٰهُ
فِي الدُّنْيَا ۚ وَاِنَّهٗ فِي الْاٰخِرَةِ لَمِنَ الصّٰلِحِيْنَ ﴿۱۳۰﴾

2:130

And who dislikes, avoids, or turns away—out of overwhelming desire for worldly things—from the religious values and principles of Ibrahim except the one who fools himself and makes himself a fool—ignorant and disgraced. And there is absolutely no doubt that We judged him sincere and pure—choosing him in preference to others as an intimate friend[1] in the world—the lowest state of living. And no doubt, he, in the life of the Hereafter, is certainly from amongst those who are firmly established in, and persist in, righteous conduct.

Notes:

1 - Allah, the Exalted, explicitly mentions in the Quran that He took the Prophet Ibrahim, peace be upon him, as an intimate friend – Quran 4:125, and He also affirms the purity of his spiritual heart in the Quran – Quran 37:83–84

يَّرْغَبُ

Root letters are connected to disliking, loathing, distasting, avoiding, abstaining, relinquishing, avoiding and turning away

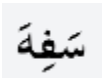
Are connected to become large in worldly hopes and vehemently desirous of worldly goods



Root letters are connected to religious community, creed, religion, faith and a way

Values - inward beliefs and priorities

Principles - governing rules and foundations



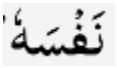
Root letters are connected to being stupid, unintelligent, foolish, ignorant and unwise

Are connected to disgrace, discredit and dishonour

Fool - behaving without wisdom or sound judgement

Ignorant - lacking knowledge and understanding

Disgraced - lowered, humiliated, and dishonoured



Root letters are connected to soul, person, mind, human being and an individual



لَ added for emphasis

قَدْ Used for emphasis with past tense action i.e. certainly

اصْطَفَيْنٰهُ

Root letters are connected to deeming clear or pure

Are connected to being sincere and honest

Are connected to choosing, selecting, singling out and granting preference over others

Are connected to a sincere friend, best friend and bosom friend

الدُّنْيَا

A superlative

Root letters are connected to being low and near

Are connected to world, life in this world, worldly existence, temporal things or possessions and earthly things and concerns

الْاٰخِرَةِ

Root letters are connected to the hereafter, the final abode and something which is delayed and deferred

لَمِنَ الصّٰلِحِيْنَ

لَ increases emphasis

الصّٰلِحِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being good, just, being in order, being righteous and pious and to do appropriate things

إِذْ قَالَ لَهُۥ رَبُّهُۥٓ أَسْلِمْ ۖ قَالَ أَسْلَمْتُ لِرَبِّ ٱلْعَٰلَمِينَ ﴿١٣١﴾

2:131

When his nurturing Lord—educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority—addressed him, "Surrender, submit, and commit yourself to My obedience [thereby attaining spiritual well-being]." He replied, "I have surrendered, submitted, and committed myself to the obedience of [Allah]—the nurturing Lord of all generations [of humans and jinn endowed with higher-level recognition, knowledge, and understanding—marked for accountability."

Notes:

قَالَ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

رَبُّهُۥٓ and رَبِّ

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

أَسْلِمْ and أَسْلَمْتُ

Root letters are connected to deserting, abandoning, surrendering, submitting, becoming muslim, and committing oneself to the will of Allah

Are connected to being safe, sound, secure and well-being

Surrenders - relinquishing resistance and competing attachments

Submits - places oneself under authority

Commits - actively dedicating oneself to obedience

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

الْعٰلَمِيْنَ

Root letters are connected to generation

Are connected to inquiring, asking and querying

Are connected to something which is marked e.g. landmark – Humans and Jinn are marked for accountability e.g. Quran 55:31

Are connected to knowledge, understanding, recognition, perception, discernment and learning – Humans and Jinn possess higher level of knowledge, intelligence and understanding in respect to divine guidance and accountability and are therefore marked for accountability unlike other creatures

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

Even though Allah, the Exalted, is Lord of all of creation but this term refers specifically to those marked for accountability—Humans and Jinn. Same term used in Quran 25:1 which mentions the Prophet Muhammad, peace and blessings be upon him, being sent as a warner. He was sent only to those marked for accountability as a warner and not the entire creation

وَوَصّٰى بِهَآ اِبْرٰهٖمُ بَنِيْهِ وَيَعْقُوْبُ ۭ يٰبَنِيَّ اِنَّ اللّٰهَ اصْطَفٰى لَكُمُ الدِّيْنَ فَلَا
تَمُوْتُنَّ اِلَّا وَاَنْتُمْ مُّسْلِمُوْنَ ۝۱۳۲

2:132

And Ibrahim enjoined, entrusted, and bequeathed his legacy [his religious values and principles] to his children, and so did Yaqoob, for it to be passed down from one generation to the next, "My children! Certainly, Allah has clearly chosen for you all, in preference to all other ways, the obedient way of life. Therefore, never—under any circumstance—die except while you are in a [firmly established and persistent] state of surrendering, submitting, and committing yourselves to the obedience of Allah [thereby attaining spiritual well-being]."

Notes:

وَصّٰى بِهَآ

بِهَآ could be referring to the religious values and principles of Ibrahim mentioned in a previous verse Quran 2:130 which matches in gender to the pronoun used in this verse

وَصّٰى

Root letters are connected to urging, recommending, ordering, charging and entrusting

Are connected to bequeath, make one’s will, hand down from generation to generation

Are connected to legacy, testament, will, bequest and instruction

 and 

Root letters are connected to son, daughter and descendant



Root letters are connected to deeming clear and pure, unpolluted,

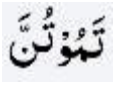
Are connected to choosing, selecting, singling out and granting preference over others

Are connected to a best part, elite and prime



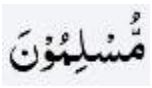
Root letters are connected to under power, obedience, owe allegiance and submissive

Are connected to way of acting, doctrine, custom, habit, creed and religion



Structure shows two levels of emphasis

Root letters are connected to dying, perishing, losing life and subsiding



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to deserting, abandoning, surrendering, submitting, becoming muslim, and committing oneself to the will of Allah

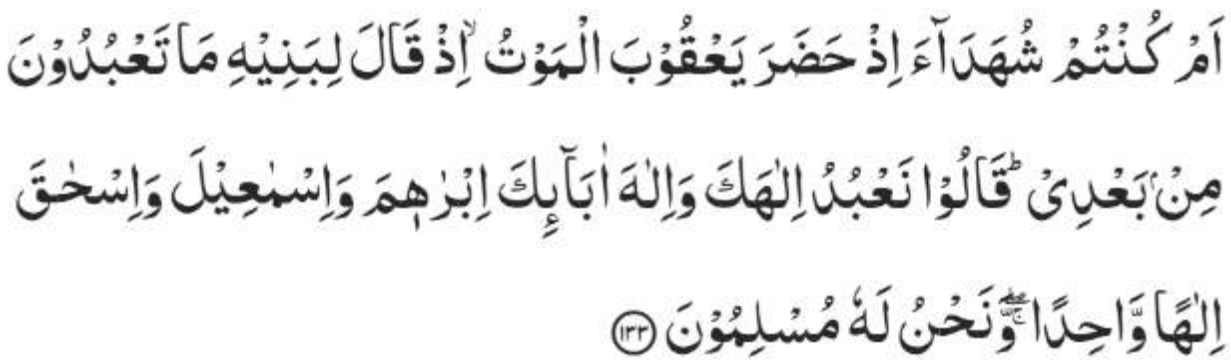
Are connected to being safe, sound, secure and well-being

Surrenders - relinquishing resistance and competing attachments

Submits - places oneself under authority

Commits - actively dedicating oneself to obedience

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

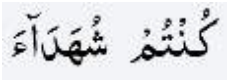

أَمْ كُنْتُمْ شُهَدَآءَ إِذْ حَضَرَ يَعْقُوبَ الْمَوْتُ ۙ إِذْ قَالَ لِبَنِيهِ مَا تَعْبُدُونَ
مِنْ بَعْدِي ۖ قَالُوا نَعْبُدُ إِلَٰهَكَ وَإِلَٰهَ آبَائِكَ إِبْرَٰهِيمَ وَإِسْمَٰعِيلَ وَإِسْحَٰقَ
إِلَٰهًا وَاحِدًا ۖ وَنَحْنُ لَهُ مُسْلِمُونَ ﴿١٣٣﴾

2:133

Or do you [the people of the book] exist as knowledgeable and reliable witnesses to when death approached Yaqoob? When he questioned his children, "To what[1] will you enslave yourselves by obeying and seeking its approval, from after me?" They replied, "We will [continue to] humbly worship and obey your God [the sole recipient of your obedience, from where goodness and protection from harm are sought, doing only what He approves of and approving of whatever He does], the God of your forefathers—Ibrahim, Ismaeel, and Ishaaq—One God [unique, without equal, and incomparable]. And we are [firmly established in, and persisting in] surrendering, submitting, and committing ourselves [only] to His obedience [thereby attaining spiritual well-being]."

Notes:

1 - By using "what" instead of "who" the verse makes it clear that anything can become a deity which is indicated in other verses e.g. Quran 45:23


كُنْتُمْ شُهَدَآءَ

Structure indicates an established state

شُهَدَآءَ

Root letters are connected to witnessing, attending, experiencing, giving evidence

Are connected to those who possess knowledge and provide evidence

حَضَرَ

Root letters are connected to being present, arriving, attending and coming

Are connected to being at the point of death

الْمَوْتُ

Root letters are connected to dying, perishing, losing life and subsiding

قَالَ and قَالُوْا

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

لِبَنِيْهِ

Root letters are connected to son, daughter and descendant

تَعْبُدُوْنَ and نَعْبُدُ

Root letters are connected to worshipping, serving, adoring, obeying with humility and enslaving

Are connected to only doing what Allah, the Exalted, approves of and approving what He decrees

اِلٰهَكَ and اِلٰهَ

Root letters are connected to god, deity, object of worship and obedience

Are connected to granting safety, peace, aid, protection and deliverance from evil

اٰبَآئِكَ

Root letters are connected to father, forefather, parents and ancestor

وَّاحِدًا

Root letters are connected to one and single

Are connected to unique, unmatched, without equal and incomparable

Unique - singular and distinct in essence

Without equal - unmatched and unsurpassed

Incomparable - cannot be likened or compared to anything

وَنَحْنُ لَهُۥ مُسْلِمُونَ

Structure shows exclusivity

مُسْلِمُونَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to deserting, abandoning, surrendering, submitting, becoming muslim, and committing oneself to the will of Allah

Are connected to being safe, sound, secure and well-being

Surrenders - relinquishing resistance and competing attachments

Submits - places oneself under authority

Commits - actively dedicating oneself to obedience

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

تِلْكَ أُمَّةٌ قَدْ خَلَتْ ۖ لَهَا مَا كَسَبَتْ وَلَكُمْ مَّا كَسَبْتُمْ ۖ وَلَا تُسْـَٔلُونَ
عَمَّا كَانُوا يَعْمَلُونَ ﴿١٣٤﴾

2:134

That is a community—an example of right guidance—that has certainly passed away. For their benefit is whatever they worked hard to earn, and for your benefit is whatever you all have worked hard to earn. And you will not be asked, interrogated, or held accountable concerning what they were persisting in doing.

.

Notes:

أُمَّةٌ

Root letters are connected to an exemplar, example, leading the way, leading by example and a person who is imitated

Are connected to a group of people from one religion, a nation, a people and race

قَدْ

Used for emphasis with past tense action

خَلَتْ

Root letters are connected to passing on, passing by, abandoning and freeing oneself

كَسَبَتْ and كَسَبْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to acquiring, earning, gathering, obtaining, gaining

Are connected to working hard and diligent

تُسْـَٔـلُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to asking, questioning, requesting and demanding

Are connected to calling to account and interrogating

كَانُوْا يَعْمَلُوْنَ

Structure indicates repetitive action

كَانُوْا

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

يَعْمَلُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to working, doing and acting

وَقَالُوا كُونُوا هُودًا أَوْ نَصَارَىٰ تَهْتَدُوا ۗ قُلْ بَلْ مِلَّةَ إِبْرَاهِيمَ حَنِيفًا ۖ وَمَا كَانَ مِنَ الْمُشْرِكِينَ ﴿١٣٥﴾

2:135

Yet they have [boldly] claimed, "Be and exist as Jews or Christians—you will then seek and follow right guidance." Reply, "Rather, the religious values and principles of Ibrahim—a [firmly established and ever-persistent] state of inclining to the natural way: obedience to Allah. And never did he become or exist from amongst those who are [firmly established in, and persist in,] associating partners with Allah."

Notes:

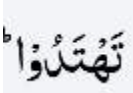
قَالُوا and قُلْ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

كُونُوا

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

Are connected to becoming humble, submitting, yielding and surrendering



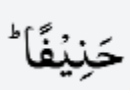
Root letters are connected to being rightly guided, guidance, direction, seeking to be rightly guided and following right guidance



Root letters are connected to religious community, creed, religion, faith and a way

Values - inward beliefs and priorities

Principles - governing rules and foundations



Structure shows emphasis

Root letters are connected to inclining to something and disinclining from something

Are connected to making oneself the servant of Allah and devoting oneself to religious service

Are connected to inclining to the right state and orthodox belief

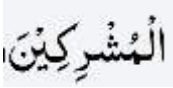


Structure gives a strong negation and refutation meaning

And gives an absolute and complete negation in state, time and possibility



Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to making a partner, associating and committing polytheism

قُوْلُوْٓا اٰمَنَّا بِاللّٰهِ وَمَآ اُنْزِلَ اِلَيْنَا وَمَآ اُنْزِلَ اِلٰٓى اِبْرٰهٖمَ وَاِسْمٰعِيْلَ

وَاِسْحٰقَ وَيَعْقُوْبَ وَالْاَسْبَاطِ وَمَآ اُوْتِيَ مُوْسٰى وَعِيْسٰى وَمَآ اُوْتِيَ النَّبِيُّوْنَ

مِنْ رَّبِّهِمْ ۚ لَا نُفَرِّقُ بَيْنَ اَحَدٍ مِّنْهُمْ ۖ وَنَحْنُ لَهٗ مُسْلِمُوْنَ ﴿١٣٦﴾

2:136

Declare—all of you—"We have believed in Allah [as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith]; and in what has been gradually revealed to us [to hold a special position of supreme authority]; and in whatever was revealed to Ibrahim, Ismaeel, Ishaaq, Yaqoob, and the tribes [from amongst their descendants]; and in whatever [divine revelation and miracles] Musa and Eesa[1] were granted; and in whatever the honoured Prophets [who conveyed divine knowledge] were granted—all originating from their nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority]. We do not make any distinction between anyone from amongst them. And we are [firmly established in, and persist in,] surrendering, submitting, and committing ourselves [only] to His obedience [thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind]."

Notes:

1 - The Prophets Musa and Eesa, peace be upon them, are perhaps mentioned separately as they were the senior Prophets, peace be upon them, sent to the descendants of Israel

قُولُوٓا

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

اٰمَنَّا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

اُنْزِلَ

Root letters are connected to something which is sent down, comes down, descends, stops over and is granted

Are connected to something which is sent down slowly and gradually

Are connected to something which holds a special position or place

الْاَسْبَاطِ

Root letters are connected to tribe, progeny and people

أُوتِيَ

Root letters are connected to bring, give, grant and bestow

النَّبِيُّونَ

Root letters are connected to informing, notifying, advising telling and announcing

Are connected to being high in rank, raised, elevated and prominent

رَّبِّهِمْ

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

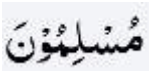
Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

نُفَرِّقُ

Root letters are connected to separating, distinguishing, parting, dividing and severing

وَنَحْنُ لَهُۥ مُسْلِمُونَ

Structure shows exclusivity



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to deserting, abandoning, surrendering, submitting, becoming muslim, and committing oneself to the will of Allah

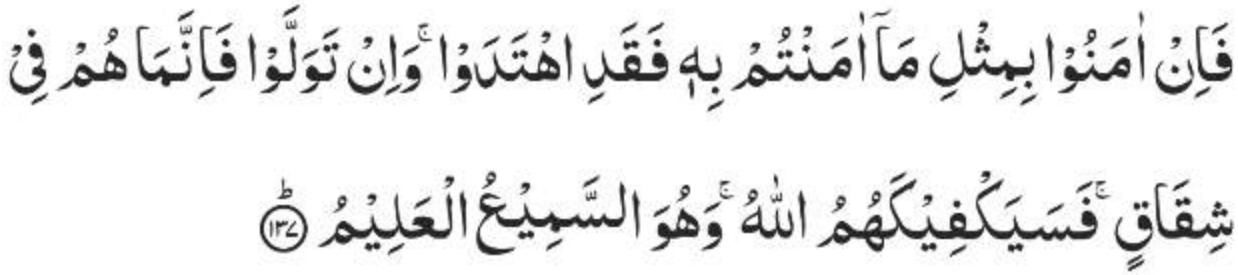
Are connected to being safe, sound, secure and well-being

Surrenders - relinquishing resistance and competing attachments

Submits - places oneself under authority

Commits - actively dedicating oneself to obedience

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit


فَاِنۡ اٰمَنُوۡا بِمِثۡلِ مَاۤ اٰمَنۡتُمۡ بِهٖ فَقَدِ اهۡتَدَوۡا ۚ وَاِنۡ تَوَلَّوۡا فَاِنَّمَا هُمۡ فِىۡ
شِقَاقٍ ۚ فَسَيَكۡفِيۡكَهُمُ اللّٰهُ ۚ وَهُوَ السَّمِيۡعُ الۡعَلِيۡمُ ﴿۱۳۷﴾

2:137

Therefore, if they [the people of the book] have believed in the same manner you all have believed in Him[1] [Allah], as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith—then certainly they have sought and followed right guidance, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind. Whereas, if they have refrained and turned away, then they are only entrenched in disunion and opposition—deep hostility. Even then Allah will [in every case[2]] protect and suffice you concerning them. And He is innately and eternally the One whose hearing encompasses all things, the One who completely knows and fully understands everything.

Notes:

1 - The pronoun refers to Allah, the Exalted, as He was mentioned last in the previous verse Quran 2:136, and belief in Him is not acceptable until it aligns with Islamic teachings

2 - The clarifier is not mentioned i.e. sufficing in respect to what, thereby indicating sufficiency in every case and situation, and the mode and scope of sufficiency is left open i.e. no noun is used such as against

اٰمَنُوۡا and اٰمَنۡتُمۡ

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit



Root letters are connected to an example, to resemble, to copy and compare

Are connected to similar case, simile, parable, precedent, state and condition



Used for emphasis with past tense action i.e. certainly



Root letters are connected to guidance, direction, seeking to be rightly guided and following right guidance



Root letters are connected to turning, turning away, turning back, fleeing, desisting, refraining and forgoing

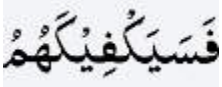


Root letters are connected to disunity, dissention, discord, opposition, hostility, contention and schism

Disunion - lack of unity and harmony

Opposition - active disagreement and resistance

Hostility - animosity, hatred, and ill-will



Root letters are connected to protecting, saving, sparing, sufficing and being enough



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



Root letters are connected to hearing, listening and paying attention



Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

صِبۡغَةَ اللّٰهِ ۚ وَمَنۡ اَحۡسَنُ مِنَ اللّٰهِ صِبۡغَةً ۖ وَّنَحۡنُ لَهٗ عٰبِدُوۡنَ ﴿۱۳۸﴾

2:138

“The colour imprinted by Allah—His religion. And who is better suited and more excellent than Allah at imprinting religion? And we are [firmly established in, and persist in,] humbly worshiping and obeying Him [alone]—doing only what He approves of and approving of whatever He does.”

Notes:

Since the people of the book were addressed in the preceding verses, Allah, the Exalted, here declares the true form of baptism—one that is spiritual rather than physical

صِبۡغَةَ

Root letters are connected to immersing, staining, colouring, dying and baptizing

Are connected to embracing a religion

Are connected to altering something

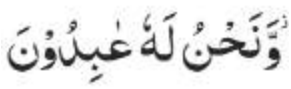
اَحۡسَنُ

A comparative

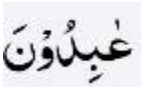
Root letters are connected to being excellent, good, nice, lovely, suitable, be fitting and proper

Suitable - more fitting and appropriate

Excellent - superior in perfection and goodness



Structure shows exclusivity



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to worshipping, serving, adoring, obeying with humility and enslaving

Are connected to only doing what Allah, the Exalted, approves of and approving what He decrees

قُلْ أَتُحَآجُّونَنَا فِي اللَّهِ وَهُوَ رَبُّنَا وَرَبُّكُمْ ۚ وَلَنَآ أَعْمَالُنَا وَلَكُمْ
أَعْمَالُكُمْ ۚ وَنَحْنُ لَهُۥ مُخْلِصُونَ ﴿١٣٩﴾

2:139

Question them, "Do you all dispute with and raise objections against us concerning Allah, with the aim of defeating, while He is our nurturing Lord and your nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority]? And for our benefit are our efforts, actions, and achievements, and for your benefit are your efforts, actions, and achievements. And we are [firmly established in, and persist] in sincere devotion and faithful obedience to Him [alone, thereby attaining freedom and salvation]."

Notes:

قُلْ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

تُحَآجُّونَنَا

Root letters are connected to defeating and overcoming

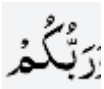
Are connected to disputing, debating and arguing

Are connected to pleading, raising objections and objecting

Dispute with - engage in argument

Raise objections against - challenge specific points

Defeat you with it - aim for rhetorical or argumentative victory

 and 

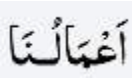
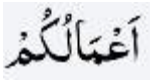
Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

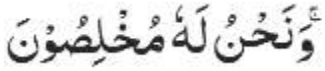
 and 

Root letters are connected to work, actions, effort, labour, achievements, activity, service, striving and toiling

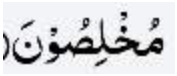
Efforts - striving and exertion

Actions - deeds and conduct

Achievements - results and acquired outcomes



Structure shows exclusivity



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to dedication, loyalty, devotion, sincerity and to faithfully worship Allah

Are connected to becoming free, liberated, saved, rescued and attaining salvation

Sincerely devout - wholly dedicated to worship and obedience with purity of intention

Faithfully obedient - consistently complying with Allah’s commands

Freedom - release from spiritual bondage and corruption

Salvation - safety from punishment and ruin

اَمۡ تَقُوۡلُوۡنَ اِنَّ اِبۡرٰهٖمَ وَاِسۡمٰعِيۡلَ وَاِسۡحٰقَ وَيَعۡقُوۡبَ وَالۡاَسۡبَاطَ كَانُوۡا هُوۡدًا
اَوۡ نَصٰرٰى ؕ قُلۡ ءَاَنۡتُمۡ اَعۡلَمُ اَمِ اللّٰهُ ؕ وَمَنۡ اَظۡلَمُ مِمَّنۡ كَتَمَ شَهَادَةً عِنۡدَهٗ
مِنَ اللّٰهِ ؕ وَمَا اللّٰهُ بِغَافِلٍ عَمَّا تَعۡمَلُوۡنَ ﴿۱۴۰﴾

2:140

Or do you all [the scholars from amongst the people of the book boldly] claim that Ibrahim, Ismaeel, Ishaaq, Yaqoob, and the tribes [from amongst their descendants] certainly existed as Jews or Christians?" Question them, "Are you more knowing and understanding or is Allah?" Then who is more unjust than the one who has withheld, subdued, and concealed clear evidence in his possession originating from Allah? And Allah is never—at any time or in any state—the One who is unmindful or disregarding of whatever you do.

Notes:

This verse refers specifically to those who possessed and understood the previous divine scriptures—the scholars—not the ordinary followers, who were not allowed direct access to them. This is evident from history and is supported by the Quran, for example, Quran 2:78

تَقُوۡلُوۡنَ and ؕ قُلۡ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

الْأَسْبَاطَ

Root letters are connected to tribe, progeny and people

كَانُوا هُودًا أَوْ نَصَارَىٰ

Structure indicates an established state

أَعْلَمُ

A comparative

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

أَظْلَمُ

A comparative

Root letters are connected to be unjust, act tyrannically, do wrong, do evil, harm, oppress and transgress proper limits

كَتَمَ

Root words are connected to hiding, subduing, curbing, suppressing, repressing, concealing, making secret and to withhold

Withhold - to hold back or not disclose

Subdue - to suppress, weaken, or keep under control

Conceal - to hide completely from view or knowledge

شَهَادَةً

Root letters are connected to those evidence, testimony, witness, statement and declaration

عِنْدَ

Preposition – with, in the company of, in the presence of, in despite of, together and in the estimation

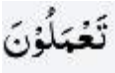
وَمَا اللهُ بِغَافِلٍ عَمَّا تَعْمَلُوْنَ

Structure gives a strong negation and refutation meaning

And gives an absolute and complete negation in state, time and possibility

بِغَافِلٍ

Root letters are connected to neglect, being heedless, disregard, ignore, be unmindful and carelessness



Root letters are connected to working, doing and acting

تِلْكَ أُمَّةٌ قَدْ خَلَتْ ۖ لَهَا مَا كَسَبَتْ وَلَكُمْ مَّا كَسَبْتُمْ ۖ وَلَا تُسْـَٔلُونَ
عَمَّا كَانُوا يَعْمَلُونَ ﴿١٤١﴾

2:141

That is a community—an example of right guidance—that has certainly passed away. For their benefit is whatever they worked hard to earn, and for your benefit is whatever you all have worked hard to earn. And you will not be asked, interrogated, or held accountable concerning what they were persisting in doing.

Notes:

This verse warns the scholars amongst the people of the book, as mentioned in the previous verse, not to conceal or misinterpret their divine teachings, falsely believing that the deeds of their forefathers will save them

أُمَّةٌ

Root letters are connected to an exemplar, example, leading the way, leading by example and a person who is imitated

Are connected to a group of people from one religion, a nation, a people and race

قَدْ

Used for emphasis with past tense action

خَلَتْ

Root letters are connected to passing on, passing by, abandoning and freeing oneself

كَسَبَتْ and كَسَبْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to acquiring, earning, gathering, obtaining, gaining

Are connected to working hard and diligent

تُسْـَٔـلُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to asking, questioning, requesting and demanding

Are connected to calling to account and interrogating

كَانُوْا يَعْمَلُوْنَ

Structure indicates repetitive action

يَعْمَلُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to working, doing and acting

سَيَقُوْلُ السُّفَهَآءُ مِنَ النَّاسِ مَا وَلّٰىهُمْ عَنْ قِبْلَتِهِمُ الَّتِيْ كَانُوْا
عَلَيْهَا ؕ قُلْ لِّلّٰهِ الْمَشْرِقُ وَالْمَغْرِبُ ؕ يَهْدِيْ مَنْ يَّشَآءُ اِلٰى صِرَاطٍ
مُّسْتَقِيْمٍ ﴿۱۴۲﴾

2:142

The weak in judgement and deficient in intellect from amongst the people [of the book] will question [disapprovingly], "What has caused them [the believers] to refrain and turn away from their prayer direction which they existed upon before?" Reply, "To Allah [alone, innately and eternally,] belong the East and the West." He gifts guidance to whoever He wills by showing and leading to and along the right way of life: a firmly established, upright, and natural open path—ensuring the correct management of all affairs.

Notes:

سَيَقُوْلُ

Future tense structure

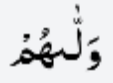
Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging



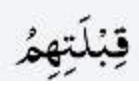
Root letters are connected to incompetent, weak of judgement, poor in understanding and deficient in intellect

Weak of Judgement - an inability to distinguish between what is truly beneficial and what is harmful (illusions vs. reality)

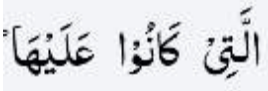
Deficient in Intellect - a lack of the deep reasoning required to recognise complex truths or moral imperatives.



Root letters are connected to turning, turning away, turning back, fleeing, desisting, refraining and forgoing



Root letters are connected to prayer direction, means, manner and method



Structure indicates an established state



Structure creates meaning of exclusivity

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



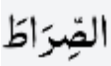
Root letters are connected to guidance, direction, showing, being led, being supplied and a way of life

Are connected to gifting and bestowing

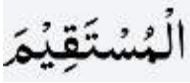
Are connected to direction and discovering the right way



Root letters are connected to wanting, willing and wishing



Root letters are connected to a long and open way or path



Noun indicating an established state

Root letters are connected to preserve, established, managing affairs, fix and rectify, arrange well, reform, upright and be in a right state

Are connected to natural normal state

وَكَذٰلِكَ جَعَلْنٰكُمْ اُمَّةً وَّسَطًا لِّتَكُوْنُوْا شُهَدَآءَ عَلَى النَّاسِ وَيَكُوْنَ
الرَّسُوْلُ عَلَيْكُمْ شَهِيْدًا ؕ وَمَا جَعَلْنَا الْقِبْلَةَ الَّتِيْ كُنْتَ عَلَيْهَآ اِلَّا
لِنَعْلَمَ مَنْ يَّتَّبِعُ الرَّسُوْلَ مِمَّنْ يَّنْقَلِبُ عَلٰى عَقِبَيْهِ ؕ وَاِنْ كَانَتْ
لَكَبِيْرَةً اِلَّا عَلَى الَّذِيْنَ هَدَى اللّٰهُ ؕ وَمَا كَانَ اللّٰهُ لِيُضِيْعَ اِيْمَانَكُمْ ؕ اِنَّ
اللّٰهَ بِالنَّاسِ لَرَءُوْفٌ رَّحِيْمٌ ﴿۱۴۳﴾

2:143

And in that way [through a firmly established, upright, and natural open path[1]], We have entrusted, appointed, and established you all as a balanced and just community—an example of right guidance—so that you be and exist as knowledgeable and reliable witnesses over the people, and the Messenger—who sincerely conveys a divine code of conduct from Allah—be and exist over you as a knowledgeable and reliable witness. And We have not appointed and established the [new] prayer direction which you are existing upon except so that We differentiate and make apparent the one who [truly] is in agreement with, pursues, and adheres to the Messenger, thereby living under his authority, from the one who turns back upon his heels. Certainly, it [the new prayer direction] exists as appearing extremely intolerable except upon those who Allah has gifted guidance by showing and leading to and along the right way of life. And Allah is never one to be unmindful of your faith, nor cause it to be in vain—faith as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling its duties, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind. No doubt, Allah is toward all people innately and eternally the One who certainly is intensely kind and

compassionate, the One who especially grants constant mercy, kindness, and relief to those who earn it.

Notes:

1 - The right path is mentioned in the previous verse Quran 2:142

جَعَلْنٰكُمْ and جَعَلْنَا

Root letters are connected to placing, setting, inserting, making, preparing, fixing and appointing

أُمَّةً

Root letters are connected to an exemplar, example, leading the way, leading by example and a person who is imitated

Are connected to a group of people from one religion, a nation, a people and race

وَسَطًا

Root letters are connected to being in the middle and moderate

Are connected to just

Are connected to serving as a medium

لِّتَكُونُوا شُهَدَآءَ

Structure indicates an established state

لِّتَكُونُوا , وَيَكُونَ , كُنتَ and كَانَتْ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

شُهَدَآءَ and شَهِيدًا

Root letters are connected to witnessing, attending, experiencing, giving evidence

Are connected to those who possess knowledge and provide evidence

الرَّسُولُ and الرَّسُولَ

Root letters are connected to dispatching, a message and corresponding

Are connected to a messenger, delegate and apostle

Are connected to being friendly, intimate and free of affectation

Are connected to the one who carries by consecutive progressions the relation of the tidings of Him who has sent him

الْقِبْلَةَ

Root letters are connected to prayer direction, means, manner and method



Structure indicates an established state



Root letters are connected to distinguishing, differentiating and making apparent



Root letters are connected to following, pursuing, walking behind and adhering

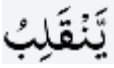
Are connected to being under authority and command

Are connected to concurring, being in agreement and being in conformity

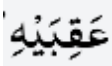
In agreement - accepting the guidance internally (belief/acceptance)

Pursues - actively seeking and following it

Adheres to - remaining firm and consistent upon it



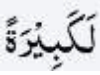
Root letters are connected to being turned, turned around, upturned, be reversed, be changed, altered, converted, change, shift instantly and change over



Root letters are connected to heels



Structure indicates an established state



 increases emphasis

Root letters are connected to becoming too great, too distressing and painful, too burdensome, to appear intolerable and insurmountable



Root letters are connected to guidance, direction, showing, being led, being supplied and a way of life

Are connected to gifting and bestowing

Are connected to direction and discovering the right way



Structure gives a strong negation and refutation meaning

And gives an absolute and complete negation in state, time and possibility

لِيُضِيْعَ

Root letters are connected to being in vain, allowing to perish, causing to vanish and wasting

Are connected to neglecting and being unmindful

اِيْمَانَكُمْ

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, safety and security

اِنَّ اللّٰهَ بِالنَّاسِ لَرَءُوْفٌ رَّحِيْمٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

لَرَءُوْفٌ

لَ increases emphasis

Form used shows intensity

Root letters are connected to showing mercy, pity, kindness and grace

Intensely kind - constantly showing immense goodness and tenderness

Intensely compassionate - greatly caring, relieving hardship and granting mercy

الرَّحِيْمُ

Noun indicating an established state

Root letters are connected to having mercy, compassion, sparing, letting off, saving, kindness, tenderness and pity

Intense structure form has been used

Specific mercy for those who deserve and earn it

Mercy – withholds punishment from those who deserve it

Kindness – a broader act of granting blessings

قَدْ نَرٰى تَقَلُّبَ وَجْهِكَ فِي السَّمَآءِ ۚ فَلَنُوَلِّيَنَّكَ قِبْلَةً تَرْضٰىهَا ۪ فَوَلِّ
وَجْهَكَ شَطْرَ الْمَسْجِدِ الْحَرَامِ ۭ وَحَيْثُ مَا كُنْتُمْ فَوَلُّوْا وُجُوْهَكُمْ
شَطْرَهٗ ۭ وَاِنَّ الَّذِيْنَ اُوْتُوا الْكِتٰبَ لَيَعْلَمُوْنَ اَنَّهُ الْحَقُّ مِنْ رَّبِّهِمْ ۭ وَمَا
اللّٰهُ بِغَافِلٍ عَمَّا يَعْمَلُوْنَ ۝۱۴۴

2:144

Certainly, We continuously observe and regard the repeated turning of your [the Prophet's] honourable face, directing your purpose in the direction of the lofty sky. Therefore, no doubt We will most certainly turn you toward a prayer direction you are pleased with and approve of. Then turn your honourable face—directing your purpose—in the direction of the sacred and revered Mosque—the place of humble obedience and worship of Allah. And no matter where you all may be; turn your honourable faces—directing your [unified] purpose—in its direction. And no doubt those [the scholars] who have been granted the divine code of conduct [the Torah and Gospel[1]] certainly recognise, know, and understand that it is the truth—correct, appropriate, and purposeful—originating from their nurturing Lord—educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority. And Allah is never—at any time or in any state—the One who is unmindful or disregarding of whatever they do.

Notes:

This verse refers specifically to those who possessed and understood the previous divine scriptures—the scholars—not the ordinary followers, who were not allowed direct access to them. This is evident from history and is supported by the Quran, for example, Quran 2:78

1 - The divine code of conduct is mentioned in the singular form to emphasise the shared and unified divine guidance originally granted through the Torah and affirmed by the Gospel

قَدْ

Used for emphasis with past tense action i.e. certainly

قَدْ نَرٰى

Structure indicates a continuous, certain and uninterrupted action

نَرٰى

Root letters are connected to seeing, perceiving, discerning, regarding and considering

تَقَلُّبَ

Root letters are connected to turn around, inverse, overturned and fluctuate

وَجْهِكَ , وَجْهَكَ and وُجُوْهَكُمْ

Root letters are connected to face

Are connected to intention, direction, purpose, aim, goal, objective, mode and method

Are connected to honour, esteem, repute and rank

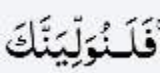


The preposition indicates ongoing attention and anticipation of a response i.e. in the direction of the sky rather than towards the sky



Root letters are connected to sky, heaven and ceiling

Are connected to raised, elevated, high, lofty and tall



Structure indicates three layers of emphasis

Root letters are connected to turning to, turning away, turning back and fleeing



Root letters are connected to prayer direction, means, manner and method

تَرۡضٰىهَا

Root letters are connected to being satisfied, pleased, to consent, agree, approve and accept

Pleased with - emotionally satisfied and comforted by

Approve of - regard as correct, fitting, and acceptable

فَوَلِّ and وَلُّوۡا

Root letters are connected to turning

شَطۡرَ and شَطۡرَهٗ

Root letters are connected to direction, distance and remoteness

الۡمَسۡجِدِ

Noun for place and time

Root letters are connected to bowing down, prostrating, bending down, being humble, submissive, worship, honouring and paying respect

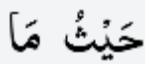
الۡحَـرَامِ

Root letters are connected to declaring sacred, inviolable, unlawful, forbidden

Are connected to respect, revered and venerated

Sacred - made holy and specially sanctified

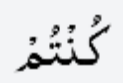
Revered - greatly honoured and deeply respected



Structure creates a meaning which is unconditional and applicable in every place and situation



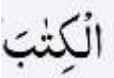
Structure gives a timeless and firmly established command



Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place



Root letters are connected to bring, give, grant and bestow



Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document

لَيَعْلَمُوْنَ

لَ used for emphasis

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

اَلْحَقُّ

Root letters are connected to what is right, correct, true, proper, suitable, fitting and purposeful

True - matches reality

Correct - accurate and right

Appropriate - properly fitting

Purposeful - meaningful and intentional

رَّبِّهِمْ

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

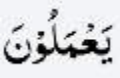


Structure gives a strong negation and refutation meaning

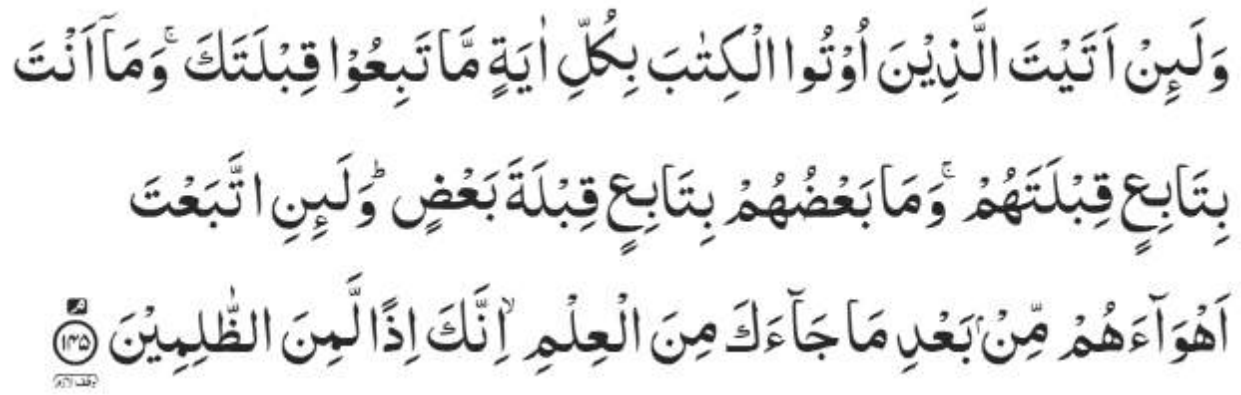
And gives an absolute and complete negation in state, time and possibility



Root letters are connected to neglect, being heedless, disregard, ignore, be unmindful and carelessness



Root letters are connected to working, doing and acting


وَلَئِنْ اَتَيْتَ الَّذِيْنَ اُوْتُوا الْكِتٰبَ بِكُلِّ اٰيَةٍ مَّا تَبِعُوْا قِبْلَتَكَ ۚ وَمَآ اَنْتَ
بِتَابِعٍ قِبْلَتَهُمْ ۚ وَمَا بَعْضُهُمْ بِتَابِعٍ قِبْلَةَ بَعْضٍ ۭ وَلَئِنِ اتَّبَعْتَ
اَهْوَآءَهُمْ مِّنْۢ بَعْدِ مَا جَآءَكَ مِنَ الْعِلْمِ ۙ اِنَّكَ اِذًا لَّمِنَ الظّٰلِمِيْنَ ﴿١٤٥﴾

2:145

And certainly, even if you were to come to those [the scholars] who have been granted the divine code of conduct [the Torah and Gospel[1]] with each and every possible miraculous and evident sign, never would they be in agreement with, pursue, or adhere to your method—the prayer direction. And you will never—at any time or in any state—be the one who is in agreement with, pursues, or adheres to their method, thereby living under its authority. And never will some of them [from the sects within the people of the book[2]]—at any time or in any state—be those who are in agreement with, pursue, or adhere to the method of the others. And certainly, had you been in agreement with, pursued, or adhered to their empty desires even after what has reached you from certain knowledge [divine revelation]—no doubt you, in that case, would certainly be from those who are firmly established in, and persist in, being unjust—transgressing proper limits.

Notes:

This verse refers specifically to those who possessed and understood the previous divine scriptures—the scholars—not the ordinary followers, who were not allowed direct access to them. This is evident from history and is supported by the Quran, for example, Quran 2:78

1 - The divine code of conduct is mentioned in the singular form to emphasise the shared and unified divine guidance originally granted through the Torah and affirmed by the Gospel

2 – This part of the verse refers collectively to the various sects and religious groups among the People of the Book, as the reciprocal expression indicates mutual refusal to agree with, pursue, or adhere to one another's religious method

اَ تَيْتَ

Root letters are connected to coming, arriving, bringing, advancing and accomplishing

اُوْتُوا

Root letters are connected to bring, give, grant and bestow

الْكِتٰبَ

Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document

بِكُلِّ اٰيَةٍ

Structure shows totality and emphasis

اٰيَةٍ

Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof

مَّا تَبِعُوْا

Structure shows strong and complete negation

تَبِعُوْا

Root letters are connected to following, pursuing, walking behind and adhering

Are connected to being under authority and command

Are connected to concurring, being in agreement and being in conformity

In agreement - accepting the guidance internally (belief/acceptance)

Pursues - actively seeking and following it

Adheres to - remaining firm and consistent upon it

قِبْلَتَكَ and قِبْلَةَ

Root letters are connected to prayer direction, means, manner and method

مَآ اَنْتَ بِتَابِعٍ قِبْلَتَهُمْ and مَا بَعْضُهُمْ بِتَابِعٍ قِبْلَةَ بَعْضٍ

Structure gives a strong negation and refutation meaning

And gives an absolute and complete negation in state, time and possibility



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to following, pursuing, walking behind and adhering

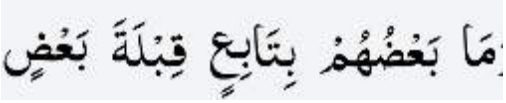
Are connected to being under authority and command

Are connected to concurring, being in agreement and being in conformity

In agreement - accepting the guidance internally (belief/acceptance)

Pursues - actively seeking and following it

Adheres to - remaining firm and consistent upon it



Structure indicates that even within the people of the book are disunited sects



Conditional statement with past tense can indicate, in some cases, an impossible condition



 indicates emphasis

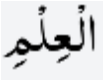


Root letters are connected to passion, inclination, wish, desire, longing, whims, caprice and deviated opinions

Are connected to being to be empty and void



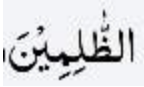
Root letters are connected to come, produce, set forth and reaching



Root letters are connected to knowledge, learning, information, intellect, perception and certainty



 indicates emphasis



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to be unjust, act tyrannically, do wrong, do evil, harm, oppress and transgress proper limits

اَلَّذِيْنَ اٰتَيْنٰهُمُ الْكِتٰبَ يَعْرِفُوْنَهٗ كَمَا يَعْرِفُوْنَ اَبْنَآءَهُمْ ؕ وَاِنَّ فَرِيْقًا

مِّنْهُمْ لَيَكْتُمُوْنَ الْحَقَّ وَهُمْ يَعْلَمُوْنَ ﴿۱۴۶﴾

2:146

Those [the scholars] to whom We have granted the divine code of conduct [the Torah and Gospel[1]] are acquainted with, recognise, and know it [the sacred and revered Mosque as the new prayer direction[2]] as true with certain knowledge, in the same manner they are acquainted with, recognise, and know their own children. Yet no doubt a group from amongst them certainly withhold, subdue, and conceal the truth—correct, appropriate, and purposeful—while they recognise, know, and understand.

Notes:

This verse refers specifically to those who possessed and understood the previous divine scriptures—the scholars—not the ordinary followers, who were not allowed direct access to them. This is evident from history and is supported by the Quran, for example, Quran 2:78

1 - The divine code of conduct is mentioned in the singular form to emphasise the shared and unified divine guidance originally granted through the Torah and affirmed by the Gospel

2 - While the recognition most immediately refers to the sacred and revered Mosque as the new prayer direction discussed in the surrounding verses, it may also extend to the Quran and to the Prophet Muhammad, peace and blessings be upon him, both of whom were already described within their divine scriptures, as indicated in the Quran e.g. Quran 7:157

اٰتَيْنٰهُمُ

Root letters are connected to giving, granting and bestowing

الْكِتٰبَ

Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document

يَعْرِفُوْنَهٗ and يَعْرِفُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to know, recognise, perceive, recognise as right and being acquainted

Are connected to know by specific and distinct knowledge

Acquainted with - prior familiarity beforehand

Recognise - identify it upon seeing it fulfilled

Know - possess certainty and understanding regarding it

اَبْنَآءَهُمْ

Root letters are connected to son, daughter and descendant

فَرِيْقًا

Root letters are connected to a band, company, troop, detachment, unit, part, faction and team

لَيَكْتُمُوْنَ

 indicates emphasis

Root words are connected to hiding, subduing, curbing, suppressing, repressing, concealing, making secret and to withhold

Withhold - to hold back or not disclose

Subdue - to suppress, weaken, or keep under control

Conceal - to hide completely from view or knowledge

الْحَـقَّ

True - matches reality

Correct - accurate and right

Appropriate - properly fitting

Purposeful - meaningful and intentional

يَعْلَمُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

اَلۡحَقُّ مِنۡ رَّبِّكَ فَلَا تَكُوۡنَنَّ مِنَ الۡمُمۡتَرِيۡنَ ﴿۱۴۷﴾

2:147

The truth—correct, appropriate, and purposeful—is from your nurturing Lord—educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority. Therefore, never—under any circumstance—be and exist from those who are firmly established in, and persist in, opposition or doubt.

Notes:

اَلۡحَقُّ

Root letters are connected to what is right, correct, true, proper, suitable, fitting and purposeful

True - matches reality

Correct - accurate and right

Appropriate - properly fitting

Purposeful - meaningful and intentional

رَّبِّكَ

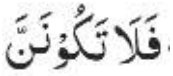
Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

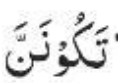
Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

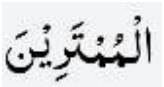
Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended



Structure indicates double emphasis



Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place



Structure gives a strong negation and refutation meaning

Root letters are connected to arguing, disputing, resisting and opposing

Are connected to doubting

وَلِكُلٍّ وِّجْهَةٌ هُوَ مُوَلِّيْهَا فَاسْتَبِقُوا الْخَيْرٰتِ ۭ اَيْنَ مَا تَكُوْنُوْا يَاْتِ بِكُمُ
اللّٰهُ جَمِيْعًا ۭ اِنَّ اللّٰهَ عَلٰي كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيْرٌ ۝۱۴۸

2:148

And for every one of them there is a way of life and purpose that they are firmly established in, and persist in, turning towards, pursuing, and committing themselves to. Therefore, strive—all of you—to be foremost in good qualities and actions which lead to well-being. No matter where you may come to be, Allah will bring you forth—all without exception. Certainly, Allah is innately and eternally the One who has full power, control, and ability over each and every matter, who determines and decrees according to exact measure.

Notes:

لِكُلٍّ

Root letters are connected to totality, entirety, everyone, each one, anyone, whole and all

وِّجْهَةٌ

Root letters are connected to directing and facing

Are connected to making one’s purpose, way of life, mode and method

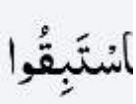


Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to turning

Are connected to pursuing and following immediately

Are connected to devoting and committing



Root letters are connected to trying to beat, to race and to compete

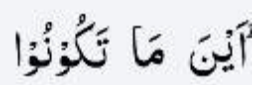
Are connected to striving to excel and putting in effort



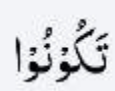
Root letters are connected to good, virtuous and generous

Are connected to a good state and well-being

Are connected to good qualities and actions



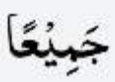
Structure indicates time, place, state and shows emphasis



Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place



Root letters are connected to coming, arriving, bringing, bringing forward, advancing and accomplishing



Root letters are connected to whole, entire, all, entirety and altogether

Indicates all without exception



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



Root letters are connected to a thing, matter or affair



Root letters are connected to possessing control, strength, power and ability

Are connected to determine, decree, ordain, assess, evaluate, calculate and measurement

وَمِنْ حَيْثُ خَرَجْتَ فَوَلِّ وَجْهَكَ شَطْرَ الْمَسْجِدِ الْحَرَامِ ۖ وَإِنَّهُ
لَلْحَقُّ مِنْ رَبِّكَ ۗ وَمَا اللَّهُ بِغَافِلٍ عَمَّا تَعْمَلُونَ ﴿١٤٩﴾

2:149

And from wherever you may depart; turn your honourable face—directing your purpose—in the direction of the sacred and revered Mosque—the place of humble obedience and worship of Allah. And no doubt it [the sacred and revered Mosque as the new prayer direction] is certainly the truth—correct, appropriate, and purposeful—from your nurturing Lord—educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority. And Allah is never—at any time or in any state—the One who is unmindful or disregarding of whatever you all do.

Notes:

خَرَجْتَ

Root letters are connected to going out, walking out, emerging and departing

فَوَلِّ

Root letters are connected to turning

وَجْهَكَ

Root letters are connected to face

Are connected to intention, direction, purpose, aim, goal, objective, mode and method

شَطْرَ

Root letters are connected to direction, distance and remoteness

الْمَسْجِدِ

Noun for place and time

Root letters are connected to bowing down, prostrating, bending down, being humble, submissive, worship, honouring and paying respect

الْحَرَامِ

Root letters are connected to declaring sacred, inviolable, unlawful, forbidden

Are connected to respect, revered and venerated

Sacred - made holy and specially sanctified

Revered - greatly honoured and deeply respected

لَلْحَقُّ

لَ adds emphasis

Root letters are connected to what is right, correct, true, proper, suitable, fitting and purposeful

True - matches reality

Correct - accurate and right

Appropriate - properly fitting

Purposeful - meaningful and intentional

رَبِّكَ

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

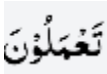
وَمَا اللهُ بِغَافِلٍ عَمَّا تَعْمَلُوْنَ

Structure gives a strong negation and refutation meaning

And gives an absolute and complete negation in state, time and possibility



Root letters are connected to neglect, being heedless, disregard, ignore, be unmindful and carelessness



Root letters are connected to working, doing and acting

وَمِنْ حَيْثُ خَرَجْتَ فَوَلِّ وَجْهَكَ شَطْرَ الْمَسْجِدِ الْحَرَامِ ۖ وَحَيْثُ مَا
كُنْتُمْ فَوَلُّوا وُجُوهَكُمْ شَطْرَهُ لِئَلَّا يَكُونَ لِلنَّاسِ عَلَيْكُمْ حُجَّةٌ إِلَّا
الَّذِينَ ظَلَمُوا مِنْهُمْ فَلَا تَخْشَوْهُمْ وَاخْشَوْنِي وَلِأُتِمَّ نِعْمَتِي عَلَيْكُمْ
وَلَعَلَّكُمْ تَهْتَدُونَ ﴿١٥٠﴾

2:150

And from wherever you may depart; turn your honourable face—directing your purpose—in the direction of the sacred and revered Mosque—the place of humble obedience and worship of Allah. And no matter where you all may be; turn your honourable faces—directing your [unified] purpose—in its direction, so that no argument or proof exists for the people by which they may dispute with and raise objections against you with the aim of defeating, except those who have been unjust from amongst them—transgressing proper limits. Therefore, do not fear and revere them; and [instead] fear and deeply revere Me, so that I may precisely and perfectly complete My favour upon you—in order that you may seek and follow right guidance, thereby achieving a pleasant life.

Notes:

خَرَجْتَ

Root letters are connected to going out, walking out, emerging and departing

فَوَلِّ and فَوَلُّوا

Root letters are connected to turning

وَجْهَكَ and وُجُوهَكُمْ

Root letters are connected to face

Are connected to intention, direction, purpose, aim, goal, objective, mode and method

شَطْرَ and شَطْرَهُۥ

Root letters are connected to direction, distance and remoteness

الْمَسْجِدِ

Noun for place and time

Root letters are connected to bowing down, prostrating, bending down, being humble, submissive, worship, honouring and paying respect

الْحَرَامِ

Root letters are connected to declaring sacred, inviolable, unlawful, forbidden

Are connected to respect, revered and venerated

Sacred - made holy and specially sanctified

Revered - greatly honoured and deeply respected

حَيْثُ مَا

Structure creates a meaning which is unconditional and applicable in every place and situation

حَيْثُ مَا كُنْتُمْ فَوَلُّوا

Structure gives a timeless and firmly established command

يَكُوْنَ and كُنْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

حُجَّةٌ

Root letters are connected to defeating, disputing, debating and arguing

Are connected to evidence, allegation, plea, argument and excuse

ظَلَمُوْا

Root letters are connected to be unjust, act tyrannically, do wrong, do evil, harm, oppress and transgress proper limits

تَخْشَوْهُمْ and وَاخْشَوْنِيْ

Root letters are connected to fear, anxiety and dread

Are connected to deep respect, reverence and honour

Fear - response to power and authority

Reverence - response to greatness and majesty

لِأُتِمَّ

Root letters are connected to perfection, completing, executing, accomplishing and free from deficiency

Precisely - accurately and exactly

Perfectly - completely and flawlessly

نِعْمَتِيْ

Root letters are connected to making nice, comfortable, pleasant and to bestow favours

Are connected to living in comfort and luxury, leading a life of ease and leading a comfortable life

تَهْتَدُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to being rightly guided, guidance, direction, seeking to be rightly guided and following right guidance

كَمَآ اَرْسَلْنَا فِيْكُمْ رَسُوْلًا مِّنْكُمْ يَتْلُوْا عَلَيْكُمْ اٰيٰتِنَا وَيُزَكِّيْكُمْ
وَيُعَلِّمُكُمُ الْكِتٰبَ وَالْحِكْمَةَ وَيُعَلِّمُكُمْ مَّا لَمْ تَكُوْنُوْا تَعْلَمُوْنَ ﴿١٥١﴾

2:151

In the same manner, We have dispatched from within you all [the residents of Makkah] a Messenger—who sincerely conveys a divine code of conduct from Us—from amongst you [in lineage][1], following and reciting to you Our miraculous and evident signs [verses of the Quran], increasing you in spiritual purity and right conduct, leading to a pleasant life: teaching and clarifying to you the divine code of conduct and wisdom—perfect judgement, self-restraint, and leadership—ensuring knowledge is used correctly. Thus, he teaches and clarifies to you what you had not been firmly established in recognising, knowing, or understanding.

Notes:

The Prophet Muhammad, peace and blessings be upon him, is the final Messenger, peace be upon them, sent to all of mankind. Although he was appointed from amongst the Arabs, he was dispatched to all people without exception

1 - The Prophet Muhammad, peace and blessings be upon him, was both a resident of Makkah and from its people by lineage, thereby ensuring that his entire life was an open book for all to witness

أَرْسَلْنَا and رَسُوْلًا

Root letters are connected to dispatching, sending out, releasing and discharging

Are connected to dispatching, a message and corresponding

Are connected to a messenger, delegate and apostle

Are connected to being friendly, intimate and free of affectation

Are connected to the one who carries by consecutive progressions the relation of the tidings of Him who has sent him

يَتْلُوْا

Root letters are connected to following, reading, reciting, relating and rehearsing

اٰيٰتِنَا

Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof

يُزَكِّيْهِمْ

Root letters are connected to be just, righteous, good, be fit, suitable and be pure in heart

Are connected to increasing, making grow, purifying and chastening

Are connected to enjoying a plentiful and pleasant life

يُعَلِّمُهُمُ and تَعْلَمُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to teaching, instructing and educating

Are connected to distinguishing, differentiating and making apparent

Are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

الْكِتٰبَ

Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document

الْحِكْمَةَ

Root letters are connected to judging, deciding and decreeing

Are connected to governing, ruling, dominating and controlling

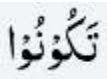
Are connected to wisdom

Are connected to accuracy, perfection and precision

Are connected to restraining the intellect from bad things



Structure indicates an established and permanent state



Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

فَاذْكُرُونِيٓ أَذْكُرْكُمْ وَاشْكُرُوا لِي وَلَا تَكْفُرُونِ ﴿١٥٢﴾

2:152

Therefore, remember and be mindful of Me—all of you; I will recall you [with mercy]. And show gratitude to Me [by using your blessings in My obedience], and do not neglect, dissociate from, and deny your obligations to Me, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings I granted you].

Notes:

اذْكُرُونِيٓ and أَذْكُرْكُمْ

Root letters are connected to remember, bear in mind, think, keep in mind and be mindful of

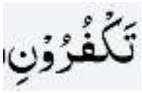
Remember Me - conscious recollection and mention

Be mindful of Me - continual awareness influencing conduct

اشْكُرُوا

Root letters are connected to being thankful, grateful, and praising

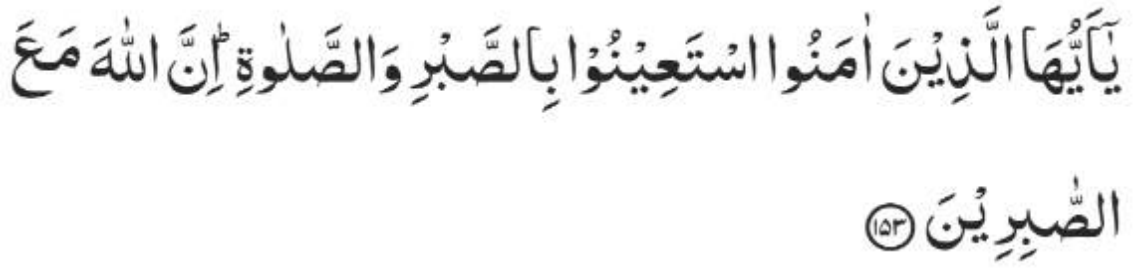
Are connected to showing gratitude with the heart, tongue and limbs



Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty



2:153

Those who have claimed to believe! Seek refuge, relief, and support after applying every possible effort through patience, perseverance [in obedience], and self-restraint [from complaint], and through the prayer[1]—each one of them—which disciplines conduct [through the remembrance of the Hereafter]. Certainly, Allah is with those who are firmly established in, and persist in, patience, perseverance [in obedience], and self-restraint [from complaint].

Notes:

1 - The prayers are mentioned in the singular, indicating that the five obligatory prayers are regarded as one unified act of worship, and therefore none of them can be left out

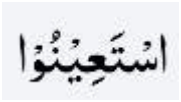


Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

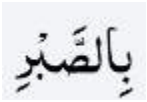
Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit



Root letters are connected to helping, aiding and assisting

Are connected to freeing, relieving and liberating

Are connected to seeking help after full effort to accomplish a task



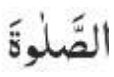
Root letters are connected to binding and shackling

Are connected to being patient, persevering, forbearing, enduring, refraining, abstaining, desisting and self-control

Patience - enduring difficulty without panic or loss of steadiness

Perseverance - continuing steadily in obedience over time without giving up

Self-restraining [from complaint] - controlling oneself from expressing objection or dissatisfaction



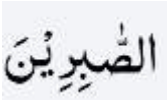
Root letters are connected to praying and worshipping

Are connected to straightening something or making it soft by fire

The stages of the prayer mirror the stages of the Hereafter, serving as a continual reminder of it e.g. Quran 83:4-6, 77:48, 68:42-43 and 45:28



Preposition – with, in the company of, in despite of, together and in the estimation



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to binding and shackling

Are connected to being patient, persevering, forbearing, enduring, refraining, abstaining, desisting and self-control

Patience - enduring difficulty without panic or loss of steadiness

Perseverance - continuing steadily in obedience over time without giving up

Self-restraining [from complaint] - controlling oneself from expressing objection or dissatisfaction

وَلَا تَقُوْلُوْا لِمَنْ يُّقْتَلُ فِيْ سَبِيْلِ اللّٰهِ اَمْوَاتٌ ۢبَلْ اَحْيَآءٌ وَّلٰكِنْ

لَّا تَشْعُرُوْنَ ﴿١٥٤﴾

2:154

And do not claim—all of you—concerning the one who is being killed in the path of [obeying] Allah that they[1] are dead or deprived. Rather, they are alive, unbroken, and free from sorrow; however, you do not perceive, realise, or become truly aware.

Notes:

The Arabic employs the present tense rhetorically to bring the scene into immediate view and, where applicable, to convey habitual or repeated action

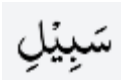
1 - The verse shifts from singular to plural highlighting their elevated individual and collective status

تَقُوْلُوْا

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

يُّقْتَلُ

Root letters are connected to killing and murdering

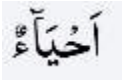


Root letters are connected to a way, path and road

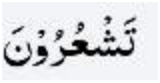


Root letters are connected to dying, perishing, losing life and subsiding

Are connected to being poor, base or abject



Root letters are connected to living, live, alive, lively, active, unbroken, undaunted, undismayed, free from sorrow, whole and sound



Root letters are connected to being aware, to notice, realise, to sense, perceive and to understand with depth

Perceive - initial sensing / noticing

Realise - intellectual recognition / understanding

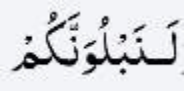
Become aware - conscious acknowledgement

وَلَنَبْلُوَنَّكُمْ بِشَيْءٍ مِّنَ الْخَوْفِ وَالْجُوْعِ وَنَقْصٍ مِّنَ الْاَمْوَالِ
وَالْاَنْفُسِ وَالثَّمَرٰتِ ۗ وَبَشِّرِ الصّٰبِرِيْنَ ۙ﴿۱۵۵﴾

2:155

And no doubt, We will most certainly purify, toughen, and prove the worth of all of you through difficult tests involving fear [of the future]; hunger, starvation, and insatiable desires; and involving damage, shortage, and loss of possessions; of precious people, privileges, and wishes; and of profitable investments and fruits of labour. Yet announce good news of positive future prospects to those who are firmly established in, and persist in, patience, perseverance [in obedience], and self-restraint [from complaint].

Notes:

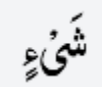

لَنَبْلُوَنَّكُمْ

Structure shows three layers of emphasis

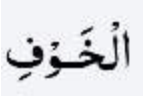
Root letters are connected to trying, testing, putting to the test, cleansing and proving the worth of someone through tests and trials

Are connected to inuring, toughening and conditioning

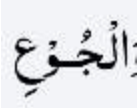
Are connected to affliction, distress, tribal and tribulation



Root letters are connected to a thing, matter or affair



Root letters are connected to being frightened and scared of a future event



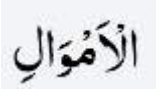
Root letters are connected to being hungry and starving

Are connected to strongly desiring and extremely eager in wishing

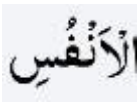


Root letters are connected to decrease, diminish, impair, incomplete, insufficient and inadequate

Are connected to damage, loss, shortage and deficiency



Root letters are connected to property, assets, goods, wealth, and possessions

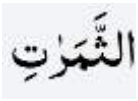


Root letters are connected to soul and person

Are connected to something valuable and precious

Are connected to freedom, liberty and conveniences

Are connected to wishes, appetites, desires and pride

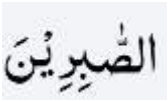


Root letters are connected to fruit, yield, produce, harvest and crops

Are connected to profit, gain benefit and to invest profitably



Root letters are connected to giving and announcing good news, giving good and hopeful prospects for the future



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to binding and shackling

Are connected to being patient, persevering, forbearing, enduring, refraining, abstaining, desisting and self-control

Patience - enduring difficulty without panic or loss of steadiness

Perseverance - continuing steadily in obedience over time without giving up

Self-restraining [from complaint] - controlling oneself from expressing objection or dissatisfaction

الَّذِيْنَ اِذَآ اَصَابَتْهُمْ مُّصِيْبَةٌ ۙ قَالُوْٓا اِنَّا لِلّٰهِ وَاِنَّآ اِلَيْهِ رٰجِعُوْنَ ۝١٥٦

2:156

Those [are the ones] who whenever any unavoidable hardship intended for them befalls them respond by declaring, “Certainly, we belong [exclusively] to Allah, and certainly we, to Him [alone], are [firmly established in, and persisting in,] returning and presenting ourselves for critical examination.”

Notes:

اِذَآ اَصَابَتْهُمْ

Structure shows inevitability, certainty and repetition

اَصَابَتْهُمْ

Root letters are connected to hitting, injuring, reaching, befalling, hitting the mark, to be afflicted and hitting the intended target

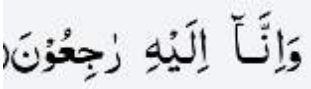
مُّصِيْبَةٌ

Common

Root letters are connected to affliction, calamity, misfortune and disaster



Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

 and 

Structures show exclusivity and completeness



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to coming back, returning, resorting or reverting to a former place/state/quality

Are connected to present oneself and examine critically

أُولَٰئِكَ عَلَيْهِمْ صَلَوَٰتٌ مِّن رَّبِّهِمْ وَرَحْمَةٌ ۖ وَأُولَٰئِكَ هُمُ الْمُهْتَدُونَ ﴿١٥٧﴾

2:157

Those—upon them [especially] are blessings from their nurturing Lord—educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority—and mercy, kindness, and relief. And those—they [in particular] are firmly established in, and persist in, seeking and following right guidance.

Notes:

أُولَٰئِكَ عَلَيْهِمْ صَلَوَٰتٌ مِّن رَّبِّهِمْ

Structure shows specification

صَلَوَٰتٌ

Root letters are connected to benedictions, blessings and grace

رَّبِّهِمْ

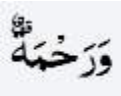
Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended



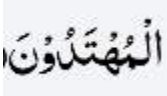
Root letters are connected to having mercy, compassion, sparing, letting off, saving, kindness, tenderness and pity

Mercy – withholds punishment from those who deserve it

Kindness – a broader act of granting blessings

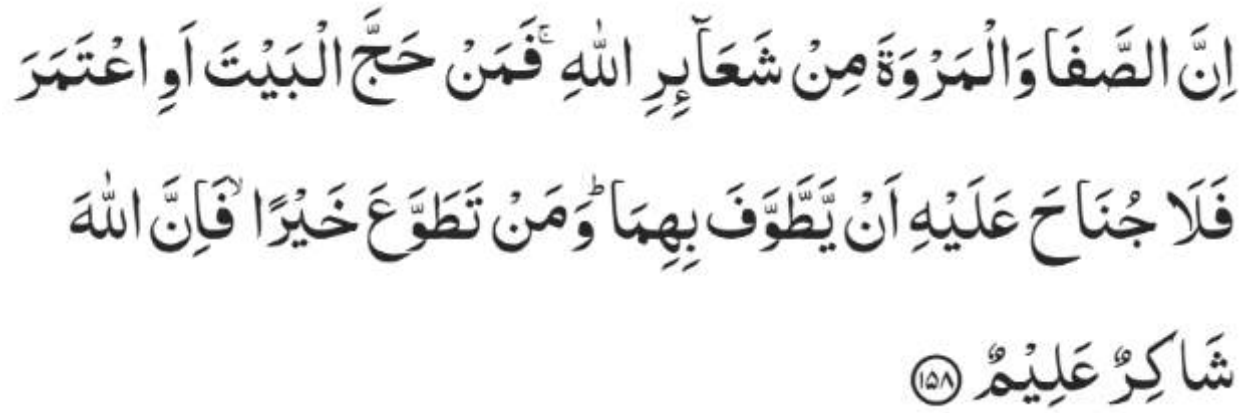


Pronoun “they” is used twice for added emphasis



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to guidance, direction, seeking to be rightly guided and following right guidance

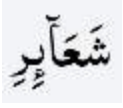

إِنَّ الصَّفَا وَالْمَرْوَةَ مِنْ شَعَآئِرِ اللّٰهِ ۚ فَمَنْ حَجَّ الْبَيْتَ اَوِ اعْتَمَرَ
فَلَا جُنَاحَ عَلَيْهِ اَنْ يَّطَّوَّفَ بِهِمَا ۭ وَمَنْ تَطَوَّعَ خَيْرًا ۙ فَاِنَّ اللّٰهَ
شَاكِرٌ عَلِيْمٌ ﴿١٥٨﴾

2:158

Certainly, Safa and Marwa[1] are from amongst the distinguished religious signs indicating the obedience of Allah. Therefore, whoever undertakes the Major Pilgrimage to the House [the Kaaba] or the Minor Pilgrimage, then there is absolutely no blame upon him in performing circuits between the two [mountains]. And whoever voluntarily does any good which is not obligatory upon him, out of obedience [to Allah], then certainly Allah is the One whose enduring practice is firmly established in, and persists in, appreciating, praising, and rewarding all good efforts, the One who, innately and eternally, completely knows and fully understands everything.

Notes:

1 – Two mountains in Makkah

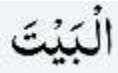

شَعَآئِرِ

Root letters are connected to a distinguished sign or religious sign

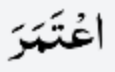
Are connected to a mark of submission and obedience of Allah and the ordinances of Allah



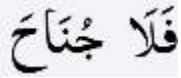
Root letters are connected to performing the pilgrimage to Makkah



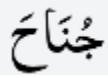
Root letters are connected to a home, house, room and apartment



Root letters are connected to visiting and performing the minor pilgrimage



Structure indicates absolute negation



Root letters are connected to misdemeanor, a minor wrongdoing, a crime, sin, blame and disobedience

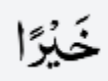


Root letters are connected to circumambulate, circuit and circle



Root letters are connected to obedience and submission

Are connected to do something voluntarily

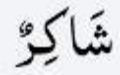


Root letters are connected to choosing and preferring

Are connected to good, virtuous and generous

Are connected to a good state and well-being

Are connected to good qualities and actions



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being thankful, praising, rewarding, and being liberal



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

إِنَّ الَّذِينَ يَكْتُمُونَ مَا أَنْزَلْنَا مِنَ الْبَيِّنَاتِ وَالْهُدَىٰ مِنْ بَعْدِ مَا بَيَّنَّاهُ
لِلنَّاسِ فِي الْكِتَابِ ۙ أُولَٰئِكَ يَلْعَنُهُمُ اللَّهُ وَيَلْعَنُهُمُ اللَّاعِنُونَ ﴿١٥٩﴾

2:159

Certainly, those who withhold, subdue, or conceal what We have revealed—to hold a special position [of supreme authority]—consisting of the clear proofs and explanations; and the guidance which shows and leads to and along the right way of life, even after We have clearly explained it [all] for the benefit of all people in the divine code of conduct. Those—Allah expels them from all good in disgrace, and those who are firmly established in, and persist in, criticising and blaming them supplicate for their expulsion from all good.

Notes:

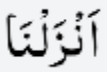
يَكْتُمُونَ

Root words are connected to hiding, subduing, curbing, suppressing, repressing, concealing, making secret and to withhold

Withhold - to hold back or not disclose

Subdue - to suppress, weaken, or keep under control

Conceal - to hide completely from view or knowledge



Root letters are connected to something which is sent down, comes down, descends, stops over and is granted

Are connected to something which is sent down slowly and gradually

Are connected to something which holds a special position or place



Root letters are connected to clarification, explanation, clear evidence and proof

Proofs – undeniable evidence that establish truth decisively

Explanations – making meaning clear and understandable



Root letters are connected to guidance, direction, showing, being led, being supplied and a way of life

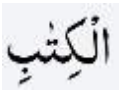
Are connected to gifting and bestowing

Are connected to direction and discovering the right way

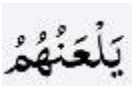


The attached masculine pronoun can go back to the divine revelation mentioned earlier in the verse which includes the clear proofs, explanations, and guidance

Root letters are connected to making clear, showing, explaining, differentiating and distinguishing



Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document



Root letters are connected to cursing, disgracing, expelling and removing someone from good

Are connected to punishing and torturing



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to cursing, disgracing, expelling and removing someone from good

Are connected to punishing and torturing

Are connected to being deprived of mercy

Are connected to strongly criticizing and blaming

Criticizing - exposing and condemning the wrongdoing itself

Blaming - assigning responsibility and reproach to the wrongdoer

إِلَّا الَّذِينَ تَابُوا وَأَصْلَحُوا وَبَيَّنُوا فَأُولَٰئِكَ أَتُوبُ عَلَيْهِمْ ۚ وَأَنَا التَّوَّابُ الرَّحِيمُ ﴿١٦٠﴾

2:160

Except those who have turned [to Allah] in sincere repentance—abandoning sinful behaviour; have reformed themselves through righteous conduct and correctly arranging affairs; and have clearly explained [divine revelation[1]]—those I turn to with pardon and mercy. And I am the One whose enduring practice is firmly established in, and persists in, immediately and repeatedly accepting repentance, the One who, innately and eternally, especially grants constant mercy, kindness, and relief to those who earn it.

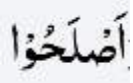
Notes:

1 - Clarifying divine revelation is mentioned in the previous verse Quran 2:159

تَابُوا and أَتُوبُ

Root letters are connected to repenting, turning and renouncing disobedience and sins

Are connected to forgiveness, pardon and turning to someone



Root letters are connected to reforming, perform good deeds, fixing things, repairing things, amending, arranging correctly, making thrive, making prosperous and putting in a good state



Root letters are connected to making clear, showing, explaining, differentiating and distinguishing

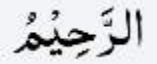


Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Intense form has been used

Root letters are connected to repenting, turning and renouncing disobedience and sins

Are connected to forgiveness and turning to someone



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to having mercy, compassion, sparing, letting off, saving, kindness, tenderness and pity

Intense structure form has been used

Specific mercy for those who deserve and earn it

Mercy – withholds punishment from those who deserve it

Kindness – a broader act of granting blessings

إِنَّ الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا وَمَاتُوا وَهُمْ كُفَّارٌ أُولَٰئِكَ عَلَيْهِمْ لَعْنَةُ اللَّهِ
وَالْمَلَائِكَةِ وَالنَّاسِ أَجْمَعِينَ ﴿١٦١﴾

2:161

Certainly, those who have neglected, dissociated from, and denied their obligations to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them], and have died in a firmly established and persistent state of neglecting, dissociating from, and denying their obligations to Allah, those—upon them [especially] is the punishment of Allah—expulsion from all good in disgrace—and the criticism, blame, and supplication of the Angels and people, all together in complete unison, for their expulsion from all good.

Notes:

كَفَرُوا

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

كُفَّارٌ

Structure shows emphasis

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

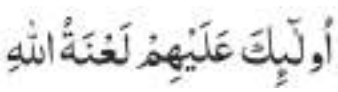
Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty



Root letters are connected to dying, perishing, losing life and subsiding

Are connected to being poor, base or abject



Structure shows specification



Root letters are connected to cursing, disgracing, expelling and removing someone from good

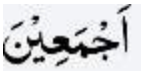
Are connected to punishing and torturing

Are connected to being deprived of mercy

Are connected to strongly criticizing and blaming

Criticizing - exposing and condemning the wrongdoing itself

Blaming - assigning responsibility and reproach to the wrongdoer



Root letters are connected to whole, entire, all, entirety and altogether

Indicates together in unison

خٰلِدِيْنَ فِيْهَا ۚ لَا يُخَفَّفُ عَنْهُمُ الْعَذَابُ وَلَا هُمْ يُنْظَرُوْنَ ﴿١٦٢﴾

2:162

Those [are the ones] who remain firmly established—abiding forever—in it [expulsion from all good[1]]. The agonising, deterrent punishment will not be lightened for them, and they—they [in particular] will be shown no consideration or granted any respite.

Notes:

1 - The expulsion from all good is discussed in the previous verse Quran 2:161

خٰلِدِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to be everlasting, being immortal and abiding forever

يُخَفَّفُ

Root letters are connected to making lighter, reducing the weight, relieving, diminishing and reducing

الْعَذَابُ

Root letters are connected to prevent, hinder, deter and obstruct

Are connected to punishment, torture, agony, painful and suffering

Agonising - causing intense pain and torment

هُمْ يُنْظَرُوْنَ

Pronoun “they” is used twice for added emphasis

يُنْظَرُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to pay attention, pay regard and consideration

Are connected to giving respite and delay

وَاِلٰهُكُمْ اِلٰهٌ وَّاحِدٌ ۚ لَآ اِلٰهَ اِلَّا هُوَ الرَّحْمٰنُ الرَّحِيْمُ ﴿١٦٣﴾

2:163

Thus the God of all of you—the sole recipient of your obedience, from where goodness and protection from harm are sought—is One God—unique, without equal, and incomparable. There is absolutely no God except Him: the One who innately and eternally grants continuous and abundant mercy, kindness, and relief to all, the One who especially grants constant mercy, kindness, and relief to those who earn it.

Notes:

The warnings of Allah, the Exalted, discussed in the previous verses apply to all people without exception just like His Oneness and Lordship do

اِلٰهُكُمْ and اِلٰهٌ and اِلٰهَ

Root letters are connected to god, deity, object of worship and obedience

Are connected to granting safety, peace, aid, protection and deliverance from evil

وَاحِدٌ

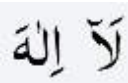
Root letters are connected to one and single

Are connected to unique, unmatched, without equal and incomparable

Unique - singular and distinct in essence

Without equal - unmatched and unsurpassed

Incomparable - cannot be likened or compared to anything



Structure indicates absolute negation



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



Root letters are connected to having mercy, compassion, sparing, letting off, saving, kindness, tenderness and pity

Intense structure form has been used

Universal and widespread mercy for all

Mercy – withholds punishment from those who deserve it

Kindness – a broader act of granting blessings



Root letters are connected to having mercy, compassion, sparing, letting off, saving, kindness, tenderness and pity

Intense structure form has been used

Specific mercy for those who deserve and earn it

Mercy – withholds punishment from those who deserve it

Kindness – a broader act of granting blessings

إِنَّ فِي خَلْقِ السَّمٰوٰتِ وَالْأَرْضِ وَاخْتِلَافِ الَّيْلِ وَالنَّهَارِ وَالْفُلْكِ الَّتِي
تَجْرِي فِي الْبَحْرِ بِمَا يَنْفَعُ النَّاسَ وَمَآ أَنْزَلَ اللّٰهُ مِنَ السَّمَآءِ مِنْ
مَّآءٍ فَأَحْيَا بِهِ الْأَرْضَ بَعْدَ مَوْتِهَا وَبَثَّ فِيهَا مِنْ كُلِّ دَآبَّةٍ وَّتَصْرِيفِ
الرِّيٰحِ وَالسَّحَابِ الْمُسَخَّرِ بَيْنَ السَّمَآءِ وَالْأَرْضِ لَاٰيٰتٍ لِّقَوْمٍ
يَّعْقِلُوْنَ ﴿١٦٤﴾

2:164

Certainly, in the creation of the lofty skies and the Earth—without any prior model and in a perfectly suitable and precise manner—and in the frequent alternation of the night and day; and in the ships which sail through the rivers, seas, and oceans in order to serve and bring benefit to people; and in what Allah has gradually [and precisely] sent down and caused to abide from the lofty sky—water, by which He has granted new life to the Earth after its apparent deprivation and death; and in what He has spread throughout it [the Earth] from each and every moving creature; and in the distribution and alteration, from one state to another, of the winds and clouds—firmly established in, and persisting under, subjugation and utilisation between the lofty sky and the Earth—are certainly miraculous and evident signs for any people who use their faculties correctly—applying reason and common sense—in order to understand.

Notes:



Root letters are connected to creating, originating, making, determining according to specific weight and measure and bringing into existence from nothing

Are connected to being fitting and suitable

 and

Root letters are connected to sky, heaven and ceiling

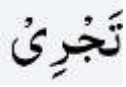
Are connected to raised, elevated, high, lofty and tall



Root letters are connected to coming and going frequently, alternation and moving in turns



Root letters are connected to ship and ark



Root letters are connected to flowing, running, passing and sail



Root letters are connected to sea, large river, and ocean



Root letters are connected to being beneficial, useful, helpful and to serve

Serve - focuses on function and purpose

Benefit - focuses on positive outcome and advantage

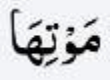


Root letters are connected to sending down, to abide, to stay, to bestow and grant

Precise amount of rainwater mentioned in other verses e.g. Quran 23:18



Root letters are connected to giving life, call into existence, reviving, reanimating and giving new life

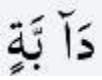


Root letters are connected to dying, perishing, losing life and subsiding

Are connected to being poor, base or abject



Root letters are connected to spreading, unfolding, scattering, dispersing and disseminating

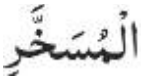


Root letters are connected to animal, beast and riding animal



Root letters are connected to distributing, disposing, circulating and turning

Are connected to changing something from condition to another



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being subjugated, employed and utilised

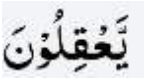


 used for emphasis

Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof



Common i.e. any people



Root letters are connected to being reasonable, using intelligence, using common sense, using one’s senses and understanding

Reason - structured, analytical thinking

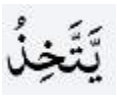
Common sense - intuitive, practical application

وَمِنَ النَّاسِ مَنْ يَّتَّخِذُ مِنْ دُوْنِ اللّٰهِ اَنْدَادًا يُّحِبُّوْنَهُمْ كَحُبِّ اللّٰهِ ؕ
وَالَّذِيْنَ اٰمَنُوْٓا اَشَدُّ حُبًّا لِّلّٰهِ ؕ وَلَوْ يَرَى الَّذِيْنَ ظَلَمُوْٓا اِذْ يَرَوْنَ الْعَذَابَ ۙ
اَنَّ الْقُوَّةَ لِلّٰهِ جَمِيْعًا ۙ وَّاَنَّ اللّٰهَ شَدِيْدُ الْعَذَابِ ﴿١٦٥﴾

2:165

And from amongst the people is the one who takes and adheres to, from besides Allah, equals, partners, and rivals [in His obedience]—desiring, respecting, preferring, and loving them in the way that desire, respect, preference, and love for Allah [should be]. Whereas, those who have believed—as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind—are more intense in desire, respect, preference, and love for Allah. And were those who have been unjust—transgressing proper limits—to reflect and consider when they [inevitably] see the agonising punishment—that power and superiority belong to Allah, all without exception, and that Allah is innately and eternally the One who is intense and severe in punishment.

Notes:


يَّتَّخِذُ

Root letters are connected to taking firmly, accepting, gripping, seizing, occupying, adhering, adopting and making use

أَنْدَادًا

Root letters are connected to an equal, a peer, partners, rivals or opposition

Equality - status

Partnership - shared function

Rivalry - competing opposition

يُحِبُّونَهُمْ and حُبِّ

هُمْ pronoun often used for living things

Root letters are connected liking, loving and wanting

Root letters are connected to desiring, preferring, liking

Are connected to wishing, wanting and loving

Are connected to esteeming something or someone

Desire - inward attraction and wanting

Respect - elevating their status and importance

Prefer - giving them practical priority and choosing them over others

Love - deep emotional attachment and devotion

اٰمَنُوْٓا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

اَشَدُّ

A comparative

Root letters are connected to becoming firm, solid, hard, strong, intense, and harsh

اِذْ يَرَوْنَ الْعَذَابَ

اِذْ is usually used for past tense events, but is used here to describe the certainty of a future event, as if it has already occurred

يَرَى and يَرَوْنَ

Root letters are connected to seeing, perceiving, reflecting, discerning and considering

Reflect - to think deeply and thoughtfully, pondering the significance or lessons of something

Consider - to examine, evaluate, or take something into careful account before reaching an understanding

ظَلَمُوٓا

Root letters are connected to be unjust, act tyrannically, do wrong, do evil, harm, oppress and transgress proper limits

الْعَذَابَ and الْعَذَابِ

Root letters are connected to prevent, hinder, deter and obstruct

Are connected to punishment, torture, agony, painful and suffering

Agonising - causing intense pain and torment

الْقُوَّةَ

Root letters are connected to force, intensity, strength, firmness and determination

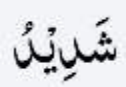
جَمِيعًا

Root letters are connected to whole, entire, all, entirety and altogether

Indicates all without exception

وَّاَنَّ اللّٰهَ شَدِيْدُ الْعَذَابِ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



Root letters are connected to becoming firm, intense, solid, hard, strong and harsh

Intense - the strength (powerful and overwhelming)

Severe – the harshness (harsh and uncompromising)

إِذْ تَبَرَّأَ الَّذِينَ اتُّبِعُوا مِنَ الَّذِينَ اتَّبَعُوا وَرَأَوُا الْعَذَابَ وَتَقَطَّعَتْ بِهِمُ الْأَسْبَابُ ﴿١٦٦﴾

2:166

When those who had been agreed with, pursued, and adhered to will have dissociated themselves from those who had been in agreement with, pursued, and adhered to them, thereby living under their authority, while they will have all seen the agonising punishment. And all connections will have been irreversibly severed around them.

Notes:

Past tense is used in this verse to emphasise the certainty and inevitability of facing the consequences of one's actions, as though they have already occurred

تَبَرَّأَ

Root letters are connected to clear, be free, disclaim association, declare innocent and disown

اتُّبِعُوا and اتَّبَعُوا

Root letters are connected to following, pursuing, walking behind and adhering

Are connected to being under authority and command

Are connected to concurring, being in agreement and being in conformity

In agreement - accepting the guidance internally (belief/acceptance)

Pursues - actively seeking and following it

Adheres to - remaining firm and consistent upon it



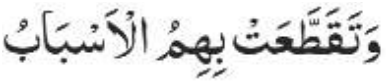
Root letters are connected to seeing, perceiving, discerning and considering



Root letters are connected to prevent, hinder, deter and obstruct

Are connected to punishment, torture, agony, painful and suffering

Agonising - causing intense pain and torment



 indicates that the severing occurs in their presence and completely encompasses them

تَقَطَّعَتْ

Root letters are connected to cutting, dividing, tearing apart, breaking off, severing and hacking to pieces

الْأَسْبَابُ

Structure indicates every single category of connection

Root letters are connected to means for obtaining something, means of relations and ties

وَقَالَ الَّذِيْنَ اتَّبَعُوْا لَوْ اَنَّ لَنَا كَرَّةً فَنَتَبَرَّاَ مِنْهُمْ كَمَا تَبَرَّءُوْا مِنَّا ؕ
كَذٰلِكَ يُرِيْهِمُ اللّٰهُ اَعْمَالَهُمْ حَسَرٰتٍ عَلَيْهِمْ ؕ وَمَا هُمْ بِخٰرِجِيْنَ
مِنَ النَّارِ ﴿۱۶۷﴾

2:167

And those who had been in agreement with, pursued, and adhered to [their leaders], thereby living under [their] authority, will have said, "Had there been for us a return [to the former life], then we would dissociate ourselves from them in the same manner as they have dissociated themselves from us." In that way, Allah will show them their efforts, actions, and worldly achievements as an unveiling of layers of distress, sorrow, and regret upon them. And never will they—at any time or in any state—be those who depart from the Fire.

Notes:

Past tense is used in this verse to emphasise the certainty and inevitability of facing the consequences of one's actions, as though they have already occurred

قَالَ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

اتَّبَعُوْا

Root letters are connected to following, pursuing, walking behind and adhering

Are connected to being under authority and command

Are connected to concurring, being in agreement and being in conformity

In agreement - accepting the guidance internally (belief/acceptance)

Pursues - actively seeking and following it

Adheres to - remaining firm and consistent upon it

كَرَّةً

Root letters are connected to returning, coming back, recurrence and another time

نَتَبَرَّاَ and تَبَرَّءُوْا

Root letters are connected to clear, be free, disclaim association, declare innocent and disown

يُرِيْهِمُ

Root letters are connected to seeing and perceiving

Are connected to showing, demonstrating and pointing out

Are connected to reflecting, contemplating and considering

أَعْمَالَهُمْ

Root letters are connected to work, actions, effort, labour, achievements, activity, service, striving and toiling

Efforts - striving and exertion

Actions - deeds and conduct

Achievements - results and acquired outcomes

حَسَرٰتٍ

Plural used to show multiple and intensity

Root letters are connected to unveiling, removing and uncovering

Are connected to sorrow, distress, pain, grief and regret

Distress - immediate anguish

Sorrow - emotional grief

Regret - painful reflection on past actions

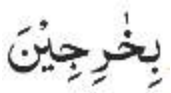
حَسَرٰتٍ عَلَيْهِمْ

Structure emphasis intensity and overwhelming nature

مَا هُمْ بِخٰرِجِيْنَ مِنَ النَّارِ

Structure gives a strong negation and refutation meaning

And gives an absolute and complete negation in state, time and possibility



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to going out, walking out, emerging and departing

يَٰٓأَيُّهَا ٱلنَّاسُ كُلُوا۟ مِمَّا فِى ٱلْأَرْضِ حَلَٰلًا طَيِّبًا وَلَا تَتَّبِعُوا۟ خُطُوَٰتِ
ٱلشَّيْطَٰنِ ۚ إِنَّهُۥ لَكُمْ عَدُوٌّ مُّبِينٌ ﴿١٦٨﴾

2:168

People! Eat and utilise from whatever is in the Earth that is lawful—pure, healthy, and pleasant. And do not be in agreement with, pursue, or adhere to the sinful footsteps of the Devil, thereby living under his authority. Certainly, he is [especially] for you an established clear and evident enemy—exceeding proper bounds through hostility and aggression.

Notes:

Instructions are given in this verse to avoid the outcome discussed in the previous verses Quran 2:165-167

كُلُوا۟

Root letters are connected to eat, swallow, consume, to enjoy and make use of

حَلَٰلًا

Root letters are connected to being lawful, permissible, allowed, lawful, allowable and legitimate

طَيِّبًا

Root letters are connected to something good, pure, pleasant, agreeable, healthy, delightful, delicious and lawful

Pure - free from impurity and corruption

Healthy - beneficial and nourishing

Pleasant - enjoyable and agreeable

تَتَّبِعُوْا

Root letters are connected to following, pursuing, walking behind and adhering

Are connected to being under authority and command

Are connected to concurring, being in agreement and being in conformity

In agreement - accepting the guidance internally (belief/acceptance)

Pursues - actively seeking and following it

Adheres to - remaining firm and consistent upon it

خُطُوٰتِ

Root letters are connected to footsteps, steps, walk, progress and advance

Are connected to transgression, offence and sin

إِنَّهُۥ لَكُمْ عَدُوٌّ مُّبِينٌ

Structure shows emphasis

عَدُوٌّ

Root letters are connected to hostility, violating, aggression, exceeding proper bounds and transgressing

Are connected to treating like an enemy

Enemies - the state of opposition

Hostility - inner attitude of enmity

Aggression - outward expression through harmful action

مُّبِينٌ

Root letters are connected to clear, plain, evident, obvious, patent, open and manifest

Clear - leaving no confusion

Evident - presence of signs and proofs that make hostility observable

إِنَّمَا يَأْمُرُكُمْ بِالسُّوٓءِ وَالْفَحْشَآءِ وَأَنْ تَقُولُوا عَلَى اللَّهِ مَا لَا تَعْلَمُونَ ﴿١٦٩﴾

2:169

He [the Devil] only instructs you all to evil, disgrace, and harm; and to engage in obscene behaviour—crossing the limits of modesty and decency; and to claim about Allah that which you do not recognise, know, or understand.

Notes:

يَأْمُرُكُمْ

Root letters are connected to ordering, commanding, instructing and entrusting

بِالسُّوٓءِ

Root letters are connected to evil, torment, harm, damage, calamity, treating badly and an evilness of state or condition

Are connected to disadvantage, offense and sin

Are connected to disgrace and shame

Evil - morally wrong and sinful

Disgrace - shame and dishonour

Harm - injury and damage

الْفَحْشَآءِ

Root letters are connected to being monstrous, excessive and exorbitant

Are connected to being obscene, vile, disgusting, lewd, indecent, shameless, and exceeding the bounds of goodness

Modesty - inward and personal dimension (humility and reserve in behaviour)

Decency - outward and social dimension (proper and respectable conduct)

تَقُوْلُوْا

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

تَعْلَمُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

وَإِذَا قِيلَ لَهُمُ اتَّبِعُوا مَا أَنزَلَ اللَّهُ قَالُوا بَلْ نَتَّبِعُ مَا أَلْفَيْنَا عَلَيْهِ
آبَاءَنَا ۗ أَوَلَوْ كَانَ آبَاؤُهُمْ لَا يَعْقِلُونَ شَيْئًا وَلَا يَهْتَدُونَ ﴿١٧٠﴾

2:170

And whenever it is said in opposition to them, "Be in agreement with, pursue, and adhere to what Allah has gradually revealed [to hold a special position of supreme authority], thereby living under its authority." They [boldly] declare, "Rather, we are in agreement with, pursue, and adhere to what we have found our forefathers established upon." Even though their forefathers persisted in not using their faculties correctly—refusing to apply reason and common sense—thereby failing to understand anything, and they persisted in not seeking or following right guidance?

Notes:

وَإِذَا قِيلَ

Structure indicates repetitive action

قِيلَ and قَالُوا

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, speaking against, standing up, supporting, professing, declaring, alleging, claiming and asserting sternly

اتَّبِعُوْا and نَتَّبِعُ

Root letters are connected to following, pursuing, walking behind and adhering

Are connected to being under authority and command

Are connected to concurring, being in agreement and being in conformity

In agreement - accepting the guidance internally (belief/acceptance)

Pursues - actively seeking and following it

Adheres to - remaining firm and consistent upon it

اَنْزَلَ

Root letters are connected to something which is sent down, comes down, descends, stops over and is granted

Are connected to something which is sent down slowly and gradually

Are connected to something which holds a special position or place

اَلْفَيْنَا عَلَيْهِ اٰبَآءَنَا

Structure indicates firm and established adherence

اَلْفَيْنَا

Root letters are connected to finding

اٰبَآءَنَا and اٰبَآؤُهُمْ

Root letters are connected to father, forefather, parents and ancestor

كَانَ اٰبَآؤُهُمْ لَا يَعْقِلُوْنَ

Structure indicates repetitive action

كَانَ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

يَعْقِلُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to being reasonable, using intelligence, using common sense, using one's senses and understanding

Reason - structured, analytical thinking

Common sense - intuitive, practical application

يَهْتَدُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to guidance, direction, seeking to be rightly guided and following right guidance

وَمَثَلُ الَّذِيْنَ كَفَرُوْا كَمَثَلِ الَّذِيْ يَنْعِقُ بِمَا لَا يَسْمَعُ اِلَّا دُعَآءً وَّنِدَآءً ؕ صُمٌّۢ بُكْمٌ عُمْيٌ فَهُمْ لَا يَعْقِلُوْنَ ﴿۱۷۱﴾

2:171

And the example of the condition of those who have neglected, dissociated from, and denied their obligations to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them], is like the state of the one who calls out to that which does not hear except mere calling and shouting [such as cattle]. A state of wilful determination to behave deaf; weakness in understanding and deliberate silence [regarding the truth]; and feigned blindness of the eyes and mind. Therefore, they—they [in particular] do not use their faculties correctly—applying reason and common sense—in order to understand.

Notes:

مَثَلُ and مَثَلِ

Root letters are connected to an example, to resemble, to copy and compare

Are connected to similar case, simile, parable, precedent, state and condition

كَفَرُوا

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

يَنْعِقُ

Root letters are connected to cawing, bleating, crying, screaming and to call out to animals to drive them

يَسْمَعُ

Root letters are connected to hearing, listening and paying attention

دُعَآءً

Root letters are connected to call, invocation, request and a cry

نِدَآءً

Root letters are connected to calling, shouting, crying out, summoning and exclamation



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to deafness, obstruction and blocking

Are connected to making up one’s mind, determined, resolved, persisting and acting deaf



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

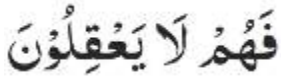
Root letters are connected to being dumb, weak in understanding and being intentionally silent about something



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being blind in the eyes and mind e.g. Quran 22:46

Are connected to pretending not to see, shutting one’s eyes and failing to see something



Pronoun “they” is used twice for added emphasis

يَعْقِلُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to being reasonable, using intelligence, using common sense, using one’s senses and understanding

Reason - structured, analytical thinking

Common sense - intuitive, practical application

يٰٓاَيُّهَا الَّذِيْنَ اٰمَنُوْا كُلُوْا مِنْ طَيِّبٰتِ مَا رَزَقْنٰكُمْ وَاشْكُرُوْا لِلّٰهِ اِنْ كُنْتُمْ اِيَّاهُ تَعْبُدُوْنَ ﴿١٧٢﴾

2:172

Those who have claimed to believe! Eat and utilise from the lawful, healthy, and pleasant provision We have provided for you—materially and spiritually—as a means of living, and show gratitude to Allah [by using your blessings in His obedience] if you are, in fact, those who persist in directing to Him your humble worship and obedience—doing only what He approves of and approving of whatever He does.

Notes:

اٰمَنُوْا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

كُلُوْا

Root letters are connected to eat, swallow, consume, to enjoy and make use of

طَيِّبٰتِ

Root letters are connected to something good, pleasant, agreeable, healthy, delightful, delicious and lawful

Healthy - beneficial and nourishing

Pleasant - enjoyable and agreeable

رَزَقْنٰكُمْ

Root letters are connected to means of survival and living, to bestow, to nourish, to provide provision, grant material or spiritual provision, and derive benefit from something

Material provision – worldly things e.g. food, shelter and clothing

Spiritual provision – inward qualities e.g. wisdom, knowledge, peace and inner strength

وَاشْكُرُوْا

Root letters are connected to being thankful, grateful, and praising

Are connected to showing gratitude with the heart, tongue and limbs

كُنْتُمْ اِيَّاهُ تَعْبُدُوْنَ

Structure indicates repetitive action

كُنْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

اِيَّاهُ

Structure used for emphasis

Root letters are connected to directing oneself and one's aims

تَعْبُدُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to worshipping, serving, adoring, obeying with humility and enslaving

Are connected to only doing what Allah, the Exalted, approves of and approving what He decrees

إِنَّمَا حَرَّمَ عَلَيْكُمُ الْمَيْتَةَ وَالدَّمَ وَلَحْمَ الْخِنْزِيرِ وَمَا أُهِلَّ بِهِ
لِغَيْرِ اللَّهِ ۖ فَمَنِ اضْطُرَّ غَيْرَ بَاغٍ وَلَا عَادٍ فَلَا إِثْمَ عَلَيْهِ ۚ إِنَّ اللَّهَ
غَفُورٌ رَحِيمٌ ﴿١٧٣﴾

2:173

He has only made unlawful for you [cutting off harm from you[1]]: the carcass [not slaughtered correctly]; [flowing[2]] blood; the flesh of swine; and whatever has been slaughtered while dedicated to other than Allah. But whoever is forced by extreme necessity [to consume the unlawful]—without being in a firmly established and persistent state of evil desire and arrogance, nor a firmly established and persistent state of exceeding proper bounds—then, in that case, there is absolutely no sin upon him. Certainly, Allah is innately and eternally the One who conceals, forgives, and corrects affairs, the One who especially grants constant mercy, kindness, and relief to those who earn it.

Notes:

1 - Cutting off harm is supported by Islamic teachings e.g. Quran 7:157

2 - Flowing blood has been clarified in the Quran 6:145

حَرَّمَ

Root letters are connected to declaring unlawful and forbidding

Are connected to cutting off, divesting, taking off, withdrawing and withholding

الْمَيْتَةَ

Root letters are connected to corpse, carcass, carrion and meat of an animal not slaughtered in accordance with ritual requirements

لَحْمَ

Root letters are connected to meat and flesh

الْخِنْزِيرِ

Root letters are connected to swine, hog and pig

أُهِلَّ

Root letters are connected to offering up as a sacrifice

اضْطُرَّ

Root letters are connected to harming, damaging, hurting and injuring

Are connected to forcing, compelling and coercing

Are connected to necessity, need, hard pressed, straiten, difficult situation and be in an emergency

بَاغٍ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to exalting oneself, behaving proudly, transgression, disobedience, wrongdoing and corruption

Are connected to seeking, desiring, coveting and seeking to attain

Evil desires - inner motivation (base, corrupt inclinations)

Arrogance - attitude and mindset (sense of superiority and self-exaltation)

عَادٍ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to overstepping, not to bother and exceed proper bounds

لَآ إِثْمَ

Structure indicates absolute negation

إِثْمَ

Root letters are connected to sin, err, slip, crime and offense

Are connected to intentional

إِنَّ اللهَ غَفُوْرٌ رَّحِيْمٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

غَفُوْرٌ

Root letters are connected to covering, concealing, veiling and hiding

Are connected to forgiving and pardoning

Are connected to correcting and rectifying affairs

رَّحِيْمٌ

Root letters are connected to having mercy, compassion, sparing, letting off, saving, kindness, tenderness and pity

Intense structure form has been used

Specific mercy for those who deserve and earn it

Mercy – withholds punishment from those who deserve it

Kindness – a broader act of granting blessings

إِنَّ الَّذِينَ يَكْتُمُونَ مَا أَنْزَلَ اللَّهُ مِنَ الْكِتَابِ وَيَشْتَرُونَ بِهِ ثَمَنًا
قَلِيلًا أُولَٰئِكَ مَا يَأْكُلُونَ فِي بُطُونِهِمْ إِلَّا النَّارَ وَلَا يُكَلِّمُهُمُ اللَّهُ يَوْمَ
الْقِيَامَةِ وَلَا يُزَكِّيهِمْ وَلَهُمْ عَذَابٌ أَلِيمٌ ﴿١٧٤﴾

2:174

Certainly, those who withhold, subdue, or conceal what Allah has revealed—to hold a special position [of authority]—consisting of the divine code of conduct, and persist in exchanging it for a small, inferior, and insufficient price, those—they do not devour into their stomachs except the Fire. Therefore, Allah will not speak to them on the Momentous Day of upheaval, raising of the dead, and rectifying affairs, nor will He praise or purify them. And for them is a punishment—the utmost degree of pain and suffering.

Notes:

يَكْتُمُونَ

Root words are connected to hiding, subduing, curbing, suppressing, repressing, concealing, making secret and to withhold

Withhold - to hold back or not disclose

Subdue - to suppress, weaken, or keep under control

Conceal - to hide completely from view or knowledge

اَنْزَلَ

Root letters are connected to something which is sent down, comes down, descends, stops over and is granted

Are connected to something which is sent down slowly and gradually

Are connected to something which holds a special position or place

الْكِتٰبِ

Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document

يَشْتَرُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to buying, acquiring, selling, preferring and exchanging

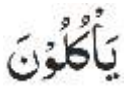
And are connected to persisting and persevering

ثَمَنًا

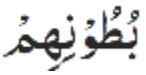
Root letters are connected to price, cost, value and sum

قَلِيْلًا

Root letters are connected to few, inconsiderable, insufficient, sparse, small, little and inferior



Root letters are connected to eating up, swallowing, consuming, devouring, destroying, gnaw and eat away



Root letters are connected to stomach, abdomen, inside and interior

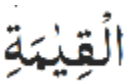


Root letters are connected to an speaking, addressing and talking



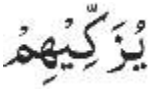
Root letters are connected to days, age, era and time

Are connected to momentous and important days



Root letters are connected to standing, rising up, rectifying and managing affairs

Are connected to resurrection, upheaval, tumult, turmoil and raising the dead



Root letters are connected to purifying, chastening, commending, praising and validating



Root letters are connected to prevent, hinder, deter and obstruct

Are connected to punishment, torture, agony, painful and suffering



Root letters are connected pain, suffering, grievous pain, excruciating and the utmost degree of pain

Pain - refers to the physical sensation (the body)

Suffering - refers to the emotional or mental distress (the mind/soul)

أُولَٰئِكَ الَّذِينَ اشْتَرَوُا الضَّلَالَةَ بِالْهُدَىٰ وَالْعَذَابَ بِالْمَغْفِرَةِ ۚ فَمَا
أَصْبَرَهُمْ عَلَى النَّارِ ﴿١٧٥﴾

2:175

Those—the ones who have persisted in preferring and purchasing misguidance, loss, and destruction in exchange for guidance which shows and leads to and along the right way of life; and an agonising, deterrent punishment in exchange for concealment, forgiveness, and correction of affairs. Then how great is their perseverance—establishing themselves in the Fire.

Notes:

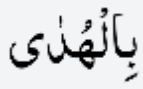
اشْتَرَوُا

Root letters are connected to buying, selling, preferring and exchanging

And are connected to persisting and persevering

الضَّلَالَةَ

Root letters are connected to stray, err, deviate from right course, to perish and become hidden



Root letters are connected to guidance, direction, showing, being led, being supplied and a way of life

Are connected to gifting and bestowing

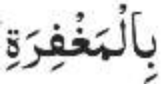
Are connected to direction and discovering the right way



Root letters are connected to prevent, hinder, deter and obstruct

Are connected to punishment, torture, agony, painful and suffering

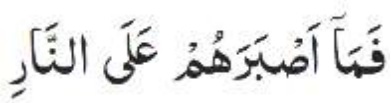
Agonising - causing intense pain and torment



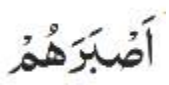
Root letters are connected to covering, concealing, veiling and hiding

Are connected to forgiving and pardoning

Are connected to correcting and rectifying affairs

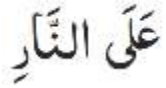


Structure shows a statement of wonder and amazement



Root letters are connected to binding and shackling

Are connected to being patient, persevering and enduring



Structure emphasizes steadfastness not direction

ذٰلِكَ بِاَنَّ اللّٰهَ نَزَّلَ الْكِتٰبَ بِالْحَقِّ ؕ وَاِنَّ الَّذِيْنَ اخْتَلَفُوْا فِى الْكِتٰبِ
لَفِىْ شِقَاقٍۭ بَعِيْدٍ ﴿١٧٦﴾

2:176

That [outcome[1]] is because Allah has revealed the divine code of conduct, to hold a special position [of supreme authority], according to the truth—correct, appropriate, and purposeful. And certainly, those who have disagreed with, challenged, and opposed each other concerning the divine code of conduct are absolutely entrenched in far-reaching disunion and opposition—deep hostility.

Notes:

1 - The outcome discussed in the previous verses

نَزَّلَ

Root letters are connected to something which is sent down, comes down, descends, stops over and is granted

Are connected to something which is sent down slowly and gradually

Are connected to something which holds a special position or place

الْكِتٰبَ and الْكِتٰبِ

Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, book, ordinance, letter, document

بِالْحَقِّ

Root letters are connected to what is right, correct, true, proper, suitable, fitting and purposeful

True - matches reality

Correct - accurate and right

Appropriate - properly fitting

Purposeful - meaningful and intentional

اخْتَلَفُوْا

Root letters are connected to differ, dispute, argue, disagreeing, different in opinion, debate and opposing

Disagreeing - difference in belief or opinion

Challenged - active argumentative conflict

Opposing - entrenched resistance and hostility

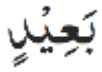
شِقَاقٍ

Root letters are connected to disunity, dissention, discord, opposition, hostility, contention and schism

Disunion - lack of unity and harmony

Opposition - active disagreement and resistance

Hostility - animosity, hatred, and ill-will



Root letters are connected to far away, far-reaching, extensive and far

لَيْسَ الْبِرَّ اَنْ تُوَلُّوْا وُجُوْهَكُمْ قِبَلَ الْمَشْرِقِ وَالْمَغْرِبِ وَلٰكِنَّ الْبِرَّ
مَنْ اٰمَنَ بِاللّٰهِ وَالْيَوْمِ الْاٰخِرِ وَالْمَلٰٓئِكَةِ وَالْكِتٰبِ وَالنَّبِيّٖنَ ۚ وَاٰتَى
الْمَالَ عَلٰى حُبِّهٖ ذَوِي الْقُرْبٰى وَالْيَتٰمٰى وَالْمَسٰكِيْنَ وَابْنَ السَّبِيْلِ ۙ
وَالسَّآئِلِيْنَ وَفِي الرِّقَابِ ۚ وَاَقَامَ الصَّلٰوةَ وَاٰتَى الزَّكٰوةَ ۚ وَالْمُوْفُوْنَ
بِعَهْدِهِمْ اِذَا عٰهَدُوْا ۚ وَالصّٰبِرِيْنَ فِي الْبَاْسَآءِ وَالضَّرَّآءِ وَحِيْنَ الْبَاْسِ ؕ
اُولٰٓئِكَ الَّذِيْنَ صَدَقُوْا ؕ وَاُولٰٓئِكَ هُمُ الْمُتَّقُوْنَ ﴿۱۷۷﴾

2:177

Righteous conduct towards Allah and people is not that you all turn your faces [in acts of devotion] in the direction of the East and West. However, righteous conduct towards Allah and people is [personified by] whoever has believed in Allah, the Last Momentous Day, the Angels, the divine code of conduct [the Quran], and the honoured Prophets who conveyed divine knowledge from Allah—belief demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith: having given the possessions[1] [he has been entrusted with], despite his desire and love for them, and out of desire, respect, preference, and love for Him [Allah], to those possessing closeness in lineage, and in physical proximity; and to orphans; and to those who cannot financially support themselves; and to the traveller in hardship; and to those who request or beg; and in [the cause of] freeing slaves—and having sincerely established the prayer[2]—each one of them—which disciplines conduct [through the remembrance of the Hereafter], while fulfilling its conditions

and etiquettes—and having given the obligatory charity, which purifies the spiritual heart [from greed] and causes increase [in blessings]. [Such people are] those who are firmly established in, and persist in, faithfully and completely fulfilling their promise, agreement, and responsibility whenever they promise, agree, or are entrusted. And [the worthy recipients of assistance are[3]] those who are firmly established in, and persist in, patience, perseverance [in obedience], and self-restraint [from complaint] during states of debilitating distress and poverty; and during states of harassment, harm, and loss; and at the time of grief and fear. Those—the ones who have been sincere and truthful. And those—they [in particular] are firmly established in, and persist in, devoutly fulfilling their duties—thereby protecting themselves from harm and arranging all their matters correctly, leading to spiritual well-being and peace of mind.

Notes:

1 - No possessive pronoun is used—such as 'his possessions'—thereby indicating that the all possessions ultimately belong to Allah, the Exalted, and that the person is merely a trustee in giving it

2 - The prayers are mentioned in the singular, indicating that the five obligatory prayers are regarded as one unified act of worship, and therefore none of them can be left out

3 - In the accusative state (a detail) perhaps because it links back to the list of recipients entitled to aid mentioned earlier in the verse

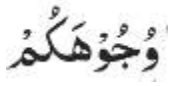
 and

Root letters are connected to being dutiful, devout, to do good, obey Allah, treat others with respect and good treatment of people

Are connected to piety, reverence and righteousness



Root letters are connected to turning to, turning away, turning back and fleeing



Root letters are connected to face



Root letters are connected to side, direction and towards

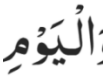


Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

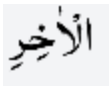
Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit



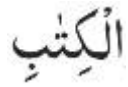
Root letters are connected to days, age, era and time

Are connected to momentous and important days

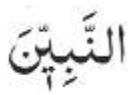


Root letters are connected to something that is last, ultimate, end, utmost and extreme

The Last Momentous Day refers to the Day of Judgement as eternity begins after that



Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document



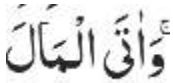
Root letters are connected to informing, notifying, advising telling and announcing

Are connected to being high in rank, raised, elevated and prominent

Are connected to someone who receives unseen knowledge from Allah and conveys them to people



Root letters are connected to bring, give, grant and bestow



No possessive pronoun is used—such as ‘his possessions’—thereby indicating that the all possessions ultimately belong to Allah, the Exalted, and that the person is merely a trustee in giving it



Root letters are connected to property, assets, goods, wealth, and possessions



Root letters are connected liking, loving and wanting

Root letters are connected to desiring, preferring, liking

Are connected to wishing, wanting and loving

Are connected to esteeming something or someone

Desire - inward attraction and wanting

Respect - elevating their status and importance

Prefer - giving them practical priority and choosing them over others

Love - deep emotional attachment and devotion



Root letters are connected to possessing, owning, being endowed with



Root letters are connected to kinship and relative

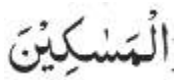
Are connected to nearness, closeness and proximity

Are connected to taking an associate

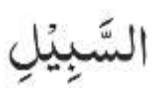
Are connected to coming to a close relationship, come near someone and to seek someone's favour

Lineage - family ties

Physical – those nearby



Root letters are connected to severe poverty, destitution, in a bad financial state and subdued by financial issues



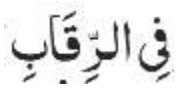
Root letters are connected to a way, path and road



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to asking, inquiring, requesting, demanding, petitioning and claiming

Are connected to begging



Structure highlights their established state of difficulty in slavery

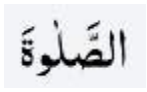


Root letters are connected to neck and slavery



Root letters are connected to guarding, preserving, being sincere, honest, rectifying and establishing

Are connected to doing properly, putting in order and arranging well



Root letters are connected to praying and worshipping

Are connected to straightening something or making it soft by fire

The stages of the prayer mirror the stages of the Hereafter, serving as a continual reminder of it e.g. Quran 83:4-6, 77:48, 68:42-43 and 45:28

الزَّكٰوةَ

Root letters are connected to growing, increasing, purification and purity of heart

Are connected to the obligatory charity, alms and charity

الْمُوْفُوْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to living up to a promise, redeeming, fulfilling, discharging and compensating fully

Are connected to doing full justice and carry out fully

Are connected to being faithful, sincere, trustworthy, loyal and keep one's word

Faithfully - quality of commitment

Completely - extent of fulfilment

بِعَهْدِهِمْ and عٰهَدُوْا

Root letters are connected to a charge, injunction, pledge, vow, promise, contract, commitment, covenant, responsibility, agreement and entrusting

Promise - individual commitment (a pledge to do or refrain from something)

Agreement - mutual commitment (an obligation accepted between two or more parties)

Responsibility - entrusted obligation (something for which one is accountable)

بِعَهْدِهِمْ

Singular form indicating each and every one

الصّٰبِرِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to binding and shackling

Are connected to being patient, persevering, forbearing, enduring, refraining, abstaining, desisting and self-control

Patience - enduring difficulty without panic or loss of steadiness

Perseverance - continuing steadily in obedience over time without giving up

Self-restraining [from complaint] - controlling oneself from expressing objection or dissatisfaction

الْبَاْسَآءِ and الْبَاْسِ

Root letters are connected to distress, straitened in means, state of poverty, calamity and disease which prevents motion

Are connected to being sad, worried, fearful and grief

حِيْنَ

Preposition meaning at the time when, as soon as, and at the time of

الضَّرَّآءِ

Noun indicating an established state

Root letters are connected to harm, impair, damage, hurt and injure

Are connected to harassing

Harass - to trouble, intimidate, or repeatedly subject someone to unwanted and distressing treatment

Harm - to cause injury, damage, or suffering, whether physical, emotional, or otherwise

Loss – to cause deprivation and ruin

صَدَقُوْا

Verb used to indicate that truthfulness has been practically demonstrated

Root letters are connected to being truthful, sincere and keeping one's word

Sincere - pure inner intention

Truthful - outward truth in word and action

وَأُولَٰٓئِكَ هُمُ الْمُتَّقُوْنَ

Pronoun "they" is used twice for added emphasis

الْمُتَّقُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious

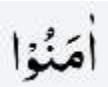
يٰٓاَيُّهَا الَّذِيْنَ اٰمَنُوْا كُتِبَ عَلَيْكُمُ الْقِصَاصُ فِي الْقَتْلٰى ۭ اَلْحُرُّ بِالْحُرِّ
وَالْعَبْدُ بِالْعَبْدِ وَالْاُنْثٰى بِالْاُنْثٰى ۭ فَمَنْ عُفِيَ لَهٗ مِنْ اَخِيْهِ شَيْءٌ
فَاتِّبَاعٌۢ بِالْمَعْرُوْفِ وَاَدَاۗءٌ اِلَيْهِ بِاِحْسَانٍ ۭ ذٰلِكَ تَخْفِيْفٌ مِّنْ رَّبِّكُمْ
وَرَحْمَةٌ ۭ فَمَنِ اعْتَدٰى بَعْدَ ذٰلِكَ فَلَهٗ عَذَابٌ اَلِيْمٌ ۝۱۷۸

2:178

Those who have claimed to believe! Equal retaliation in cases of unjustified killing—to settle the account—has been prescribed upon you as a legal obligation. The freeman [is legally responsible only] for himself[1], the slave [is legally responsible only] for himself, and the female [is legally responsible only] for herself. But if any aspect [of equal retaliation] has been excused, overlooked, or forgiven for him [the murderer] by his brother in faith or shared humanity [the victim's next of kin], then agreement with, pursuit of, and adherence to fair, kind, and sincere conduct which is widely recognised by common sense and reason, and discharging the duty of payment [as compensation for the unjustified killing] to him [the next of kin] according to excellent conduct. That is a mitigation and alleviation from your nurturing Lord—educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority—and a mercy, kindness, and relief. But whoever has exceeded proper bounds through hostility and aggression after that, then for him is a deterring punishment—the utmost degree of pain and suffering.

Notes:

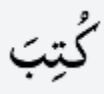
1 - This verse abolishes the concept of another being punished in place of the murderer



Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

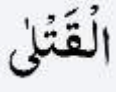


Root letters are connected to writing and prescribing

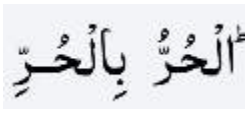
Are connected to appointing and making obligatory

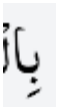


Root letters are connected to equal retaliation, settling accounts and being even



Root letters are connected to killing and murdering

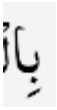



indicates the doer is matched with their own legal identity i.e. is responsible for their own actions

Proper noun used indicating the same person

Root letters are connected to being free, freeborn, pure and living in freedom




indicates the doer is matched with their own legal identity i.e. is responsible for their own actions

Proper noun used indicating the same person

Root letters are connected to a male servant and male slave




indicates the doer is matched with their own legal identity i.e. is responsible for their own actions

Proper noun used indicating the same person

Root letters are connected to a female

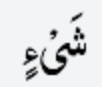


Root letters are connected to wiping out, excusing, obliterating, forgiving, pardoning and overlooking

Excuse - suspend blame (refrain from blaming or holding accountable)

Overlook - avoid dwelling on the offence (ignore or pass over something intentionally)

Forgive - internally release it (release resentment or punishment)



Root letters are connected to a thing, matter or affair



Noun used indicating a timeless and universal principle

Root letters are connected to following, pursuing, walking behind and adhering

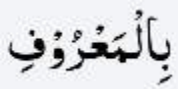
Are connected to being under authority and command

Are connected to concurring, being in agreement and being in conformity

In agreement - accepting the guidance internally (belief/acceptance)

Pursues - actively seeking and following it

Adheres to - remaining firm and consistent upon it



Root letters are connected to being well known, universally accepted, generally recognised by reason and easily recognised

Are connected to which is good, fitting, suitable, courteous, fair, kind, sincere advice and honest advice

Fair - just and impartial

Kind - gentle and compassionate

Sincere - genuine and honest in intention

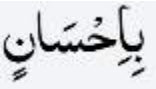
Common sense - practical sound judgement

Reason - thoughtful understanding and rational reflection

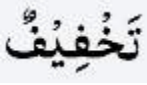


Root letters are connected to discharging, performing, rendering and paying what is due

Are connected to fulfilling a right or a duty and fulfilling a debt



Root letters are connected to being excellent, good, nice and lovely



Root letters are connected to making lighter, easing, mitigation, reducing the weight, relieving, diminishing and reducing

Mitigation - reducing the severity of something

Alleviation - relief is granted from the burden



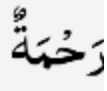
Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

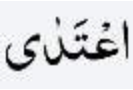
Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended



Root letters are connected to having mercy, compassion, sparing, letting off, saving, kindness, tenderness and pity

Mercy – withholds punishment from those who deserve it

Kindness – a broader act of granting blessings

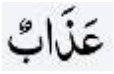


Root letters are connected to hostility, violating, aggression, exceeding proper bounds and transgressing

Are connected to treating like an enemy

Hostility - inner attitude of enmity

Aggression - outward expression through harmful action



Root letters are connected to prevent, hinder, deter and obstruct

Are connected to punishment, torture, agony, painful and suffering

Agonising - causing intense pain and torment



Root letters are connected pain, suffering, grievous pain, excruciating and the utmost degree of pain

Pain - refers to the physical sensation (the body)

Suffering - refers to the emotional or mental distress (the mind/soul)

وَلَكُمْ فِي الْقِصَاصِ حَيٰوةٌ يّٰٓاُولِي الْاَلْبَابِ لَعَلَّكُمْ تَتَّقُوْنَ ﴿١٧٩﴾

2:179

And for you all in equal retaliation—to settle the account—is life and advantage[1]—possessors of good sense, reason, and understanding! So that you may devoutly fulfil your duties—thereby protecting yourselves from harm and arranging all your matters correctly.

Notes:

1 – This includes deterring others from committing murder, preventing re-offending, minimising emotional trauma for the victim's family, stopping revenge killings, promoting the overall well-being of society; and other such factors

الْقِصَاصِ

Root letters are connected to equal retaliation, settling accounts and being even

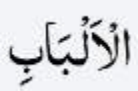
حَيٰوةٌ

Root letters are connected to life and experience

Are connected to gaining an advantage or profit



Root letters are connected to possessing, owning and being endowed with

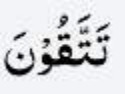


Root letters are connected to mind, intelligence, reason, understanding and being sensible

Good sense - sound judgement in conduct and decisions

Reason - logical reflection and analysis

Understanding - grasping meanings and consequences



Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious

كُتِبَ عَلَيْكُمْ إِذَا حَضَرَ أَحَدَكُمُ الْمَوْتُ إِنْ تَرَكَ خَيْرًا ۖ الْوَصِيَّةُ
لِلْوَالِدَيْنِ وَالْأَقْرَبِينَ بِالْمَعْرُوفِ ۖ حَقًّا عَلَى الْمُتَّقِينَ ﴿١٨٠﴾

2:180

The last will and testament has been prescribed upon you all as a legal obligation when death [inevitably] approaches any one of you, if he has left behind any good resource—a last will and testament for the benefit of both parents and those possessing closeness in lineage according to fair, kind, and sincere conduct which is widely recognised by common sense and reason. A correct, appropriate, and purposeful obligation[1] upon those who are firmly established in, and persist in, devoutly fulfilling their duties—thereby protecting themselves from harm and arranging all their matters correctly.

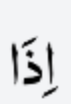
Notes:

1 - The exact share to each relative was revealed later on in other verses

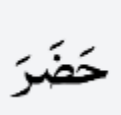
كُتِبَ

Root letters are connected to writing and prescribing

Are connected to appointing and making obligatory



Can indicate something certain



Root letters are connected to being present, arriving, attending and coming

Are connected to being at the point of death



Root letters are connected to dying, perishing, losing life and subsiding



Root letters are connected to leave, leave behind, leave alone, and bequeath

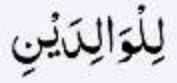


Common not specific

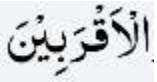
Root letters are connected to a good thing, good quality, resources, treasures, anything good and blessings



Root letters are connected to a testament, bequest, last will and a legacy



Root letters are connected to a parent



Root letters are connected to kinship and relative

Are connected to nearness, closeness and proximity

Are connected to taking an associate

Are connected to coming to a close relationship, come near someone and to seek someone’s favour

Lineage - family ties

Physical - those nearby



Root letters are connected to being well known, universally accepted, generally recognised by reason and easily recognised

Are connected to which is good, fitting, suitable, courteous, fair, kind, sincere advice and honest advice

Fair - just and impartial

Kind - gentle and compassionate

Sincere - genuine and honest in intention

Common sense - practical sound judgement

Reason - thoughtful understanding and rational reflection



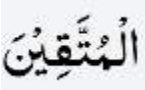
Root letters are connected to what is right, correct, true, proper, suitable, fitting and purposeful

Are connected to necessary, obligatory and incumbent

Correct - accurate and right

Appropriate - properly fitting

Purposeful - meaningful and intentional



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious

فَمَنۢ بَدَّلَهٗ بَعۡدَ مَا سَمِعَهٗ فَاِنَّمَاۤ اِثۡمُهٗ عَلَى الَّذِيۡنَ يُبَدِّلُوۡنَهٗ ؕ اِنَّ اللّٰهَ سَمِيۡعٌ عَلِيۡمٌ ﴿۱۸۱﴾

2:181

But whoever has altered it [the last will and testament[1]] after having [perfectly] listened attentively to it, then, in that case, its intentional sin is only upon those involved in altering it. Certainly, Allah is innately and eternally the One whose hearing encompasses all things, the One who completely knows and fully understands everything.

Notes:

1 - The verse refers to the last will and testament mentioned in the previous verse Quran 2:180

بَدَّلَهٗ and يُبَدِّلُوۡنَهٗ

Root letters are connected to changing, altering, exchanging and substituting

بَعۡدَ مَا سَمِعَهٗ

مَا increases the emphasis that the testament was heard and understood perfectly

سَمِعَهُۥ

Root letters are connected to hearing, listening, paying attention

Are connected to understanding – used in this sense in the Quran e.g. Quran 2:285

إِثْمُهُۥ

Root letters are connected to sin, err, slip, crime and offense

Are connected to intentional sin

إِنَّ ٱللَّهَ سَمِيعٌ عَلِيمٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

سَمِيعٌ

Root letters are connected to hearing, listening and paying attention

عَلِيمٌ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

فَمَنْ خَافَ مِنْ مُّوْصٍ جَنَفًا اَوْ اِثْمًا فَاَصْلَحَ بَيْنَهُمْ فَلَآ اِثْمَ عَلَيْهِ ۭ اِنَّ اللّٰهَ غَفُوْرٌ رَّحِيْمٌ ﴿١٨٢﴾

2:182

Yet whoever has feared [negative consequences] from the one established in the role of bequeathing the last will and testament—entrusting possessions from one generation to the next—deviation from the right manner or intentional sinful behaviour, and then has adjusted [the last will and testament] to restore rights, correct affairs, and bring about reconciliation between them [the inheritors], then, in that case, there is absolutely no sin upon him. Certainly, Allah is innately and eternally the One who conceals, forgives, and corrects affairs, the One who especially grants constant mercy, kindness, and relief to those who earn it.

Notes:

خَافَ

Root letters are connected to being frightened and scared of a future event

مُّوْصٍ

Noun indicating an established and timeless principle

Root letters are connected to prescribing, making a will, determine by will and bequeath

Are connected to handing down something from generation to generation

Are connected to a testament, bequest, last will and a legacy

جَنَفًا

Root letters are connected to deviating from the right way, inclining to sin, acting wrongfully and acting unjustly

إِثْمًا and إِثْمَ

Root letters are connected to sin, err, slip, crime and offense

Are connected to intentional sin

فَأَصْلَحَ

Root letters are connected to helping, reconciling, modifying, making peace, adjusting, fixing things, repairing things, arranging correctly, and granting benefits

فَلَآ إِثْمَ

Structure indicates absolute negation

إِنَّ اللَّهَ غَفُورٌ رَّحِيمٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

غَفُوْرٌ

Root letters are connected to covering, concealing, veiling and hiding

Are connected to forgiving and pardoning

Are connected to correcting and rectifying affairs

رَّحِيْمٌ

Root letters are connected to having mercy, compassion, sparing, letting off, saving, kindness, tenderness and pity

Intense structure form has been used

Specific mercy for those who deserve and earn it

Mercy – withholds punishment from those who deserve it

Kindness – a broader act of granting blessings

يَٰٓأَيُّهَا ٱلَّذِينَ ءَامَنُوا۟ كُتِبَ عَلَيْكُمُ ٱلصِّيَامُ كَمَا كُتِبَ عَلَى ٱلَّذِينَ مِن قَبْلِكُمْ لَعَلَّكُمْ تَتَّقُونَ ﴿١٨٣﴾

2:183

Those who have claimed to believe! Fasting has been prescribed upon you all as a legal obligation, in the same manner as it was prescribed upon those from before you, so that you may devoutly fulfil your duties—thereby protecting yourselves from harm and arranging all your matters correctly.

Notes:

ءَامَنُوا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

كُتِبَ

Root letters are connected to writing and prescribing

Are connected to appointing and making obligatory

الصِّيَامُ

Noun indicating an established and timeless obligation

Root letters are connected to observing a specific kind of abstinence

Are connected to abstention, fasting and abstinence

تَتَّقُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious

أَيَّامًا مَّعْدُوْدٰتٍ ؕ فَمَنْ كَانَ مِنْكُمْ مَّرِيْضًا اَوْ عَلٰى سَفَرٍ فَعِدَّةٌ مِّنْ اَيَّامٍ
اُخَرَ ؕ وَعَلَى الَّذِيْنَ يُطِيْقُوْنَهٗ فِدْيَةٌ طَعَامُ مِسْكِيْنٍ ؕ فَمَنْ تَطَوَّعَ خَيْرًا
فَهُوَ خَيْرٌ لَّهٗ ؕ وَاَنْ تَصُوْمُوْا خَيْرٌ لَّكُمْ اِنْ كُنْتُمْ تَعْلَمُوْنَ ﴿۱۸۴﴾

2:184

[Fasting is prescribed for] a specific, small number of significant days. But whoever from amongst you all is in an established state of sickness or travel, then, in that case, [fasting] an equivalent prescribed number of other days. And upon those who are able to bear it despite difficulty—a compensation: feeding a person who cannot financially support themselves [for each day missed][1]. And whoever has voluntarily done any good which is not obligatory upon him, out of obedience [to Allah]—it is preferred and better for his well-being. But that you fast is preferred and better for your well-being, if you are, in fact, firmly established in recognising, knowing, or understanding.

Notes:

1 - This verse indicates that those who are unable to observe the obligatory fast for a valid reason must make it up on other days and, if possible, also provide food for the poor. Later verses and narrations, however, eased these obligations further

أَيَّامًا and أَيَّامٍ

Root letters are connected to days, age, era and time

Are connected to momentous and important days

مَّعْدُوْدٰتٍ

Plural structure indicates the importance of the days and a specific small amount

Root letters are connected to counting, few, little, reckoning, limited in number, easily countable and numbered

كَانَ مِنْكُمْ مَّرِيْضًا اَوْ عَلٰى سَفَرٍ

Structure indicates a temporal condition and specific application of the concession

كَانَ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

مَّرِيْضًا

Noun indicating an established state

Root letters are connected to being sick, ill, and diseased

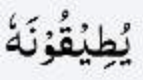


Noun indicating an established state

Root letters are connected to departure, trip, journey, tour and travelling



Root letters are connected to prescribed term, numbering and reckoning



Root letters are connected to be able, capable, able to bear and endure

Are connected to imposing a difficult thing

Are connected to enduring a difficult thing and able to do something with difficulty



Root letters are connected to redemption, ransom, sacrifice, redeem and expiation



Root letters are connected to food, meal and diet

مِسْكِيْنٍ

Root letters are connected to severe poverty, destitution, in a bad financial state and subdued by financial issues

تَطَوَّعَ

Root letters are connected to obedience, submission and submitting

Are connected to do something voluntarily

خَيْرًا

Root letters are connected to good, virtuous and generous

خَيْرٌ

A comparison

Root letters are connected to good, virtuous and generous

Are connected to choosing and preferring

Are connected to something better and superior

Are connected to a good state and well-being

تَصُوْمُوْا

Root letters are connected to observing a specific kind of abstinence

Are connected to abstention, fasting and abstinence

إِنْ كُنْتُمْ تَعْلَمُوْنَ

Structure indicates an established state

تَعْلَمُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

شَهْرُ رَمَضَانَ الَّذِیْٓ اُنْزِلَ فِیْهِ الْقُرْاٰنُ هُدًی لِّلنَّاسِ وَبَیِّنٰتٍ مِّنَ
الْهُدٰی وَالْفُرْقَانِ ۚ فَمَنْ شَهِدَ مِنْكُمُ الشَّهْرَ فَلْیَصُمْهُ ؕ وَمَنْ كَانَ
مَرِیْضًا اَوْ عَلٰی سَفَرٍ فَعِدَّةٌ مِّنْ اَیَّامٍ اُخَرَ ؕ یُرِیْدُ اللّٰهُ بِكُمُ الْیُسْرَ وَلَا
یُرِیْدُ بِكُمُ الْعُسْرَ ۫ وَلِتُكْمِلُوا الْعِدَّةَ وَلِتُكَبِّرُوا اللّٰهَ عَلٰی مَا هَدٰىكُمْ
وَلَعَلَّكُمْ تَشْكُرُوْنَ ﴿۱۸۵﴾

2:185

The well-known and celebrated month of thirst, Ramadan, in which the Quran—recited and studied extensively—was revealed[1] to hold a special position [of supreme authority]: as guidance for all people, which shows and leads to and along the right way of life; as clear proofs and explanations for right guidance; and as the Criterion which clearly separates right guidance from misguidance. Then whoever from amongst you all has experienced the well-known and celebrated month must fast during it. But whoever is in an established state of sickness or travel, then, in that case, [fasting] an equivalent prescribed number of other days. Allah intends for you ease, simplicity, and a pleasant life, and He does not intend for you difficulty, hardship, or distress. And [this is] so that you may complete the total prescribed number, and magnify Allah, holding Him in the highest honour, admiration, and respect, according to the manner in which He has guided you—in order that you may show gratitude [by using your blessings in the obedience of Allah].

Notes:

1 - The Quran was sent down from the Preserved Tablet on the Night of Power, all at once. It was then placed in the House of Might in the lowest Heaven. Then it was brought down to the Prophet Muhammad, peace and blessings be upon him, by the Angel Jibraeel, peace be upon him, piece by piece, over 23 years (Tafsir Al Qurtubi, Volume 1, Page 472)

شَهْرُ and الشَّهْرَ

Root letters are connected to reputation, fame, widely known, renowned, and celebrated

Are connected to month and new moon

رَمَضَانَ

Root letters are connected to being parched and scorched

أُنْزِلَ

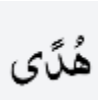
Root letters are connected to something which is sent down, comes down, descends, stops over and is granted

Are connected to something which is sent down slowly and gradually

Are connected to something which holds a special position or place

الْقُرْاٰنُ

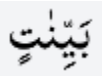
Root letters are connected to reciting, reading, receiving instruction and studying thoroughly

 ,  and 

Root letters are connected to guidance, direction, showing, being led, being supplied and a way of life

Are connected to gifting and bestowing

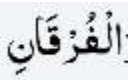
Are connected to direction and discovering the right way



Root letters are connected to clarification, explanation, clear evidence and proof

Proofs – undeniable evidence that establish truth decisively

Explanations – making meaning clear and understandable



Root letters are connected to making a separation, distinction between truth and falsehood, between lawful and unlawful, between good and evil and between right and wrong

Criterion - a standard or measure used to distinguish and judge between things



Root letters are connected to witnessing, attending and experiencing

فَلْيَصُمْهُ

A command through conditional responsibility dependent on individual circumstances

Root letters are connected to observing a specific kind of abstinence

Are connected to abstention, fasting and abstinence

وَمَنْ كَانَ مَرِيْضًا اَوْ عَلٰى سَفَرٍ

Structure indicates a temporal condition and specific application of the concession

كَانَ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

مَّرِيْضًا

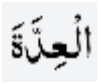
Noun indicating an established state

Root letters are connected to being sick, ill, and diseased

سَفَرٍ

Noun indicating an established state

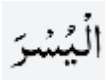
Root letters are connected to departure, trip, journey, tour and travelling

 and 

Root letters are connected to prescribed term, numbering and reckoning



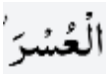
Root letters are connected to wanting, having in mind, desiring, intending, aiming at and purpose



Root letters are connected to ease, pleasant circumstances, prosperity and comfort

Are connected to living in affluence

Are connected to something is short, plain, simple and uncomplicated

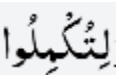


Root letters are connected to difficultly, hardship, distress, stress, straightened circumstances

Difficulty - an obstacle, challenge, or inconvenience

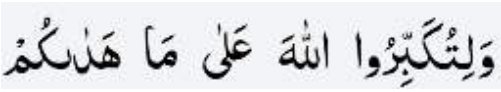
Hardship - a serious burden, adversity, or deprivation

Distress - suffering, anguish, or discomfort

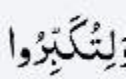


Root letters are connected to perfecting, completing and concluding

Are connected to full, whole, entire and total



Structure indicates that magnifying Allah, the Exalted, is to be done according and upon His guidance, not personal invention or subjective reasoning



Root letters are connected to magnifying, extolling and lauding

Are connected to honouring

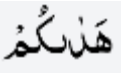
Are connected to show respect and admire

Magnify - how one proclaims and internalizes greatness

Honour - recognising exalted status

Admiration - appreciating excellence and perfection

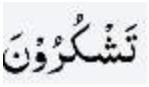
Respect - responding with reverence and proper conduct



Root letters are connected to guidance, direction, showing, being led, being supplied and a way of life

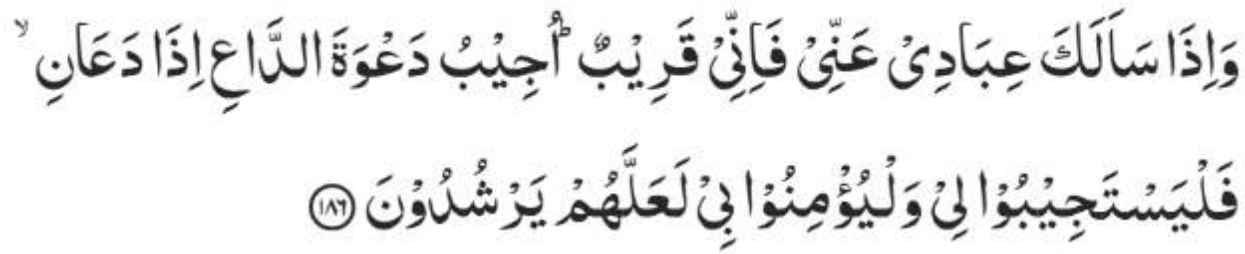
Are connected to gifting and bestowing

Are connected to direction and discovering the right way



Root letters are connected to being thankful, grateful, and praising

Are connected to showing gratitude with the heart, tongue and limbs


وَإِذَا سَأَلَكَ عِبَادِي عَنِّي فَإِنِّي قَرِيبٌ ۖ أُجِيبُ دَعْوَةَ الدَّاعِ إِذَا دَعَانِ ۖ
فَلْيَسْتَجِيبُوا لِي وَلْيُؤْمِنُوا بِي لَعَلَّهُمْ يَرْشُدُونَ ﴿١٨٦﴾

2:186

And whenever My slaves question you about Me, then certainly, I am innately and eternally near—I give special attention and respond positively to the supplication of the one who supplicates whenever he supplicates to Me. They must therefore strive to pay attention to and comply with Me—believing in Me, as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, so that they may follow the right course—managing their affairs intelligently, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind.

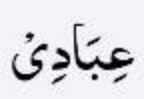
Notes:


وَإِذَا

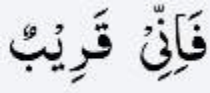
Indicates a strong sense of certainty


سَأَلَكَ

Root letters are connected to asking, requesting, enquiring and demanding



Root letters are connected to a male servant and male slave



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

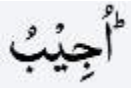


Noun indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

Root letters are connected to near, close and approaching



No conjunction indicating immediate and complete response



Root letters are connected to answering, replying, responding and reacting positively

Are connected to hearing, paying attention and showing interest



Noun sentence indicates an established and permanent state

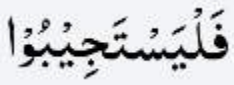


Singular form

Root letters are connected to calling, praying, supplicating, appealing and requesting

 and 

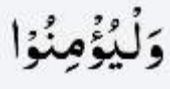
Root letters are connected to calling, praying, supplicating, appealing and requesting



Structure indicates to try and strive for

Root letters are connected to answering, replying, complying, responding and reacting positively

Are connected to hearing, paying attention and showing interest

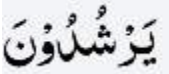


Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit



Root letters are connected to being well guided, the right way of life, following the right course and the right way

Are connected to good management of affairs and right conduct with firmness

Are connected to being reasonable, rational, intelligent and mature

أُحِلَّ لَكُمْ لَيْلَةَ الصِّيَامِ الرَّفَثُ إِلٰى نِسَآئِكُمْ ۭ هُنَّ لِبَاسٌ لَّكُمْ
وَاَنْتُمْ لِبَاسٌ لَّهُنَّ ۭ عَلِمَ اللّٰهُ اَنَّكُمْ كُنْتُمْ تَخْتَانُوْنَ اَنْفُسَكُمْ
فَتَابَ عَلَيْكُمْ وَعَفَا عَنْكُمْ ۚ فَالْـٰٔنَ بَاشِرُوْهُنَّ وَابْتَغُوْا مَا كَتَبَ اللّٰهُ
لَكُمْ ۠ وَكُلُوْا وَاشْرَبُوْا حَتّٰى يَتَبَيَّنَ لَكُمُ الْخَيْطُ الْاَبْيَضُ مِنَ الْخَيْطِ
الْاَسْوَدِ مِنَ الْفَجْرِ ۡ ثُمَّ اَتِمُّوا الصِّيَامَ اِلَى الَّيْلِ ۚ وَلَا تُبَاشِرُوْهُنَّ
وَاَنْتُمْ عٰكِفُوْنَ ۙ فِي الْمَسٰجِدِ ۭ تِلْكَ حُدُوْدُ اللّٰهِ فَلَا تَقْرَبُوْهَا ۭ كَذٰلِكَ
يُبَيِّنُ اللّٰهُ اٰيٰتِهٖ لِلنَّاسِ لَعَلَّهُمْ يَتَّقُوْنَ ﴿١٨٧﴾

2:187

Acceptable acts during physical intimacy with your wives have been made lawful for you all during the night of the fasting period. They [your wives] are an established clothing[1] for you, and you are an established clothing for them. Allah completely knew and fully understood that you were repeatedly disloyal to [the duty you imposed on] yourselves[2]. He then turned to you with pardon and mercy, and He excused you. From this moment onward, be physically intimate with your wives and desire and seek what Allah has decreed for you. And eat and drink until the white thread [the whiteness of the day] becomes clearly distinguished from the black thread [the blackness of the night] at the time of daybreak. Thereafter, precisely complete each fast [while fulfilling its conditions and etiquettes] until the

nighttime. But do not be physically intimate with your wives while you are in a firmly established and persistent state of devoting and secluding yourselves in the places of humble obedience and worship of Allah—the Mosques. Those are the established prescribed limits of Allah, which avert evil; therefore, do not even approach them. In that way, Allah clearly explains His miraculous and evident signs [verses of the Quran] for the benefit of all people, so that they may devoutly fulfil their duties—thereby protecting themselves from harm and arranging all their matters correctly.

Notes:

1 - An established clothing includes a source of companionship, protection, concealment, and comfort

2 - Initially, the Companions, may Allah be pleased with them, abstained from food, drink and marital relations after the late night obligatory prayer, believing the next day's fast began then (Tafsir Ibn Kathir, Volume 1, Page 510). Although neither Allah, the Exalted, nor the Prophet Muhammad, peace and blessings be upon him, ordained this practice, they still followed it. When some Companions, may Allah be pleased with them, failed to maintain this routine, they were disloyal to themselves



Root letters are connected to being lawful, permissible, allowed, lawful, allowable and legitimate

Are connected to making lawful, making permissible and permitting



Singular emphasizing every single night

الصِّيَامِ and الصِّيَامَ

Singular indicating the practice of fasting

Noun indicating an established and timeless obligation

Root letters are connected to observing a specific kind of abstinence

Are connected to abstention, fasting and abstinence

الرَّفَثُ

Root letters are connected to discussion and acts during intimacy with one’s spouse

هُنَّ لِبَاسٌ لَّكُمْ وَأَنتُمْ لِبَاسٌ لَّهُنَّ

Noun sentence indicating an established and persistent state

لِبَاسٌ

Root letters are connected to close contact, accompanying and being on intimate terms

Are connected to clothes, apparel, dress and garment

عَلِمَ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

كُنْتُمْ تَخْتَانُوْنَ اَنْفُسَكُمْ

Structure indicates repeated behaviour

كُنْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

تَخْتَانُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to being disloyal, letting down, deserting, imposing, and deceiving

اَنْفُسَكُمْ

Root letters are connected to soul, person, mind, human being and an individual

فَتَابَ

Root letters are connected to forgiveness, pardon and turning to someone

وَعَفَا

Root letters are connected excusing, forgiving and effacing and remitting

بَاشِرُوهُنَّ and تُبَاشِرُوهُنَّ

Root letters are connected to touching, direct contact and intimacy

وَابْتَغُوا

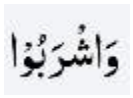
Root letters are connected to seeking, desiring, striving and aspiring for

كَتَبَ

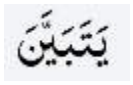
Root letters are connected to recording, to destine, foreordain, decree and prescribe

وَّكُلُوا

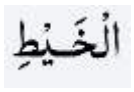
Root letters are connected to eat, swallow and consume



Root letters are connected to drinking



Root letters are connected to becoming clear, evident, clearly distinguished and see clearly

 and 

Root letters are connected to thread, cord and string

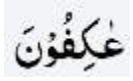


Root letters are connected to day break, dawn, morning and twilight



Root letters are connected to completing, finishing, concluding, performing, executing and accomplishing

Are connected to perfection, complete, entirety and precisely

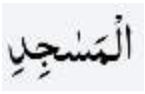


Noun indicating established state

Root letters are connected to clinging, sticking, devoting, engaging and remaining uninterrupted

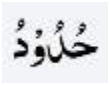
Are connected to applying oneself to the service of Allah, the Exalted

Are connected to seclusion, isolation and withdrawing in the Mosques



Noun for place and time

Root letters are connected to bowing down, prostrating, bending down, being humble, submissive, worship, honouring and paying respect



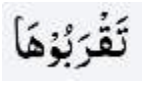
Noun indicates established state

Root letters are connected to limits, restrictions and boundaries

Are connected to divine ordinance

Are connected to repelling and averting evil

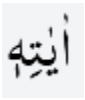
Are connected to be bounded, determined, and established



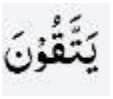
Root letters are connected to coming near, close and approaching



Root letters are connected to making clear, showing, explaining, differentiating and distinguishing



Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof



Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious

وَلَا تَأْكُلُوٓا اَمْوَالَكُمْ بَيْنَكُمْ بِالْبَاطِلِ وَتُدْلُوْا بِهَآ اِلَى الْحُكَّامِ لِتَاْكُلُوْا
فَرِيْقًا مِّنْ اَمْوَالِ النَّاسِ بِالْاِثْمِ وَاَنْتُمْ تَعْلَمُوْنَ ﴿١٨٨﴾

2:188

And do not—all of you—devour and utilise your possessions between yourselves by means of that which is firmly established in, and persists in, being vain, false, or corrupt. And do not offer your possessions to those in authority with the aim of influencing them, so that you devour and utilise a portion from the possessions of the people through intentional sinful behaviour, even though you recognise, know, and understand [its sinful nature].

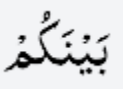
Notes:

تَأْكُلُوٓا and لِتَاْكُلُوْا

Root letters are connected to eating up, swallowing, consuming, devouring, destroying, gnaw and eat away

اَمْوَالَكُمْ

Root letters are connected to property, assets, goods, wealth, and possessions



Preposition meaning between, among and amidst



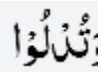
Noun indicates established state

Root letters are connected to false, vain, worthless, lies, falsehood, unsound and corruption

Vain - lacking real value or benefit

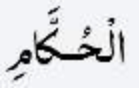
False - not true; contrary to reality

Corrupt - morally or functionally spoiled; distorted from what is right

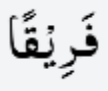


Root letters are connected to presenting, giving, offering, delivering, advancing and approaching

Are connected to gaining access to someone via money or rank



Root letters are connected to umpire, judge, referee and the authority



Root letters are connected to separating, parting, dividing and severing

Are connected to a part, portion and share



Root letters are connected to sin, err, slip, crime and offense

Are connected to intentional sin



Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

يَسْـَٔلُوْنَكَ عَنِ الْاَهِلَّةِ ۭ قُلْ هِىَ مَوَاقِيْتُ لِلنَّاسِ وَالْحَجِّ ۭ وَلَيْسَ الْبِرُّ
بِاَنْ تَاْتُوا الْبُيُوْتَ مِنْ ظُهُوْرِهَا وَلٰكِنَّ الْبِرَّ مَنِ اتَّقٰى ۚ وَاْتُوا الْبُيُوْتَ
مِنْ اَبْوَابِهَا ۠ وَاتَّقُوا اللّٰهَ لَعَلَّكُمْ تُفْلِحُوْنَ ۝١٨٩

2:189

They question you about the phases of the Moon. Reply, "They are established measurements of time for all people, and for the Major Pilgrimage." And righteous conduct towards Allah and people is not that you all approach [matters improperly, such as entering] homes from their rear. However, righteous conduct towards Allah and people is [personified by] whoever has devoutly fulfilled his duties—thereby protecting himself from harm and arranging all his matters correctly. Therefore, approach [matters properly, such as entering] homes from their appropriate entrances. And devoutly obey Allah—thereby protecting yourselves from harm and arranging all your matters correctly, so that you may cultivate spiritual well-being and permanent success.

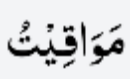
Notes:

يَسْـَٔلُوْنَكَ

Root letters are connected to asking, requesting and demanding



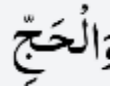
Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging



Noun indicating established state

Root letters are connected to appointment, appointed time, timetable, schedule, time of the year and times of arrival and departure

Are connected to time, time limit and setting a time



Root letters are connected to performing the pilgrimage to Makkah

 and 

Root letters are connected to being dutiful, devout, to do good, obey Allah, treat others with respect and good treatment of people

Are connected to piety, reverence and righteousness

 and 

Root letters are connected to coming, arriving, bringing, advancing, approaching and accomplishing

الْبُيُوْتَ

Root letters are connected to a home, house, room and apartment

ظُهُوْرِهَا

Root letters are connected to back, reverse, rear, rear part and reverse

اتَّقٰى and اتَّقُوا

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious

اَبْوَابِهَا

Root letters are connected to a door, entrance, gate and opening

تُفْلِحُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to cultivating, growing, nurturing

Are connected to achieving success, safety, security, comfort and enjoyment of ease

Are connected to remaining in a good state

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

وَقَاتِلُوْا فِيْ سَبِيْلِ اللّٰهِ الَّذِيْنَ يُقَاتِلُوْنَكُمْ وَلَا تَعْتَدُوْا ۭ اِنَّ اللّٰهَ لَا يُحِبُّ الْمُعْتَدِيْنَ ۝۱۹۰

2:190

And fight, all of you, in the path of [obeying] Allah—weakening the strength of those who fight you—but do not exceed proper bounds through hostility and aggression. Certainly, Allah does not like those who are firmly established in, and persist in, exceeding proper bounds through hostility and aggression.

Notes:

Fighting is allowed only under strict conditions, as outlined by this verse and reinforced by many other teachings of Islam

قَاتِلُوْا and يُقَاتِلُوْنَكُمْ

Root letters are connected to combat, fighting, battle and opposing

Are connected to weakening the strength or intensity of something

سَبِيْلِ

Root letters are connected to a way, path and road

تَعْتَدُوا

Root letters are connected to hostility, violating, aggression, exceeding proper bounds and transgressing

Are connected to treating like an enemy

Hostility - inner attitude of enmity

Aggression - outward expression through harmful action

يُحِبُّ

Root letters are connected liking, loving and wanting

الْمُعْتَدِينَ

Noun indicating established and persistent state

Root letters are connected to hostility, violating, aggression, exceeding proper bounds and transgressing

Are connected to treating like an enemy

Hostility - inner attitude of enmity

Aggression - outward expression through harmful action

وَاقْتُلُوْهُمْ حَيْثُ ثَقِفْتُمُوْهُمْ وَاَخْرِجُوْهُمْ مِّنْ حَيْثُ اَخْرَجُوْكُمْ
وَالْفِتْنَةُ اَشَدُّ مِنَ الْقَتْلِ ۚ وَلَا تُقٰتِلُوْهُمْ عِنْدَ الْمَسْجِدِ الْحَرَامِ حَتّٰى
يُقٰتِلُوْكُمْ فِيْهِ ۚ فَاِنْ قٰتَلُوْكُمْ فَاقْتُلُوْهُمْ ۗ كَذٰلِكَ جَزَآءُ الْكٰفِرِيْنَ ﴿١٩١﴾

2:191

And oppose, fight, and kill them wherever you all encounter them [the non-Muslims of Makkah]—overcoming them to weaken their strength—and expel them from wherever they expelled you. And persecution, oppression, and dissension are more severe than fighting and killing. But do not fight them in the proximity of the sacred and revered Mosque—the place of humble obedience and worship of Allah—until they fight you therein. However, if they fight you therein, then oppose, fight, and kill them—weakening their strength. In that way is the recompense of those who are firmly established in, and persist in, neglecting, dissociating from, and denying their obligations to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them].

Notes:

Fighting is allowed only under strict conditions, as outlined by this verse and reinforced by many other teachings of Islam. This verse also makes it clear that fighting is directed toward a specific group of people and within a defined location, thereby indicating that it is not universal in its application

اقْتُلُوْهُمْ , الْقَتْلِ , تُقٰتِلُوْهُمْ and قٰتَلُوْكُمْ

Root letters are connected to combat, fighting, battle and opposing

Are connected to weakening the strength or intensity of something

Are connected to killing and murdering

ثَقِفْتُمُوْهُمْ

Root letters are connected to finding and meeting

Are connected to gaining victory, overcoming and gaining mastery

اَخْرِجُوْهُمْ

Root letters are connected to bringing out, pulling out, dislodging and expelling

الْفِتْنَةُ

Root letters are connected to persecution, oppression, sedition, insurrection, hardship, torture, dissension, and discord

Persecution - focuses on individuals or groups (targeting people for their beliefs)

Oppression - focuses on unjust power or control (denying rights and freedoms)

Dissension - division within a community (breakdown of unity and harmony)

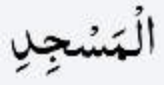


A comparative

Root letters are connected to becoming firm, solid, hard, strong and harsh



Preposition – with, in the company of, in the presence of, in despite of, together and in the estimation



Noun for place and time

Root letters are connected to bowing down, prostrating, bending down, being humble, submissive, worship, honouring and paying respect

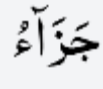


Root letters are connected to declaring sacred, inviolable, unlawful, forbidden

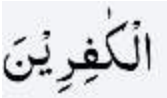
Are connected to respect, revered and venerated

Sacred - made holy and specially sanctified

Revered - greatly honoured and deeply respected



Root letters are connected to repaying, recompense, rewarding and punishing



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

فَإِنِ انْتَهَوْا فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ غَفُورٌ رَّحِيمٌ ﴿١٩٢﴾

2:192

But if they have ceased [their aggression] and behave with reason, then certainly, Allah is innately and eternally the One who conceals, forgives, and corrects affairs, the One who especially grants constant mercy, kindness, and relief to those who earn it.

Notes:

انْتَهَوْا

Root letters are connected to refraining, desisting, abstaining and renouncing

Are connected to being intelligent, understanding, reasonable and wise

إِنَّ اللَّهَ غَفُورٌ رَّحِيمٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

غَفُورٌ

Root letters are connected to covering, concealing, veiling and hiding

Are connected to forgiving and pardoning

Are connected to correcting and rectifying affairs

رَّحِيمٌ

Root letters are connected to having mercy, compassion, sparing, letting off, saving, kindness, tenderness and pity

Intense structure form has been used

Specific mercy for those who deserve and earn it

Mercy – withholds punishment from those who deserve it

Kindness – a broader act of granting blessings

وَقٰتِلُوْهُمْ حَتّٰى لَا تَكُوْنَ فِتْنَةٌ وَّيَكُوْنَ الدِّيْنُ لِلّٰهِ ۭ فَاِنِ انْتَهَوْا فَلَا عُدْوَانَ اِلَّا عَلَي الظّٰلِمِيْنَ ﴿١٩٣﴾

2:193

And fight them, all of you—weakening their strength—until persecution, oppression, and dissension are no longer an established state, and until accountability, judgement, and the repayment of debt resulting from one's way of life are established as belonging [solely] to Allah. But if they have ceased [their aggression] and behave with reason, then, in that case, there is absolutely no enmity, hostility, or military aggression except against those who are firmly established in, and persist in, being unjust—transgressing proper limits.

Notes:

Fighting is allowed only under strict conditions, as outlined by this verse and reinforced by many other teachings of Islam

قٰتِلُوْهُمْ

Root letters are connected to combat, fighting, battle and opposing

Are connected to weakening the strength or intensity of something

لَا تَكُوْنَ فِتْنَةٌ

Structure indicates an established state

تَكُوْنَ and وَّيَكُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

فِتْنَةٌ

Root letters are connected to persecution, oppression, sedition, insurrection, hardship, torture, dissension, and discord

Persecution - focuses on individuals or groups (targeting people for their beliefs)

Oppression - focuses on unjust power or control (denying rights and freedoms)

Dissension - division within a community (breakdown of unity and harmony)

وَّيَكُوْنَ الدِّيْنُ لِلّٰهِ

Structure indicates an established state and exclusivity

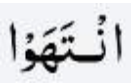
الدِّيْنُ

Root letters are connected to under power, obedience, owe allegiance and submissive

Are connected to way of acting, doctrine, custom, habit, creed and religion

Are connected to debt, indebted, to owe and to repay

Are connected to judgement, reckoning and recompense



Root letters are connected to refraining, desisting, abstaining and renouncing

Are connected to being intelligent, understanding, reasonable and wise



Structure indicates absolute negation



Root letters are connected to enmity, hostility and military aggression



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to be unjust, act tyrannically, do wrong, do evil, harm, oppress and transgress proper limits

اَلشَّهْرُ الْحَرَامُ بِالشَّهْرِ الْحَرَامِ وَالْحُرُمٰتُ قِصَاصٌ ؕ فَمَنِ اعْتَدٰى
عَلَيْكُمْ فَاعْتَدُوْا عَلَيْهِ بِمِثْلِ مَا اعْتَدٰى عَلَيْكُمْ ۪ وَاتَّقُوا اللّٰهَ
وَاعْلَمُوْٓا اَنَّ اللّٰهَ مَعَ الْمُتَّقِيْنَ ﴿۱۹۴﴾

2:194

[Fighting during] the well-known, sacred, and revered month is [retaliated] in the [same] well-known, sacred, and revered month[1], and [concerning] the sacred limits and entities—the violation of which are unlawful—equal retaliation is established to settle the account. Then whoever has exceeded proper bounds through hostility and aggression against you all—exceed proper bounds through hostility and aggression against him in the same manner he has done to you—as a deterrent punishment. And devoutly fulfil your duties to Allah, and recognise, know, and understand that Allah is with those who are firmly established in, and persist in, devoutly fulfilling their duties—thereby protecting themselves from harm and arranging all their matters correctly.

Notes:

1 - Fighting was prohibited in the four sacred months even before the coming of Islam but this was often violated by the non-Muslims and permission is only granted to fight within them in defense

اَلشَّهْرُ الْحَرَامُ بِالشَّهْرِ الْحَرَامِ

Both terms are in specific form and therefore indicate the same thing i.e. the same month

اَلشَّهْرُ and بِالشَّهْرِ

Root letters are connected to reputation, fame, widely known, renowned, and celebrated

Are connected to month and new moon

الْحَرَامُ , الْحَرَامِ and وَالْحُرُمٰتُ

Root letters are connected to state of being forbidden, unlawful, sacred, inviolable, respected, revered and inviolable ordinances

Are connected to respect, revered and venerated

Sacred - made holy and specially sanctified

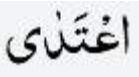
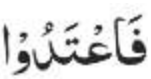
Revered - greatly honoured and deeply respected

وَالْحُرُمٰتُ قِصَاصٌ

Noun sentence indicating an established and timeless obligation

قِصَاصٌ

Root letters are connected to equal retaliation, settling accounts and being even

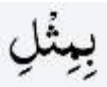
 and 

Root letters are connected to hostility, violating, aggression, exceeding proper bounds and transgressing

Are connected to treating like an enemy

Hostility - inner attitude of enmity

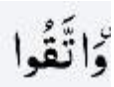
Aggression - outward expression through harmful action



Root letters are connected to imitate, copy and be equal

Are connected to making an example of

Are connected to a deterrent punishment



Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious



Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

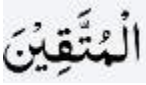
Understand - grasping meaning and implications



Noun sentence indicating established state



Preposition – with, in the company of, in despite of, together and in the estimation



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious

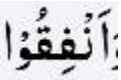
وَاَنۡفِقُوۡا فِیۡ سَبِیۡلِ اللّٰهِ وَلَا تُلۡقُوۡا بِاَیۡدِیۡکُمۡ اِلَی التَّهۡلُکَةِ ۛۚ وَاَحۡسِنُوۡا ۛۚ اِنَّ
اللّٰهَ یُحِبُّ الۡمُحۡسِنِیۡنَ ﴿۱۹۵﴾

2:195

And readily use—all of you—[your possessions] in the path of [obeying] Allah. And do not [intentionally] plunge[1]—through your own power, authority, and influence—into danger, destruction, and ruin. Rather, show excellent conduct [towards Allah and people]. Certainly, Allah prefers and loves those who are firmly established in, and persist in, showing excellent conduct—leading to a good state.

Notes:

1 - The specifics of what is thrown into destruction are left open, encompassing oneself, others, affairs, the community, resources, situations, and more.



Root letters are connected to disposing of something quickly

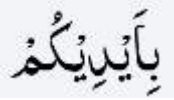
Are connected to exhausting, using up and spending



Root letters are connected to a way, path and road



Root letters are connected to throw, cast, submit, extend and plunge



Emphasises intentional actions

Root letters are connected to hand, power, control, influence and authority

Power - ability or capacity to act or carry out something

Authority - recognised right or legitimacy to act or decide

Influence - ability to affect or shape others' thoughts or actions

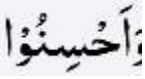


Root letters are connected to ruin, danger, perdition, destruction and total loss

Danger - exposure to harm

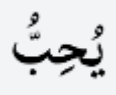
Destruction - collapse or perishing

Ruin - lasting loss and damage



Root letters are connected to being excellent, good, nice and lovely

Are connected to suitable, be in a proper state and in a desirable condition



Root letters are connected to desiring, preferring, liking

Are connected to wishing, wanting and loving



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being excellent, good, nice and lovely

Are connected to suitable, be in a proper state and in a desirable condition

وَاَتِمُّوا الْحَجَّ وَالْعُمْرَةَ لِلّٰهِ ؕ فَاِنْ اُحْصِرْتُمْ فَمَا اسْتَيْسَرَ مِنَ الْهَدْيِ ۚ
وَلَا تَحْلِقُوْا رُءُوْسَكُمْ حَتّٰى يَبْلُغَ الْهَدْيُ مَحِلَّهٗ ؕ فَمَنْ كَانَ مِنْكُمْ
مَّرِيْضًا اَوْ بِهٖۤ اَذًى مِّنْ رَّاْسِهٖ فَفِدْيَةٌ مِّنْ صِيَامٍ اَوْ صَدَقَةٍ اَوْ نُسُكٍ ۚ
فَاِذَاۤ اَمِنْتُمْ ۪ فَمَنْ تَمَتَّعَ بِالْعُمْرَةِ اِلَى الْحَجِّ فَمَا اسْتَيْسَرَ مِنَ الْهَدْيِ ۚ
فَمَنْ لَّمْ يَجِدْ فَصِيَامُ ثَلٰثَةِ اَيَّامٍ فِي الْحَجِّ وَسَبْعَةٍ اِذَا رَجَعْتُمْ ؕ تِلْكَ
عَشَرَةٌ كَامِلَةٌ ؕ ذٰلِكَ لِمَنْ لَّمْ يَكُنْ اَهْلُهٗ حَاضِرِي الْمَسْجِدِ الْحَرَامِ ؕ
وَاتَّقُوا اللّٰهَ وَاعْلَمُوْۤا اَنَّ اللّٰهَ شَدِيْدُ الْعِقَابِ ﴿۱۹۶﴾

2:196

And precisely complete—all of you—the Major Pilgrimage and the Minor Pilgrimage [fulfilling their conditions and etiquettes, solely] for Allah. But if you have been prevented [from the normal method], then, in that case, whatever is easily available as a suitable sacred sacrifice. And do not shave your heads until the sacred sacrifice reaches its established destination. But whoever from amongst you is in an established state of sickness or has any pain in his head, then, in that case, a compensation: fasting; or an act of sincere charity; or a devotional act of ritual sacrifice. Whenever you become safe and free from fear, then whoever [from amongst you] has been blessed to enjoy and gain lasting benefit from the Minor Pilgrimage until the Major Pilgrimage offers whatever is easily available as a suitable sacred sacrifice. But whoever has not found and

obtained [a suitable sacred sacrifice], then, in that case, three days of fasting during the significant days of the Major Pilgrimage and seven days [of fasting] whenever you return [home]—that is ten in total [completing the obligation]. That is for whoever's family are not firmly established residents in the presence of the sacred and revered Mosque—the place of humble obedience and worship of Allah. And devoutly fulfil your duties to Allah—thereby protecting yourselves from harm and arranging all your matters correctly. And recognise, know, and understand that Allah is innately and eternally the One who is intense and severe in inflicting punishment.

Notes:



Structure creates exclusivity meaning



Root letters are connected to completing, finishing, concluding, performing, executing and accomplishing

Are connected to perfection, complete, entirety and precisely

 and 

Root letters are connected to performing the pilgrimage to Makkah

الْعُمْرَةَ and بِالْعُمْرَةِ

Root letters are connected to visiting and performing the minor pilgrimage

أُحْصِرْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to preventing, encircling, blocking and surrounding

اسْتَيْسَرَ

Root letters are connected to being easy and easily available

الْهَدْيِ and الْهَدْيُ

Root letters are connected to a sacrifice

Are connected to something venerable, precious and sacred

تَحْلِقُوا

Root letters are connected to shaving hair

رُءُوسَكُمْ and رَّأْسِهِۦ

Root letters are connected to the head

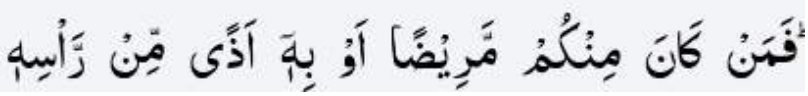


Root letters are connected to reaching, getting, arriving and coming



Noun indicating time and place

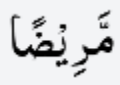
Root letters are connected to dismount, stop, halt, settle down and descend



Structure indicates a temporal condition and specific application of the concession



Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place



Noun indicating an established state

Root letters are connected to being sick, ill, and diseased



Noun indicating an established state

Root letters are connected to harm, offense, insult, annoying, troublesome, damage, pain and injury



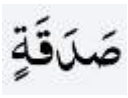
Root letters are connected to redemption, ransom, sacrifice, redeem and expiation



Noun indicating an established and timeless obligation

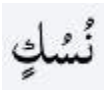
Root letters are connected to observing a specific kind of abstinence

Are connected to abstention, fasting and abstinence



Root letters are connected to donating charity

Are connected to keep one’s word, being sincere and being truthful



Root letters are connected to sacrificing an animal

Are connected to devoutness, piety and asceticism

اَمِنْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to being safe, feeing safe, peace, security and protection

تَمَتَّعَ

Root letters are connected to being blessed, enjoying, delighting,

Are connected to benefiting and enjoying for a long time

يَجِدْ

Root letters are connected to finding, experiencing and coming across

Are connected to getting and obtaining

Are connected to capacity, capability and ability

Find - actively seeking

Obtain - successfully acquiring or possessing

فَصِيَامُ ثَلٰثَةِ اَيَّامٍ فِي الْحَجِّ وَسَبْعَةٍ اِذَا رَجَعْتُمْ

Noun sentence indicating a established and timeless obligation

اَيَّامٍ

Root letters are connected to day, age, era and time

Are connected to momentous and important days

رَجَعْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to coming back, returning, resorting or reverting to a former place/state/quality

كَامِلَةٌ

Root letters are connected perfecting, completing and concluding

Are connected to full, whole, entire and total

لَّمْ يَكُنْ اَهْلُهٗ

Structure indicates an established state

اَهْلُهٗ

Noun indicating an established state

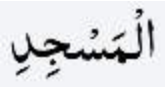
Root letters are connected to family, native, resident, indigenous, inhabitant and home

حَاضِرِى

Noun indicating an established and timeless state and rule

Root letters are connected to being present, arriving, attending, coming and being settled

Are connected to resident, settled and village dweller



Noun for place and time

Root letters are connected to bowing down, prostrating, bending down, being humble, submissive, worship, honouring and paying respect



Root letters are connected to declaring sacred, inviolable, unlawful, forbidden

Are connected to respect, revered and venerated

Sacred - made holy and specially sanctified

Revered - greatly honoured and deeply respected



Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious



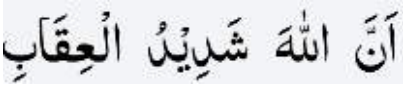
Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

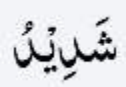
Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications



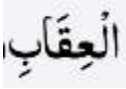
Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



Root letters are connected to becoming firm, intense, solid, hard, strong and harsh

Intense - the strength (powerful and overwhelming)

Severe – the harshness (harsh and uncompromising)



Root letters are connected to inflicting punishment, penalty and requital

اَلْحَجُّ اَشْهُرٌ مَّعْلُوْمٰتٌ ۚ فَمَنْ فَرَضَ فِيْهِنَّ الْحَجَّ فَلَا رَفَثَ وَلَا

فُسُوْقَ ۙ وَلَا جِدَالَ فِي الْحَجِّ ۭ وَمَا تَفْعَلُوْا مِنْ خَيْرٍ يَّعْلَمْهُ اللّٰهُ ۭ

وَتَزَوَّدُوْا فَاِنَّ خَيْرَ الزَّادِ التَّقْوٰى ۡ وَاتَّقُوْنِ يٰٓاُولِي الْاَلْبَابِ ۝۱۹۷

2:197

The Major Pilgrimage is established in the appointed, well-known, and celebrated months. Then whoever has undertaken, during them, the Major Pilgrimage—there are absolutely no acts of physical intimacy with one's spouse, or obscene behaviour; absolutely no transgression of the limits of goodness; and absolutely no arguing or debating—during the Major Pilgrimage. And whatever you all do from any good—leading to well-being—Allah completely knows and fully understands it. And take along provisions [in every situation] but certainly, the most preferred and best provision is the devout fulfilment of duties—which protects from harm and arranges all matters correctly. Therefore, devoutly fulfil your duties to Me—possessors of good sense, reason, and understanding!

Notes:

اَلْحَجُّ اَشْهُرٌ مَّعْلُوْمٰتٌ

Noun sentence indicating an established and timeless condition

اَلْحَجُّ , اَلْحَجَّ and اَلْحَجِّ

Noun indicating an established state

Root letters are connected to performing the pilgrimage to Makkah

اَشْهُرٌ

Root letters are connected to reputation, fame, widely known, renowned, and celebrated

Are connected to month and new moon

مَّعْلُوْمٰتٌ

Root letters are connected to well-known, appointed, marked and known

فَرَضَ

Root letters are connected to determining, fixing, assuming, appointing, imposing, making incumbent, prescribing, taking on and adopting a manner

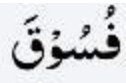
لَا رَفَثَ , لَا فُسُوْقَ and لَا جِدَالَ

Structures indicate absolute negation

رَفَثَ

Root letters are connected to discussion and acts during intimacy with one’s spouse

Are connected to obscenity

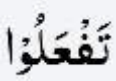


Root letters are connected to straying from right course, deviating, sinful, immoral and transgressing the limits of the law

Are connected to emerging outwardly



Are connected to quarreling, arguing, debating, disputing and controversy



Root letters are connected to doing an action, activity and accomplishing a task



Root letters are connected to good, virtuous and generous

Are connected to a good state and well-being

Are connected to good qualities and actions

يَعْلَمْهُ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

تَزَوَّدُوا and الزَّادِ

Root letters are connected to supplying with provision and taking along provisions

Are connected to provision, supply and stores

فَإِنَّ خَيْرَ الزَّادِ التَّقْوٰى

Noun sentence indicating established and timeless state

خَيْرَ

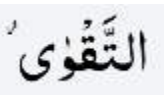
A superlative

Root letters are connected to good, virtuous and generous

Are connected to choosing and preferring

Are connected to something better and superior

Are connected to a good state and well-being

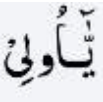
 and 

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

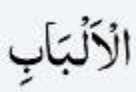
Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious



Root letters are connected to possessing, owning and being endowed with



Root letters are connected to mind, intelligence, reason, understanding and being sensible

Good sense - sound judgement in conduct and decisions

Reason - logical reflection and analysis

Understanding - grasping meanings and consequences

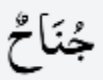
لَيْسَ عَلَيْكُمْ جُنَاحٌ اَنْ تَبْتَغُوْا فَضْلًا مِّنْ رَّبِّكُمْ ؕ فَاِذَآ اَفَضْتُمْ مِّنْ
عَرَفٰتٍ فَاذْكُرُوا اللّٰهَ عِنْدَ الْمَشْعَرِ الْحَرَامِ ۪ وَاذْكُرُوْهُ كَمَا هَدٰىكُمْ ۚ
وَاِنْ كُنْتُمْ مِّنْ قَبْلِهٖ لَمِنَ الضَّآلِّيْنَ ﴿۱۹۸﴾

2:198

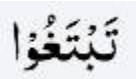
There is no blame upon you all for desiring and seeking any additional favour, including those of secondary importance [worldly matters], from your nurturing Lord—educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority.[1] Then whenever you pour forth abundantly from Arafat—the esteemed and well-known place—remember and be mindful of Allah in the presence of the sacred and revered Station—a distinguished religious sign indicating the obedience of Allah. And remember and be mindful of Him according to the manner in which He has guided you—showing and leading to and along the right way of life. And certainly, you existed from before it [the guidance] from amongst those who are firmly established in, and persist in, misguidance—deviating from the right path, perishing as a result.

Notes:

1 - The verse gives permission to take part in lawful business during the Major and Minor pilgrimages



Root letters are connected to misdemeanor, a minor wrongdoing, a crime, sin, blame and disobedience



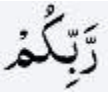
Root letters are connected to seeking, desiring, striving and aspiring for



Root letters are connected to extra, surplus and excess

Are connected to matters of secondary importance

Are connected to favour and gift



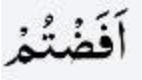
Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended



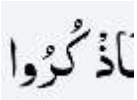
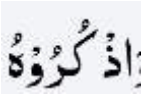
Root letters are connected to overflowing, flowing, running over, flooding, streaming

Are connected to abundance, plentiful and superabundant



Root letters are connected to an elevated place

Are connected to being well known, universally accepted, generally recognised and easily recognised

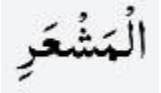
 and 

Root letters are connected to thinking, remembering and recalling

Are connected to being mindful of a right and not to neglect it



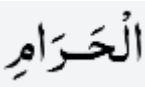
Preposition – with, in the company of, in the presence of, in despite of, together and in the estimation



Noun indicating a place

Root letters are connected to a distinguished sign or religious sign

Are connected to a mark of submission and obedience of Allah and the ordinances of Allah

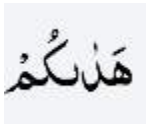


Root letters are connected to state of being forbidden, unlawful, sacred, inviolable, respected, revered and inviolable ordinances

Are connected to respect, revered and venerated

Sacred - made holy and specially sanctified

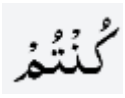
Revered - greatly honoured and deeply respected



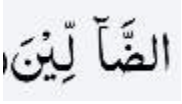
Root letters are connected to guidance, direction, showing, being led, being supplied and a way of life

Are connected to gifting and bestowing

Are connected to direction and discovering the right way



Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to stray, err, deviate from right course, to perish and become hidden

ثُمَّ اَفِيْضُوْا مِنْ حَيْثُ اَفَاضَ النَّاسُ وَاسْتَغْفِرُوا اللّٰهَ ۭ اِنَّ اللّٰهَ غَفُوْرٌ رَّحِيْمٌ ﴿١٩٩﴾

2:199

Thereafter, pour forth abundantly—all of you—[altogether] from wherever the people have poured forth abundantly[1], and seek concealment, forgiveness, and correction of your affairs from Allah. Certainly, Allah is innately and eternally the One who conceals, forgives, and corrects affairs, the One who especially grants constant mercy, kindness, and relief to those who earn it.

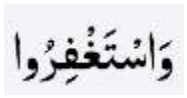
Notes:

1 - This verse encourages unity by commanding everyone to move collectively during the Major Pilgrimage—a practice the Quraish tribe, the leaders of Mecca, used to abstain from prior to the advent of Islam (Sahih Bukhari, number 1665)

اَفِيْضُوْا

Root letters are connected to overflowing, flowing, running over, flooding, streaming

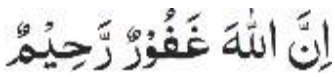
Are connected to abundance, plentiful and superabundant

 and 

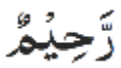
Root letters are connected to covering, concealing, veiling and hiding

Are connected to forgiving and pardoning

Are connected to correcting and rectifying affairs



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



Root letters are connected to having mercy, compassion, sparing, letting off, saving, kindness, tenderness and pity

Intense structure form has been used

Specific mercy for those who deserve and earn it

Mercy – withholds punishment from those who deserve it

Kindness – a broader act of granting blessings

فَاِذَا قَضَيْتُمْ مَّنَاسِكَكُمْ فَاذْكُرُوا اللّٰهَ كَذِكْرِكُمْ اٰبَآءَكُمْ اَوْ اَشَدَّ
ذِكْرًا ؕ فَمِنَ النَّاسِ مَنْ يَّقُوْلُ رَبَّنَآ اٰتِنَا فِى الدُّنْيَا وَمَا لَهٗ فِى الْاٰخِرَةِ
مِنْ خَلَاقٍ ﴿٢٠٠﴾

2:200

Then whenever you all fulfil and conclude your religious practices that lead to [spiritual] purification and a virtuous life—remember and be mindful of Allah in the same manner as your recollection, reminiscence, and commemoration of your forefathers—in fact, with an even greater emphasis on remembrance and mindfulness. Yet from amongst the people is the one who [merely] says, "Our nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority], grant us in the world[1] [the lowest state of living]." And he will not have, in the life of the Hereafter, even a single share of good.

Notes:

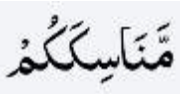
1 - The supplication is left unspecified indicating unrestricted worldly concern without consideration of whether what is sought is truly beneficial or harmful, and without concern for the Hereafter.

قَضَيْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to discharging, concluding, fulfilling, and executing

Fulfil - proper observance

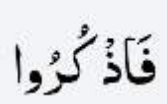
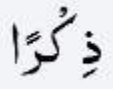
Conclude - bringing them to completion



Root letters are connected religious exercises, rites and ceremonies

Are connected to washing and purifying something

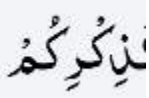
Are connected to a devout life, pious life and practicing virtue

 and 

Root letters are connected to remember, bear in mind, think, keep in mind and be mindful of

Remember Me - conscious recollection and mention

Be mindful of Me - continual awareness influencing conduct

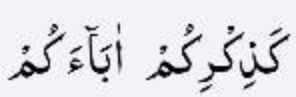


Root letters are connected to recollection, remembrance, reminiscence, commemoration, reputation, narration, mentioning, telling and relating

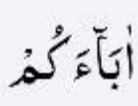
Recollection - calling something to mind

Reminiscence - recalling past people and events

Commemoration - publicly honouring someone



Noun structure indicates established and habitual trait



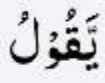
Root letters are connected to father, forefather, parents and ancestor



A comparative

Root letters are connected to becoming firm, solid, hard, strong, intense, and harsh

Are connected to emphasizing and stressing



Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging



Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

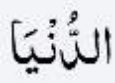
Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended



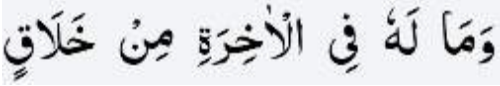
Root letters are connected to giving, granting and bestowing



A superlative

Root letters are connected to being low and near

Are connected to world, life in this world, worldly existence, temporal things or possessions and earthly things and concerns



Noun sentence indicating established state and a strong negation



Root letters are connected to the hereafter, the final abode and something which is delayed and deferred



Root letters are connected to being fitting and suitable

Are connected to a share, portion and a righteous share

وَمِنْهُمْ مَّنْ يَّقُوْلُ رَبَّنَآ اٰتِنَا فِي الدُّنْيَا حَسَنَةً وَّفِي الْاٰخِرَةِ حَسَنَةً وَّقِنَا عَذَابَ النَّارِ ﴿٢٠١﴾

2:201

Whereas, from amongst them is the one who supplicates, "Our nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority], grant us in the world [the lowest state of living], a good state[1]; and in the life of the Hereafter, a good state; and protect, preserve, and prevent us from [everything leading to] the agonising punishment of the Fire."

Notes:

1 - The phrase 'a good state' is intentionally broad, thereby teaching one to trust Allah, the Exalted, to determine what a good state truly includes

يَقُوْلُ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

رَبَّنَآ

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

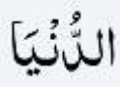
Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

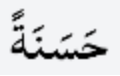


Root letters are connected to giving, granting and bestowing



Root letters are connected to being low and near

Are connected to world, life in this world, worldly existence, temporal things or possessions and earthly things and concerns



Root letters are connected to good deed, acts of obedience, reword of a good action, goodness and comforts of life

Are connected to being excellent, good, nice and lovely

Are connected to suitable, be in a proper state and in a desirable condition

الْآخِرَةِ

Root letters are connected to the hereafter, the final abode, life to come, and something which is delayed and deferred

قِنَا

Root letters are connected to protecting, preserving, preventing, taking good care, avoiding danger, safeguarding, shielding and sheltering

قِنَا عَذَابَ النَّارِ

No preposition allows to widen the scope of the protection

عَذَابَ

Root letters are connected to prevent, hinder, deter and obstruct

Are connected to punishment, torture, agony, painful and suffering

Agonising - causing intense pain and torment

أُولَٰئِكَ لَهُمْ نَصِيبٌ مِّمَّا كَسَبُوا ۖ وَاللَّهُ سَرِيعُ الْحِسَابِ ﴿٢٠٢﴾

2:202

Those—for them[1] is a share according to what they have worked hard to earn. And Allah is innately and eternally the One who is prompt and swift in recording and bringing to account.

Notes:

1 - The verse refers to the two types of people mentioned in the previous verses: those whose concern is restricted to worldly desires, and those whose concern is for a good state in both the worldly life and the Hereafter

نَصِيبٌ

Root letters are connected to share and portion

Are connected to fatigue, exertion and strain

كَسَبُوا

Root letters are connected to acquiring, earning, gathering, obtaining and gaining

Are connected to working hard and diligently

وَاللّٰهُ سَرِيْعُ الْحِسَابِ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

سَرِيْعُ

Root letters are connected to be quick, fast, prompt, rapid and hurry

Swift - acting rapidly

Prompt - responding without hesitation

الْحِسَابِ

Root letters are connected to reckoning, calculating, counting, charging and taking into account

Recording - documenting deeds

Bringing to account - judging deeds

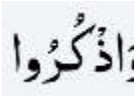
وَاذْكُرُوا اللّٰهَ فِيْٓ اَيَّامٍ مَّعْدُوْدٰتٍ ۭ فَمَنْ تَعَجَّلَ فِيْ يَوْمَيْنِ فَلَآ اِثْمَ
عَلَيْهِ ۚ وَمَنْ تَاَخَّرَ فَلَآ اِثْمَ عَلَيْهِ ۙ لِمَنِ اتَّقٰى ۭ وَاتَّقُوا اللّٰهَ وَاعْلَمُوْٓا
اَنَّكُمْ اِلَيْهِ تُحْشَرُوْنَ ۝٢٠٣

2:203

And remember and be mindful of Allah—all of you—during a specific, small number of significant days. Then whoever has preceded in two days, then, in that case, there is absolutely no sin upon him; and whoever has remained behind, then, in that case, there is absolutely no sin upon him—for whoever has devoutly fulfilled his duties.[1] Therefore, devoutly fulfil your duties to Allah—thereby protecting yourselves from harm and arranging all your matters correctly. And recognise, know, and understand that to Him [alone] you will be assembled.

Notes:

1 - The verse discusses a specific practice within the Major Pilgrimage



Root letters are connected to remember, bear in mind, think, keep in mind and be mindful of

Remember Me - conscious recollection and mention

Be mindful of Me - continual awareness influencing conduct



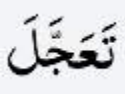
Root letters are connected to days, age, era and time

Are connected to momentous and important days

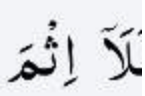


Plural structure indicates the importance of the days and a specific small amount

Root letters are connected to counting, reckoning, limited, easily countable and numbered



Root letters are connected to hurrying, hastening, speeding and preceding



Structure indicates absolute negation



Root letters are connected to sin, err, slip, crime and offense

Are connected to intentional sin



Root letters are connected to being late, staying late, remaining behind, waiting and lagging behind

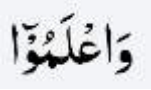
 and 

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious



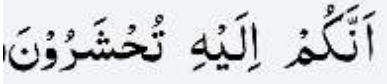
Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

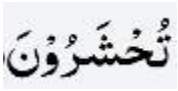
Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications



Noun sentence indicating established and unavoidable state

Indicates exclusivity



Root letters are connected to gathering, assembling and rallying

وَمِنَ النَّاسِ مَنْ يُّعْجِبُكَ قَوْلُهٗ فِي الْحَيٰوةِ الدُّنْيَا وَيُشْهِدُ اللّٰهَ عَلٰى مَا فِيْ قَلْبِهٖ ۙ وَهُوَ اَلَدُّ الْخِصَامِ ﴿٢٠٤﴾

2:204

And from amongst the people is the one whose speech—statements and bold claims—concerning the worldly life, the lowest state of living, appeals to you. And he calls upon Allah as a witness, certifying what is in his spiritual heart, while he is established as the most rebellious and fiercely disputing of opponents.

Notes:

يُّعْجِبُكَ

Root letters are connected filling with astonishment, amazes, causes wonder, pleases, delights and appeals

قَوْلُهٗ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, stating, advocating and alleging

Statements – declarations and assertions

Bold claims - grand assertions, exaggerated promises and self-promoting declarations

فِي الْحَيٰوةِ الدُّنْيَا

Structure indicates worldly motives and superficial appearances

الْحَيٰوةِ

Root letters are connected to life, experience and the present worldly life

Are connected to gaining an advantage or profit

الدُّنْيَا

A superlative

Root letters are connected to being low and near

Are connected to world, life in this world, worldly existence, temporal things or possessions and earthly things and concerns

يُشْهِدُ

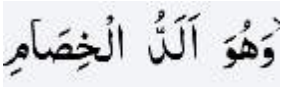
Root letters are connected to calling upon as a witness and make one present

Are connected to evidence, certificate, certification, testimony and declaration

قَلْبِهٖ

Root letters are connected to turn around, inverse, overturned, transformed, to become perverted

Are connected to being fickle and inconsistent



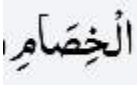
Noun sentence indicating established and persistent trait



A superlative

Root letters are connected to being rebellious

Are connected to disputing violently and fiercely



Root letters are connected to disputants, litigants, adversaries and opponents

وَإِذَا تَوَلّٰى سَعٰى فِي الْأَرْضِ لِيُفْسِدَ فِيهَا وَيُهْلِكَ الْحَرْثَ وَالنَّسْلَ ۗ
وَاللّٰهُ لَا يُحِبُّ الْفَسَادَ ﴿٢٠٥﴾

2:205

And whenever he is entrusted with responsibility—he strives relentlessly throughout the land so that he causes and spreads corruption and disorder therein—depriving it of goodness—greedily ruining agriculture and the continuity of future generations, the very foundation of civilisation. And Allah—He does not like corruption, disorder, or ruin.

Notes:

وَإِذَا تَوَلّٰى سَعٰى

Structure indicates repetitive action

تَوَلّٰى

Root letters are connected to being in charge, govern, rule and manage

Are connected to occupying, being entrusted, taking possession and assuming responsibility

سَعٰى

Root letters are connected to moving around actively, making an effort, working hard, pursue, chase, to work for, striving and taking steps to accomplish a task

لِيُفْسِدَ and الْفَسَادَ

Root letters are connected to corruption, become bad, spoiled, wicked, depraved, devoid of virtue, disorder, ruined and destroyed

Corrupt - moral/ethical degradation

Disordered - structural/functional breakdown

Devoid of good - absence of benefit or blessing

يُهْلِكَ

Root letters are connected to exerting, doing one's utmost, being eager, going all out, greed, coveting and craving

Are connected to connected to ruin and destruction

الْحَـرْثَ

Root letters are connected to tillage, land for agriculture and cultivated land

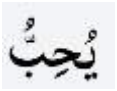
Are connected to earning wealth, labouring for worldly goods and acquisition



Root letters are connected to progeny, offspring, issue, civilisation, descendants and generation



Pronoun “He” is used twice for added emphasis



Root letters are connected liking, loving and wanting

وَإِذَا قِيلَ لَهُ اتَّقِ اللَّهَ أَخَذَتْهُ الْعِزَّةُ بِالْإِثْمِ فَحَسْبُهُ جَهَنَّمُ ۚ وَلَبِئْسَ الْمِهَادُ ﴿٢٠٦﴾

2:206

And whenever it is said in opposition to him, "Devoutly fulfil your duties to Allah [thereby protecting yourself from harm and arranging all your matters correctly]," arrogance takes hold of and adheres to him by means of intentional sinful behaviour, and drives him further into it. Therefore, sufficient for him as a reckoning is Hell—harsh and repulsive punishment of a great and fiercely burning fire. And how utterly evil is the prepared resting place.

Notes:

وَإِذَا قِيلَ

Structure indicates repetitive action

قِيلَ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, speaking against, standing up, supporting, professing, declaring, alleging, claiming and asserting sternly

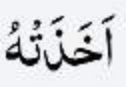


Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

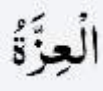
Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

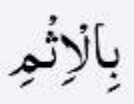
Are connected to being devout and pious



Root letters are connected to taking firmly, adhering, obtaining, seizing and taking firmly



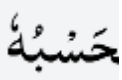
Root letters are connected to pride, self-exaltation and self-esteem



 indicates the instrument and means of arrogance and the consequence of the arrogance

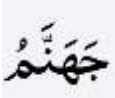
Root letters are connected to sin, err, slip, crime and offense

Are connected to intentional sin



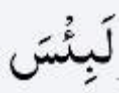
Root letters are connected to reckoning and accounting

Are connected to sufficiency and satisfaction



Root letters are connected to hell, Fire, fiercely burning Fire and a huge Fire

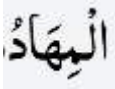
Are connected to something harsh and disgusting



 used for emphasis

Root letters are connected to showing the evil of something

Are connected to miserable and wretched



Root letters are connected to arranging, preparing and making smooth

Are connected to resting place, bed, couch and a place of wide extent

وَمِنَ النَّاسِ مَنْ يَّشْرِيْ نَفْسَهُ ابْتِغَآءَ مَرْضَاتِ اللّٰهِ ۗ وَاللّٰهُ رَءُوْفٌۢ بِالْعِبَادِ ﴿٢٠٧﴾

2:207

And from amongst the people is the one who sells his precious self in an established state of desiring and seeking every cause leading to the pleasure, approval, and acceptance of Allah. And Allah is innately and eternally the One who is intensely kind and compassionate with the slaves.

Notes:

يَّشْرِيْ

Root letters are connected to buying, selling, and preferring

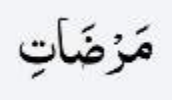
نَفْسَهُ

Root letters are connected to soul, person, mind, human being and an individual

Are connected to something valuable and precious

ابْتِغَآءَ

Root letters are connected to seeking, desiring, striving and aspiring for



Noun indicating something established

Root letters are connected to being satisfied, pleased, to consent, agree, approve and accept

Pleased with - emotionally satisfied and comforted by

Approve of - regard as correct, fitting, and acceptable



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

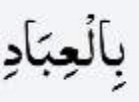


Form used shows intensity

Root letters are connected to showing mercy, pity, kindness and grace

Intensely kind - constantly showing immense goodness and tenderness

Intensely compassionate - greatly caring, relieving hardship and granting mercy



Root letters are connected to a male servant and male slave

يَٰٓأَيُّهَا ٱلَّذِينَ ءَامَنُواْ ٱدۡخُلُواْ فِي ٱلسِّلۡمِ كَآفَّةٗ وَلَا تَتَّبِعُواْ خُطُوَٰتِ
ٱلشَّيۡطَٰنِۚ إِنَّهُۥ لَكُمۡ عَدُوّٞ مُّبِينٞ ٢٠٨

2:208

Those who have claimed to believe! Enter into a state of peace—surrender, submission, and commitment to the obedience of Allah—completely and altogether. And do not be in agreement with, pursue, or adhere to the sinful footsteps of the Devil, thereby living under his authority. Certainly, he is [especially] for you an established clear and evident enemy—exceeding proper bounds through hostility and aggression.

Notes:

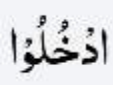
ءَامَنُوا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit



Root letters are connected to entering and taking possession



Root letters are connected to deserting, abandoning, surrendering, submitting, becoming muslim, and committing oneself to the will of Allah

Are connected to being safe, sound, secure and well-being

Surrenders - relinquishing resistance and competing attachments

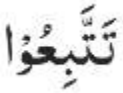
Submits - places oneself under authority

Commits - actively dedicating oneself to obedience

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit



Root letters are connected to totality, entirety, all together and collectively



Root letters are connected to following, pursuing, walking behind and adhering

Are connected to being under authority and command

Are connected to concurring, being in agreement and being in conformity

In agreement - accepting the guidance internally (belief/acceptance)

Pursues - actively seeking and following it

Adheres to - remaining firm and consistent upon it

خُطُوٰتِ

Root letters are connected to footsteps, steps, walk, progress and advance

Are connected to transgression, offence and sin

اِنَّهٗ لَكُمْ عَدُوٌّ مُّبِيْنٌ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Structure shows emphasis

عَدُوٌّ

Root letters are connected to hostility, violating, aggression, exceeding proper bounds and transgressing

Are connected to treating like an enemy

Enemies - the state of opposition

Hostility - inner attitude of enmity

Aggression - outward expression through harmful action

مُّبِينٌ

Root letters are connected to clear, plain, evident, obvious, patent, open and manifest

Clear - leaving no confusion

Evident - presence of signs and proofs that make hostility observable

فَإِنْ زَلَلْتُمْ مِّنْ بَعْدِ مَا جَآءَتْكُمُ الْبَيِّنٰتُ فَاعْلَمُوْٓا اَنَّ اللّٰهَ عَزِيْزٌ حَكِيْمٌ ﴿٢٠٩﴾

2:209

Then if you all have stumbled, deviated, or turned away, even after the clear proofs and explanations have reached you—recognise, know, and understand that Allah is innately and eternally the One who overcomes all things, the Owner of respect and nobility, raising in honour and lowering whoever He wills, the One who rules over and controls everything, determining every affair with perfect wisdom.

Notes:

زَلَلْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to making someone slip, stumble, trip up, deviating and turning away

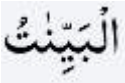
Stumble - slip unintentionally

Deviate - stray from the right course

Turn away - reject, abandon and deliberately withdraw

جَآءَتْكُمُ

Root letters are connected to come, produce, confront, set forth and reaching



Root letters are connected to clarification, explanation, clear evidence and proof

Proofs – undeniable evidence that establish truth decisively

Explanations – making meaning clear and understandable



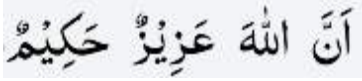
Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



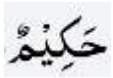
Root letters are connected to power, respect, honour and nobility,

Are connected to overwhelming, overcoming and dominating

Are connected to raising in esteem, elevating and exalting

Respect - honour, esteem, and recognised worth

Nobility - elevated rank, dignity, and excellence



Root letters are connected to judging, deciding and decreeing

Are connected to wisdom

Are connected to accuracy, perfection and precision

Are connected to governing, ruling, dominating and controlling

Rule - authority and command (who has the right to decide)

Control - execution and outcome (ensuring decisions take effect)

هَلْ يَنْظُرُوْنَ اِلَّآ اَنْ يَّاْتِيَهُمُ اللّٰهُ فِيْ ظُلَلٍ مِّنَ الْغَمَامِ وَالْمَلٰٓئِكَةُ وَقُضِيَ الْاَمْرُ ۭ وَاِلَى اللّٰهِ تُرْجَعُ الْاُمُوْرُ ۝٢١٠

2:210

Are they waiting except that Allah overtakes them with destruction from within canopies of a large cloud mass, and the Angels too—therefore the matter will have been judged and concluded? And to Allah [alone] all matters are returned and presented for critical examination.

Notes:

يَنْظُرُوْنَ

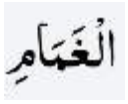
Root letters are connected to waiting, expecting and observing

يَّاْتِيَهُمُ

Root letters are connected to coming, arriving, bringing, destroying, annihilating, sweeping away, wiping out, eradicating and eliminating

ظُلَلٍ

Root letters are connected to canopy, shelter, covering, roof and shade

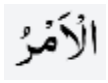


Root letters are connected to clouds, hail and white clouds

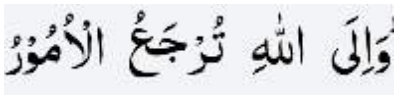
Are connected to concealing, covering, veiling and overcast



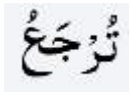
Root letters are connected to discharging, decreeing, concluding, fulfilling, judging and executing

 and 

Root letters are connected to a command, thing, affair, business and a matter



Structure creates exclusivity and totality meaning



Root letters are connected to coming back, returning, resorting or reverting to a former place/state/quality

Are connected to present oneself and examine critically

سَلۡ بَنِیۡۤ اِسۡرَآءِیۡلَ کَمۡ اٰتَیۡنٰهُمۡ مِّنۡ اٰیَةٍۭ بَیِّنَةٍ ؕ وَمَنۡ یُّبَدِّلۡ نِعۡمَةَ اللّٰهِ
مِنۡۢ بَعۡدِ مَا جَآءَتۡهُ فَاِنَّ اللّٰهَ شَدِیۡدُ الۡعِقَابِ ﴿۲۱۱﴾

2:211

Question the descendants of Israel about how many a unique miraculous and evident sign—serving as a clear proof and explanation—We granted them. And whoever exchanges the favour of Allah—that leads to a pleasant life—[for misguidance], even after it has reached him—then certainly, Allah is innately and eternally the One who is intense and severe in inflicting punishment.

Notes:

سَلۡ

Root letters are connected to asking, requesting and demanding

بَنِیۡۤ

Root letters are connected to son, daughter and descendant

اٰتَیۡنٰهُمۡ

Root letters are connected to giving, granting and bestowing

اٰيَةٌۢ بَيِّنَةٌ

Singular form indicating each and every one

اٰيَةٌ

Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof

بَيِّنَةٌ

Root letters are connected to clarification, explanation, clear evidence and proof

Proofs – undeniable evidence that establish truth decisively

Explanations – making meaning clear and understandable

يُبَدِّلْ

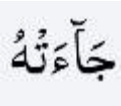
Root letters are connected to changing, altering, exchanging and substituting

نِعْمَةَ

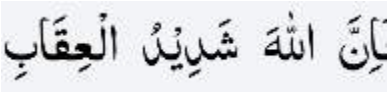
Root letters are connected to benefit, blessing, benefaction, favour, grace and kindness

Are connected to making nice, comfortable, pleasant and to bestow favours

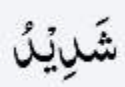
Are connected to living in comfort and luxury, leading a life of ease and leading a comfortable life



Root letters are connected to come, produce, confront, set forth and reaching



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



Root letters are connected to becoming firm, intense, solid, hard, strong and harsh

Intense - the strength (powerful and overwhelming)

Severe – the harshness (harsh and uncompromising)



Root letters are connected to inflicting punishment, penalty and requital

زُيِّنَ لِلَّذِيْنَ كَفَرُوا الْحَيٰوةُ الدُّنْيَا وَيَسْخَرُوْنَ مِنَ الَّذِيْنَ اٰمَنُوْا ۘ
وَالَّذِيْنَ اتَّقَوْا فَوْقَهُمْ يَوْمَ الْقِيٰمَةِ ۭ وَاللّٰهُ يَرْزُقُ مَنْ يَّشَاۗءُ بِغَيْرِ
حِسَابٍ ۝٢١٢

2:212

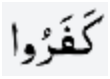
The worldly life—the lowest state of living—has been made pleasing[1] to those who have neglected, dissociated from, and denied their obligations to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them]. Therefore, they ridicule those who have believed—belief demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind. Yet [from the believers] those who have devoutly fulfilled their duties—thereby protecting themselves from harm and arranging all their matters correctly—will be superior to them [the ridiculers] on the Momentous Day of upheaval, raising of the dead, and rectifying affairs. And Allah—He provides blessings to whoever He wills without limit.

Notes:

1 - The doer has intentionally not been mentioned in order to encompass all possible causes behind the beautification of worldly life, such as Allah, the Exalted, as a test; the Devil as a means of misguidance; one’s own desires and inclinations; and external worldly influences



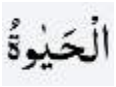
Root letters are connected to adorning, decorating, embellishing, beautifying and making pleasing



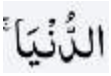
Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty



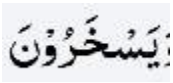
Root letters are connected to living, experiencing and witnessing



A superlative

Root letters are connected to being low and near

Are connected to world, life in this world, worldly existence, temporal things or possessions and earthly things and concerns



Root letters are connected to laughing at, mocking, ridiculing and deriding

اٰمَنُوْا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

اتَّقَوْا

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious

فَوْقَهُمْ

Root letters are connected to above, beyond, more than and besides

Are connected to excel, surpass, superior and exceed

يَوْمَ

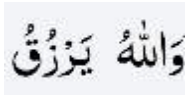
Root letters are connected to days, age, era and time

Are connected to momentous and important days



Root letters are connected to standing, rising up, rectifying and managing affairs

Are connected to resurrection, upheaval, tumult, turmoil and raising the dead

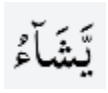


Pronoun “He” is used twice for added emphasis

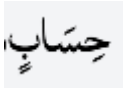


Root letters are connected to means of survival and living, to bestow, to nourish, to provide provision, grant material or spiritual provision, and derive benefit from something

Are connected to bestowing blessings and gifts



Root letters are connected to wanting, willing and wishing



Root letters are connected to reckoning, considering, calculating, counting, charging and taking into account

كَانَ النَّاسُ أُمَّةً وَّاحِدَةً ۟ فَبَعَثَ اللّٰهُ النَّبِيّٖنَ مُبَشِّرِيْنَ وَمُنْذِرِيْنَ ۪
وَاَنْزَلَ مَعَهُمُ الْكِتٰبَ بِالْحَقِّ لِيَحْكُمَ بَيْنَ النَّاسِ فِيْمَا اخْتَلَفُوْا
فِيْهِ ؕ وَمَا اخْتَلَفَ فِيْهِ اِلَّا الَّذِيْنَ اُوْتُوْهُ مِنْۢ بَعْدِ مَا جَآءَتْهُمُ الْبَيِّنٰتُ
بَغْيًۢا بَيْنَهُمْ ۚ فَهَدَى اللّٰهُ الَّذِيْنَ اٰمَنُوْا لِمَا اخْتَلَفُوْا فِيْهِ مِنَ الْحَقِّ
بِاِذْنِهٖ ؕ وَاللّٰهُ يَهْدِيْ مَنْ يَّشَآءُ اِلٰى صِرَاطٍ مُّسْتَقِيْمٍ ﴿۲۱۳﴾

2:213

The people existed as a single community. Then Allah appointed and dispatched honoured Prophets who conveyed divine knowledge from Him—in a firmly established and persistent state of announcing good news of positive future prospects, and warning in advance [of the consequences of disobeying Him]. And He revealed with them—to hold a special position [of supreme authority]—the divine code of conduct according to the truth—correct, appropriate, and purposeful—so that he [each honoured Prophet] would lead and judge the people with perfect wisdom concerning whatever they disagreed, disputed, and opposed each other over. Yet no one disagreed, disputed, and opposed each other concerning it [the divine code of conduct] except those who were granted it, even after clear proofs and explanations had reached them—motivated by evil desires, arrogance, and transgression between themselves. Then, Allah gifted guidance to those who had believed, as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind—by showing and leading to and along the right way of life: the truth—correct, appropriate, and purposeful—concerning whatever they had disagreed,

disputed, and opposed each other over, through His permission. And Allah—He gifts guidance to whoever He wills by showing and leading to and along the right way of life: a firmly established, upright, and natural open path—ensuring the correct management of all affairs.

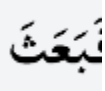
Notes:



Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place



Are connected to a group of people from one religion, a nation, a people and race



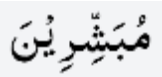
Root letters are connected to raising, sending out, dispatching, delegating and appointing



Root letters are connected to informing, notifying, advising telling and announcing

Are connected to being high in rank, raised, elevated and prominent

Are connected to someone who receives unseen knowledge from Allah and conveys them to people



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to giving and announcing good news, giving good and hopeful prospects for the future



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters connected to warning, advising, cautioning against danger, notify in advance and calling attention to the consequences



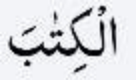
Root letters are connected to something which is sent down, comes down, descends, stops over and is granted

Are connected to something which is sent down slowly and gradually

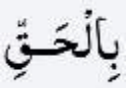
Are connected to something which holds a special position or place



Preposition – with, in the company of, in despite of, together and in the estimation



Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document



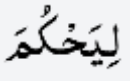
Root letters are connected to what is right, correct, true, proper, suitable, fitting and purposeful

True - matches reality

Correct - accurate and right

Appropriate - properly fitting

Purposeful - meaningful and intentional

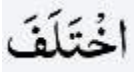


Root letters are connected to judging, deciding and decreeing

Are connected to governing, ruling, dominating and controlling

Are connected to wisdom

Are connected to accuracy, perfection and precision

 and 

Root letters are connected to differ, dispute, argue, disagreeing, different in opinion, debate and opposing

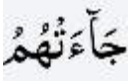
Disagreeing - difference in belief or opinion

Disputing - active argumentative conflict

Opposing - entrenched resistance and hostility



Root letters are connected to bring, give, grant and bestow



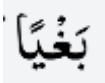
Root letters are connected to come, produce, confront, set forth and reaching



Root letters are connected to clarification, explanation, clear evidence and proof

Proofs – undeniable evidence that establish truth decisively

Explanations – making meaning clear and understandable



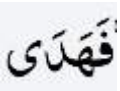
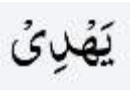
Root letters are connected to exalting oneself, behaving proudly, transgression, disobedience, wrongdoing and corruption

Are connected to seeking, desiring, coveting and seeking to attain

Evil desires - inner motivation (base, corrupt inclinations)

Arrogance - attitude and mindset (sense of superiority and self-exaltation)

Transgression - outward action (acting beyond what is right or permitted)

 and 

Root letters are connected to guidance, direction, showing, being led, being supplied and a way of life

Are connected to gifting and bestowing

Are connected to direction and discovering the right way

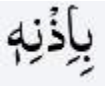


Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

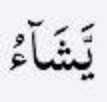
Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit



Root letters are connected to permission



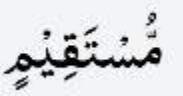
Pronoun “He” is used twice for added emphasis



Root letters are connected to wanting, willing and wishing



Root letters are connected to a long and open way or path



Noun indicating an established state

Root letters are connected to preserve, established, managing affairs, fix and rectify, arrange well, reform, upright and be in a right state

Are connected to natural normal state

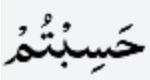
اَمۡ حَسِبۡتُمۡ اَنۡ تَدۡخُلُوا الۡجَنَّةَ وَلَمَّا يَاۡتِكُمۡ مَّثَلُ الَّذِيۡنَ خَلَوۡا مِنۡ
قَبۡلِكُمۡ ؕ مَسَّتۡهُمُ الۡبَاۡسَآءُ وَالضَّرَّآءُ وَزُلۡزِلُوۡا حَتّٰى يَقُوۡلَ الرَّسُوۡلُ
وَالَّذِيۡنَ اٰمَنُوۡا مَعَهٗ مَتٰى نَصۡرُ اللّٰهِ ؕ اَلَاۤ اِنَّ نَصۡرَ اللّٰهِ قَرِيۡبٌ ﴿۲۱۴﴾

2:214

Or have you all assumed that you will enter and take possession of the Secure Garden—Paradise—even though the similar case of those who passed before you has not yet come upon you? Debilitating distress and poverty; and harassment, harm, and loss acutely touched and afflicted them, and they were violently and repeatedly shaken, filled with terror, to such an extent that the Messenger—who sincerely conveyed a divine code of conduct from Allah—and those who had believed with him, as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith—would question[1], "How long till the protection, support, and victory of Allah?" Pay attention, certainly the protection, support, and victory of Allah is firmly established in, and persists in, being near—ever approaching.

Notes:

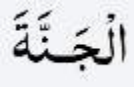
1 - The Arabic employs the present tense to bring the moment vividly into the present, removing historical distance and suggesting that this pattern of trial is not confined to the past



Root letters are connected to reckoning, calculating and assuming



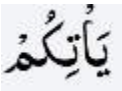
Root letters are connected to entering, taking possession and making one’s own



Root letters are connected to Paradise

Are connected to protection, shield and safety

Are connected to a garden and a walled garden



Root letters are connected to coming, arriving, bringing, advancing and accomplishing



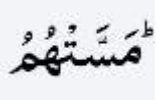
Singular indicating one unified, recurring pattern

Root letters are connected to an example, to resemble, to copy and compare

Are connected to similar case, simile, parable, example, state, condition and precedent



Root letters are connected to passing on, passing by, abandoning and freeing oneself



Root letters are connected to touching, touching slightly, to handle, to befall and to be struck

Acutely touched - impacted them deeply

Afflicted - caused them suffering



Root letters are connected to distress, straitened in means, state of poverty, calamity and disease which prevents motion

Are connected to being sad, worried, fearful and grief



Root letters are connected to harm, impair, damage, hurt and injure

Are connected to harassing

Harass - to trouble, intimidate, or repeatedly subject someone to unwanted and distressing treatment

Harm - to cause injury, damage, or suffering, whether physical, emotional, or otherwise

Loss – to cause deprivation and ruin



Root letters are connected to shake, rock and tremble

Are connected to shaken violently and repeatedly

Are connected to frighten and terrify



Present tense is used to bring the moment vividly into the present, removing historical distance and suggesting that this pattern of trial is not confined to the past

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging



Root letters are connected to dispatching, a message and corresponding

Are connected to a messenger, delegate and apostle

Are connected to being friendly, intimate and free of affectation

Are connected to the one who carries by consecutive progressions the relation of the tidings of Him who has sent him

اٰمَنُوْا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

مَعَ

Preposition – with, in the company of, in despite of, together and in the estimation

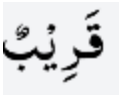
نَصْرُ and نَصْرَ

Root letters are connected to help, assistance, support and victory

Are connected to protecting and defending

اَلَا

Used to grab attention e.g. behold, pay attention, indeed



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to coming near, close and approaching in respect time and place

يَسْـَٔلُوْنَكَ مَاذَا يُنْفِقُوْنَ ۗ قُلْ مَآ اَنْفَقْتُمْ مِّنْ خَيْرٍ فَلِلْوَالِدَيْنِ
وَالْاَقْرَبِيْنَ وَالْيَتٰمٰى وَالْمَسٰكِيْنِ وَابْنِ السَّبِيْلِ ۗ وَمَا تَفْعَلُوْا مِنْ
خَيْرٍ فَاِنَّ اللّٰهَ بِهٖ عَلِيْمٌ ﴿٢١٥﴾

2:215

They question you concerning what they provide support for and bear the cost of. Reply, "Whatever you readily use [of your possessions] from any good is for both parents; and those possessing closeness in lineage, and in physical proximity; and orphans; and those who cannot financially support themselves; and the traveller in hardship." And whatever you do from any good—leading to well-being—then certainly, Allah is innately and eternally the One who, concerning it, completely knows and fully understands.

Notes:

يَسْـَٔلُوْنَكَ

Root letters are connected to asking, requesting and demanding

يُنْفِقُوْنَ , تَفْعَلُوْا and اَنْفَقْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to spending, expending, disbursing, using up, providing maintenance and bearing the cost of

Are connected to disposing of something quickly

Are connected to exhausting, using up and spending



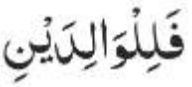
Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging



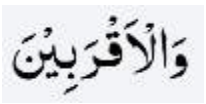
Root letters are connected to good, virtuous and generous

Are connected to a good state and well-being

Are connected to good qualities and actions



Root letters are connected to both parents



Root letters are connected to kinship and relative

Are connected to nearness, closeness and proximity

Are connected to taking an associate

Are connected to coming to a close relationship, come near someone and to seek someone’s favour

Lineage - family ties

Physical - those nearby

وَالْمَسٰكِيْنِ

Root letters are connected to severe poverty, destitution, in a bad financial state and subdued by financial issues

السَّبِيْلِ

Root letters are connected to a way, path and road

تَفْعَلُوْا

Root letters are connected to doing an action, activity and accomplishing a task

فَاِنَّ اللّٰهَ بِهٖ عَلِيْمٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

عَلِيْمٌ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

كُتِبَ عَلَيْكُمُ الْقِتَالُ وَهُوَ كُرْهٌ لَّكُمْ ۚ وَعَسٰٓى اَنْ تَكْرَهُوْا شَيْـًٔا وَّهُوَ
خَيْرٌ لَّكُمْ ۚ وَعَسٰٓى اَنْ تُحِبُّوْا شَيْـًٔا وَّهُوَ شَرٌّ لَّكُمْ ۗ وَاللّٰهُ يَعْلَمُ وَاَنْتُمْ لَا
تَعْلَمُوْنَ ﴿٢١٦﴾

2:216

Fighting has been prescribed upon you all as a legal obligation—weakening the strength [of the enemy]—even though it is established as disliked and aversive to you, leaving you reluctant and unwilling. Yet perhaps you dislike and are averse to something, even though it is preferred and better for your well-being. And perhaps you desire, prefer, or love something, even though it is more harmful for you. And Allah—He completely knows and fully understands; whereas you do not recognise, know, or understand.

Notes:

Fighting is allowed only under strict conditions, as established through many Islamic teachings


كُتِبَ

Root letters are connected to writing and prescribing

Are connected to appointing and making obligatory

الْقِتَالُ

Root letters are connected to combat, fighting, battle and opposing

Are connected to weakening the strength or intensity of something

وَهُوَ كُرْهٌ لَّكُمْ

Noun sentence indicates something which is established and inherent

كُرْهٌ and تَكْرَهُوْا

Root letters are connected to dislike, detest, loathe, abhor, hate and averse

Are connected to unwillingly, reluctantly, grudgingly, under compulsion and against one’s will

Dislike - feeling negatively towards

Aversion - tendency to avoid

Reluctant - lacking eagerness

Unwilling - not wanting to do it

شَيْـًٔا

Root letters are connected to a thing, matter or affair



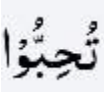
A comparative

Root letters are connected to good, virtuous and generous

Are connected to choosing and preferring

Are connected to something better and superior

Are connected to a good state and well-being



Root letters are connected to desiring, preferring, liking

Are connected to wishing, wanting and loving

Are connected to esteeming something or someone

Desire - inward attraction and wanting

Respect - elevating their status and importance

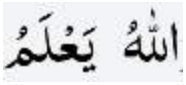
Prefer - giving them practical priority and choosing them over others

Love - deep emotional attachment and devotion

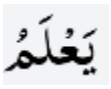
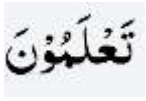


A comparative

Root letters are connected to bead, evil, wicked, harm and damage



Pronoun “He” is used twice for added emphasis

 and 

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

يَسْـَٔلُوْنَكَ عَنِ الشَّهْرِ الْحَرَامِ قِتَالٍ فِيْهِ ۭ قُلْ قِتَالٌ فِيْهِ كَبِيْرٌ ۭ
وَصَدٌّ عَنْ سَبِيْلِ اللّٰهِ وَكُفْرٌۢ بِهٖ وَالْمَسْجِدِ الْحَرَامِ ۤ وَاِخْرَاجُ اَهْلِهٖ
مِنْهُ اَكْبَرُ عِنْدَ اللّٰهِ ۚ وَالْفِتْنَةُ اَكْبَرُ مِنَ الْقَتْلِ ۭ وَلَا يَزَالُوْنَ
يُقَاتِلُوْنَكُمْ حَتّٰى يَرُدُّوْكُمْ عَنْ دِيْنِكُمْ اِنِ اسْتَطَاعُوْا ۭ وَمَنْ يَّرْتَدِدْ
مِنْكُمْ عَنْ دِيْنِهٖ فَيَمُتْ وَهُوَ كَافِرٌ فَاُولٰۗىِٕكَ حَبِطَتْ اَعْمَالُهُمْ فِي
الدُّنْيَا وَالْاٰخِرَةِ ۚ وَاُولٰۗىِٕكَ اَصْحٰبُ النَّارِ ۚ هُمْ فِيْهَا خٰلِدُوْنَ ﴿٢١٧﴾

2:217

They question you concerning the well-known, sacred, and revered month—fighting within it [any one of them]. Reply, "Fighting within it is [established as] a great sin—absolutely intolerable." Yet being established in hindering, obstructing, and diverting from the path of [obeying] Allah; and in neglect of, dissociation from, and denial of the obligations due to Him thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted]; and in hindering, obstructing, and diverting from the sacred and revered Mosque—while neglecting, dissociating from, and denying it as the place of humble obedience and worship of Allah alone; and in the expulsion of its residents—those worthy of its residency—from it—is [all] greater, more grievous, and more intolerable in the presence of Allah. And persecution, oppression, and dissension are greater, more grievous, and more intolerable than fighting and killing. Yet they will not slacken, cease, or abandon opposing and fighting you all until they drive you back from your

obedient way of life to your former state, if they could [ever] accomplish that. And whoever renounces and abandons, from amongst you, his obedient way of life, then dies while he is in a firmly established and persistent state of neglecting, dissociating from, and denying his obligations to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted him], then those [such people]—their efforts, actions, and achievements have been futile in the world—the lowest state of living—and in the life of the Hereafter. And those are the inmates of the Fire; they, in it, will be firmly established—abiding forever.

Notes:

Fighting is allowed only under strict conditions, as established through many Islamic teachings



Root letters are connected to asking, requesting and demanding



Singular used to emphasize each one even though there are four

Root letters are connected to reputation, fame, widely known, renowned, and celebrated

Are connected to month and new moon



Root letters are connected to state of being forbidden, unlawful, sacred, inviolable, respected, revered and inviolable ordinances

Are connected to respect, revered and venerated

Sacred - made holy and specially sanctified

Revered - greatly honoured and deeply respected

 and 

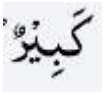
Noun used to indicate timeless matter instead of a single instance

Root letters are connected to combat, fighting, battle and opposing

Are connected to weakening the strength or intensity of something



Root letters are connected to saying, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging



Root letters are connected to becoming too great, too distressing and painful, too burdensome, to appear intolerable and insurmountable

Are connected to a great sin, grave offense and atrocious crime

Are connected to big, large and great



Noun used to indicate established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to averting, hindering, turning away, checking, stopping, repulsing and obstruction



Root letters are connected to a way, path and road

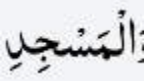
 and 

Noun used to indicate established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

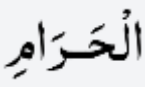
Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty



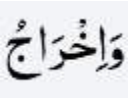
Noun for place and time

Root letters are connected to bowing down, prostrating, bending down, being humble, submissive, worship, honouring and paying respect



Root letters are connected to declaring sacred, inviolable, unlawful, forbidden

Are connected to respect, revered and venerated



Noun used to indicate established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to bringing out, pulling out, dislodging and expelling



Root letters are connected to family, native, resident, indigenous, inhabitant and home

Are connected to suiting, qualified, being worthy and deserving



A comparative

Root letters are connected to being great, to be grievous, be odious, to be hard, to appear intolerable and insurmountable

Are connected to big, large and great



Preposition – with, in the company of, in the presence of, in despite of, together and in the estimation

Near, with, on and in the presence of



Root letters are connected to persecution, oppression, sedition, insurrection, hardship, torture, dissension, and discord

Persecution - focuses on individuals or groups (targeting people for their beliefs)

Oppression - focuses on unjust power or control (denying rights and freedoms)

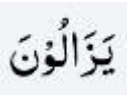
Dissension - division within a community (breakdown of unity and harmony)



Root letters are connected to combat, fighting, battle and opposing

Are connected to weakening the strength or intensity of something

Are connected to killing and murdering



Root letters are connected to go away, withdraw, abandon, leave, vanish, abate, calm down and to cease

يُقَاتِلُونَكُمْ

Root letters are connected to combat, fighting, battle and opposing

Are connected to weakening the strength or intensity of something

يَرُدُّوكُمْ and يَرْتَدِدْ

Root letters are connected to sending back, returning and driving back

Are connected to returning to a former state

Are connected to reverting, quitting, abandoning, withdrawing, refraining and renouncing

Renounces - the inward decision and declaration

Abandons - the outward action and ongoing state

دِينِكُمْ

Root letters are connected to under power, obedience, owe allegiance and submissive

Are connected to way of acting, doctrine, custom, habit, creed and religion

اسْتَطَاعُوا

Root letters are connected to be able, be in a position to do, to be capable and able to accomplish

فَيَمُتْ

Root letters are connected to dying, perishing, losing life and subsiding

حَبِطَتْ

Root letters are connected to coming to nothing, failing, futile and useless

اَعْمَالُهُمْ

Root letters are connected to work, actions, effort, labour, achievements, activity, service, striving and toiling

الدُّنْيَا

A superlative

Root letters are connected to being low and near

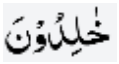
Are connected to world, life in this world, worldly existence, temporal things or possessions and earthly things and concerns

الْاٰخِرَةِ

Root letters are connected to the hereafter, the final abode, life to come, and something which is delayed and deferred

اَصْحٰبُ

Root letters are connected to companionship, association, closely associated, inmates and occupants



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to be everlasting, being immortal and abiding forever

إِنَّ الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا وَالَّذِينَ هَاجَرُوا وَجَاهَدُوا فِي سَبِيلِ اللَّهِ أُولَٰئِكَ
يَرْجُونَ رَحْمَتَ اللَّهِ ۚ وَاللَّهُ غَفُورٌ رَحِيمٌ ﴿٢١٨﴾

2:218

Certainly, those who have believed, as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind; and [especially from amongst them] those who have emigrated, leaving behind their homeland, and have strived according to their utmost ability in the path of [obeying] Allah, those—they [are rightfully entitled to] request, hope for, and anticipate the mercy, kindness, and relief from Allah. And Allah is innately and eternally the One who conceals, forgives, and corrects affairs, the One who especially grants constant mercy, kindness, and relief to those who earn it.

Notes:

آمَنُوا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

هَاجَرُوْا

Root letters are connected to dissociating, parting ways, separating and renouncing

Are connected to emigrating from one’s homeland and migrating from one place to another

وَجَاهَدُوْا

Root letters are connected to endeavor and strive

Are connected to taking pains, to overwork, exhaust and fatigue

سَبِيْلِ

Root letters are connected to a way, path and road

يَرْجُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to having hope, expectation, anticipation, wishing, asking and requesting

رَحْمَتَ

Root letters are connected to having mercy, compassion, sparing, letting off, saving, kindness, tenderness and pity

Mercy – withholds punishment from those who deserve it

Kindness – a broader act of granting blessings



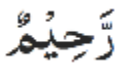
Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



Root letters are connected to covering, concealing, veiling and hiding

Are connected to forgiving and pardoning

Are connected to correcting and rectifying affairs



Root letters are connected to having mercy, compassion, sparing, letting off, saving, kindness, tenderness and pity

Intense structure form has been used

Specific mercy for those who deserve and earn it

Mercy – withholds punishment from those who deserve it

Kindness – a broader act of granting blessings

يَسْـَٔلُوْنَكَ عَنِ الْخَمْرِ وَالْمَيْسِرِ ۭ قُلْ فِيْهِمَآ اِثْمٌ كَبِيْرٌ وَّمَنَافِعُ
لِلنَّاسِ ۡ وَاِثْمُهُمَآ اَكْبَرُ مِنْ نَّفْعِهِمَا ۭ وَيَسْـَٔلُوْنَكَ مَاذَا يُنْفِقُوْنَ ۭ قُلِ
الْعَفْوَ ۭ كَذٰلِكَ يُبَيِّنُ اللّٰهُ لَكُمُ الْاٰيٰتِ لَعَلَّكُمْ تَتَفَكَّرُوْنَ ۙ ﴿٢١٩﴾

2:219

They question you concerning what can intoxicate—clouding and completely veiling the intellect—and concerning [all forms of] gambling, through which prosperity without effort is pursued. Reply, "In each of them is [established] great intentional sinful behaviour—[distressing and burdensome]—even though some profits are gained by people. Yet the [established] intentional sinful behaviour of each of them is greater, more distressing, and more burdensome than any profit gained through either of them[1]." They question you concerning what they readily use [of their possessions] to provide support for and bear the cost of. Reply, "The surplus—whatever remains beyond legitimate needs." In that way, Allah clearly explains, for your benefit, the miraculous and evident signs [verses of the Quran], so that you may examine and reflect.

Notes:

1 - When this verse was revealed, intoxicants and gambling were clearly disliked in Islam but not yet prohibited, as Allah, the Exalted, employed a gradual, step-by-step approach to their prohibition



Root letters are connected to asking, requesting and demanding



Singular form to cover all types

Root letters are connected to cover, hide and conceal

Are connected to intoxicants, wine and alcohol

Are connected to having a headache, disturbing the mind and intoxicants that cloud or obscure the intellect



Singular form to cover all types

Root letters are connected to game of chance and gambling

Are connected to making easy, and facilitating

Are connected to prosperity, affluence, luxury and comfort

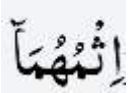
Are connected to easily accomplished, within easy reach, easy to carry out, easily done and coming without effort



Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

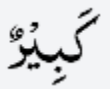


Noun sentence indicating established and inherent characteristic

 and 

Root letters are connected to sin, err, slip, crime and offense

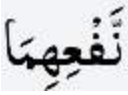
Are connected to intentional sin



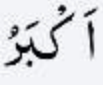
Root letters are connected to becoming too great, too distressing and painful, too burdensome, to appear intolerable and insurmountable

Are connected to a great sin, grave offense and atrocious crime

Are connected to big, large and great

 and 

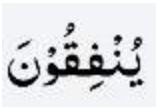
Root letters are connected benefit, useful service, advantage, profit, gain, interest and advantages



A comparative

Root letters are connected to becoming too great, too distressing and painful, too burdensome, to appear intolerable and insurmountable

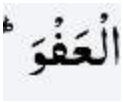
Are connected to big, large and great



Root letters are connected to spending, expending, disbursing, using up, providing maintenance and bearing the cost of

Are connected to disposing of something quickly

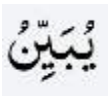
Are connected to exhausting, using up and spending



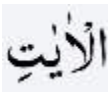
Root letters are connected to surplus, superfluity and excess

Are connected to excess of one’s needs

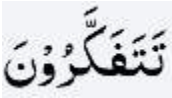
Are connected to the lawful and best portion of wealth and property



Root letters are connected to making clear, showing, explaining, differentiating and distinguishing



Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof



Root letters are connected to reflecting, meditating, pondering examining and considering

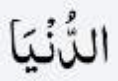
فِي الدُّنْيَا وَالْاٰخِرَةِ ؕ وَيَسْـَٔلُوْنَكَ عَنِ الْيَتٰمٰى ؕ قُلْ اِصْلَاحٌ لَّهُمْ خَيْرٌ ؕ
وَاِنْ تُخَالِطُوْهُمْ فَاِخْوَانُكُمْ ؕ وَاللّٰهُ يَعْلَمُ الْمُفْسِدَ مِنَ الْمُصْلِحِ ؕ وَلَوْ
شَآءَ اللّٰهُ لَاَعْنَتَكُمْ ؕ اِنَّ اللّٰهَ عَزِيْزٌ حَكِيْمٌ ﴿۲۲۰﴾

2:220

[So that you may examine and reflect[1]] concerning the world—the lowest state of living—and the life of the Hereafter. They question you concerning orphans. Reply, "Achieving a good state for their benefit by correctly arranging their affairs is [established as] preferred and better for your well-being." And if you all intermingle your affairs with them—sharing possessions—then, in that case, [there is no blame, since] they are your brotherly companions. And Allah—He completely knows and fully understands the one who is firmly established in, and persists in, causing and spreading corruption and disorder—removing goodness—from the one who is firmly established in, and persists in, achieving a good state by correctly arranging affairs. Although, had Allah willed, He would have certainly dealt with you in a severely harsh and distressing manner, burdening you with unbearable tasks. Certainly, Allah is innately and eternally the One who overcomes all things, the Owner of respect and nobility, raising in honour and lowering whoever He wills, the One who rules over and controls everything, determining every affair with perfect wisdom.

Notes:

1 - This verse, like many others, proves verses cannot be solely studied in isolation as they are clearly linked to one another, just as this one is a continuation of the previous one



A superlative

Root letters are connected to being low and near

Are connected to world, life in this world, worldly existence, temporal things or possessions and earthly things and concerns



Root letters are connected to the hereafter, the final abode and something which is delayed and deferred



Root letters are connected to asking, requesting and demanding



Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging



Noun sentence indicating established and timeless principle



Root letters are connected to improving, making suitable, cultivating, making prosper, arranging correctly and putting in a good state



A comparative

Root letters are connected to good, virtuous and generous

Are connected to choosing and preferring

Are connected to something better and superior

Are connected to a good state and well-being



Root letters are connected to mixing, merging, associating, mixing in one another’s affairs and intermixing,

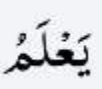
Are connected to sharing rights in possession and mixing property with one another



Root letters are connected to associating as brothers, brother, fellow man, friend, associate, and companion



Pronoun “He” is used twice for added emphasis



Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to spoiling, corruption, causing disorder, rebellion, spreading discord, hostility, trouble and depriving of virtue

Corrupt - moral/ethical degradation

Disordered - structural/functional breakdown

Devoid of good - absence of benefit or blessing

الْمُصْلِحِ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to helping, reconciling, making peace, fixing things, repairing things and granting benefits

شَآءَ

Root letters are connected to wanting, willing and wishing

لَاَعْنَتَكُمْ

لَاَ added for emphasis

Root letters are connected treating harshly, cause distress and deal roughly in an unbearable way

Are connected to forcing others to perform difficult tasks

إِنَّ اللَّهَ عَزِيزٌ حَكِيمٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

عَزِيزٌ

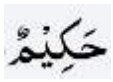
Root letters are connected to power, respect, honour and nobility,

Are connected to overwhelming, overcoming and dominating

Are connected to raising in esteem, elevating and exalting

Respect - honour, esteem, and recognised worth

Nobility - elevated rank, dignity, and excellence



Root letters are connected to judging, deciding and decreeing

Are connected to wisdom

Are connected to accuracy, perfection and precision

Are connected to governing, ruling, dominating and controlling

Rule - authority and command (who has the right to decide)

Control - execution and outcome (ensuring decisions take effect)

وَلَا تَنْكِحُوا الْمُشْرِكٰتِ حَتّٰى يُؤْمِنَّ ؕ وَلَاَمَةٌ مُّؤْمِنَةٌ خَيْرٌ مِّنْ مُّشْرِكَةٍ
وَّلَوْ اَعْجَبَتْكُمْ ۚ وَلَا تُنْكِحُوا الْمُشْرِكِيْنَ حَتّٰى يُؤْمِنُوْا ؕ وَلَعَبْدٌ مُّؤْمِنٌ
خَيْرٌ مِّنْ مُّشْرِكٍ وَّلَوْ اَعْجَبَكُمْ ؕ اُولٰٓئِكَ يَدْعُوْنَ اِلَى النَّارِ ۖۚ وَاللّٰهُ
يَدْعُوْٓا اِلَى الْجَنَّةِ وَالْمَغْفِرَةِ بِاِذْنِهٖ ۚ وَيُبَيِّنُ اٰيٰتِهٖ لِلنَّاسِ لَعَلَّهُمْ
يَتَذَكَّرُوْنَ ﴿۲۲۱﴾

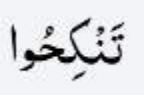
2:221

And do not marry—all of you—women who are firmly established in, and persist in, associating partners with Allah until they believe, as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind. And certainly, a believing female slave—firmly established in, and persisting in, sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith—is preferred and better for your well-being than a woman who is firmly established in, and persists in, associating partners with Allah, even though you have found her appealing. And do not give [believing women] in marriage[1] to men who are firmly established in, and persist in, associating partners with Allah until they believe, as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind. And certainly, a believing male slave—firmly established in, and persisting in, sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith—is preferred and better for your well-being than a man who is firmly established in, and persists in, associating partners with Allah, even though you have found him appealing. Those—they invite, urge, and drive [inadvertently] to the Fire. Whereas, Allah—He invites to, urges to, and

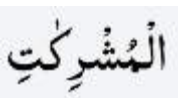
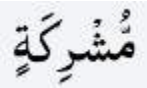
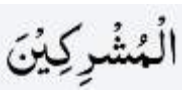
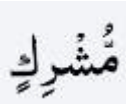
assigns the Secure Garden—Paradise—and concealment, forgiveness, and correction of affairs through His permission. And He clearly explains His miraculous and evident signs [verses of the Quran] for the benefit of all people, so that they may reflect and be mindful.

Notes:

1 - The family of a woman seeking a husband should be actively involved, because the consequences of choosing the wrong husband can be more severe than those of a man choosing the wrong wife. In most cases, verbal and physical abuse of spouses and children is caused by the husband. Male relatives may also detect qualities in a potential husband that the woman herself cannot, as men may recognize other men more readily, just as women may recognize other women more readily. Therefore, to minimise the risk of a woman choosing the wrong husband, her family should actively help her find a suitable spouse who obeys Allah, the Exalted, encourages others to do the same, and fulfils the rights of his spouse and children.

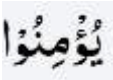


Root letters are connected to getting married, wedlock and marriage contract

 ,  ,  and 

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to making a partner, associating and committing polytheism

 and 

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

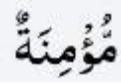
Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit



 added for emphasis

Root letters are connected to a slave woman, maidservant, and a woman whose condition is like slavery



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit



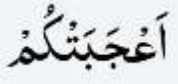
A comparative

Root letters are connected to good, virtuous and generous

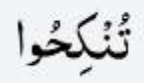
Are connected to choosing and preferring

Are connected to something better and superior

Are connected to a good state and well-being

 and 

Root letters are connected filling with astonishment, amazes, causes wonder, pleases, delights and appeals



Root letters are connected to giving in marriage and arranging someone’s marriage



 added for emphasis

Root letters are connected to a male servant and male slave



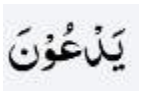
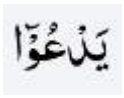
Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

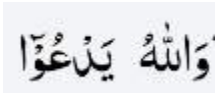
Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

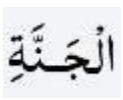
Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

 and 

Root letters are connected to calling, summoning, sending for, urging, driving, prompting, assigning and inviting



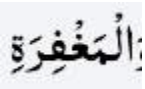
Pronoun “He” is used twice for added emphasis



Root letters are connected to Paradise

Are connected to protection, shield and safety

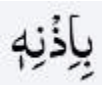
Are connected to a garden and a walled garden



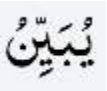
Root letters are connected to covering, concealing, veiling and hiding

Are connected to forgiving and pardoning

Are connected to correcting and rectifying affairs



Root letters are connected to permission



Root letters are connected to making clear, showing, explaining, differentiating and distinguishing



Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof



Root letters are connected to thinking, remembering, being mindful, reflecting, and recalling

Reflect - to think deeply and carefully about something, drawing lessons and understanding.

Be mindful - to keep those lessons consciously present, allowing them to influence one's attitude and conduct.

وَيَسْـَٔلُوْنَكَ عَنِ الْمَحِيْضِ ۗقُلْ هُوَ اَذًى ۙفَاعْتَزِلُوا النِّسَاۤءَ فِى

الْمَحِيْضِ ۙوَلَا تَقْرَبُوْهُنَّ حَتّٰى يَطْهُرْنَ ۚفَاِذَا تَطَهَّرْنَ فَاْتُوْهُنَّ مِنْ

حَيْثُ اَمَرَكُمُ اللّٰهُ ۗاِنَّ اللّٰهَ يُحِبُّ التَّوَّابِيْنَ وَيُحِبُّ الْمُتَطَهِّرِيْنَ ۝٢٢٢

2:222

They question you concerning menstruation. Reply, "It is [established as] pain and distress." Therefore, withdraw—all of you—from women experiencing menstruation, giving them personal space. And do not approach them [for physical intimacy] until they have become cleansed. Then when they wash themselves—come to them [for physical intimacy] from where Allah has instructed you. Certainly, Allah prefers and loves those who are firmly established in, and persist in, repeatedly turning to Him in sincere repentance, and He prefers and loves those who are firmly established in, and persist in, purifying their bodies and character.

Notes:

يَسْـَٔلُوْنَكَ

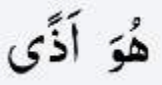
Root letters are connected to asking, requesting and demanding

الْمَحِيْضِ

Root letters are connected to menstruation and monthly period



Root letters are connected to saying, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

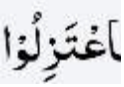


Noun sentence indicating an established state

Emphasis the state and condition



Root letters are connected to harm, annoying, troublesome, damage, pain and injury



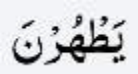
Root letters are connected to separating, detaching, releasing and discharging

Are connected to keeping away and withdrawing

Are connected to privacy



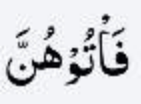
Root letters are connected to coming near, close and approaching



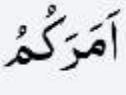
Root letters are connected to clean, cleanse, purge and purify



Root letters are connected cleaning and washing oneself



Root letters are connected to coming, arriving, bringing, advancing and accomplishing



Root letters are connected to a command, thing, affair, business and a matter



Root letters are connected liking, loving and wanting

Are connected to desiring, preferring, liking

إِنَّ اللهَ يُحِبُّ التَّوَّابِيْنَ وَيُحِبُّ الْمُتَطَهِّرِيْنَ

Noun sentence indicating an established and persistent state

التَّوَّابِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Intense form has been used

Root letters are connected to repenting, turning and renouncing disobedience and sins

الْمُتَطَهِّرِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to clean and purity

Are connected to chastity, refraining from sins, purification of character and purification from bad habits

نِسَآؤُكُمْ حَرْثٌ لَّكُمْ ۠ فَأْتُوا حَرْثَكُمْ أَنَّىٰ شِئْتُمْ ۖ وَقَدِّمُوا لِأَنفُسِكُمْ ۚ
وَاتَّقُوا اللَّهَ وَاعْلَمُوا أَنَّكُم مُّلَاقُوهُ ۗ وَبَشِّرِ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ ﴿٢٢٣﴾

2:223

Your wives are a place of cultivation for you all. Therefore, come [for physical intimacy] to your place of cultivation [the site of pregnancy] however you have wished. Yet give priority to preparing for the future, sending forward [any good] for the benefit of yourselves—devoutly fulfilling your duties to Allah, thereby protecting yourselves from harm and arranging all your matters correctly. And recognise, know, and understand that you are firmly established in, and persisting in, meeting Him. Therefore, announce good news of positive future prospects to those who are firmly established in, and persist in, sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind.

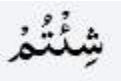
Notes:

حَرْثٌ and حَرْثَكُمْ

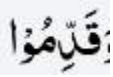
Root letters are connected to tillage, land or place for agriculture and cultivation

فَأْتُوا

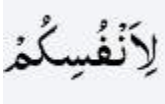
Root letters are connected to coming, arriving, bringing, advancing and accomplishing



Root letters are connected to wanting, willing and wishing



Root letters are connected to giving precedence , giving priority, preferring, setting forward, setting ahead, sending on in advance, setting forth, doing beforehand, sending ahead and sending forward



Root letters are connected to soul, person, mind, human being and an individual



Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious



Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

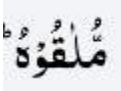
Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications



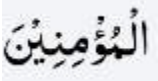
Noun sentence indicating an established and inevitable state



Root letters are connected to meet, come to meet, encounter, experience and achieve



Root letters are connected to giving and announcing good news, giving good and hopeful prospects for the future



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

وَلَا تَجْعَلُوا اللّٰهَ عُرْضَةً لِّاَيْمَانِكُمْ اَنْ تَبَرُّوْا وَتَتَّقُوْا وَتُصْلِحُوْا بَيْنَ
النَّاسِ ۭ وَاللّٰهُ سَمِيْعٌ عَلِيْمٌ ۝٢٢٤

2:224

And do not—all of you—make Allah an obstacle, through your promises and oaths [made in His name], thereby hindering you from righteous conduct towards Allah and people; and from devoutly fulfilling your duties—thereby protecting yourselves from harm and arranging all your matters correctly; and from making peace, amending, reconciling, and correctly arranging affairs—thereby spreading prosperity amongst people. And Allah is innately and eternally the One whose hearing encompasses all things, the One who completely knows and fully understands everything.

Notes:

تَجْعَلُوا

Root letters are connected to placing, inserting, making, fixing and appointing

عُرْضَةً

Root letters are connected to object of intention and target

Are connected to an obstacle to a thing and impediment

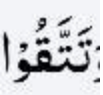


Root letters are connected to oaths and promises



Root letters are connected to being dutiful, devout, to do good, obey Allah, treat others with respect and good treatment of people

Are connected to piety, reverence and righteousness



Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious



Root letters are connected to helping, reconciling, making peace, fixing things, repairing things, amending, making thrive, making prosperous and putting in a good state

Peace – acts to stop conflict

Amend – acts to mend, fix or compensate harm done

Reconciliation – acts to restore broken relationships



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



Root letters are connected to hearing, listening and paying attention



Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

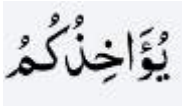
Understand - grasping meaning and implications

لَا يُؤَاخِذُكُمُ اللّٰهُ بِاللَّغْوِ فِيْٓ اَيْمَانِكُمْ وَلٰكِنْ يُّؤَاخِذُكُمْ بِمَا كَسَبَتْ
قُلُوْبُكُمْ ۭ وَاللّٰهُ غَفُوْرٌ حَلِيْمٌ ۝٢٢٥

2:225

Allah does not censure or hold you all accountable for vain speech or unintentional mistakes in speech [occurring] in your promises and oaths. Whereas, He does censure and hold you accountable for what your spiritual hearts have intentionally worked hard to earn. And Allah is innately and eternally the One who conceals, forgives, and corrects affairs, the One who is lenient and forbearing—restrained in punishment despite disobedience.

Notes:



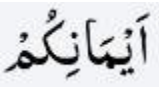
Root letters are connected to taking firmly, adhering, obtaining and seizing

Are connected to censuring, blaming, punishing or holding accountable

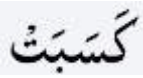


Root letters are connected making mistakes in speaking

Are connected to joking, vain speech, useless speech and worthless talk

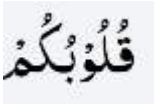


Root letters are connected to oaths and promises



Root letters are connected to acquiring, earning, gathering, obtaining, gaining

Are connected to working hard and diligent



Root letters are connected to the heart



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



Root letters are connected to covering, concealing, veiling and hiding

Are connected to forgiving and pardoning

Are connected to correcting and rectifying affairs



Root letters are connected to gentleness, clemency, forbearance and patience

Lenient - gentle in dealing with people

Forbearing - patient despite wrongdoing

لِلَّذِينَ يُؤْلُونَ مِنْ نِّسَآئِهِمْ تَرَبُّصُ أَرْبَعَةِ أَشْهُرٍ ۖ فَإِنْ فَآءُو فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ
غَفُورٌ رَّحِيمٌ ﴿٢٢٦﴾

2:226

For those who swear an oath to abstain from normal marital relations with their wives [such as physical intimacy]—a waiting period of four months is established. Then if they have reconsidered and returned [to normal marital relations]—certainly, Allah is innately and eternally the One who conceals, forgives, and corrects affairs, the One who especially grants constant mercy, kindness, and relief to those who earn it.

Notes:

يُؤْلُونَ

Root letters are connected to swearing and a vow of abstinence

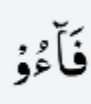
تَرَبُّصُ

Noun indicating an established and timeless obligation

Root letters are connected to waiting, expecting and refraining from acting



Root letters are connected to month and new moon



Root letters are connected to reconsidering

Are connected to returning and returning to a good state



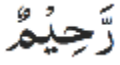
Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



Root letters are connected to covering, concealing, veiling and hiding

Are connected to forgiving and pardoning

Are connected to correcting and rectifying affairs



Root letters are connected to having mercy, compassion, sparing, letting off, saving, kindness, tenderness and pity

Intense structure form has been used

Specific mercy for those who deserve and earn it

Mercy – withholds punishment from those who deserve it

Kindness – a broader act of granting blessings

وَإِنْ عَزَمُوا الطَّلَاقَ فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ سَمِيعٌ عَلِيمٌ ﴿٢٢٧﴾

2:227

Whereas, if they have firmly determined upon divorce, then certainly, Allah is innately and eternally the One whose hearing encompasses all things, the One who completely knows and fully understands everything.

Notes:

عَزَمُوا

Root letters are connected to decide, resolve, be determined and firm in decision

الطَّلَاقَ

Root letters are connected to divorce, set free, released and unrestricted

فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ سَمِيعٌ عَلِيمٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

سَمِيعٌ

Root letters are connected to hearing, listening and paying attention

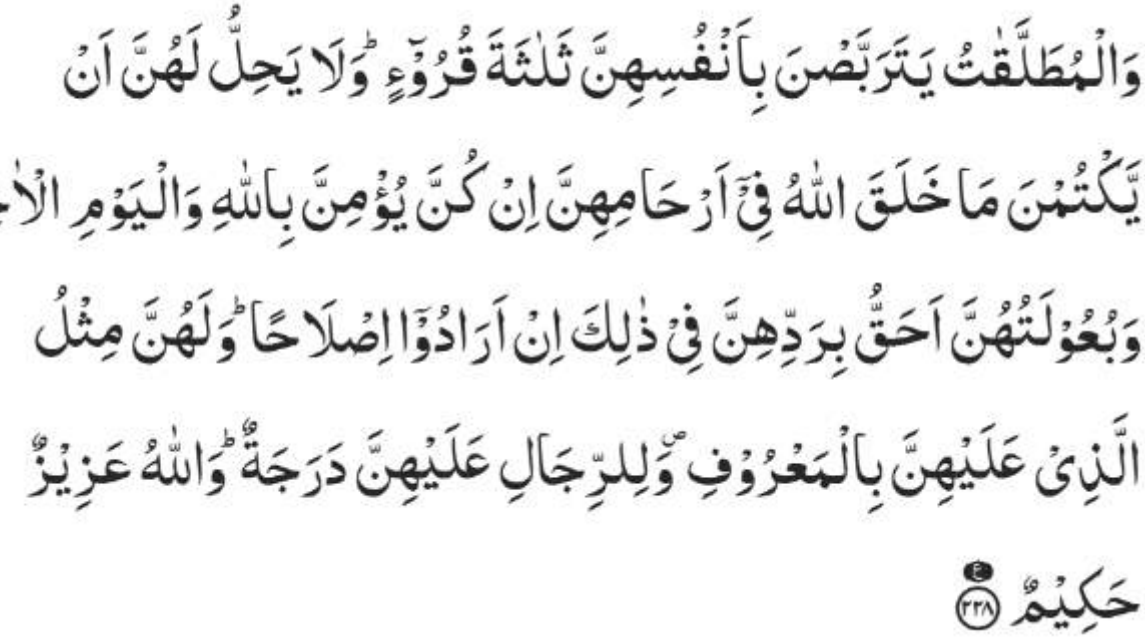


Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications


وَالْمُطَلَّقٰتُ يَتَرَبَّصْنَ بِاَنْفُسِهِنَّ ثَلٰثَةَ قُرُوْٓءٍ ۭ وَلَا يَحِلُّ لَهُنَّ اَنْ
يَّكْتُمْنَ مَا خَلَقَ اللّٰهُ فِيْٓ اَرْحَامِهِنَّ اِنْ كُنَّ يُؤْمِنَّ بِاللّٰهِ وَالْيَوْمِ الْاٰخِرِ ۭ
وَبُعُوْلَتُهُنَّ اَحَقُّ بِرَدِّهِنَّ فِيْ ذٰلِكَ اِنْ اَرَادُوْٓا اِصْلَاحًا ۭ وَلَهُنَّ مِثْلُ
الَّذِيْ عَلَيْهِنَّ بِالْمَعْرُوْفِ ۠ وَلِلرِّجَالِ عَلَيْهِنَّ دَرَجَةٌ ۭ وَاللّٰهُ عَزِيْزٌ
حَكِيْمٌ ۝٢٢٨

2:228

And divorced women—it is established that they wait and restrain themselves—the inclination, wish, or desire [for marriage]—for three menstrual periods. And it is not lawful for them to withhold or conceal what Allah has brought into existence—in a perfectly suitable and precise manner—within their wombs, if they are, in fact, persisting in believing in Allah and the Last Momentous Day, as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind. And their husbands—the heads of the family upon whom the obligation of financial maintenance rests—are more appropriately placed for bringing back their wives to their former state [of marital relations] during that [waiting period], but only if they have intended and sought to achieve a good state through making peace, amending, reconciling, and correctly arranging affairs. And it is established for the benefit of wives [rights] similar to what is [obligated] upon them, [to be fulfilled] according to fair, kind, and sincere conduct which is widely recognised by common sense and reason. Yet for men [all male relatives] over women is an established degree [of responsibility[1]]. And Allah is innately and eternally the One who overcomes

all things, the Owner of respect and nobility, raising in honour and lowering whoever He wills, the One who rules over and controls everything, determining every affair with perfect wisdom.

Notes:

1 - The greater degree of responsibility upon men is discussed in many Islamic teachings, such as Quran 4:34

وَالْمُطَلَّقٰتُ يَتَرَبَّصْنَ بِاَنْفُسِهِنَّ ثَلٰثَةَ قُرُوْٓءٍ ؕ

Noun sentence indicating established and timeless obligation

Pronoun “they” is used twice for added emphasis

وَالْمُطَلَّقٰتُ

Root letters are connected to divorce, set free, released and unrestricted

يَتَرَبَّصْنَ

Root letters are connected to waiting, expecting, refraining from acting and waiting for something to befall

بِاَنْفُسِهِنَّ

Root letters are connected to soul, person, liking, appetite, desire, wish, will, desire and inclination

Inclination - an internal leaning

Wish - a conscious wanting

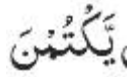
Desire - a stronger wanting



Root letters are connected to menstruation cycle



Root letters are connected to being lawful, permissible, allowed, lawful, allowable and legitimate



Root words are connected to hiding, subduing, curbing, suppressing, repressing, concealing, making secret and to withhold

Withhold - to hold back or not disclose

Conceal - to hide completely from view or knowledge



Root letters are connected to creating, originating, making, bringing into existence from nothing

Are connected to being fitting and suitable

أَرْحَامِهِنَّ

Root letters are connected to womb, relationship and kinship

كُنَّ يُؤْمِنَّ بِاللّٰهِ وَالْيَوْمِ الْاٰخِرِ

Structure indicates repetitive action

يُؤْمِنَّ

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

الْيَوْمِ

Root letters are connected to days, age, era and time

Are connected to momentous and important days

الْاٰخِرِ

Root letters are connected to something that is last, ultimate, end, utmost and extreme

The Last Momentous Day refers to the Day of Judgement as eternity begins after that

وَبُعُوْلَتُهُنَّ اَحَقُّ بِرَدِّهِنَّ فِيْ ذٰلِكَ

Noun sentence indicating established and timeless right

وَبُعُوْلَتُهُنَّ

Root letters are connected to husband, head, chief and person of authority

Are connected to a person who is obliged to provide maintenance for their family

اَحَقُّ

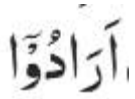
A comparative

Root letters are connected to what is right, correct, proper, suitable, fitting and purposeful

بِرَدِّهِنَّ

Root letters are connected to taking back, returning and brining back

Are connected to returning to a former state



Root letters are connected to have in mind, desire, intend, mean, aim at, purpose, be bound, to drive, strive and plan to do

Intend - internal decision to act

Seek - an external effort to obtain a specific result

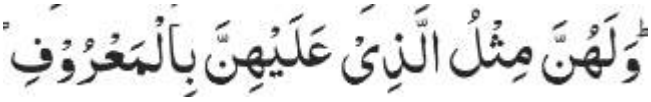


Root letters are connected to helping, reconciling, making peace, fixing things, repairing things, amending, making thrive, making prosperous and putting in a good state

Peace – acts to stop conflict

Amend – acts to mend, fix or compensate harm done

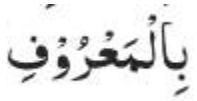
Reconciliation – acts to restore broken relationships



Noun sentence indicating established and timeless obligation and rights

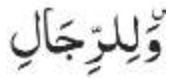


Root letters are connected to similar case, simile, parable and precedent

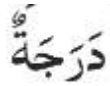


Root letters are connected to being well known, universally accepted, generally recognised and easily recognised

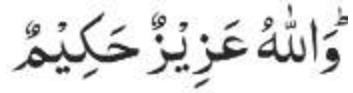
Are connected to which is good, fitting, suitable, courteous, fair and kind



Root letters are connected to a man, assuming masculine manners and qualities and reaching the age of manhood



Root letters are connected to step, stair, degree, grade, rank, condition and station



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



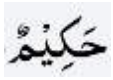
Root letters are connected to power, respect, honour and nobility,

Are connected to overwhelming, overcoming and dominating

Are connected to raising in esteem, elevating and exalting

Respect - honour, esteem, and recognised worth

Nobility - elevated rank, dignity, and excellence



Root letters are connected to judging, deciding and decreeing

Are connected to wisdom

Are connected to accuracy, perfection and precision

Are connected to governing, ruling, dominating and controlling

Rule - authority and command (who has the right to decide)

Control - execution and outcome (ensuring decisions take effect)

اَلطَّلَاقُ مَرَّتٰنِ ۪ فَاِمۡسَاكٌۢ بِمَعۡرُوۡفٍ اَوۡ تَسۡرِيۡحٌۢ بِاِحۡسَانٍ ؕ وَلَا يَحِلُّ
لَـكُمۡ اَنۡ تَاۡخُذُوۡا مِمَّاۤ اٰتَيۡتُمُوۡهُنَّ شَيۡـئًا اِلَّاۤ اَنۡ يَّخَافَاۤ اَلَّا يُقِيۡمَا حُدُوۡدَ
اللّٰهِ ؕ فَاِنۡ خِفۡتُمۡ اَلَّا يُقِيۡمَا حُدُوۡدَ اللّٰهِ ۙ فَلَا جُنَاحَ عَلَيۡهِمَا فِيۡمَا
افۡتَدَتۡ بِهٖ ؕ تِلۡكَ حُدُوۡدُ اللّٰهِ فَلَا تَعۡتَدُوۡهَا ۚ وَمَنۡ يَّتَعَدَّ حُدُوۡدَ اللّٰهِ
فَاُولٰٓئِكَ هُمُ الظّٰلِمُوۡنَ ﴿۲۲۹﴾

2:229

[Revocable] divorce is established as two times. Then either holding fast [to the marriage] according to fair, kind, and sincere conduct which is widely recognised by common sense and reason, or releasing [the marriage bond] according to excellent conduct. And it is not lawful for you all to seize from whatever you have given to your wives—anything at all—except in the case they both fear they will not establish and remain within the established prescribed limits of Allah, which avert evil. Then if you all [the Muslim community[1]] have feared that both of them will not establish and remain within the established prescribed limits of Allah—in that case, there is absolutely no blame upon either of them concerning whatever she has given [from what her husband gave her] to free herself [from the marriage]. Those are the established prescribed limits of Allah; therefore, do not exceed them through hostility and aggression. And whoever exceeds the established prescribed limits of Allah, extending far beyond them through hostility and aggression, then those [such people]—they [in particular] are firmly established in, and persist in, being unjust—transgressing proper limits.

Notes:

1 - The use of the plural indicates that other members of the Muslim community, such as one's family, should be involved as sincere advisors during a couple's marriage difficulties and divorce

اَلطَّلَاقُ مَرَّتٰنِ

Noun sentence indicating established and timeless obligation

اَلطَّلَاقُ

Root letters are connected to divorce, set free, released and unrestricted

فَاِمۡسَاكٌ

Root letters are connected to seizing, grasping, holding fast and holding back

بِمَعۡرُوۡفٍ

Root letters are connected to being well known, universally accepted, generally recognised by reason and easily recognised

Are connected to which is good, fitting, suitable, courteous, fair, kind, sincere advice and honest advice

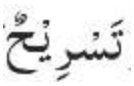
Fair - just and impartial

Kind - gentle and compassionate

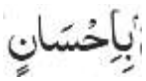
Sincere - genuine and honest in intention

Common sense - practical sound judgement

Reason - thoughtful understanding and rational reflection



Root letters are connected to sending, dispatching, letting go, leaving and releasing



Root letters are connected to being excellent, good, nice and lovely



Root letters are connected to being lawful, permissible, allowed, lawful, allowable and legitimate



Root letters are connected to taking firmly, adhering, obtaining, seizing and taking firmly

اٰتَيْتُمُوْهُنَّ

Root letters are connected to giving, granting and bestowing

شَيْـًٔا

Root letters are connected to a thing, matter or affair

يَّخَافَآ and خِفْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to being frightened and scared of a future event

يُّقِيْمَا

Root letters are connected to guarding, preserving, rectifying, being sincere, honest, and establishing

Are connected to abiding, staying and remaining

حُدُوْدَ and حُدُوْدُ

Root letters are connected to limits, restrictions and boundaries

Are connected to divine ordinance

Are connected to turning one away from evil

Are connected to be bounded, determined, and established

لَا جُنَاحَ

Structure indicates absolute negation

جُنَاحَ

Root letters are connected to misdemeanor, a minor wrongdoing, a crime, sin, blame and disobedience

افْتَدَتْ

Root letters are connected to freeing, ransoming, obtaining something by sacrificing something else and redeeming

تَعْتَدُوهَا and يَّتَعَدَّ

Root letters are connected to hostility, violating, aggression, exceeding proper bounds, extending beyond something, and transgressing

Are connected to treating like an enemy

Hostility - inner attitude of enmity

Aggression - outward expression through harmful action

يَّتَعَدَّ

This form shows progression and intensity

هُمُ الظّٰلِمُوْنَ

Pronoun “they” is used twice for added emphasis

الظّٰلِمُوْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to be unjust, act tyrannically, do wrong, do evil, harm, oppress and transgress proper limits

فَإِنْ طَلَّقَهَا فَلَا تَحِلُّ لَهُ مِنْ بَعْدُ حَتَّىٰ تَنْكِحَ زَوْجًا غَيْرَهُ ۗ فَإِنْ طَلَّقَهَا
فَلَا جُنَاحَ عَلَيْهِمَا أَنْ يَتَرَاجَعَا إِنْ ظَنَّا أَنْ يُقِيمَا حُدُودَ اللَّهِ ۗ وَتِلْكَ
حُدُودُ اللَّهِ يُبَيِّنُهَا لِقَوْمٍ يَعْلَمُونَ ﴿٢٣٠﴾

2:230

Then if he has divorced her [the third time]—in that case, she is not lawful for him from after that until she marries a mate[1] other than him—[sincerely] uniting to form a pair. Then if he [the second husband] has divorced her—in that case, there is absolutely no blame upon either of them [the first husband and the woman] that they revert to one another [in marriage], but only if both of them have been reasonably certain, through thoughtful reflection, that they will establish and remain within the established prescribed limits of Allah. And those are the established prescribed limits of Allah, which avert evil. He clearly explains them for the benefit of any upright people who recognise, know, and understand.

Notes:

1 - The use of 'mate' instead of 'husband' emphasises that a genuine marital union is intended, thereby warning against the prohibited practice of marrying another man with the intention of later divorcing him in order to remarry the first husband

طَلَّقَهَا

Root letters are connected to divorce, set free, released and unrestricted

تَحِلُّ

Root letters are connected to being lawful, permissible, allowed, lawful, allowable and legitimate

تَنْكِحَ

Root letters are connected to getting married, wedlock and marriage contract

زَوْجًا

Root letters are connected to a pair, spouse and companion

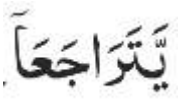
Are connected to coming together to form a pair

لَا جُنَاحَ

Structure indicates absolute negation

جُنَاحَ

Root letters are connected to misdemeanor, a minor wrongdoing, a crime, sin, blame and disobedience



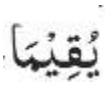
Root letters are connected to coming back, returning, resorting or reverting to a former place/state/quality

Are connected to returning to one another



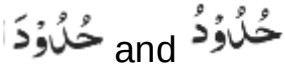
Root letters are connected to believing, being certain, presuming, perceiving, thinking, deeming, considering and supposing

Are connected to understanding through reflection and not through eye witnessing



Root letters are connected to guarding, preserving, rectifying, being sincere, honest, and establishing

Are connected to abiding, staying and remaining

 and

Root letters are connected to limits, restrictions and boundaries

Are connected to divine ordinance

Are connected to turning one away from evil

Are connected to be bounded, determined, and established

يُبَيِّنُهَا

Root letters are connected to making clear, showing, explaining, differentiating and distinguishing

لِقَوْمٍ

Root letters are connected to standing up, support, being straight and correct and being upright

يَعْلَمُوْنَ

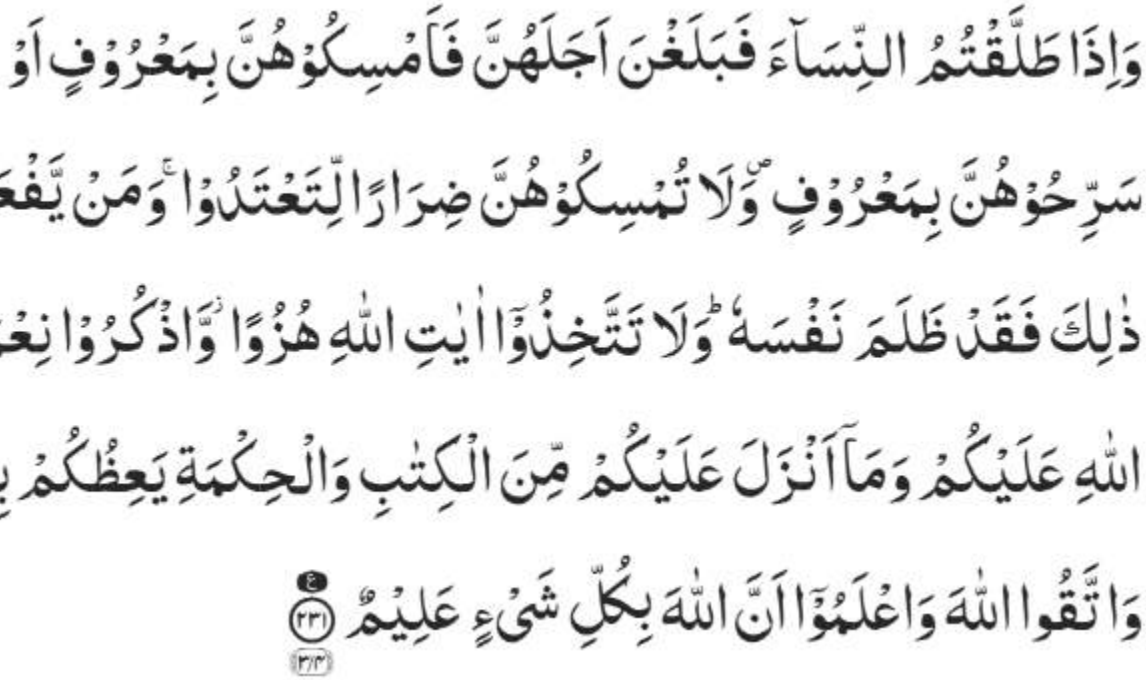
Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications


وَاِذَا طَلَّقْتُمُ النِّسَآءَ فَبَلَغْنَ اَجَلَهُنَّ فَاَمْسِكُوْهُنَّ بِمَعْرُوْفٍ اَوْ
سَرِّحُوْهُنَّ بِمَعْرُوْفٍ ۪ وَّلَا تُمْسِكُوْهُنَّ ضِرَارًا لِّتَعْتَدُوْا ۚ وَمَنْ يَّفْعَلْ
ذٰلِكَ فَقَدْ ظَلَمَ نَفْسَهٗ ؕ وَلَا تَتَّخِذُوْٓا اٰيٰتِ اللّٰهِ هُزُوًا ۠ وَّاذْكُرُوْا نِعْمَتَ
اللّٰهِ عَلَيْكُمْ وَمَآ اَنْزَلَ عَلَيْكُمْ مِّنَ الْكِتٰبِ وَالْحِكْمَةِ يَعِظُكُمْ بِهٖ ؕ
وَاتَّقُوا اللّٰهَ وَاعْلَمُوْٓا اَنَّ اللّٰهَ بِكُلِّ شَيْءٍ عَلِيْمٌ ﴿٢٣١﴾

2:231

And whenever you all divorce women and they reach their appointed time [end of the waiting period], then either hold fast to them [in marriage] according to fair, kind, and sincere conduct which is widely recognised by common sense and reason, or release them [from marriage] according to fair, kind, and sincere conduct which is widely recognised by common sense and reason. But do not hold fast to them [in marriage] in a state of harassment, harm, or coercion, so that you exceed proper bounds through hostility and aggression. And whoever influences or engages in doing that has certainly committed injustice against himself—transgressing proper limits. And do not take the miraculous and evident signs of Allah [verses of the Quran] as a matter of disdain or scorn. Instead, reflect on and be mindful of the favour of Allah upon you that leads to a pleasant life: what He has gradually revealed upon you—to hold a special position [of supreme authority]—consisting of the divine code of conduct and wisdom—perfect judgement, self-restraint, and leadership—ensuring knowledge is used correctly, by means of which He advises you—spiritual counsel,

appealing to the conscience, and as a warning of negative consequences. And devoutly fulfil your duties to Allah—thereby protecting yourselves from harm and arranging all your matters correctly. And recognise, know, and understand that Allah is innately and eternally the One who, concerning each and every thing, completely knows and fully understands.

Notes:

طَلَّقْتُمُ

Root letters are connected to divorce, set free, released and unrestricted

بَلَغْنَ

Root letters are connected to reaching, getting, arriving and coming

اَجَلَهُنَّ

Root letters are connected to appointed time and date, term, period and specified time

فَاَمْسِكُوْهُنَّ and تُمْسِكُوْهُنَّ

Root letters are connected to seizing, grasping, holding fast and holding back

بِمَعْرُوْفٍ

Root letters are connected to being well known, universally accepted, generally recognised by reason and easily recognised

Are connected to which is good, fitting, suitable, courteous, fair, kind, sincere advice and honest advice

Fair - just and impartial

Kind - gentle and compassionate

Sincere - genuine and honest in intention

Common sense - practical sound judgement

Reason - thoughtful understanding and rational reflection

سَرِّحُوْهُنَّ

Root letters are connected to sending, dispatching, letting go, leaving and releasing

ضِرَارًا

Noun indicating an established state

Root letters are connected to harm, impair, damage, hurt and injure

Are connected to forcing, compelling, coercing and obliging

لِّتَعْتَدُوْا

Root letters are connected to hostility, violating, aggression, exceeding proper bounds and transgressing

Are connected to treating like an enemy

Hostility - inner attitude of enmity

Aggression - outward expression through harmful action



Root letters are connected to doing an action, to influence, activity and accomplishing a task



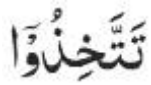
Used for emphasis with past tense action i.e. certainly



Root letters are connected to be unjust, act tyrannically, do wrong, do evil, harm, oppress and transgress proper limits



Root letters are connected to soul, person, mind, human being and an individual



Root letters are connected to taking firmly, adhering, obtaining, seizing and taking firmly

اٰيٰتِ

Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof

هُزُوًا

Root letters are connected to derision, disdain, contempt, scorn, mockery, scoffing and ridiculing

Disdain - inward contempt or disrespect

Scorn - outward contempt shown through words or actions

اذْكُرُوْا

Root letters are connected to bearing in mind, thinking, recalling, remembering, studying and reflecting

Reflect on - to think deeply, consider, and recognise

Be mindful of - to actively keep awareness of and not neglect

نِعْمَتَ

Root letters are connected to benefit, blessing, benefaction, favour, grace and kindness

Are connected to making nice, comfortable, pleasant and to bestow favours

Are connected to living in comfort and luxury, leading a life of ease and leading a comfortable life

اَنْزَلَ

Root letters are connected to something which is sent down, comes down, descends, stops over and is granted

Are connected to something which is sent down slowly and gradually

Are connected to something which holds a special position or place

الْكِتٰبِ

Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, book, ordinance, letter, document

الْحِكْمَةِ

Root letters are connected to judging, deciding and decreeing

Are connected to governing, ruling, dominating and controlling

Are connected to wisdom

Are connected to accuracy, perfection and precision

Are connected to restraining the intellect from bad things

يَعِظُكُمْ

Root letters are connected to preaching, admonishing and warning

Are connected to spiritual counsel, religious advice and a reminder of consequences

Spiritual counsel - inward moral guidance

Warning - outward consequence alert

اتَّقُوا

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious

اعْلَمُوٓا and عَلِيْمٌ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

اَنَّ اللّٰهَ بِكُلِّ شَيْءٍ عَلِيْمٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



Root letters are connected to a thing, matter or affair

وَإِذَا طَلَّقْتُمُ النِّسَآءَ فَبَلَغْنَ أَجَلَهُنَّ فَلَا تَعْضُلُوهُنَّ أَن يَنكِحْنَ
أَزْوَاجَهُنَّ إِذَا تَرَاضَوْا بَيْنَهُم بِالْمَعْرُوفِ ۗ ذَٰلِكَ يُوعَظُ بِهِ مَن كَانَ
مِنكُمْ يُؤْمِنُ بِاللَّهِ وَالْيَوْمِ الْآخِرِ ۗ ذَٰلِكُمْ أَزْكَىٰ لَكُمْ وَأَطْهَرُ ۚ وَاللَّهُ
يَعْلَمُ وَأَنتُمْ لَا تَعْلَمُونَ ﴿٢٣٢﴾

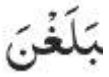
2:232

And whenever you all divorce women and they reach their appointed time [end of the waiting period], then do not harass them in order to hinder them from marrying their mates—uniting to form a pair—when they are mutually pleased with, approve of, and accept suitable terms between themselves according to fair, kind, and sincere conduct which is widely recognised by common sense and reason. That is a spiritual counsel, appealing to the conscience, and a warning of negative consequences given to whoever, from amongst you, persists in believing in Allah and the Last Momentous Day, as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind. That is more appropriate for you and more pure and chaste. And Allah—He completely knows and fully understands; whereas you do not recognise, know, or understand.

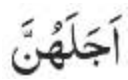
Notes:

طَلَّقْتُمُ

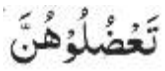
Root letters are connected to divorce, set free, released and unrestricted



Root letters are connected to reaching, getting, arriving and coming



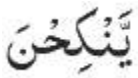
Root letters are connected to appointed time and date, term, period and specified time



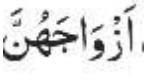
Root letters are connected to preventing someone from marriage

Are connected to being difficult, straitened and problematic

Are connected to molesting, harassing, tormenting and vexing



Root letters are connected to getting married, wedlock and marriage contract



Root letters are connected to pairs, spouses, companions, species and classes

Are connected to coming together to form a pair

تَرَاضَوْا

Root letters are connected to coming to terms, both agreeing, both being pleased and mutually agreeing

Are connected to being satisfied, pleased, to consent, agree, approve and accept

Pleased with - emotionally satisfied and comforted by

Approve of - regard as correct, fitting, and acceptable

بِمَعْرُوْفٍ

Root letters are connected to being well known, universally accepted, generally recognised by reason and easily recognised

Are connected to which is good, fitting, suitable, courteous, fair, kind, sincere advice and honest advice

Fair - just and impartial

Kind - gentle and compassionate

Sincere - genuine and honest in intention

Common sense - practical sound judgement

Reason - thoughtful understanding and rational reflection

يُوْعَظُ

Root letters are connected to preaching, admonishing and warning

Are connected to spiritual counsel and a reminder of consequences

كَانَ مِنْكُمْ يُؤْمِنُ بِاللّٰهِ وَالْيَوْمِ الْاٰخِرِ

Structure indicates repetitive action

كَانَ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

يُؤْمِنُ

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

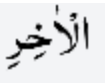
Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

الْيَوْمِ

Root letters are connected to days, age, era and time

Are connected to momentous and important days



Root letters are connected to something that is last, ultimate, end, utmost and extreme

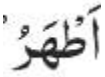
The Last Momentous Day refers to the Day of Judgement as eternity begins after that



A comparative

Root letters are connected to be fitting, suitable and good

Are connected to being pure, chaste, sinless and guiltless



A comparative

Root letters are connected to clean and purity

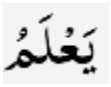
Are connected to chastity, modesty and virtuous behaviour

Pure - inward moral and spiritual purity

Chaste - outward purity, especially in conduct relating to modesty and sexual relations



Pronoun “He” is used twice for added emphasis

 and 

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

وَالْوَالِدٰتُ يُرْضِعْنَ اَوْلَادَهُنَّ حَوْلَيْنِ كَامِلَيْنِ لِمَنْ اَرَادَ اَنْ يُّتِمَّ
الرَّضَاعَةَ ؕ وَعَلَى الْمَوْلُوْدِ لَهٗ رِزْقُهُنَّ وَكِسْوَتُهُنَّ بِالْمَعْرُوْفِ ؕ لَا تُكَلَّفُ
نَفْسٌ اِلَّا وُسْعَهَا ۚ لَا تُضَآرَّ وَالِدَةٌۢ بِوَلَدِهَا وَلَا مَوْلُوْدٌ لَّهٗ بِوَلَدِهٖ ۚ وَعَلَى
الْوَارِثِ مِثْلُ ذٰلِكَ ۚ فَاِنْ اَرَادَا فِصَالًا عَنْ تَرَاضٍ مِّنْهُمَا وَتَشَاوُرٍ فَلَا
جُنَاحَ عَلَيْهِمَا ؕ وَاِنْ اَرَدْتُّمْ اَنْ تَسْتَرْضِعُوْٓا اَوْلَادَكُمْ فَلَا جُنَاحَ
عَلَيْكُمْ اِذَا سَلَّمْتُمْ مَّآ اٰتَيْتُمْ بِالْمَعْرُوْفِ ؕ وَاتَّقُوا اللّٰهَ وَاعْلَمُوْٓا اَنَّ اللّٰهَ
بِمَا تَعْمَلُوْنَ بَصِيْرٌ ﴿٢٣٣﴾

2:233

And the mothers—they breastfeed their children for two complete years, for whoever has intended and sought to precisely conclude the breastfeeding. And upon the biological father is established [as an obligation during this period] the former wives' provision as a means of living—food and clothing—according to fair, kind, and sincere conduct which is widely recognised by common sense and reason. A person is not assigned a duty, entrusted with a responsibility, or burdened with any discomfort except according to their means, capability, and strength. A mother must not harass, harm, or coerce by means of her child, nor must she be harassed, harmed, or coerced by means of her child. And a biological father must not harass, harm, or coerce by means of his child, nor must he be harassed, harmed, or coerced by means of his child. And upon the one who inherits

[from the biological father] is established [as an obligation] equivalent to that. Then if they have both intended and sought weaning as a result of mutual pleasure, approval, and acceptance of suitable terms amongst each other, and as a result of mutual consultation and careful deliberation—in that case, there is absolutely no blame upon either of them. And if you all [married or divorced couples] have intended and sought to have another woman breastfeed your children, then, in that case, there is absolutely no blame upon you when you securely hand over whatever you give [as wages], according to fair, kind, and sincere conduct which is widely recognised by common sense and reason. And devoutly fulfil your duties to Allah—thereby protecting yourselves from harm and arranging all your matters correctly. And recognise, know, and understand that Allah is innately and eternally the One who sees whatever you do, whether apparent or hidden, the One who is perfectly perceptive and discerning.

Notes:

الْوَالِدٰتُ , اَوْلَادَهُنَّ , وَالِدَةٌ , وَلَدِهَا and اَوْلَادَكُمْ

Root letters are connected to mother, giving birth, generating and producing

Are connected to a child, son, offspring and descendant

يُرْضِعْنَ , الرَّضَاعَةَ and تَسْتَرْضِعُوْٓا

Root letters are connected to suckling and breastfeeding

Are connected to seeking a wet nurse and using a wet nurse

كَامِلَيْنِ

Root letters are connected to perfecting, completing and concluding

Are connected to full, whole, entire and total

اَرَادَ , اَرَادَا and اَرَدْتُّمْ

Root letters are connected to have in mind, desire, intend, mean, aim at, purpose, be bound, to drive, strive and plan to do

Intend - internal decision to act

Seek - an external effort to obtain a specific result

يُّتِمَّ

Root letters are connected to complete, finish, conclude and terminate

Are connected to perfection, completing, executing, accomplishing and free from deficiency

Precisely - accurately and exactly

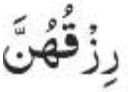
عَلَى الْمَوْلُوْدِ and وَعَلَى الْوَارِثِ

Noun sentence indicating an established and timeless obligation

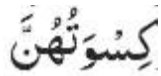
الْمَوْلُوْدِ لَهٗ

Structure indicates to whom the child belongs i.e. the biological father

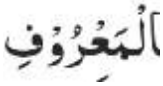
Root letters are connected to a child



Root letters are connected to means of survival and living, to bestow, to nourish, to provide provision and derive benefit from something



Root letters are connected to clothing, garbing, draping and dressing



Root letters are connected to being well known, universally accepted, generally recognised by reason and easily recognised

Are connected to which is good, fitting, suitable, courteous, fair, kind, sincere advice and honest advice

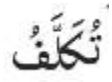
Fair - just and impartial

Kind - gentle and compassionate

Sincere - genuine and honest in intention

Common sense - practical sound judgement

Reason - thoughtful understanding and rational reflection



Root letters are connected to commissioned, charged, entrusted, assigned and imposed a duty

Are connected to a burden and having to bear

Are connected to trouble, discomfort and nuisance

نَفْسٌ

Root letters are connected to soul, person, mind, human being and an individual

وُسْعَهَا

Root letters are connected to holding capacity, means, capability, power, ability and strength

Means - the resources available to a person

Capability - the ability or competence to do something

Strength - physical, mental, emotional, and spiritual endurance

تُضَآرَّ

Root letters are connected to harm, impair, damage, hurt and injure

Are connected to forcing, compelling, coercing and obliging

Harass - to trouble, intimidate, or repeatedly subject someone to unwanted and distressing treatment

Harm - to cause injury, damage, or suffering, whether physical, emotional, or otherwise

Coerce - to compel or pressure someone to act against their will through force, threats, or intimidation

الْوَارِثِ

Root letters are connected to inherit and be an heir

مِثْلُ

Root letters are connected to equivalent, similar case, copy, equal and imitate

اَرَادَا فِصَالًا عَنْ تَرَاضٍ مِّنْهُمَا وَتَشَاوُرٍ

عَنْ indicates that the decision must emerge and be grounded in mutual co-operation

فِصَالًا

Root letters are connected to weaning an infant from suckling

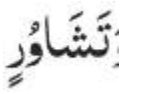
تَرَاضٍ

Root letters are connected to coming to terms, both agreeing, both being pleased and mutually agreeing

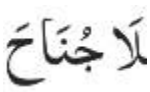
Are connected to being satisfied, pleased, to consent, agree, approve and accept

Pleased with - emotionally satisfied and comforted by

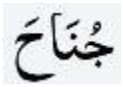
Approve of - regard as correct, fitting, and acceptable



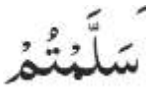
Root letters are connected to asking for advice, consulting, taking counsel, and deliberation with one another



Structure indicates absolute negation



Root letters are connected to misdemeanor, a minor wrongdoing, a crime, sin, blame and disobedience



Root letters are connected to handing over, surrendering, delivering and granting

Are connected to being intact, safe and sound, secure, safe and faultless

اٰتَيْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to giving, granting and bestowing

اتَّقُوا

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious

اعْلَمُوْٓا

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

اَنَّ اللّٰهَ بِمَا تَعْمَلُوْنَ بَصِيْرٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

تَعْمَلُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to working, doing and acting

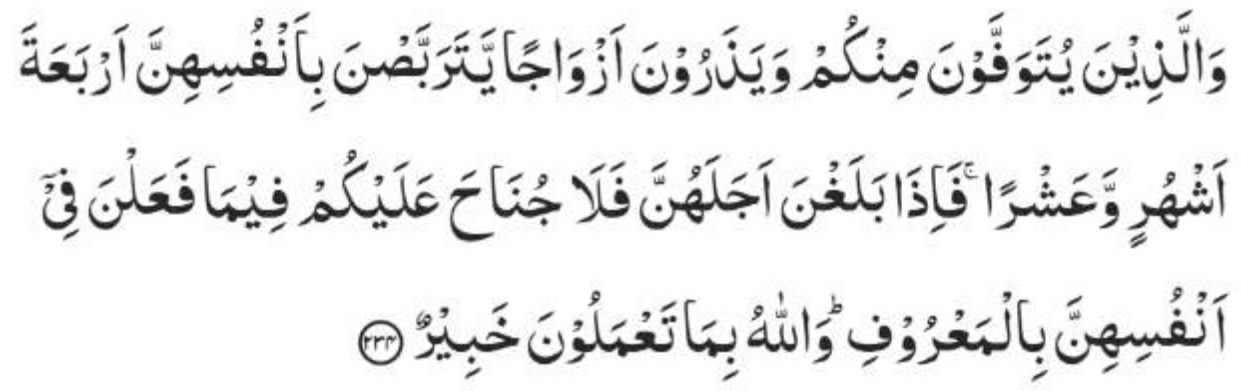


Root letters are connected to seeing, witnessing and perception

Are connected to discerning, understanding, intelligent and mental perception

Perceptive – detecting/noticing

Discerning – judging/evaluating


وَالَّذِيْنَ يُتَوَفَّوْنَ مِنْكُمْ وَيَذَرُوْنَ اَزْوَاجًا يَّتَرَبَّصْنَ بِاَنْفُسِهِنَّ اَرْبَعَةَ
اَشْهُرٍ وَّعَشْرًا ۚ فَاِذَا بَلَغْنَ اَجَلَهُنَّ فَلَا جُنَاحَ عَلَيْكُمْ فِيْمَا فَعَلْنَ فِيْٓ
اَنْفُسِهِنَّ بِالْمَعْرُوْفِ ۭ وَاللّٰهُ بِمَا تَعْمَلُوْنَ خَبِيْرٌ ۝٢٣٤

2:234

And those who are taken by death from amongst you all and leave behind wives—they wait and restrain themselves—the inclination, wish, or desire [for marriage]—for four months and ten [days]. Then when they reach their appointed time [end of the waiting period]—there is absolutely no blame upon you all [the Muslim community[1]] in whatever they [choose to] do concerning themselves, according to fair, kind, and sincere conduct which is widely recognised by common sense and reason. And Allah is innately and eternally the One who, with whatever you do, is fully acquainted with its apparent and hidden realities.

Notes:

1 - The use of the plural indicates the entire Muslim community is responsible to ensure the rights of the widows are fulfilled


يُتَوَفَّوْنَ

Root letters are connected to be taken by death and dying

يَذَرُوْنَ

Root letters are connected leave behind, leave alone, forsake and abandon

اَزْوَاجًا

Root letters are connected to a pair, spouse and companion

يَتَرَبَّصْنَ

Root letters are connected to waiting, expecting, refraining from acting and waiting for something to befall

بِاَنْفُسِهِنَّ and اَنْفُسِهِنَّ

Root letters are connected to soul, person, liking, appetite, desire, wish, will, desire and inclination

Inclination - an internal leaning

Wish - a conscious wanting

Desire - a stronger wanting

اَشْهُرٍ

Root letters are connected to month and new moon

بَلَغْنَ

Root letters are connected to reaching, getting, arriving and coming

اَجَلَهُنَّ

Root letters are connected to appointed time and date, term, period and specified time

لَا جُنَاحَ

Structure indicates absolute negation

جُنَاحَ

Root letters are connected to misdemeanor, a minor wrongdoing, a crime, sin, blame and disobedience

افَعَلْنَ

Root letters are connected to doing an action, activity and accomplishing a task

الْمَعْرُوْفِ

Root letters are connected to being well known, universally accepted, generally recognised by reason and easily recognised

Are connected to which is good, fitting, suitable, courteous, fair, kind, sincere advice and honest advice

Fair - just and impartial

Kind - gentle and compassionate

Sincere - genuine and honest in intention

Common sense - practical sound judgement

Reason - thoughtful understanding and rational reflection

وَاللَّهُ بِمَا تَعْمَلُونَ خَبِيرٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

تَعْمَلُونَ

Root letters are connected to working, doing and acting

خَبِيرٌ

Root letters are connected to being familiar, well-acquainted, possessing knowledge, and an expert

Are connected to knowledge of the internal and real state of things

Are connected to intelligence, report, communication, message, affair and matter

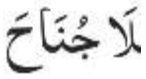
وَلَا جُنَاحَ عَلَيْكُمْ فِيمَا عَرَّضْتُمْ بِهٖ مِنْ خِطْبَةِ النِّسَآءِ اَوْ اَكْنَنْتُمْ
فِيْٓ اَنْفُسِكُمْ ؕ عَلِمَ اللّٰهُ اَنَّكُمْ سَتَذْكُرُوْنَهُنَّ وَلٰكِنْ لَّا تُوَاعِدُوْهُنَّ
سِرًّا اِلَّآ اَنْ تَقُوْلُوْا قَوْلًا مَّعْرُوْفًا ۬ؕ وَلَا تَعْزِمُوْا عُقْدَةَ النِّكَاحِ حَتّٰى يَبْلُغَ
الْكِتٰبُ اَجَلَهٗ ؕ وَاعْلَمُوْٓا اَنَّ اللّٰهَ يَعْلَمُ مَا فِيْٓ اَنْفُسِكُمْ فَاحْذَرُوْهُ ۚ
وَاعْلَمُوْٓا اَنَّ اللّٰهَ غَفُوْرٌ حَلِيْمٌ ﴿۲۳۵﴾

2:235

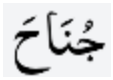
And there is absolutely no blame upon you all in whatever you have presented concerning a marriage proposal to women, or in keeping it secret within and amongst yourselves [the man's family]. Allah has completely known and fully understood that you will mention and seek counsel regarding them [the women]. However, do not make an arrangement [for marriage] with them in a state of secrecy—aiming to please them—except that you speak words which are fair, kind, and sincere—widely recognised by common sense and reason. But do not be firmly determined upon the binding agreement and responsibility of marriage until the recorded decree [the waiting period] reaches its appointed time.[1] And recognise, know, and understand that Allah completely knows and fully understands whatever is within and amongst yourselves; therefore be cautious of Him. And recognise, know, and understand that Allah is innately and eternally the One who conceals, forgives, and corrects affairs, the One who is lenient and forbearing—restrained in punishment despite disobedience.

Notes:

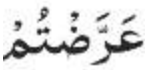
1 - This verse strictly prohibits finalising or resolving upon the marriage contract during the widow's waiting period; it does not outlaw discussing the prospective union in a transparent and upfront manner. Engaging in obscure hints or ambiguous allusions is closer to the prohibited state of secrecy and confusion, directly contradicting the open, clear, and honorable communication commanded in the text



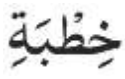
Structure indicates absolute negation



Root letters are connected to misdemeanor, a minor wrongdoing, a crime, sin, blame and disobedience



Root letters are connected to suggesting, offering, exposing, bring something to light, showing and presenting



Root letters are connected to addressing, speaking and talking

Are connected to proposing marriage, seeking hand in marriage, betrothal and engagement

اَكْنَنْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to concealing, hiding and keeping a secret

اَنْفُسِكُمْ

Root letters are connected to soul, person, mind, human being and an individual

عَلِمَ , اعْلَمُوْٓا and يَعْلَمُ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

اَنَّكُمْ سَتَذْكُرُوْنَهُنَّ

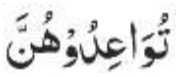
Noun sentence indicating an established state

سَتَذْكُرُوْنَهُنَّ

Future tense

Root letters are connected to speaking, talking, recalling, recollecting, mentioning and remembering

Are connected to taking counsel and advice

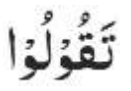


Root letters are connected to making a promise, arranging a meeting or an appointment



Root letters are connected to being happy, delighted, gladdened, satisfied

Are connected to secret, secret thought and concealment

 and 

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging



Root letters are connected to being well known, universally accepted, generally recognised by reason and easily recognised

Are connected to which is good, fitting, suitable, courteous, fair, kind, sincere advice and honest advice

Fair - just and impartial

Kind - gentle and compassionate

Sincere - genuine and honest in intention

Common sense - practical sound judgement

Reason - thoughtful understanding and rational reflection

تَعْزِمُوْا

Root letters are connected to decide, resolve, be determined and firm in decision

عُقْدَةَا

Root letters are connected to a firm knot or tie

Are connected to agreement, responsibility, accountability, contract and commitment

النِّكَاح

Root letters are connected to getting married, wedlock and marriage contract

يَبْلُغَ

Root letters are connected to reaching, getting, arriving and coming

الْكِتٰبُ

Root letters are connected to divine judgement, prescribe, recorded, decreed and ordained

اَجَلَهٗ

Root letters are connected to appointed time and date, term, period and specified time

فَاحْذَرُوْهُ

Root letters are connected to being cautious, on guard, and fearing

اَنَّ اللّٰهَ غَفُوْرٌ حَلِيْمٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

غَفُوْرٌ

Root letters are connected to covering, concealing, veiling and hiding

Are connected to forgiving and pardoning

Are connected to correcting and rectifying affairs

حَلِيْمٌ

Root letters are connected to gentleness, clemency, forbearance and patience

Lenient - gentle in dealing with people

Forbearing - patient despite wrongdoing

لَا جُنَاحَ عَلَيْكُمْ إِنْ طَلَّقْتُمُ النِّسَآءَ مَا لَمْ تَمَسُّوهُنَّ أَوْ تَفْرِضُوا
لَهُنَّ فَرِيضَةً ۖ وَمَتِّعُوهُنَّ ۚ عَلَى الْمُوسِعِ قَدَرُهُ وَعَلَى الْمُقْتِرِ قَدَرُهُ ۚ
مَتَاعًا بِالْمَعْرُوفِ ۚ حَقًّا عَلَى الْمُحْسِنِينَ ﴿٢٣٦﴾

2:236

And there is absolutely no blame upon you all if you have divorced women when you have neither been physically intimate with them nor fixed in advance for them the dower—a religious duty. In that case, supply them with some compensatory provision as a means of living—upon the one who has abundant resources established [as an obligation] according to his means and capability, and upon the one who has restricted resources established [as an obligation] according to his means and capability—a provision according to fair, kind, and sincere conduct which is widely recognised by common sense and reason. A correct, appropriate, and purposeful obligation upon those who are firmly established in, and persist in, showing excellent conduct [towards Allah and people]—leading to a good state.

Notes:

لَا جُنَاحَ

Structure indicates absolute negation

جُنَاحَ

Root letters are connected to misdemeanor, a minor wrongdoing, a crime, sin, blame and disobedience

طَلَّقْتُمُ

Root letters are connected to divorce, set free, released and unrestricted

اِنْ طَلَّقْتُمُ النِّسَآءَ مَالَمْ تَمَسُّوْهُنَّ

مَا acts as temporal restriction i.e. as long as, up until a specific point

تَمَسُّوْهُنَّ

Root letters are connected to touch, touch each other and cohabit

تَفْرِضُوْا and فَرِيْضَةً

Root letters are connected to determining, fixing, fixing in advance, apportioning, enjoining and assigning

فَرِيْضَةً

Root letters are connected to obligatory statute, ordinance of Allah, an obligatory portion or share, a religious duty and divine precept

مَتِّعُوهُنَّ and مَّتَاعًا

Root letters are connected to things of use e.g. commodities, utensils, goods, property, etc.

Are connected to enjoying, equipping and supplying

Are connected to give a compensation and a gift

عَلَى الْمُوسِعِ قَدَرُهٗ and عَلَى الْمُقْتِرِ قَدَرُهٗ

Noun sentence indicating an established and timeless obligation

الْمُوْسِعِ

Root letters are connected to being rich, wealthy, having vast means, plenty and abundance

قَدَرُهٗ

Root letters are connected to extent, scope, means, capability, standing and ability

الْمُقْتِرِ

Root letters are connected to living in straitened circumstances, become poor and restricted means

الْمَعْرُوْفِ

Root letters are connected to being well known, universally accepted, generally recognised by reason and easily recognised

Are connected to which is good, fitting, suitable, courteous, fair, kind, sincere advice and honest advice

Fair - just and impartial

Kind - gentle and compassionate

Sincere - genuine and honest in intention

Common sense - practical sound judgement

Reason - thoughtful understanding and rational reflection

حَقًّا

Root letters are connected to what is right, correct, true, proper, suitable, fitting and purposeful

Are connected to necessary, obligatory and incumbent

Correct - accurate and right

Appropriate - properly fitting

Purposeful - meaningful and intentional

الْمُحْسِنِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being excellent, good, nice and lovely

Are connected to suitable, be in a proper state and in a desirable condition

وَاِنۡ طَلَّقۡتُمُوۡهُنَّ مِنۡ قَبۡلِ اَنۡ تَمَسُّوۡهُنَّ وَقَدۡ فَرَضۡتُمۡ لَهُنَّ فَرِيۡضَةً
فَنِصۡفُ مَا فَرَضۡتُمۡ اِلَّاۤ اَنۡ يَّعۡفُوۡنَ اَوۡ يَعۡفُوَا الَّذِىۡ بِيَدِهٖ عُقۡدَةُ
النِّكَاحِ ؕ وَاَنۡ تَعۡفُوۡۤا اَقۡرَبُ لِلتَّقۡوٰى ؕ وَلَا تَنۡسَوُا الۡفَضۡلَ بَيۡنَكُمۡ ؕ اِنَّ
اللّٰهَ بِمَا تَعۡمَلُوۡنَ بَصِيۡرٌ ﴿۲۳۷﴾

2:237

And if you all have divorced them before ever having been physically intimate with them, while you have already fixed in advance for them the dower—a religious duty—then, in that case, [giving of] half of whatever you have fixed in advance—in justice and fairness—unless they [the former wives] waive it, or the one who has control of the binding agreement and responsibility of marriage [the former husband] waives it [thereby giving the entire sum]. And that you waive [your right], and excuse, overlook, and forgive [each other], is closer to the devout fulfilment of duties—which protects from harm and arranges all matters correctly. And do not neglect or ignore favour and kindness amongst yourselves. Certainly, Allah is innately and eternally the One who sees whatever you do, whether apparent or hidden, the One who is perfectly perceptive and discerning.

Notes:

طَلَّقۡتُمُوۡهُنَّ

Root letters are connected to divorce, set free, released and unrestricted

تَمَسُّوْهُنَّ

Root letters are connected to touch, touch each other and cohabit

فَرَضْتُمْ and فَرِيْضَةً،

Root letters are connected to determining, fixing, fixing in advance, apportioning, enjoining and assigning

فَرِيْضَةً،

Root letters are connected to obligatory statute, ordinance of Allah, an obligatory portion or share, a religious duty and divine precept

نِصْفُ

Root letters are connected to half, midpoint and share equally

Are connected to being just, treating with justice, being fair, establishing a right and equity

يَّعْفُوْنَ، يَعْفُوَا and تَعْفُوْٓا

Root letters are connected excusing, exempting, forgiving and effacing and remitting

Are connected to wiping out, obliterating, pardoning and overlooking

Excuse - suspend blame (refrain from blaming or holding accountable)

Overlook - avoid dwelling on the offence (ignore or pass over something intentionally)

Forgive - internally release it (release resentment or punishment)

بِيَدِهِۦٓ

Root letters are connected to hand, power, control, influence and authority

عُقْدَةُ ا

Root letters are connected to a firm knot or tie

Are connected to agreement, responsibility, accountability, contract and commitment

النِّكَاح

Root letters are connected to getting married, wedlock and marriage contract

اَقْرَبُ

A comparative

Root letters are connected to coming near, close and approaching in respect time and place

لِلتَّقْوٰى

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious

تَنْسَوُا

Root letters are connected to forgetting, neglecting, omitting, being oblivious and ignoring

Neglect - fail to care for or give proper attention to

Ignore - deliberately pay no attention to or disregard

الْفَضْلَ

Root letters are connected to grace, favour, kindness, graciousness, grace and bounty

Kindness - the manner of Allah's dealing (gentle, merciful approach)

Favour - the substance of what is given (blessings, help, protection)

إِنَّ اللَّهَ بِمَا تَعْمَلُونَ بَصِيرٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



Root letters are connected to working, doing and acting



Root letters are connected to seeing, witnessing and perception

Are connected to discerning, understanding, intelligent and mental perception

Perceptive – detecting/noticing

Discerning – judging/evaluating

حٰفِظُوْا عَلَى الصَّلَوٰتِ وَالصَّلٰوةِ الْوُسْطٰى ۗ وَقُوْمُوْا لِلّٰهِ قٰنِتِيْنَ ﴿٢٣٨﴾

2:238

Be mindful of, attend to, and maintain the prayers—which discipline conduct [through the remembrance of the Hereafter]—the most balanced form of worship. And rise, exist, and manage affairs for Allah in a firmly established and persistent state of humble obedience—pure in heart.

Notes:

حٰفِظُوْا

Root letters are connected to preserving, maintaining, upholding, sustaining, being heedful, being mindful, attend to and observe

Be mindful – internal awareness

Attend to – active engagement

Maintain – preservation and consistency

الصَّلَوٰتِ and الصَّلٰوةِ

Root letters are connected to praying and worshipping

Are connected to straightening something or making it soft by fire

Are connected to mode of worship and mode of prayer

The stages of the prayer mirror the stages of the Hereafter, serving as a continual reminder of it e.g. Quran 83:4-6, 77:48, 68:42-43 and 45:28

وَالصَّلٰوةِ الْوُسْطٰى

وَا highlights the quality of the prayers, not a separate entity

الْوُسْطٰى

A superlative

Root letters are connected to being in the middle, moderate and balanced

قُوْمُوْا

Root letters are connected to being situated, existing, standing up, managing affairs, rising and supporting

قٰنِتِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected obedience, humility and submission

فَاِنْ خِفْتُمْ فَرِجَالًا اَوْ رُكْبَانًا ۚ فَاِذَآ اَمِنْتُمْ فَاذْكُرُوا اللّٰهَ كَمَا عَلَّمَكُمْ
مَّا لَمْ تَكُوْنُوْا تَعْلَمُوْنَ ﴿٢٣٩﴾

2:239

But if you all have suspected and feared a future danger, then, in that case, [offer the prayers] in a state of walking or riding. Then whenever you become safe and free from fear, remember and be mindful of Allah according to the manner He has taught and clarified to you—what you were not firmly established in recognising, knowing, or understanding.

Notes:

خِفْتُمْ

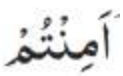
Root letters are connected to being frightened, suspicious and scared of a future event

رِجَالًا

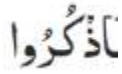
Root letters are connected to going on foot, walking and marching

رُكْبَانًا

Root letters are connected to riding, mounting and boarding



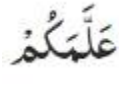
Root letters are connected to being safe, feeing safe, peace, security and protection



Root letters are connected to remember, bear in mind, think, keep in mind and be mindful of

Remember - conscious recollection and mention

Be mindful - continual awareness influencing conduct

 and

Root letters are connected to teaching, instructing and educating

Are connected to distinguishing, differentiating and making apparent

Are connected to connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

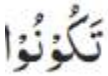
Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

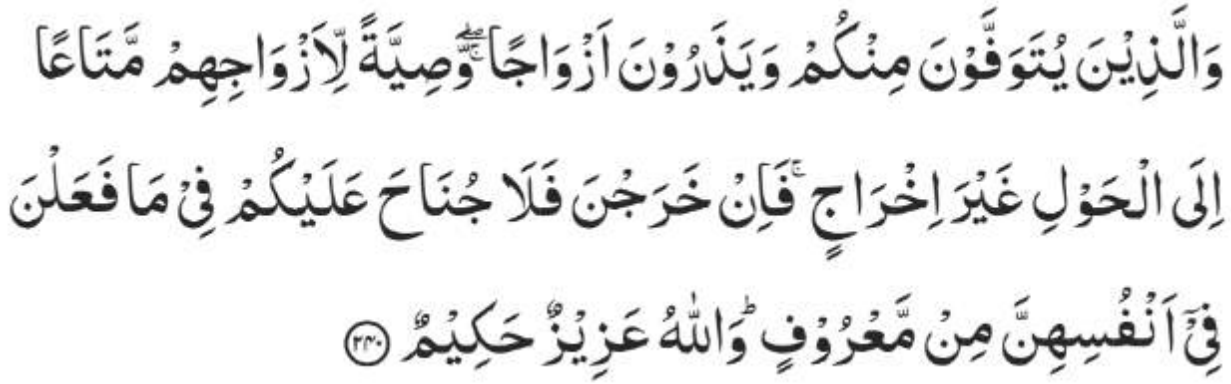
Understand - grasping meaning and implications



Structure indicates an established state



Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place


وَالَّذِيْنَ يُتَوَفَّوْنَ مِنْكُمْ وَيَذَرُوْنَ اَزْوَاجًا ۖ وَّصِيَّةً لِّاَزْوَاجِهِمْ مَّتَاعًا
اِلَى الْحَوْلِ غَيْرَ اِخْرَاجٍ ۚ فَاِنْ خَرَجْنَ فَلَا جُنَاحَ عَلَيْكُمْ فِيْ مَا فَعَلْنَ
فِيْٓ اَنْفُسِهِنَّ مِنْ مَّعْرُوْفٍ ۗ وَاللّٰهُ عَزِيْزٌ حَكِيْمٌ ﴿٢٤٠﴾

2:240

And those who are taken by death from amongst you all and leave behind wives—a last will and testament for the benefit of their wives: a provision as a means of living, extending to a year without expulsion [from their deceased husband's home]. Then if they have [willingly] departed[1]—in that case, there is absolutely no blame upon you all [the Muslim community[2]] in whatever they have [willingly] done concerning themselves originating from fair, kind, and sincere conduct which is widely recognised by common sense and reason. And Allah is innately and eternally the One who overcomes all things, the Owner of respect and nobility, raising in honour and lowering whoever He wills, the One who rules over and controls everything, determining every affair with perfect wisdom.

Notes:

1 - To reconcile different verses regarding a widow's stay in her deceased husband's home, she must remain there during her four-month and ten-day waiting period, after which she can either stay for the remainder of the year of leave

2 - The use of the plural indicates the entire Muslim community is responsible to ensure the rights of the widows are fulfilled

يُتَوَفَّوْنَ

Root letters are connected to be taken by death and dying

يَذَرُوْنَ

Root letters are connected leave behind, leave alone, forsake and abandon

اَزْوَاجًا

Root letters are connected to a pair, spouse and companion

وَّصِيَّةً

Root letters are connected to a testament, bequest, last will and a legacy

مَّتَاعًا

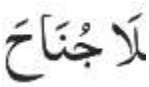
Root letters are connected to things of use e.g. commodities, utensils, goods and property

Are connected to enjoying, savoring, relishing, equipping and supplying

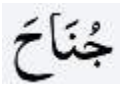
اِخْرَاجٍ and خَرَجْنَ

Root letters are connected to bringing out, pulling out, dislodging and expelling

Are connected to going out, walking out, emerging and departing



Structure indicates absolute negation



Root letters are connected to misdemeanor, a minor wrongdoing, a crime, sin, blame and disobedience



Root letters are connected to doing an action, activity and accomplishing a task



Root letters are connected to being well known, universally accepted, generally recognised by reason and easily recognised

Are connected to which is good, fitting, suitable, courteous, fair, kind, sincere advice and honest advice

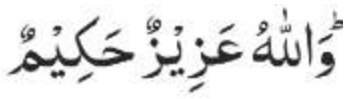
Fair - just and impartial

Kind - gentle and compassionate

Sincere - genuine and honest in intention

Common sense - practical sound judgement

Reason - thoughtful understanding and rational reflection



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



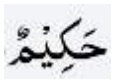
Root letters are connected to power, respect, honour and nobility,

Are connected to overwhelming, overcoming and dominating

Are connected to raising in esteem, elevating and exalting

Respect - honour, esteem, and recognised worth

Nobility - elevated rank, dignity, and excellence



Root letters are connected to judging, deciding and decreeing

Are connected to wisdom

Are connected to accuracy, perfection and precision

Are connected to governing, ruling, dominating and controlling

Rule - authority and command (who has the right to decide)

Control - execution and outcome (ensuring decisions take effect)

وَلِلْمُطَلَّقٰتِ مَتَاعٌۢ بِالْمَعْرُوْفِ ۗ حَقًّا عَلَى الْمُتَّقِيْنَ ﴿٢٤١﴾

2:241

And for the benefit of divorced women is established a provision as a means of living according to fair, kind, and sincere conduct which is widely recognised by common sense and reason. A correct, appropriate, and purposeful obligation upon those who are firmly established in, and persist in, devoutly fulfilling their duties—thereby protecting themselves from harm and arranging all their matters correctly.

Notes:

وَلِلْمُطَلَّقٰتِ مَتَاعٌۢ بِالْمَعْرُوْفِ

Noun sentence indicating an established and timeless principle

لِلْمُطَلَّقٰتِ

Root letters are connected to divorce, set free, released and unrestricted

مَتَاعٌۢ

Root letters are connected to things of use e.g. commodities, utensils, goods and property

Are connected to enjoying, savoring, relishing, equipping and supplying

ٱلْمَعْرُوفِ

Root letters are connected to being well known, universally accepted, generally recognised by reason and easily recognised

Are connected to which is good, fitting, suitable, courteous, fair, kind, sincere advice and honest advice

Fair - just and impartial

Kind - gentle and compassionate

Sincere - genuine and honest in intention

Common sense - practical sound judgement

Reason - thoughtful understanding and rational reflection

حَقًّا

Root letters are connected to what is right, correct, true, proper, suitable, fitting and purposeful

Are connected to necessary, obligatory and incumbent

Correct - accurate and right

Appropriate - properly fitting

Purposeful - meaningful and intentional

ٱلْمُتَّقِينَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious

كَذٰلِكَ يُبَيِّنُ اللّٰهُ لَكُمْ اٰيٰتِهٖ لَعَلَّكُمْ تَعْقِلُوْنَ ۝٢٤٢

2:242

In that way, Allah clearly explains, for the benefit of you all, His miraculous and evident signs [verses of the Quran], so that you may use your faculties correctly—applying reason and common sense—in order to understand.

Notes:

يُبَيِّنُ

Root letters are connected to making clear, showing, explaining, differentiating and distinguishing

اٰيٰتِهٖ

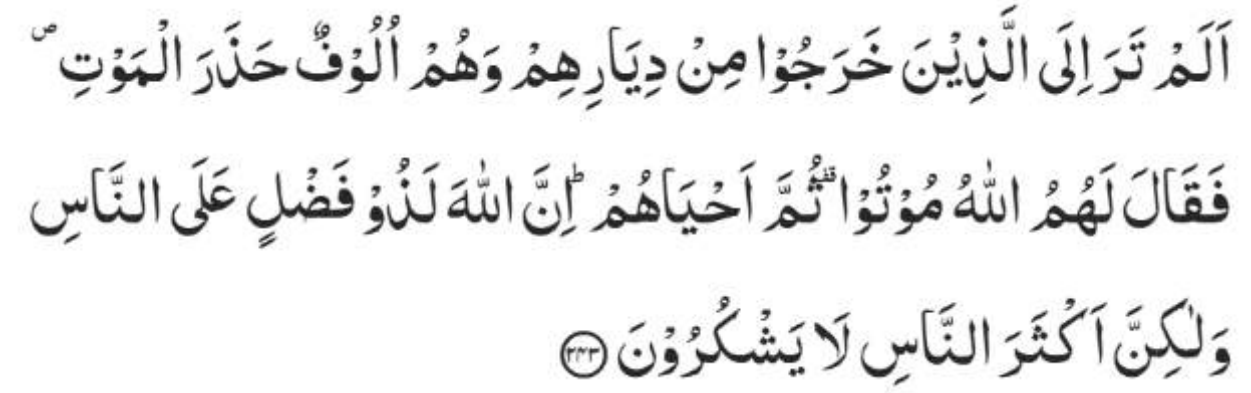
Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof

تَعْقِلُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to being reasonable, using intelligence, using common sense, using one's senses and understanding

Reason - structured, analytical thinking

Common sense - intuitive, practical application


اَلَمْ تَرَ اِلَى الَّذِيْنَ خَرَجُوْا مِنْ دِيَارِهِمْ وَهُمْ اُلُوْفٌ حَذَرَ الْمَوْتِ
فَقَالَ لَهُمُ اللّٰهُ مُوْتُوْا ثُمَّ اَحْيَاهُمْ ۭ اِنَّ اللّٰهَ لَذُوْ فَضْلٍ عَلَى النَّاسِ
وَلٰكِنَّ اَكْثَرَ النَّاسِ لَا يَشْكُرُوْنَ ۝٢٤٣

2:243

Have you not reflected and considered those who had departed from their homes and land while they numbered in the thousands, in a state of caution—fearing death? Then Allah said to them, "Die!" Thereafter, He granted them new life. No doubt, Allah is certainly, innately and eternally, the Possessor and Owner of favour and kindness directed upon all people. However, most people do not show gratitude [by using their blessings in His obedience].

Notes:

تَرَ

Root letters are connected to seeing, perceiving, discerning and considering

Reflect - to think deeply and thoughtfully, pondering the significance or lessons of something

Consider - to examine, evaluate, or take something into careful account before reaching an understanding

خَرَجُوْا

Root letters are connected to going out, walking out, emerging and departing

دِيَارِهِمْ

Root letters are connected to an abode, home, habitation, area, region, land, city, country and town

حَذَرَ

Root letters are connected to being cautious, on guard, fearing and precaution

الْمَوْتِ and مُوْتُوْا

Root letters are connected to dying, perishing, losing life and subsiding

قَالَ

Root letters are connected to saying, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

اَحْيَاهُمْ

Root letters are connected to giving life, call into existence, reviving, reanimating and giving new life

Are connected to experiencing and witnessing

إِنَّ اللَّهَ لَذُو فَضْلٍ عَلَى النَّاسِ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

لَذُو

لَ is used for added emphasis

Root letters are connected to possessing, owning and being endowed with

فَضْلٍ

Root letters are connected to grace, favour, kindness, graciousness, grace and bounty

Kindness - the manner of Allah's dealing (gentle, merciful approach)

Favour - the substance of what is given (blessings, help, protection)

أَكْثَرَ

A superlative in this structure

Root letters are connected to numerous, to be more and to increase

يَشْكُرُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to being thankful, grateful, and praising

Are connected to showing gratitude with the heart, tongue and limbs

وَقَاتِلُوا فِي سَبِيلِ اللَّهِ وَاعْلَمُوا أَنَّ اللَّهَ سَمِيعٌ عَلِيمٌ ﴿٢٤٤﴾

2:244

And fight—all of you—in the path of [obeying] Allah—weakening the strength [of the enemy]. And recognise, know, and understand that Allah is innately and eternally the One whose hearing encompasses all things, the One who completely knows and fully understands everything.

Notes:

Fighting is allowed only under strict conditions, as established through many Islamic teachings

قَاتِلُوا

Root letters are connected to combat, fighting, battle and opposing

Are connected to weakening the strength or intensity of something

السَّبِيلِ

Root letters are connected to a way, path and road

اعْلَمُوا and عَلِيمٌ

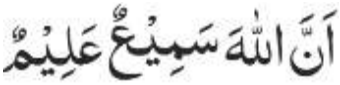
Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

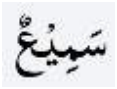
Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



Root letters are connected to hearing, listening and paying attention

مَنْ ذَا الَّذِیْ یُقْرِضُ اللّٰهَ قَرْضًا حَسَنًا فَیُضٰعِفَهٗ لَهٗۤ اَضْعَافًا كَثِیْرَةً ؕ
وَاللّٰهُ یَقْبِضُ وَیَبْصُۜطُ ۪ وَاِلَیْهِ تُرْجَعُوْنَ ﴿۲۴۵﴾

2:245

Who will be this one—the one who lends to Allah a suitable and excellent loan so that He will multiply it for his benefit many times over? And Allah—He withholds and expands. And to Him [alone] you all will be returned and presented for critical examination.

Notes:

ذَا

This is derived from a pointer meaning “this”

يُقْرِضُ and قَرْضًا

Root letters are connected to loaning and lending

حَسَنًا

Root letters are connected to being excellent, good, nice, lovely and beautiful

Are connected to advisable, suitable, be fitting and proper

يُضٰعِفَهٗ and اَضْعَافًا

Root letters are connected to doubling, multiplying and compounding

كَثِيْرَةً

Root letters are connected to numerous, to be more and to increase

وَاللّٰهُ يَقْبِضُ

Pronoun “He” is used twice for added emphasis

يَقْبِضُ

Root letters are connected to seizing, grasping, withholding, contracts and making straitened

يَبْصُّطُ

Root letters are connected to spreading, enlarging, expanding and extending

Are connected to an ample and plentiful state

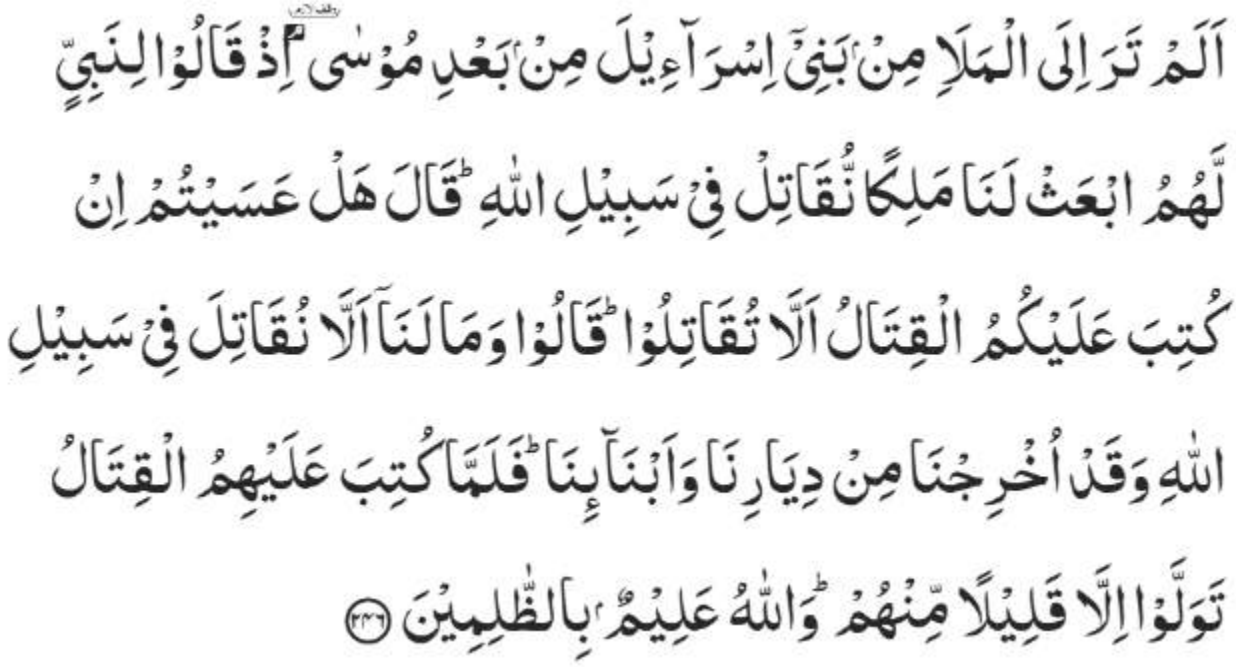
وَإِلَيْهِ تُرْجَعُونَ

Structure shows exclusivity

تُرْجَعُونَ

Root letters are connected to coming back, returning, resorting or reverting to a former place/state/quality

Are connected to present oneself and examine critically


اَلَمْ تَرَ اِلَى الْمَلَاِ مِنْۢ بَنِيْٓ اِسْرَآءِيْلَ مِنْۢ بَعْدِ مُوْسٰى ۘ اِذْ قَالُوْا لِنَبِيٍّ
لَّهُمُ ابْعَثْ لَنَا مَلِكًا نُّقَاتِلْ فِيْ سَبِيْلِ اللّٰهِ ۭ قَالَ هَلْ عَسَيْتُمْ اِنْ
كُتِبَ عَلَيْكُمُ الْقِتَالُ اَلَّا تُقَاتِلُوْا ۭ قَالُوْا وَمَا لَنَآ اَلَّا نُقَاتِلَ فِيْ سَبِيْلِ
اللّٰهِ وَقَدْ اُخْرِجْنَا مِنْ دِيَارِنَا وَاَبْنَاۗىِٕنَا ۭ فَلَمَّا كُتِبَ عَلَيْهِمُ الْقِتَالُ
تَوَلَّوْا اِلَّا قَلِيْلًا مِّنْهُمْ ۭ وَاللّٰهُ عَلِيْمٌۢ بِالظّٰلِمِيْنَ ۝٢٤٦

2:246

Have you not reflected and considered the wealthy leaders from amongst the descendants of Israel from after Musa? When they [boldly] declared to an honoured Prophet, appointed for their benefit, who conveyed divine knowledge from Allah, "Appoint and dispatch for our benefit a king [possessor of authority and control]—we will then fight in the path of [obeying] Allah [weakening the strength of the enemy]." He questioned, "Perhaps, if fighting had been prescribed upon you [as a legal obligation], you would still not fight?" They replied, "And what is wrong with us that we will not fight in the path of [obeying] Allah, while we have certainly been expelled from our homes and land and separated from our children." Yet at the very moment fighting had been prescribed upon them as a legal obligation, they refrained and turned away, except a few from amongst them. And Allah is innately and eternally the One who completely knows and fully understands those who are firmly established in, and persist in, being unjust—transgressing proper limits.

Notes:

تَرَ

Root letters are connected to seeing, perceiving, discerning and considering

Reflect - to think deeply and thoughtfully, pondering the significance or lessons of something

Consider - to examine, evaluate, or take something into careful account before reaching an understanding

الْمَلَإِ

Root letters are connected to notables, nobles, chiefs, council of elders and noblemen

Are connected to the rich and wealthy

بَنِيٓ

Root letters are connected to son, daughter and descendant

قَالُوا and قَالَ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

بِنَبِيٍّ

Root letters are connected to informing, notifying, advising telling and announcing

Are connected to being high in rank, raised, elevated and prominent

Are connected to someone who receives unseen knowledge from Allah and conveys them to people

ابْعَثْ

Root letters are connected to raising, sending out, dispatching, delegating and appointing

مَلِكًا

Root letters are connected to rule, reign, authority, domination and ownership

Are connected to king, sovereign and monarch

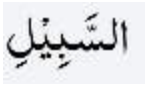
Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

نُقَاتِلَ and تُقَاتِلُوا , الْقِتَالُ , نُّقَاتِلْ

Root letters are connected to combat, fighting, battle and opposing

Are connected to weakening the strength or intensity of something



Root letters are connected to a way, path and road

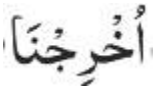


Root letters are connected to writing and prescribing

Are connected to appointing and making obligatory

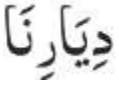


Used for emphasis with past tense action i.e. certainly

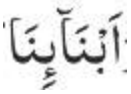


Root letters are connected to bringing out, pulling out, dislodging and expelling

Are connected to segregating and separating



Root letters are connected to an abode, home, habitation, area, region, land, city, country and town

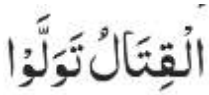


Root letters are connected to son, daughter and descendant



Root letters are connected to when, since and after

Emphasizes moment of occurrence



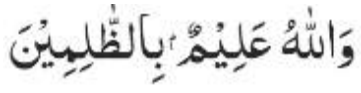
No conjunction indicating immediate and complete response



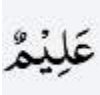
Root letters are connected to turning, turning away, turning back, fleeing, desisting, refraining and forgoing



Root letters are connected to few, small, little and inferior



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to be unjust, act tyrannically, do wrong, do evil, harm, oppress and transgress proper limits

وَقَالَ لَهُمْ نَبِيُّهُمْ اِنَّ اللّٰهَ قَدْ بَعَثَ لَكُمْ طَالُوْتَ مَلِكًا ؕ قَالُوْٓا اَنّٰى يَكُوْنُ
لَهُ الْمُلْكُ عَلَيْنَا وَنَحْنُ اَحَقُّ بِالْمُلْكِ مِنْهُ وَلَمْ يُؤْتَ سَعَةً مِّنَ الْمَالِ ؕ
قَالَ اِنَّ اللّٰهَ اصْطَفٰىهُ عَلَيْكُمْ وَزَادَهٗ بَسْطَةً فِي الْعِلْمِ وَالْجِسْمِ ؕ وَاللّٰهُ
يُؤْتِيْ مُلْكَهٗ مَنْ يَّشَآءُ ؕ وَاللّٰهُ وَاسِعٌ عَلِيْمٌ ﴿۲۴۷﴾

2:247

And their honoured Prophet, who conveyed divine knowledge from Allah, declared to them, "No doubt, Allah has certainly appointed and dispatched, for the benefit of you all, Talut as a king [possessor of authority and control]." They [arrogantly] replied, "How can authority and control be established for him over us, while we are more entitled and suitable for authority and control than him, and he has not been granted abundant means through worldly possessions?" He replied, "Certainly, Allah has judged him sincere and pure—choosing him in preference to you—and has increased him in capability, completeness, and excellence both in knowledge, intelligence, and certainty, and in physique—an imposing figure. And Allah—He grants authority and control from His dominion to whoever He wills." And Allah is innately and eternally the One who is infinitely vast in resources, capabilities, and generosity, whose power, authority, and knowledge encompass all things, the One who completely knows and fully understands everything.

Notes:

قَالَ and قَالُوٓا

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

نَبِيُّهُمْ

Root letters are connected to informing, notifying, advising telling and announcing

Are connected to being high in rank, raised, elevated and prominent

Are connected to someone who receives unseen knowledge from Allah and conveys them to people

قَدْ

Used for emphasis with past tense action i.e. certainly

بَعَثَ

Root letters are connected to raising, sending out, dispatching, delegating and appointing

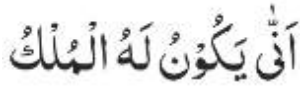
مَلِكًا , ٱلْمُلْكُ , بِٱلْمُلْكِ and مُلْكَهُۥ

Root letters are connected to rule, reign, authority, domination and ownership

Are connected to king, sovereign and monarch

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

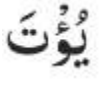
Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended



Structure indicates an established state



Root letters are connected to suitable, fitting, deserving and due

 and 

Root letters are connected to bring, give, grant and bestow



Root letters are connected to ample means, plentifulness, wideness, extent and affluence



Root letters are connected to property, assets, goods, wealth, and possessions

اصْطَفٰىهُ

Root letters are connected to deeming clear or pure

Are connected to being sincere and honest

Are connected to choosing, selecting, singling out and granting preference over others

زَادَ

Root letters are connected to growing, increasing, multiplying, expanding and intensifying

بَسْطَةً

Root letters are connected to skill, capability, ability, perfection, extent, completeness and excellence

Capability - possessing the capacity, ability, and competence to fulfil a task

Completeness - being fully developed, ample, and lacking deficiency

Excellence - possessing superiority, distinction, and outstanding quality

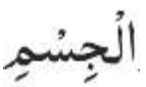
الْعِلْمِ

Root letters are connected to knowledge, learning, information, intellect, perception and certainty

Knowledge - possession of true information and understanding

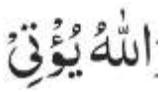
Intelligence - the ability to think, reason, and apply knowledge correctly

Certainty - firm, assured knowledge free from doubt or hesitation

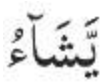


Root letters are connected to being great, large, bulky and immense

Are connected to large presence, great affairs and intelligent people



Pronoun “He” is used twice for added emphasis



Root letters are connected to wanting, willing and wishing



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



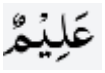
Root letters are connected to vast, wide, extensive, encompass, be able

Are connected to power, strength, capability, authority and ability

Are connected to being rich, wealthy, having vast means, plenty, abundance and generous

Power - ability or capacity to act or carry out something

Authority - recognised right or legitimacy to act or decide



Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

وَقَالَ لَهُمْ نَبِيُّهُمْ اِنَّ اٰيَةَ مُلْكِهٖٓ اَنْ يَّاْتِيَكُمُ التَّابُوْتُ فِيْهِ سَكِيْنَةٌ
مِّنْ رَّبِّكُمْ وَبَقِيَّةٌ مِّمَّا تَرَكَ اٰلُ مُوْسٰى وَاٰلُ هٰرُوْنَ تَحْمِلُهُ الْمَلٰٓئِكَةُ ۭ اِنَّ
فِيْ ذٰلِكَ لَاٰيَةً لَّكُمْ اِنْ كُنْتُمْ مُّؤْمِنِيْنَ ۝٢٤٨

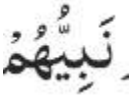
2:248

And their honoured Prophet, who conveyed divine knowledge from Allah, declared to them, "Certainly, the miraculous and evident sign of his authority and control is that the Chest will come to you, containing mercy, tranquillity, and inspiration of reverence, from your nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority], and a remnant from what the relatives and companions of Musa, and the relatives and companions of Harun had left behind—the Angels transporting it. No doubt, in that is certainly a miraculous and evident sign for you, if you are, in fact, [firmly established as] those who sincerely fulfil the duties of faith [thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind]."

Notes:

قَالَ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging



Root letters are connected to informing, notifying, advising telling and announcing

Are connected to being high in rank, raised, elevated and prominent

Are connected to someone who receives unseen knowledge from Allah and conveys them to people

 and

 used for emphasis

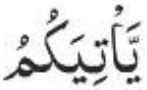
Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof



Root letters are connected to rule, reign, authority, domination and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended



Root letters are connected to coming, arriving, bringing, advancing and accomplishing

التَّابُوْتُ

Root letters are connected to box, case, chest and casket

سَكِيْنَةٌ

Root letters are connected to calm, tranquil, peace and a quality which inspires reverence

رَبِّكُمْ

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

بَقِيَّةٌ

Root letters are connected to remaining, remainder, rest, remnant, residue and relic

تَرَكَ

Root letters are connected to leave, leave behind, leave alone, and bequeath

اٰلُ.

Root letters are connected to family, relatives, kinsfolk, companions and people

تَحۡمِلُهُ

Root letters are connected to carrying, bearing, lifting, bringing along and transporting

اِنۡ كُنۡتُمۡ مُّؤۡمِنِيۡنَ

Structure indicates an established state

كُنۡتُمۡ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

مُّؤۡمِنِيۡنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

فَلَمَّا فَصَلَ طَالُوْتُ بِالْجُنُوْدِ ۙ قَالَ اِنَّ اللّٰهَ مُبْتَلِيْكُمْ بِنَهَرٍ ۚ فَمَنْ
شَرِبَ مِنْهُ فَلَيْسَ مِنِّيْ ۚ وَمَنْ لَّمْ يَطْعَمْهُ فَاِنَّهٗ مِنِّيْٓ اِلَّا مَنِ اغْتَرَفَ
غُرْفَةًۢ بِيَدِهٖ ۚ فَشَرِبُوْا مِنْهُ اِلَّا قَلِيْلًا مِّنْهُمْ ۭ فَلَمَّا جَاوَزَهٗ هُوَ وَالَّذِيْنَ
اٰمَنُوْا مَعَهٗ ۙ قَالُوْا لَا طَاقَةَ لَنَا الْيَوْمَ بِجَالُوْتَ وَجُنُوْدِهٖ ۭ قَالَ الَّذِيْنَ
يَظُنُّوْنَ اَنَّهُمْ مُّلٰقُوا اللّٰهِ ۙ كَمْ مِّنْ فِئَةٍ قَلِيْلَةٍ غَلَبَتْ فِئَةً كَثِيْرَةًۢ
بِاِذْنِ اللّٰهِ ۭ وَاللّٰهُ مَعَ الصّٰبِرِيْنَ ۝۲۴۹

2:249

Then at the very moment when Talut separated [from those who refused to fight[1]] and departed with his military forces, he declared, “Certainly, Allah is the One [whose enduring practice is firmly established in, and persists in,] purifying, toughening, and proving your worth through difficult tests—[in this instance], by means of an abundantly flowing river. Then whoever has drunk his fill from it—in that case, is not from me [and does not follow my way]. Whereas, whoever has not satiated himself with it, then, in that case, he is certainly from me [and does follow my way]—except the one who has drawn out a little water to drink with his hand.” Yet they drank their fill from it, except a few from amongst them. Then at the very moment when he passed it by—paying little attention to it—he and those who had believed with him, as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, they [the believers] declared, “There is absolutely no ability, power, or endurance for us today to withstand Jalut and his military forces.” [Yet]

those certain[2], through thoughtful reflection [of divine knowledge], that they are firmly established in, and persisting in, meeting Allah declared, "How many a small, inferior, and insufficient group has subdued and defeated a highly numerous group through the permission of Allah. And Allah is with those who are firmly established in, and persist in, patience, perseverance [in obedience], and self-restraint [from complaint].

Notes:

1 - The refusal to fight has been discussed in an earlier verse Quran 2:246

2 - The Arabic employs the present tense rhetorically to bring the scene into immediate view and, where applicable, to convey habitual or repeated action



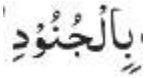
Root letters are connected to when, since and after

Emphasizes moment of occurrence



Root letters are connected to separating, parting, detaching, setting apart, disjoining and severing

Are connected to going away, departing moving away and leaving



Root letters are connected to soldiers, army, military force, troops, legion and host

قَالَ and قَالُوْا

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

مُبْتَلِيْكُمْ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to trying, testing, putting to the test, cleansing and proving the worth of someone through tests and trials

Are connected to inuring, toughening and conditioning

Are connected to affliction, distress, tribal and tribulation

بِنَهَرٍ

Root letters are connected to flowing copiously and gushing forth

Are connected to river and stream

Are connected to abundant, plentiful and much

شَرِبَ and شَرِبُوْا

Root letters are connected to drinking

Are connected to being full, be filled and repleted

Are connected to being saturated, drenched and soaked

يَطْعَمُهُ

Root letters are connected to eat, taste, savour, satiated, and relish

اغْتَرَفَ and غُرْفَةً

Root letters are connected to scoop, ladle, spoon and draw water for drinking

Are connected to a handful and amount of water scooped by one hand

بِيَدِهِ

Root letters are connected to hand, power, control, influence and authority

قَلِيلًا and قَلِيلَةٍ

Root letters are connected to few, inconsiderable, insignificant, insufficient, sparse, small, little and inferior

جَاوَزَ

Root letters are connected to passing, walking pass, crossing, leaving behind, paying no attention, disregarding and forgoing

أَمَنُوا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

لَا طَاقَةَ

Structure indicates absolute negation

طَاقَةَ

Root letters are connected to ability, capability, endurance, aptitude, capacity, power and strength

Are connected to being able to bear or withstand

Ability - the capacity or competence to do something

Power - the strength or force required to accomplish or overcome something

Endurance - the capacity to withstand hardship, pressure, or prolonged difficulty without giving way

يَظُنُّوْنَ

Root letters are connected to believing, being certain and perceiving

Root letters are connected to understanding through careful thought and effort and not through eye witnessing

مُّلٰقُوا

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to meet, come to meet, encounter, experience and achieve

فِئَةٍ and فِئَةً

Root letters are connected to group, portion, part, division, troop, band and platoon

غَلَبَتْ

Root letters are connected to conquer, subdue, defeat, prevail, beat, be victorious and triumph

كَثِيْرَةً

Root letters are connected to numerous, to be more, to increase and abundant

بِإِذْنِ

Root letters are connected to permission

وَاللَّهُ مَعَ الصَّٰبِرِينَ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

مَعَ

Preposition – with, in the company of, in despite of, together and in the estimation

الصَّٰبِرِينَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to binding and shackling

Are connected to being patient, persevering, forbearing, enduring, refraining, abstaining, desisting and self-control

Patience - enduring difficulty without panic or loss of steadiness

Perseverance - continuing steadily in obedience over time without giving up

Self-restraining [from complaint] - controlling oneself from expressing objection or dissatisfaction

وَلَمَّا بَرَزُوْا لِجَالُوْتَ وَجُنُوْدِهٖ قَالُوْا رَبَّنَآ اَفْرِغْ عَلَيْنَا صَبْرًا وَّثَبِّتْ
اَقْدَامَنَا وَانْصُرْنَا عَلَى الْقَوْمِ الْكٰفِرِيْنَ ﴿٢٥٠﴾

2:250

Then at the very moment when they came out into view before Jalut and his military forces for combat, they supplicated, "Our nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority], abundantly pour out upon us patience, perseverance [in obedience], and self-restraint [from complaint]; and stabilise and strengthen our footing—ensuring steadfastness; and grant us protection, support, and success against the people [who are firmly established in, and persist in,] neglecting, dissociating from, and denying their obligations to You, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings You granted them]."

Notes:

لَمَّا

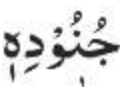
Root letters are connected to when, since and after

Emphasizes moment of occurrence

بَرَزُوْا

Root letters are connected coming out, showing, appearing, coming into view, emerging and stepping out

Are connected to meeting in combat



Root letters are connected to soldiers, army, military force, troops, legion and host



Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging



Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended



Root letters are connected to pouring out and unloading

Are connected to ampleness and abundance

صَبْرًا

Root letters are connected to binding and shackling

Are connected to being patient, persevering, forbearing, enduring, refraining, abstaining, desisting and self-control

Patience - enduring difficulty without panic or loss of steadiness

Perseverance - continuing steadily in obedience over time without giving up

Self-restraining [from complaint] - controlling oneself from expressing objection or dissatisfaction

ثَبِّتْ

Root letters are connected to strengthening, stabilising, establishing and making firm

Are connected to steadfast, certainty, constancy and perseverance

أَقْدَامَنَا

Root letters are connected to foot, step, footing and footsteps

انْصُرْنَا

Root letters are connected to help, assistance, support and victory

Are connected to protecting and defending

الْكٰفِرِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

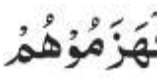
Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

فَهَزَمُوْهُمْ بِاِذْنِ اللّٰهِ ۙ وَقَتَلَ دَاوٗدُ جَالُوْتَ وَاٰتٰىهُ اللّٰهُ الْمُلْكَ وَالْحِكْمَةَ
وَعَلَّمَهٗ مِمَّا يَشَآءُ ۗ وَلَوْلَا دَفْعُ اللّٰهِ النَّاسَ بَعْضَهُمْ بِبَعْضٍ لَّفَسَدَتِ
الْاَرْضُ وَلٰكِنَّ اللّٰهَ ذُوْ فَضْلٍ عَلَى الْعٰلَمِيْنَ ﴿٢٥١﴾

2:251

Then they utterly defeated them through the permission of Allah, while Dawud fought and killed Jalut. And Allah granted him authority and control; wisdom—perfect judgement, self-restraint, and leadership—ensuring knowledge is used correctly; and He taught and clarified to him from whatever He [timelessly] wills. And had it not been for [the firmly established practice of] Allah's defending of the people—repelling the harm of some of them by means of others—the Earth would have certainly become corrupt and disordered—deprived of goodness. However, Allah is innately and eternally the Possessor and Owner of favour and kindness directed upon all generations [of humans and jinn] endowed with higher-level recognition, knowledge, and understanding—[marked for accountability].

Notes:



Root letters are connected to putting to flight, routing, scattering, defeating, beating and vanquishing

بِإِذْنِ

Root letters are connected to permission

قَتَلَ

Root letters are connected to killing

Are connected to fighting, battling and combat

اٰتٰىهُ

Root letters are connected to giving, granting and bestowing

الْمُلْكَ

Root letters are connected to rule, reign, authority, domination and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

Ownership - full possession and belonging

الْحِكْمَةَ

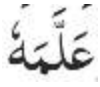
Root letters are connected to judging, deciding and decreeing

Are connected to governing, ruling, dominating and controlling

Are connected to wisdom

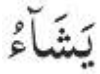
Are connected to accuracy, perfection and precision

Are connected to restraining the intellect from bad things



Root letters are connected to teaching, instructing and educating

Are connected to distinguishing, differentiating and making apparent



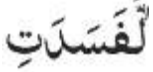
Root letters are connected to wanting, willing and wishing



Noun indicating established and timeless trait

Root letters are connected to defending, driving back, driving away, repelling and averting harm with force

Are connected to resist, oppose and withstand



 adds emphasis

Root letters are connected to corruption, become bad, spoiled, wicked, depraved, devoid of virtue, disorder, ruined and destroyed

Corrupt - moral/ethical degradation

Disordered - structural/functional breakdown

Devoid of good - absence of benefit or blessing

لٰكِنَّ اللّٰهَ ذُوْ فَضْلٍ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

ذُوْ

Root letters are connected to possessing, owning and being endowed with

فَضْلٍ

Root letters are connected to grace, favour, kindness, graciousness, grace and bounty

Kindness - the manner of Allah's dealing (gentle, merciful approach)

Favour - the substance of what is given (blessings, help, protection)

الْعٰلَمِيْنَ

Root letters are connected to generation

Are connected to inquiring, asking and querying

Are connected to something which is marked e.g. landmark – Humans and Jinn are marked for accountability e.g. Quran 55:31

Are connected to knowledge, understanding, recognition, perception, discernment and learning – Humans and Jinn possess higher level of knowledge, intelligence and understanding in respect to divine guidance and accountability and are therefore marked for accountability unlike other creatures

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

Same term used in Quran 25:1 which mentions the Prophet Muhammad, peace and blessings be upon him, being sent as a warner. He was sent only to those marked for accountability as a warner and not the entire creation

تِلْكَ اٰيٰتُ اللّٰهِ نَتْلُوْهَا عَلَيْكَ بِالْحَقِّ ۭ وَاِنَّكَ لَمِنَ الْمُرْسَلِيْنَ ۝٢٥٢

2:252

Those are the miraculous and evident signs [verses of the Quran]—We recite them to you according to the truth—correct, appropriate, and purposeful. And no doubt, you are certainly from those who are firmly established as being dispatched with divine knowledge [the Messengers and Prophets].

Notes:

اٰيٰتُ

Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof

نَتْلُوْهَا

Root letters are connected to following, reading, reciting, relating and rehearsing

بِالْحَقِّ

Root letters are connected to what is right, correct, true, proper, suitable, fitting and purposeful

True - matches reality

Correct - accurate and right

Appropriate - properly fitting

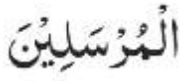
Purposeful - meaningful and intentional



Noun sentence indicating an established state



 used for emphasis



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

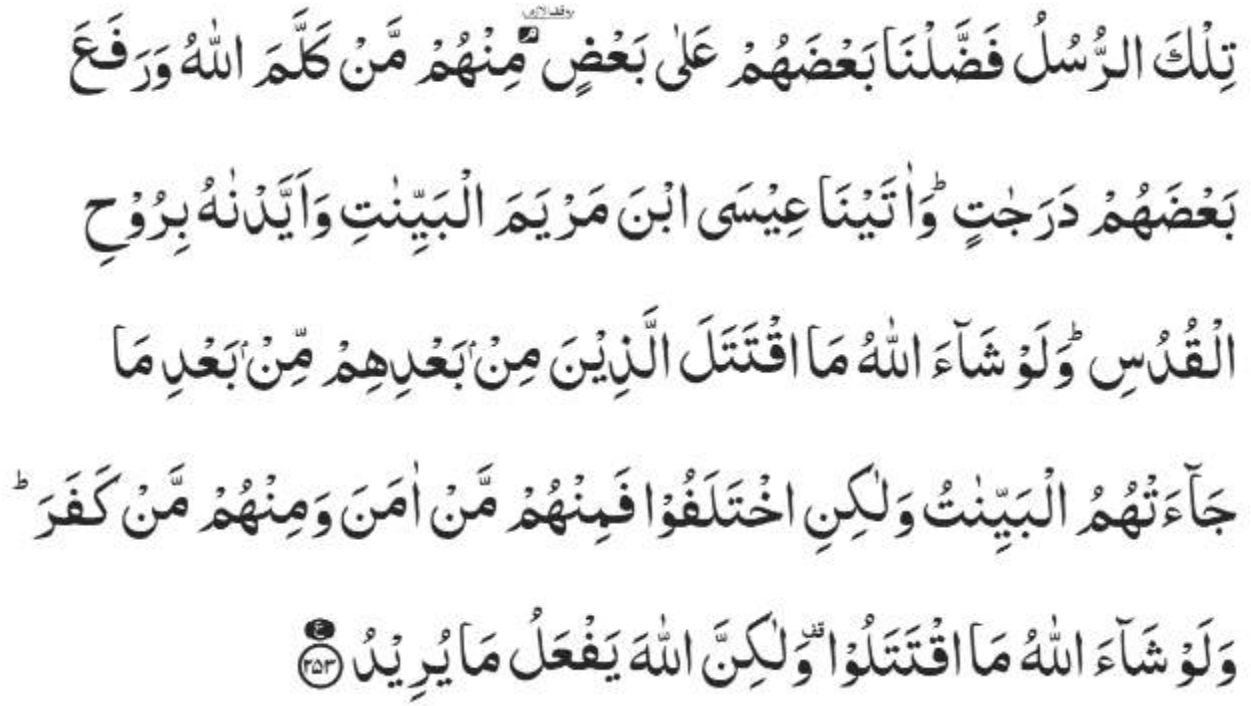
Root letters are connected to dispatching, sending out, releasing and discharging

Are connected to dispatching, a message, corresponding

Are connected to a messenger, delegate, apostle

Are connected to being friendly, intimate and free of affectation

Are connected to the one who carries by consecutive progressions the relation of the tidings of Him who has sent him


تِلْكَ الرُّسُلُ فَضَّلْنَا بَعْضَهُمْ عَلٰى بَعْضٍ ۘ مِنْهُمْ مَّنْ كَلَّمَ اللّٰهُ وَرَفَعَ
بَعْضَهُمْ دَرَجٰتٍ ۭ وَاٰتَيْنَا عِيْسَى ابْنَ مَرْيَمَ الْبَيِّنٰتِ وَاَيَّدْنٰهُ بِرُوْحِ
الْقُدُسِ ۭ وَلَوْ شَاۗءَ اللّٰهُ مَا اقْتَتَلَ الَّذِيْنَ مِنْۢ بَعْدِهِمْ مِّنْۢ بَعْدِ مَا
جَاۗءَتْهُمُ الْبَيِّنٰتُ وَلٰكِنِ اخْتَلَفُوْا فَمِنْهُمْ مَّنْ اٰمَنَ وَمِنْهُمْ مَّنْ كَفَرَ ۭ
وَلَوْ شَاۗءَ اللّٰهُ مَا اقْتَتَلُوْا ۣ وَلٰكِنَّ اللّٰهَ يَفْعَلُ مَا يُرِيْدُ ﴿٢٥٣﴾

2:253

Those Messengers—who sincerely conveyed a divine code of conduct from Allah—We favoured and distinguished some of them over others. From amongst them is the one who Allah spoke [directly] to, and He raised in rank some of them by degrees. And We granted Eesa, the son of Maryam, clear proofs and explanations, and We further supported and made him firm with the Spirit of Purity [the Archangel Jibraeel]. And had Allah willed, those from after [the Messengers] would not have fought one another, even after the clear proofs and explanations had reached them. However, they disagreed, disputed, and opposed each other. Then from amongst them was the one who believed, as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind. And from amongst them was the one who neglected, dissociated from, and denied his obligations to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted him]. And had Allah willed, they would not have fought one another. However, Allah accomplishes whatever He intends.

Notes:

الرُّسُلُ

Root letters are connected to dispatching, a message and corresponding

Are connected to a messenger, delegate and apostle

Are connected to being friendly, intimate and free of affectation

Are connected to the one who carries by consecutive progressions the relation of the tidings of Him who has sent him

فَضَّلْنَا

Root letters are connected to favouring, giving preference and distinguishing

Favoured - showing special kindness, generosity, or preference by granting additional blessings or honour.

Distinguished - setting apart through superior qualities, rank, excellence, or merit.

كَلَّمَ

Root letters are connected to an speaking, conversing, addressing and talking

رَفَعَ

Root letters are connected to raising, elevating in esteem, raising in rank and lifting

دَرَجٰتٍ

Root letters are connected to step, stair, degree, grade, rank, condition and station

اٰتَيْنَا

Root letters are connected to giving, granting and bestowing

الْبَيِّنٰتِ and الْبَيِّنٰتُ

Root letters are connected to clarification, explanation, clear evidence and proof

Proofs – undeniable evidence that establish truth decisively

Explanations – making meaning clear and understandable

اَيَّدْنٰهُ

Root letters are connected to supporting, confirming, endorsing, making firm, and strengthening

Supported - external aid

Made him firm - internal stability



Root letters are connected to a spirit, ghost and soul



Root letters are connected to holy, pure and being sacred



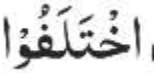
Root letters are connected to wanting, willing and wishing

 and 

Root letters are connected to combat, fighting, battle and opposing each other



Root letters are connected to come, produce, confront, set forth and reaching



Root letters are connected to differ, dispute, argue, disagreeing, different in opinion, debate and opposing

Disagreeing - difference in belief or opinion

Disputing - active argumentative conflict

Opposing - entrenched resistance and hostility

اٰمَنَ

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

كَفَرَ

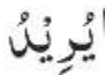
Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

يَفْعَلُ

Root letters are connected to doing an action, to influence, activity and accomplishing a task



Root letters are connected to wanting, having in mind, desiring, intending, aiming at and purpose

يٰٓاَيُّهَا الَّذِيْنَ اٰمَنُوْٓا اَنْفِقُوْا مِمَّا رَزَقْنٰكُمْ مِّنْ قَبْلِ اَنْ يَّاْتِيَ يَوْمٌ لَّا بَيْعٌ
فِيْهِ وَلَا خُلَّةٌ وَّلَا شَفَاعَةٌ ۭ وَالْكٰفِرُوْنَ هُمُ الظّٰلِمُوْنَ ۝٢٥٤

2:254

Those who have claimed to believe! Readily use [in good ways] from whatever provision We have provided for you, materially and spiritually, as a means of living, before a Momentous Day arrives when there will be no pledging of allegiance [to Allah], nor any transactional negotiation in it; nor any sincere friendship; nor any pleading on behalf of another[1]. And those who are firmly established in, and persist in, neglecting, dissociating from, and denying their obligations to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them]—they—they [in particular] are firmly established in, and persist in, being unjust—transgressing proper limits.

Notes:

1 - This verse refers to there being no pleading on behalf of another without the explicit permission of Allah, the Exalted, as intercession will only occur when He permits—as explained in other verses such as Quran 20:109, 2:255, and 21:28

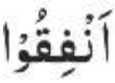
اٰمَنُوْٓا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

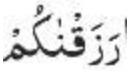
Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit



Root letters are connected to disposing of something quickly

Are connected to exhausting, using up and spending



Root letters are connected to means of survival and living, to bestow, to nourish, to provide provision, grant material or spiritual provision, and derive benefit from something

Material provision – worldly things e.g. food, shelter and clothing

Spiritual provision – inward qualities e.g. wisdom, knowledge, peace and inner strength



Root letters are connected to coming, arriving, bringing, advancing and accomplishing

يَوْمٌ

Root letters are connected to days, age, era and time

Are connected to momentous and important days

بَيْعٌ

Root letters are connected to pledging allegiance, acknowledge as a leader and pay homage

Are connected to selling, buying, transaction, business deal and exchanging of property

خُلَّةٌ

Root letters are connected to friendship, dear friend, true friend, chaste friend and sincere friend

شَفَاعَةٌ

Root letters are connected to advocacy, mediating, intercession, pleading for someone else and putting in a good word for another

الْكٰفِرُوْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

هُمُ الظّٰلِمُوْنَ

Pronoun “they” is used twice for added emphasis

الظّٰلِمُوْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to be unjust, act tyrannically, do wrong, do evil, harm, oppress and transgress proper limits

اَللّٰهُ لَآ اِلٰهَ اِلَّا هُوَ ۚ اَلْحَیُّ الْقَیُّوْمُ ۚ لَا تَاْخُذُهٗ سِنَةٌ وَّلَا نَوْمٌ ؕ لَهٗ مَا فِی
السَّمٰوٰتِ وَمَا فِی الْاَرْضِ ؕ مَنْ ذَا الَّذِیْ یَشْفَعُ عِنْدَهٗۤ اِلَّا بِاِذْنِهٖ ؕ یَعْلَمُ
مَا بَیْنَ اَیْدِیْهِمْ وَمَا خَلْفَهُمْ ۚ وَلَا یُحِیْطُوْنَ بِشَیْءٍ مِّنْ عِلْمِهٖۤ اِلَّا بِمَا
شَآءَ ۚ وَسِعَ كُرْسِیُّهُ السَّمٰوٰتِ وَالْاَرْضَ ۚ وَلَا یَـُٔوْدُهٗ حِفْظُهُمَا ۚ وَهُوَ الْعَلِیُّ
الْعَظِیْمُ ﴿۲۵۵﴾

2:255

Allah—there is absolutely no God—the sole recipient of obedience, from where goodness and protection from harm are sought—except Him: innately and eternally the One who is alive—the source of life for all creation, the One who exists independently—preserving and managing the affairs of creation. Drowsiness does not take hold of Him, nor does forgetfulness, neglect, lethargy, or sleep. To Him [alone], innately and eternally, belongs whatever is in the lofty skies and whatever is in the Earth. Who is this one—the one who pleads on behalf of another in His presence, except through His permission? He completely knows and fully understands whatever occurs in their presence and in their future, and whatever occurred in their past. Whereas, they do not encompass in understanding anything from His knowledge except according to what He has willed. His sacred Chair has surrounded—in complete power and authority—the lofty skies and the Earth, and the protection and preservation of them both do not burden or distress Him. And He is innately and eternally the One who is exalted above all things—fully dominant over

the creation, the One who is sublime in His being and attributes, transcending all things.

Notes:

لَآ اِلٰهَ

Structure indicates absolute negation

اِلٰهَ

Root letters are connected to god, deity, object of worship and obedience

Are connected to granting safety, peace, aid, protection and deliverance from evil

اَللّٰهُ لَآ اِلٰهَ اِلَّا هُوَ اَلْحَيُّ الْقَيُّوْمُ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

اَلْحَيُّ

Root letters are connected to living and deathless

Are connected to giving life, call into existence, reviving, reanimating and giving new life

الْقَيُّوْمُ

Root letters are connected to existing, preserving, manage affairs, established and being independent

تَاْخُذُهٗ

Root letters are connected to taking hold, overtaking and seizing

سِنَةٌ

Root letters are connected to being sleepy, drowsy and dozing

نَوْمٌ

Root letters are connected to sleeping, slumber, going to bed, inactivity, dull, neglecting, omitting, lethargic, and forgetting

لَهٗ مَا فِي السَّمٰوٰتِ

Structure indicates exclusivity and totality

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

السَّمٰوٰتِ

Root letters are connected to sky, heaven and ceiling

Are connected to raised, elevated, high, lofty and tall

ذَا

This is derived from a pointer meaning “this”

يَشْفَعُ

Root letters are connected to advocacy, mediating, intercession, pleading for someone else and putting in a good word for another

عِنْدَ

Preposition – with, in the company of, in despite of, together and in the estimation

بِإِذْنِهِ

Root letters are connected to permission

يُعْلَمُ and عِلْمِهِ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

بَيْنَ اَيْدِيْهِمْ

Term refers to something in front, before and in the presence of

Refers to the present and future

خَلْفَهُمْ

Root letters are connected to back, rear, rear portion and behind

Refers to past

يُحِيْطُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to surround, encircle, know thoroughly, comprehend, encompass, embrace and understand fully

بِشَيْءٍ

Root letters are connected to a thing, matter or affair

شَآءَ

Root letters are connected to wanting, willing and wishing

وَسِعَ

Root letters are connected to vast, contain, encompass and comprise

Are connected to power, ability, authority and strength

Power - ability or capacity to act or carry out something

Authority - recognised right or legitimacy to act or decide

كُرْسِيُّهُ

Root letters are connected to chair, throne, seat of a king

Are connected to consecrated, dedicated, sanctified and holy

يَـُٔودُهُۥ

Root letters are connected to weight down, burden, oppress, afflicted and distressed

حِفْظُهُمَا

Root letters are connected to preserving, maintaining, upholding, sustaining, defending and protecting

وَهُوَ ٱلْعَلِيُّ ٱلْعَظِيمُ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

الْعَلِيُّ

Root letters are connected to elevated, rise high, ascend, be high, greatness and grandeur

Are connected to dominate, overcome, overpower and mastery

الْعَظِيْمُ

Root letters are connected to something which is great, magnificent, powerful, supreme, tremendous, exalted, lofty, grandiose, and mighty

لَآ اِكۡرَاهَ فِى الدِّيۡنِ ۙ قَدۡ تَّبَيَّنَ الرُّشۡدُ مِنَ الۡغَىِّ ۚ فَمَنۡ يَّكۡفُرۡ بِالطَّاغُوۡتِ
وَيُؤۡمِنۡۢ بِاللّٰهِ فَقَدِ اسۡتَمۡسَكَ بِالۡعُرۡوَةِ الۡوُثۡقٰى ۗ لَا انۡفِصَامَ لَهَا ؕ وَاللّٰهُ
سَمِيۡعٌ عَلِيۡمٌ ﴿۲۵۶﴾

2:256

There is absolutely no compulsion in the obedient way of life [Islam]. Certainly, the rightly guided course—managing affairs intelligently—has been explained, made clearly evident, and distinguished from the course of transgression and deviation, which leads to destruction. Therefore, whoever neglects, dissociates from, and denies false objects of obedience and worship and [instead] believes in Allah, as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, has then certainly securely grasped and adhered to the most firmly established and reliable bond, in which there is absolutely no flaw or break—thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind. And Allah is innately and eternally the One whose hearing encompasses all things, the One who completely knows and fully understands everything.

Notes:

لَآ اِكۡرَاهَ

Structure indicates absolute negation

إِكْرَاهَ

Root letters are connected to force, compel, coerce and compulsion

الدِّيْنِ

Root letters are connected to under power, obedience, owe allegiance and submissive

Are connected to way of acting, doctrine, custom, habit, creed and religion

قَدْ

Used for emphasis with past tense action i.e. certainly

تَّبَيَّنَ

Root letters are connected to becoming clear and evident, clearly distinguished and explained

Evident - openly visible and apparent

Distinguished - separated and set apart from other things

Explained - clarified through detailed communication

الرُّشْدُ

Root letters are connected to being well guided, the right way of life, following the right course and the right way

Are connected to good management of affairs and right conduct with firmness

Are connected to being reasonable, rational, intelligent and mature



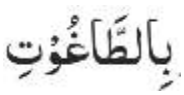
Root letters are connected to trespassing, transgression, deviation from right course, destruction, offense, error, a state of perdition



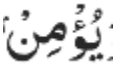
Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty



Root letters are connected to an idol, false God and any false object of worship

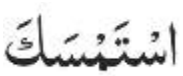


Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

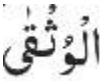
Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit



Root letters are connected to seizing, grasping, holding fast, cling, adhere, stick and keep



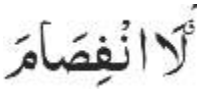
Root letters are connected to loop, noose, coil, handle, tie and bond



A superlative

Root letters are connected to firmly establishing, to tie, to fasten and bind

Are connected to rely, depend, and trust



Structure indicates absolute negation



Root letters are connected to cracking, splitting, breaking, tearing, cutting and having a flaw



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



Root letters are connected to hearing, listening and paying attention



Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

اَللّٰهُ وَلِيُّ الَّذِيْنَ اٰمَنُوْا ۙ يُخْرِجُهُمْ مِّنَ الظُّلُمٰتِ اِلَى النُّوْرِ ؕ وَالَّذِيْنَ
كَفَرُوْٓا اَوْلِيٰٓـئُهُمُ الطَّاغُوْتُ ۙ يُخْرِجُوْنَهُمْ مِّنَ النُّوْرِ اِلَى الظُّلُمٰتِ ؕ
اُولٰٓئِكَ اَصْحٰبُ النَّارِ ۚ هُمْ فِيْهَا خٰلِدُوْنَ ﴿۲۵۷﴾

2:257

Allah is the One whose enduring practice is firmly established in, and persists in, being a powerful, protecting Friend who takes responsibility for those who have believed—belief demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind. He brings them forth from the various forms of darkness and gloom towards the radiant light. Whereas, those who have neglected, dissociated from, and denied their obligations to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them]—their friends, who take responsibility for them, are false objects of obedience and worship. They bring them forth from the radiant light towards the various forms of darkness and gloom. Those are the inmates of the Fire; they, in it, will be firmly established—abiding forever.

Notes:

اَللّٰهُ وَلِيُّ الَّذِيْنَ

Noun sentence indicating an established and continuous trait

وَلِيُّ and اَوْلِيٰٓـُٔهُمْ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

Root letters are connected to having power and command

Are connected to protecting, supporting, befriending, managing and assuming responsibility

اٰمَنُوْا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

يُخْرِجُوْنَهُمْ and يُّخْرِجُهُمْ

Root letters are connected to bringing out, pulling out and producing

الظُّلُمٰتِ

Root letters are connected to darkness and gloom

Darkness - absence of light; a state of ignorance, concealment, confusion, or misguidance

Gloom - a state of spiritual, emotional, or moral heaviness, despair, or oppression accompanying that darkness

Plural form of darkness i.e. various forms of darkness e.g. darkness of sins, desires, bad companionship, negative characteristics, etc.



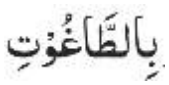
Root letters are connected to blossoming, flourishing, enlightenment and nurturing



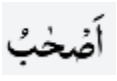
Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

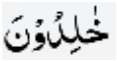
Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty



Root letters are connected to an idol, false God and any false object of worship

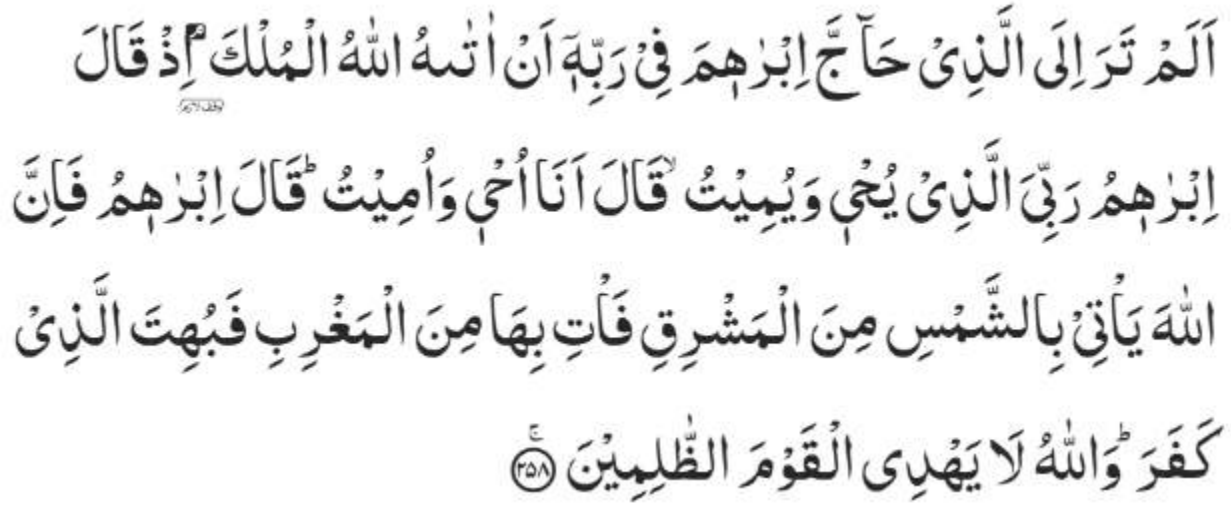


Root letters are connected to companionship, association, closely associated, inmates and occupants



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to be everlasting, being immortal and abiding forever


اَلَمۡ تَرَ اِلَى الَّذِىۡ حَآجَّ اِبۡرٰهٖمَ فِىۡ رَبِّهٖۤ اَنۡ اٰتٰىهُ اللّٰهُ الۡمُلۡكَ ۘ اِذۡ قَالَ
اِبۡرٰهٖمُ رَبِّىَ الَّذِىۡ يُحۡىٖ وَيُمِيۡتُ ۙ قَالَ اَنَا اُحۡىٖ وَاُمِيۡتُ ؕ قَالَ اِبۡرٰهٖمُ فَاِنَّ
اللّٰهَ يَاۡتِىۡ بِالشَّمۡسِ مِنَ الۡمَشۡرِقِ فَاۡتِ بِهَا مِنَ الۡمَغۡرِبِ فَبُهِتَ الَّذِىۡ
كَفَرَ ؕ وَاللّٰهُ لَا يَهۡدِى الۡقَوۡمَ الظّٰلِمِيۡنَ ۚ﴿۲۵۸﴾

2:258

Have you not reflected and considered the one who disputed with and raised objections against Ibrahim concerning his nurturing Lord—educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority—because Allah had granted him[1] [the king] authority and control, and had granted him [Ibrahim] spiritual[2] authority? When Ibrahim declared, "My nurturing Lord is the One who brings life into existence and decrees death." He [arrogantly] replied, "I—I give life and I give death." Ibrahim declared, [challenging him], "Then certainly, Allah brings forward the Sun from the East; therefore, bring it forward from the West." Then the one who had neglected, dissociated from, and denied his obligations to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted him], was overcome by the argument—perplexed and left speechless. And Allah—He does not gift guidance, by showing and leading to and along the right way of life, to the people who are firmly established in, and persist in, being unjust—transgressing proper limits.

Notes:

1 – The Arabic pronoun “him” could be referring to either the king or the Prophet Ibrahim, peace be upon him, and has therefore been translated to encompass both possibilities

2 - The spiritual authority of the Prophet Ibrahim, peace be upon him, is his Prophethood and is mentioned in other verses e.g. Quran 4:54



Root letters are connected to seeing, perceiving, reflecting, discerning and considering

Reflect - to think deeply and thoughtfully, pondering the significance or lessons of something

Consider - to examine, evaluate, or take something into careful account before reaching an understanding



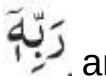
Root letters are connected to defeating and overcoming

Are connected to disputing, debating and arguing

Are connected to pleading, raising objections and objecting

Dispute with - engage in argument

Raise objections against - challenge specific points

 and

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

اٰتٰىهُ

Root letters are connected to giving, granting and bestowing

The attached pronoun can connect back to the Prophet Ibrahim, peace be upon him, and the king

الْمُلْكَ

Root letters are connected to rule, reign, authority, domination and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

Ownership - full possession and belonging

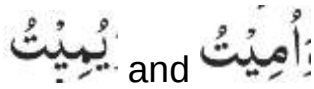
قَالَ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

 and

Root letters are connected to giving life, call into existence, reviving, reanimating and giving new life

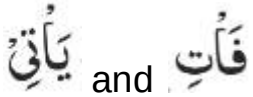
Are connected to experiencing and witnessing

 and

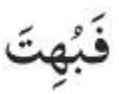
Root letters connected to death, lifelessness and nonexistent



Pronoun “I” is used twice for added emphasis

 and

Root letters are connected to coming, arriving, bringing, advancing and accomplishing



Root letters are connected to being astonished, amazed, bewildered, perplexed, overcome in argument and silence being dumbfounded



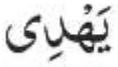
Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty



Pronoun “He” is used twice for added emphasis



Root letters are connected to guidance, direction, showing, being led, being supplied and a way of life

Are connected to gifting and bestowing

Are connected to direction and discovering the right way



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to be unjust, act tyrannically, do wrong, do evil, harm, oppress and transgress proper limits

اَوْ كَالَّذِیْ مَرَّ عَلٰی قَرْیَةٍ وَّهِیَ خَاوِیَةٌ عَلٰی عُرُوْشِهَا ۚ قَالَ اَنّٰی یُحْیٖ هٰذِهِ
اللّٰهُ بَعْدَ مَوْتِهَا ۚ فَاَمَاتَهُ اللّٰهُ مِائَةَ عَامٍ ثُمَّ بَعَثَهٗ ؕ قَالَ كَمْ لَبِثْتَ ؕ قَالَ
لَبِثْتُ یَوْمًا اَوْ بَعْضَ یَوْمٍ ؕ قَالَ بَلْ لَّبِثْتَ مِائَةَ عَامٍ فَانْظُرْ اِلٰی
طَعَامِكَ وَشَرَابِكَ لَمْ یَتَسَنَّهْ ۚ وَانْظُرْ اِلٰی حِمَارِكَ وَلِنَجْعَلَكَ اٰیَةً
لِّلنَّاسِ وَانْظُرْ اِلَی الْعِظَامِ كَیْفَ نُنْشِزُهَا ثُمَّ نَكْسُوْهَا لَحْمًا ؕ فَلَمَّا
تَبَیَّنَ لَهٗ ۙ قَالَ اَعْلَمُ اَنَّ اللّٰهَ عَلٰی كُلِّ شَیْءٍ قَدِیْرٌ ﴿۲۵۹﴾

2:259

Or [have you not reflected and considered an example[1]] like the one who passed by a town while it was in a firmly established and persistent state of utter desolation—its roofs and pillars collapsed in ruin? He questioned [in amazement], "How will Allah grant new life to this after its demise?" Then Allah decreed death for him for a hundred years; thereafter, He resurrected, appointed, and dispatched him, and asked, "How long did you remain?" He replied, "I remained a day or a part of a day." He replied, "Rather, you remained for a hundred years. Then direct your attention to and consider your food and drink—they have not spoiled through the passing of time. And direct your attention to and consider your [dead] donkey, so that We appoint and establish you as a miraculous and evident sign for the people. Then direct your attention to and consider the bones [of the dead donkey]—how We restore them, raising up and setting them in their correct places; thereafter, We clothe them with flesh." Then at the very

moment it was explained, became clearly evident, and distinguished [from uncertainty] for his benefit, he declared, "I recognise, know, and understand that Allah is [innately and eternally] the One who has full power, control, and ability over each and every matter, who determines and decrees according to exact measure."

Notes:

1 - Another example is given for reflection and consideration, continuing from the previous verse

مَرَّ

Root letters are connected to strolling by, passing by, passing along and crossing

قَرْيَةٍ

Root letters are connected to village, small town, town and rural community

خَاوِيَةٌ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to empty, barren, waste, desolate, completely devasted and empty without inhabitants

عُرُوشِهَا

Root letters are connected to roof, pillar, support, props and foundations

قَالَ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

يُحْيِ

Root letters are connected to giving life, call into existence, reviving, reanimating and giving new life

Are connected to experiencing and witnessing

مَوْتِهَا and فَأَمَاتَهُ

Root letters connected to death, demise, lifelessness and nonexistent

Are connected to making die, letting perish, killing and causing death

بَعَثَهُ

Root letters are connected to resurrecting, reviving, raising, sending out, dispatching, delegating and appointing

لَبِثْتُ and لَبِثْتَ

Root letters are connected to hesitating, lingering, abiding, remaining and staying

فَانْظُرْ

Root letters are connected to view, see, observe, pay attention, consider, regard and direct one’s attention

طَعَامِكَ

Root letters are connected to food, meal and diet

شَرَابِكَ

Root letters are connected to drinking

يَتَسَنَّهْ

Root letters are connected to becoming stale, spoiling, rotting through the passing of time

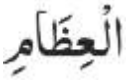
Are connected to years, passing of years, old and deteriorated

لِنَجْعَلَكَ

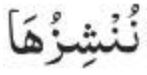
Root letters are connected to placing, setting, inserting, making, preparing, fixing and appointing



Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof

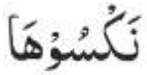


Root letters are connected to bones



Root letters are connected to restoring to life, reviving and reanimating

Are connected to raising, gathering and piling up



Root letters are connected to covering, clothing, garbing, draping and dressing



Root letters are connected to meat and flesh



Root letters are connected to when, since and after

Emphasizes moment of occurrence



Root letters are connected to becoming clear and evident, clearly distinguished and explained



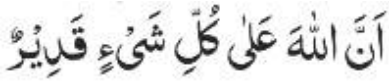
Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



Root letters are connected to a thing, matter or affair



Root letters are connected to possessing control, strength, power and ability

Are connected to determine, decree, ordain, assess, evaluate, calculate and measurement

وَاِذْ قَالَ اِبْرٰهٖمُ رَبِّ اَرِنِیْ كَیْفَ تُحْیِ الْمَوْتٰی ؕ قَالَ اَوَلَمْ تُؤْمِنْ ؕ قَالَ بَلٰی
وَلٰكِنْ لِّیَطْمَىِٕنَّ قَلْبِیْ ؕ قَالَ فَخُذْ اَرْبَعَةً مِّنَ الطَّیْرِ فَصُرْهُنَّ اِلَیْكَ ثُمَّ
اجْعَلْ عَلٰی كُلِّ جَبَلٍ مِّنْهُنَّ جُزْءًا ثُمَّ ادْعُهُنَّ یَاْتِیْنَكَ سَعْیًا ؕ وَاعْلَمْ
اَنَّ اللّٰهَ عَزِیْزٌ حَكِیْمٌ ﴿۲۶۰﴾

2:260

And [have you not reflected and considered[1]] when Ibrahim questioned, "My nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority], demonstrate to me [for reflection] how You grant new life to the dead." He replied, questioning, "Have you not already believed [as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind]?" He replied, "Of course—however, for the purpose that my spiritual heart be filled with assurance, thereby attaining certainty. He replied, "Then, in that case, take hold of any four birds—making each one of them familiar to you—then cut them into pieces. Thereafter, prepare and place upon each and every mountain from each of them a portion. Thereafter, call each of them—summoning them—each one of them will come to you, hastening. And recognise, know, and understand that Allah is [innately and eternally] the One who overcomes all things, the Owner of respect and nobility, raising in honour and lowering whoever He wills, the One who rules over and controls everything, determining every affair with perfect wisdom."

Notes:

1 - Another example is given for reflection and consideration, continuing from the previous verses



Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging



Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended



Root letters are connected to seeing and perceiving

Are connected to showing, demonstrating and pointing out

Are connected to reflecting, contemplating and considering

تُحْيِ

Root letters are connected to giving life, call into existence, reviving, reanimating and giving new life

Are connected to experiencing, witnessing, living through a time and live to see

الْمَوْتَىٰ

Root letters are connected to dying, perishing, losing life and subsiding

تُؤْمِنْ

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

لِّيَطْمَئِنَّ

Root letters are connected to fill with confidence, set mind at rest and reassure

Are connected to be certain

قَلْبِیْ

Root letters are connected to the heart

فَخُذْ

Root letters are connected to taking hold, overtaking and seizing

اَرْبَعَةً مِّنَ الطَّيْرِ

Structure indicates any birds

الطَّيْرِ

Root letters are connected to a bird

فَصُرْهُنَّ

هُنَّ indicates each one of them

Root letters are connected to incline, lean, turn the face towards and turn a thing toward

Are connected to demolished, cut, divided into pieces, crack, split and dissect

اجْعَلْ

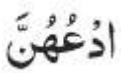
Root letters are connected to placing, preparing, making, fixing and appointing



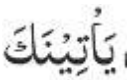
Root letters are connected to a mountain and mountain pass



Root letters are connected to part, portion, constituent, component and fraction



Root letters are connected to calling, summoning, sending for, assigning and inviting



Root letters are connected to coming, arriving, bringing, advancing and accomplishing



Root letters are connected to walk, striving, hastening, running, going along vigorously and striving

وَاعْلَمُ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

اَنَّ اللّٰهَ عَزِيْزٌ حَكِيْمٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

عَزِيْزٌ

Root letters are connected to power, respect, honour and nobility,

Are connected to overwhelming, overcoming and dominating

Are connected to raising in esteem, elevating and exalting

Respect - honour, esteem, and recognised worth

Nobility - elevated rank, dignity, and excellence

حَكِيْمٌ

Root letters are connected to judging, deciding and decreeing

Are connected to wisdom

Are connected to accuracy, perfection and precision

Are connected to governing, ruling, dominating and controlling

Rule - authority and command (who has the right to decide)

Control - execution and outcome (ensuring decisions take effect)

مَثَلُ الَّذِيْنَ يُنْفِقُوْنَ اَمْوَالَهُمْ فِيْ سَبِيْلِ اللّٰهِ كَمَثَلِ حَبَّةٍ اَنْۢبَتَتْ
سَبْعَ سَنَابِلَ فِيْ كُلِّ سُنْۢبُلَةٍ مِّائَةُ حَبَّةٍ ؕ وَاللّٰهُ يُضٰعِفُ لِمَنْ يَّشَآءُ ؕ وَاللّٰهُ
وَاسِعٌ عَلِيْمٌ ﴿٢٦١﴾

2:261

The example of the condition of those who readily use their possessions in the path of [obeying] Allah is like the state of a seed which has caused to grow seven spikes; within each and every spike are a hundred seeds. And Allah—He multiplies for the benefit of whoever He wills. And Allah is innately and eternally the One who is infinitely vast in resources, capabilities, and generosity, whose power, authority, and knowledge encompass all things, the One who completely knows and fully understands everything.

Notes:

مَثَلُ and كَمَثَلِ

Root letters are connected to an example, to resemble, to copy and compare

Are connected to similar case, simile, parable, precedent, state and condition

يُنْفِقُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to disposing of something quickly

Are connected to exhausting, using up and spending

اَمْوَالَهُمْ

Root letters are connected to property, assets, goods, wealth, and possessions

السَّبِيْلِ

Root letters are connected to a way, path and road

اَنْۢبَتَتْ

Root letters are connected to causing to grow, to nurture and to grow

وَاللّٰهُ يُضٰعِفُ

Pronoun “He” is used twice for added emphasis

يُضٰعِفُ

Root letters are connected to doubling, multiplying and compounding

يَّشَآءُ

Root letters are connected to wanting, willing and wishing

ۗ وَاللّٰهُ وَاسِعٌ عَلِيْمٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

وَاسِعٌ

Root letters are connected to vast, wide, extensive, encompass, be able

Are connected to power, strength, capability, authority and ability

Are connected to being rich, wealthy, having vast means, plenty, abundance and generous

Power - ability or capacity to act or carry out something

Authority - recognised right or legitimacy to act or decide

عَلِيْمٌ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

اَلَّذِيْنَ يُنْفِقُوْنَ اَمْوَالَهُمْ فِيْ سَبِيْلِ اللّٰهِ ثُمَّ لَا يُتْبِعُوْنَ مَآ اَنْفَقُوْا مَنًّا وَّلَآ اَذًى ۙ لَّهُمْ اَجْرُهُمْ عِنْدَ رَبِّهِمْ ۚ وَلَا خَوْفٌ عَلَيْهِمْ وَلَا هُمْ يَحْزَنُوْنَ ﴿٢٦٢﴾

2:262

Those who readily use their possessions in the path of [obeying] Allah and thereafter, do not follow up and overtake whatever they have readily used in a state of either reminding others of the favours shown to them or displaying offensive behaviour towards them—for them [alone] is the reward of their efforts in the presence of their nurturing Lord—educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority. And fear of the future will not dominate them, and they—they [in particular] will not grieve or mourn over the past.[1]

Notes:

1 - The one who adheres to divine guidance may feel fear but will not be dominated by it; they may feel sadness but will not fall into grief and despair

يُنْفِقُوْنَ and اَنْفَقُوْا

Root letters are connected to disposing of something quickly

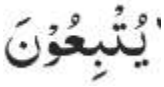
Are connected to exhausting, using up and spending



Root letters are connected to property, assets, goods, wealth, and possessions



Root letters are connected to a way, path and road



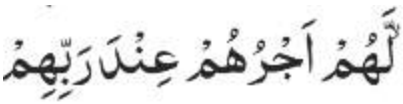
Root letters are connected to causing to succeed, to follow up and to overtake



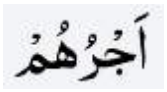
Root letters are connected to counting favours, taunting, reproaching one for benefits received and reminding others of benefits conferred



Root letters are connected to harm, offense, insult, annoying, troublesome, damage, pain and injury



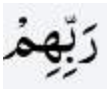
Structure shows exclusivity and entitlement to reward



Root letters are connected to reward, recompense and wages for work done



Preposition – with, in the company of, in despite of, together and in the estimation



Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

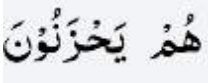
Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

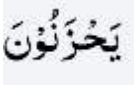
Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended



Root letters are connected to being frightened and scared of a future event



Pronoun “they” is used twice for added emphasis



Root letters are connected to being sad, grieving and mourning over something in the past

Grieve - deep internal sorrow

Mourn - outward expression of sorrow

قَوْلٌ مَّعْرُوْفٌ وَّمَغْفِرَةٌ خَيْرٌ مِّنْ صَدَقَةٍ يَّتْبَعُهَآ اَذًى ۗ وَاللّٰهُ غَنِيٌّ حَلِيْمٌ ﴿٢٦٣﴾

2:263

Fair, kind, and sincere speech, which is widely recognised by common sense and reason, and [granting and seeking[1]] forgiveness are preferred and better for your well-being than an act of charity which offensive behaviour accompanies [at the time of giving] or pursues thereafter. And Allah is innately and eternally the One who is self-sufficient, fully independent, and utterly free of need—who enriches, suffices, and protects, the One who is lenient and forbearing—restrained in punishment despite disobedience.

Notes:

1 - Forgiveness includes granting it to the needy person who behaves rudely, and seeking forgiveness from the needy person when one is unable to assist them

قَوْلٌ

Root letters are connected to word, speech, saying, utterance, remark and statement

مَّعْرُوْفٌ

Root letters are connected to being well known, universally accepted, generally recognised by reason and easily recognised

Are connected to which is good, fitting, suitable, courteous, fair, kind, sincere advice and honest advice

Fair - just and impartial

Kind - gentle and compassionate

Sincere - genuine and honest in intention

Common sense - practical sound judgement

Reason - thoughtful understanding and rational reflection

مَغْفِرَةٌ

Root letters are connected to forgiving and pardoning

خَيْرٌ

A comparative

Root letters are connected to good, virtuous and generous

Are connected to choosing and preferring

Are connected to something better and superior

Are connected to a good state and well-being

صَدَقَةٍ

Root letters are connected to donating charity

يَتْبَعُهَآ

Root letters are connected to following, succeeding, attaching, adhering, sticking, succeeding, and tracking

اَذًى

Root letters are connected to harm, offense, insult, annoying, troublesome, damage, pain and injury

وَاللّٰهُ غَنِيٌّ حَلِيْمٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

غَنِيٌّ

Root letters are connected to self-sufficient, independent, rich and free of need

Are connected to enriching, sufficing, protecting and helping

Self-sufficient - has everything within Himself

Fully independent - not reliant on anything outside Himself

Utterly free of need - negation of any form of dependence

حَلِيْمٌ

Root letters are connected to gentleness, clemency, forbearance and patience

Lenient - gentle in dealing with people

Forbearing - patient despite wrongdoing

يٰٓاَيُّهَا الَّذِيْنَ اٰمَنُوْا لَا تُبْطِلُوْا صَدَقٰتِكُمْ بِالْمَنِّ وَالْاَذٰى ۙ كَالَّذِيْ
يُنْفِقُ مَالَهٗ رِئَآءَ النَّاسِ وَلَا يُؤْمِنُ بِاللّٰهِ وَالْيَوْمِ الْاٰخِرِ ۭ فَمَثَلُهٗ
كَمَثَلِ صَفْوَانٍ عَلَيْهِ تُرَابٌ فَاَصَابَهٗ وَابِلٌ فَتَرَكَهٗ صَلْدًا ۭ لَا يَقْدِرُوْنَ
عَلٰي شَيْءٍ مِّمَّا كَسَبُوْا ۭ وَاللّٰهُ لَا يَهْدِي الْقَوْمَ الْكٰفِرِيْنَ ۝٢٦٤

2:264

Those who have claimed to believe! Do not corrupt or make worthless your acts of charity by means of reminding others of the favours shown to them or displaying offensive behaviour towards them, like the one who uses his possessions [in good ways] in a state of hypocrisy—showing off to people, while not believing in Allah and the Last Momentous Day, belief demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind. Then the example of his condition is like the state of a smooth rock upon which is soil. Then an intentional, unavoidable heavy rain—an evil consequence—strikes it, leaving it barren and unable to support growth[1]. They [such people] possess no control, ability, or power over anything from [the consequences of] whatever they have earned. And Allah—He does not gift guidance, by showing and leading to and along the right way of life, to the people who are firmly established in, and persist in, neglecting, dissociating from, and denying their obligations to Him, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them].

Notes:

1 - A rock can be come barren losing its ability to support life and growth

اٰمَنُوْا and يُؤْمِنُ

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

تُبْطِلُوْا

Root letters are connected to corrupt, lie, falsehood and deception

Are connected to making worthless, invalidating, nullifying and cancelling

صَدَقٰتِكُمْ

Root letters are connected to donating charity

بِالْمَنِّ

Root letters are connected to counting favours, taunting, reproaching one for benefits received and reminding others of benefits conferred

وَالْاَذٰى

Root letters are connected to harm, offense, insult, annoying, troublesome, damage, pain and injury

يُنْفِقُ

Root letters are connected to disposing of something quickly

Are connected to exhausting, using up and spending

Are connected to dissemble, pretending, deceiving, hypocrisy

مَالَهٗ

Root letters are connected to property, assets, goods, wealth, and possessions

رِئَآءَ

Root letters are connected to eyeservice, hypocrisy, dissimulation, pretending, acting ostentatiously and aiming to impress

الْيَوْمِ

Root letters are connected to days, age, era and time

Are connected to momentous and important days

الْاٰخِرِ

Root letters are connected to something that is last, ultimate, end, utmost and extreme

The Last Momentous Day refers to the Day of Judgement as eternity begins after that

فَمَثَلُهٗ and كَمَثَلِ

Root letters are connected to an example, to resemble, to copy and compare

Are connected to similar case, simile, parable and precedent

صَفْوَانٍ

Root letters are connected to smooth and bare stones and rock

تُرَابٌ

Root letters are connected to dust, earth, dirt, ground and soil

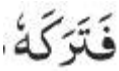
فَاَصَابَهٗ

Root letters are connected to hitting, injuring, reaching, befalling, hitting the mark, to be afflicted and hitting the intended target



Root letters are connected to heavy downpour of rain

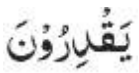
Are connected to evil consequence of a deed, harm, evil and curse



Root letters are connected to leave, leave behind and leave alone



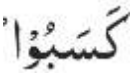
Root letters are connected to becoming hard, solid, firm, dry, barren, arid, lifeless and infertile land



Root letters are connected to possessing control, strength, power and ability



Root letters are connected to a thing, matter or affair



Root letters are connected to acquiring, earning, gathering, obtaining, gaining

Are connected to working hard and diligent

وَاللّٰهُ لَا يَهْدِى

Pronoun “He” is used twice for added emphasis

يَهْدِى

Root letters are connected to guidance, direction, showing, being led, being supplied and a way of life

Are connected to gifting and bestowing

Are connected to direction and discovering the right way

الْكٰفِرِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

وَمَثَلُ الَّذِيْنَ يُنْفِقُوْنَ اَمْوَالَهُمُ ابْتِغَآءَ مَرْضَاتِ اللّٰهِ وَتَثْبِيْتًا مِّنْ
اَنْفُسِهِمْ كَمَثَلِ جَنَّةٍۢ بِرَبْوَةٍ اَصَابَهَا وَابِلٌ فَاٰتَتْ اُكُلَهَا ضِعْفَيْنِ ۚ فَاِنْ
لَّمْ يُصِبْهَا وَابِلٌ فَطَلٌّ ۗ وَاللّٰهُ بِمَا تَعْمَلُوْنَ بَصِيْرٌ ﴿٢٦٥﴾

2:265

Whereas, the example of the condition of those who readily use their possessions in an established state of desiring and seeking every cause leading to the pleasure, approval, and acceptance of Allah, and as a means of stabilisation and strengthening themselves—ensuring steadfastness—is like the state of a secure garden on elevated, cultivating ground. An intentional, unavoidable heavy rain strikes it, then it provides its fruit—a means of living—twice over. And even if heavy rain has not struck it, then, in that case, minimal moisture is sufficient. And Allah is innately and eternally the One who sees whatever you do, whether apparent or hidden, the One who is perfectly perceptive and discerning.

Notes:

مَثَلُ and كَمَثَلِ

Root letters are connected to an example, to resemble, to copy and compare

Are connected to similar case, simile, parable, precedent, state and condition

يُنْفِقُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to disposing of something quickly

Are connected to exhausting, using up and spending

اَمْوَالَهُمْ

Root letters are connected to property, assets, goods, wealth, and possessions

ابْتِغَآءَ

Root letters are connected to seeking, desiring, striving and aspiring for

مَرْضَاتِ

Noun indicating something established

Root letters are connected satisfaction, pleasure, a means affording satisfaction, and a cause of pleasure

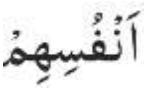
Pleased with - emotionally satisfied and comforted by

Approve of - regard as correct, fitting, and acceptable

تَثْبِيْتًا

Root letters are connected to strengthening, stabilising, establishing and making firm

Are connected to steadfast, certainty, constancy and perseverance

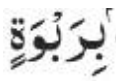


Root letters are connected to soul, person, mind, human being and an individual



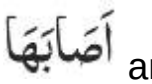
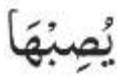
Root letters are connected to protection, shield and safe

Are connected to a garden and a walled garden



Root letters are connected to hill, elevated place and elevated ground

Are connected to growing, cultivating, developing and nurturing

 and 

Root letters are connected to hitting, injuring, reaching, befalling, hitting the mark, to be afflicted and hitting the intended target



Root letters are connected to heavy downpour of rain

فَاٰتَتْ

Root letters are connected to giving, granting and bestowing

Are connected to providing, supplying and furnishing

اُكُلَهَا

Root letters are connected to fruit, eaten, livelihood, and means of subsistence

ضِعْفَيْنِ

Root letters are connected to doubling, multiplying and compounding

فَطَلٌّ

Root letters are connected to light rain, drizzle, weak rain, fine rain and dew

وَاللّٰهُ بِمَا تَعْمَلُوْنَ بَصِيْرٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

تَعْمَلُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to working, doing and acting

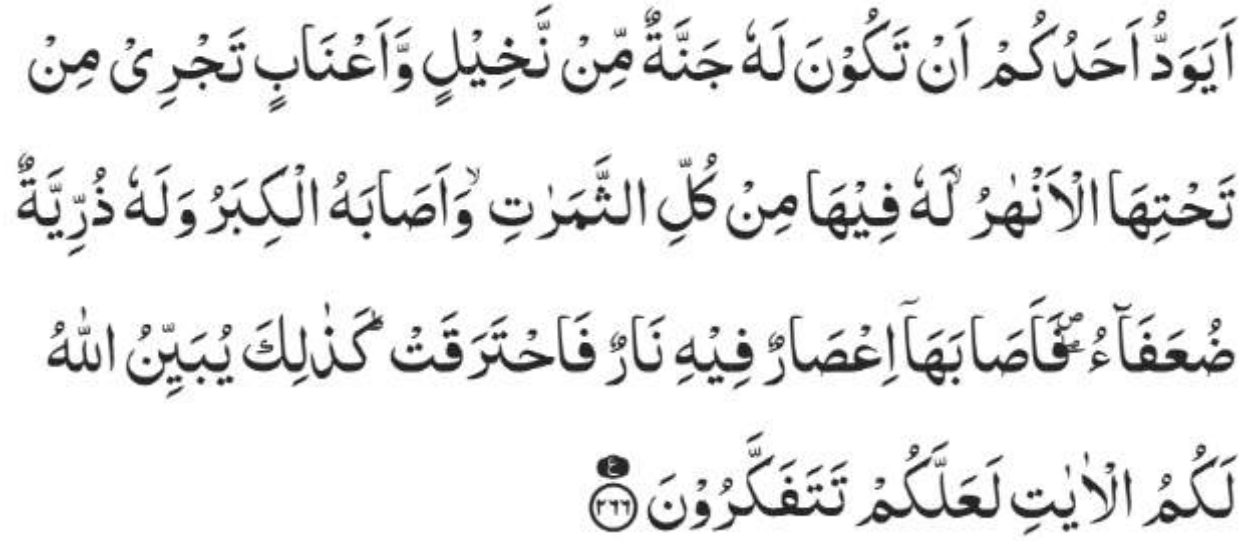


Root letters are connected to seeing, witnessing and perception

Are connected to discerning, understanding, intelligent and mental perception

Perceptive – detecting/noticing

Discerning – judging/evaluating


أَيَوَدُّ أَحَدُكُمْ أَنْ تَكُونَ لَهُ جَنَّةٌ مِّنْ نَّخِيلٍ وَّأَعْنَابٍ تَجْرِي مِنْ
تَحْتِهَا الْأَنْهٰرُ لَهُ فِيهَا مِنْ كُلِّ الثَّمَرٰتِ وَأَصَابَهُ الْكِبَرُ وَلَهُ ذُرِّيَّةٌ
ضُعَفَآءُ فَأَصَابَهَآ إِعْصَارٌ فِيهِ نَارٌ فَاحْتَرَقَتْ كَذٰلِكَ يُبَيِّنُ اللّٰهُ
لَكُمُ الْأٰيٰتِ لَعَلَّكُمْ تَتَفَكَّرُونَ ﴿٢٦٦﴾

2:266

Would anyone of you love and want a secure garden to exist [solely] for his benefit, consisting of date-palms and grapevines, with streams and rivers flowing abundantly beneath it, having within it all types of profitable crops? Yet burdening old age has afflicted him while he possesses physically and mentally weak descendants. Then a tornado containing fire struck it [the garden], so it became burned and utterly destroyed. In that way, Allah clearly explains for the benefit of you all the miraculous and evident signs [verses of the Quran], so that you may examine and reflect.

Notes:

يَوَدُّ

Root letters are connected to loving, wishing and wanting



Structure shows exclusivity



Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place



Root letters are connected to protection, shield and safety

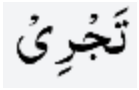
Are connected to a garden and a walled garden



Root letters are connected to pals, date palms and palm trees



Root letters are connected to grapes and grapevine



Root letters are connected to flowing, running, rushing, hurrying and passing

الْاَنْهٰرُ

Root letters are connected to flowing copiously and gushing forth

Are connected to river and stream

Are connected to abundant, plentiful and much

الثَّمَرٰتِ

Root letters are connected to fruit, yield, produce, harvest and crops

Are connected to profit, gain benefit and to invest profitably

اَصَابَهٗ and فَاَصَابَهَا

Root letters are connected to hitting, injuring, reaching, befalling, hitting the mark, to be afflicted and hitting the intended target

الْكِبَرُ

Root letters are connected to being old and advanced in age and senior

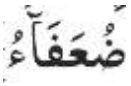
Are connected to becoming too great, too distressing and painful, too burdensome, to appear intolerable and insurmountable

وَلَهٗ ذُرِّيَّةٌ ضُعَفَآءُ

Noun sentence indicating an established state



Root letters are connected to children, descendants, young children and offspring



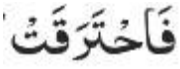
Root letters are connected to weak, feeble, frail, lazy, slacking, deficient and weakness of mind and body



Root letters are connected to whirlwind, tornado, cyclone and hurricane

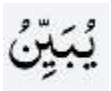


Root letters are connected to fire

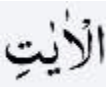


Root letters are connected to being burned, aflame, burned up and consumed by fire

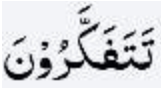
Are connected to being destroyed



Root letters are connected to making clear, showing, explaining, differentiating and distinguishing



Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof



Root letters are connected to reflecting, meditating, pondering examining and considering

يٰٓاَيُّهَا الَّذِيْنَ اٰمَنُوْٓا اَنْفِقُوْا مِنْ طَيِّبٰتِ مَا كَسَبْتُمْ وَمِمَّآ اَخْرَجْنَا
لَكُمْ مِّنَ الْاَرْضِ ۖ وَلَا تَيَمَّمُوا الْخَبِيْثَ مِنْهُ تُنْفِقُوْنَ وَلَسْتُمْ
بِاٰخِذِيْهِ اِلَّآ اَنْ تُغْمِضُوْا فِيْهِ ۭ وَاعْلَمُوْٓا اَنَّ اللّٰهَ غَنِيٌّ حَمِيْدٌ ﴿٢٦٧﴾

2:267

Those who have claimed to believe! Readily use [in good ways] from the lawful, healthy, and pleasant things of whatever you have earned, and from whatever We have produced and brought forth for your benefit from the Earth. And do not seek and single out the disliked, offensive, or repulsive things from it to use [in good ways], even though you yourselves will never—at any time or in any state—be those who accept taking it except while closing your eyes, refusing to see it. And recognise, know, and understand that Allah is innately and eternally the One who is self-sufficient, fully independent, and utterly free of need—who enriches, suffices, and protects, the One who is rightfully, constantly praised and fully praiseworthy in His essence, attributes, and actions—who praises those worthy of it.

Notes:

اٰمَنُوْٓا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

اَنْفِقُوْا

Root letters are connected to disposing of something quickly

Are connected to exhausting, using up and spending

طَيِّبٰتِ

Root letters are connected to something good, pure, pleasant, agreeable, healthy, delightful, delicious and lawful

Pure - free from impurity and corruption

Healthy - beneficial and nourishing

Pleasant - enjoyable and agreeable

كَسَبْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to acquiring, earning, gathering, obtaining, gaining

Are connected to working hard and diligent

اَخْرَجْنَا

Root letters are connected to bringing out, pulling out and producing

تَيَمَّمُوا

Root letters are connected to seeking, aiming, intending, resorting to and single out

الْخَبِيثَ

Root letters are connected to vicious, injurious, harmful, offensive, repulsive, disgusting, disapproved, hated, bad, corrupt and unlawful

Disliked - not preferred; something one naturally wishes to avoid

Offensive - objectionable because it causes discomfort, offence, or disgust

Repulsive - so objectionable or revolting that one instinctively recoils from it

وَلَسْتُمْ بِآخِذِيهِ

Structure gives a strong negation and refutation meaning

And gives an absolute and complete negation in state, time and possibility

بِآخِذِيهِ

Noun indicating an established and timeless state

Root letters are connected to taking, accepting, gaining and acquiring

تُغۡمِضُوۡا

Root letters are connected to closing/shutting one's eyes, pretend not to seen, feign blindless and refuse to see

وَاعۡلَمُوۡۤا

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

اَنَّ اللّٰهَ غَنِیٌّ حَمِیۡدٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

غَنِیٌّ

Root letters are connected to self-sufficient, independent, rich and free of need

Are connected to enriching, sufficing, protecting and helping

Self-sufficient - has everything within Himself

Fully independent - not reliant on anything outside Himself

Utterly free of need - negation of any form of dependence

حَمِيْدٌ

Structure indicates intensity

Root letters are connected to praise, thanks, possessor of praiseworthy qualities, praiseworthy and praised

And are connected to giving someone their due/right

اَلشَّيْطٰنُ يَعِدُكُمُ الْفَقْرَ وَيَاْمُرُكُمْ بِالْفَحْشَآءِ ۚ وَاللّٰهُ يَعِدُكُمْ
مَّغْفِرَةً مِّنْهُ وَفَضْلًا ۗ وَاللّٰهُ وَاسِعٌ عَلِيْمٌ ﴿٢٦٨﴾

2:268

The Devil—arrogantly corrupt, who deters others from obeying Allah—he threatens you all with various forms of poverty[1], anxiety, and sorrow, and he instructs you to engage in obscene behaviour—crossing the limits of modesty and decency. Whereas, Allah—He promises you concealment, forgiveness, and correction of affairs from Himself; and favour, kindness and additional gifts, including those of secondary importance [worldly matters]. And Allah is innately and eternally the One who is infinitely vast in resources, capabilities, and generosity, whose power, authority, and knowledge encompass all things, the One who completely knows and fully understands everything.

Notes:

1 - Various forms of poverty include financial, psychological, and social—such as sadness and loneliness

اَلشَّيْطٰنُ يَعِدُكُمُ

Pronoun “He” is used twice for added emphasis

اَلشَّيْطٰنُ

Root letters are connected to behaving like a devil, rebellious, corrupt and arrogant

Are connected to opposing others, turning them away from their purpose

Are connected to becoming remote and distant from the mercy of Allah, the Exalted

يَعِدُكُمُ

Root letters are connected to making a promise and to threaten

الْفَقْرَ

Root letters are connected to poverty, need, lack, want, anxiety, disquietude, trouble of mind and sorrow

Structure indicates all types of poverty

يَأْمُرُكُمْ

Root letters are connected to ordering, commanding, instructing and entrusting

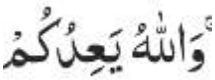
بِالْفَحْشَآءِ

Root letters are connected to being monstrous, excessive and exorbitant

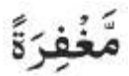
Are connected to being obscene, vile, disgusting, lewd, indecent, shameless, and exceeding the bounds of goodness

Modesty - inward and personal dimension (humility and reserve in behaviour)

Decency - outward and social dimension (proper and respectable conduct)



Pronoun “He” is used twice for added emphasis



Root letters are connected to covering, concealing, veiling and hiding

Are connected to forgiving and pardoning

Are connected to correcting and rectifying affairs



Root letters are connected to grace, favour, kindness, graciousness, grace and bounty

Are connected to extra, surplus and excess

Are connected to matters of secondary importance i.e. worldly matters e.g. Quran 2:198

Are connected to favour and gift

Kindness - the manner of Allah’s dealing (gentle, merciful approach)

Favour - the substance of what is given (blessings, help, protection)

ۗ وَاللّٰهُ وَاسِعٌ عَلِيْمٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

وَاسِعٌ

Root letters are connected to vast, wide, extensive, encompass, be able

Are connected to power, strength, capability, authority and ability

Are connected to being rich, wealthy, having vast means, plenty, abundance and generous

Power - ability or capacity to act or carry out something

Authority - recognised right or legitimacy to act or decide

عَلِيْمٌ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

يُّؤْتِي الْحِكْمَةَ مَنْ يَّشَآءُ ۚ وَمَنْ يُّؤْتَ الْحِكْمَةَ فَقَدْ اُوْتِيَ خَيْرًا كَثِيْرًا ؕ
وَمَا يَذَّكَّرُ اِلَّآ اُولُوا الْاَلْبَابِ ﴿٢٦٩﴾

2:269

He grants wisdom—perfect judgement, self-restraint, and leadership—ensuring knowledge is used correctly, to whoever He wills. And whoever is granted wisdom has certainly been granted an abundantly good state—leading to well-being. Yet no one will reflect and be mindful except the possessors of good sense, reason, and understanding.

Notes:

يُّؤْتِي , يُّؤْتَ and اُوْتِيَ

Root letters are connected to giving, granting and bestowing

الْحِكْمَةَ

Root letters are connected to judging, deciding and decreeing

Are connected to restraining the intellect from bad things

Are connected to wisdom

Are connected to accuracy, perfection and precision

يَشَآءُ

Root letters are connected to wanting, willing and wishing

قَدْ

Used for emphasis with past tense action i.e. certainly

خَيْرًا

Root letters are connected to good, virtuous and generous

Are connected to a good state and well-being

Are connected to good qualities and actions

كَثِيْرًا

Root letters are connected to increase, multiply, grow and abundance

يَذَّكَّرُ

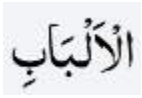
Root letters are connected to thinking, remembering, being mindful, reflecting, and recalling

Reflect - to think deeply and carefully about something, drawing lessons and understanding.

Be mindful - to keep those lessons consciously present, allowing them to influence one's attitude and conduct.



Root letters are connected to possessing, owning and being endowed with



Root letters are connected to mind, intelligence, reason, understanding and being sensible

Good sense - sound judgement in conduct and decisions

Reason - logical reflection and analysis

Understanding - grasping meanings and consequences

وَمَآ اَنْفَقْتُمْ مِّنْ نَّفَقَةٍ اَوْ نَذَرْتُمْ مِّنْ نَّذْرٍ فَاِنَّ اللّٰهَ يَعْلَمُهٗ ؕ وَمَا
لِلظّٰلِمِيْنَ مِنْ اَنْصَارٍ ﴿۲۷۰﴾

2:270

And whatever you have readily used [of your possessions] from any expenditure [in good ways], or have made a vow—any vow—then certainly, Allah completely knows and fully understands it. And there is not for those who are firmly established in, and persist in, being unjust—transgressing proper limits—even a single one from those who are ever firmly established in, and persist in, protecting, supporting, or granting success.

Notes:

اَنْفَقْتُمْ and نَّفَقَةٍ

Root letters are connected to disposing of something quickly

Are connected to exhausting, using up and spending

Are connected to expenditure, disbursement, support, cost, expense and spending

نَذَرْتُمْ and نَّذْرٍ

Root letters are connected to dedicating, consecrating and vowing

Are connected to a vow, solemn pledge and a votive offering

فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ يَعْلَمُهُ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

يَعْلَمُهُ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

وَمَا لِلظَّٰلِمِينَ مِنْ أَنصَارٍ

Noun sentence indicating established state and a strong negation

لِلظَّٰلِمِينَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to be unjust, act tyrannically, do wrong, do evil, harm, oppress and transgress proper limits

أَنصَارٍ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to helping, assisting and rendering victorious

Are connected to defending, saving and protecting

إِنْ تُبْدُوا الصَّدَقٰتِ فَنِعِمَّا هِيَ ۚ وَإِنْ تُخْفُوهَا وَتُؤْتُوهَا الْفُقَرَآءَ فَهُوَ
خَيْرٌ لَّكُمْ ۚ وَيُكَفِّرُ عَنكُم مِّن سَيِّاٰتِكُمْ ۗ وَاللّٰهُ بِمَا تَعْمَلُونَ خَبِيرٌ ﴿٢٧١﴾

2:271

If you all openly express or reveal—verbally or physically—your acts of sincere charity, then, in that case, how incredibly excellent it is—leading to a pleasant life. Yet if you disguise, conceal, and keep it secret, and give it to the poor—possessing only the minimum needed to sustain life—then, in that case, it is preferred and better for your well-being. And [in either case] He will cover, bury, and forgive for you some of your sins and their evil consequences. And Allah is innately and eternally the One who, with whatever you do, is fully acquainted with its apparent and hidden realities.

Notes:

تُبْدُوا

Root letters are connected to disclosing, revealing, declaring openly, expressing verbally and physically

Express - to bring something outwardly into manifestation through speech or action

Reveal - to uncover or make something hidden or internal externally visible or known

الصَّدَقٰتِ

Root letters are connected to donating charity

Are connected to keep one's word, be sincere and to believe

فَنِعِمَّا

A phrase of praise

Structure shows extra emphasis

Root letters are connected to blessing someone with a life of ease and comfort, a blissful life and peace of mind – e.g. Quran 82:13

تُخْفُوْهَا

Root letters are connected to hiding, concealing, keeping secret

Are connected to disguising

تُؤْتُوْهَا

Root letters are connected to giving, granting and bestowing

الْفُقَرَآءَ

Root letters are connected to poor, needy, lack and to want

Are connected to possessing only what is sufficient for life

خَيْرٌ

A comparative

Root letters are connected to good, virtuous and generous

Are connected to choosing and preferring

Are connected to something better and superior

Are connected to a good state and well-being

يُكَفِّرُ

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to forgiving, effacing and pardoning

سَيِّاٰتِكُمْ

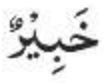
Root letters are connected to sins, misdeed, offense, crime and recompense of evil deeds

وَاللّٰهُ بِمَا تَعْمَلُوْنَ خَبِيْرٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

تَعْمَلُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to working, doing and acting



Root letters are connected to being familiar, well-acquainted, possessing knowledge, and an expert

Are connected to knowledge of the internal and real state of things

Are connected to intelligence, report, communication, message, affair and matter

لَيْسَ عَلَيْكَ هُدٰىهُمْ وَلٰكِنَّ اللّٰهَ يَهْدِيْ مَنْ يَّشَآءُ ۗ وَمَا تُنْفِقُوْا مِنْ
خَيْرٍ فَلِاَنْفُسِكُمْ ۗ وَمَا تُنْفِقُوْنَ اِلَّا ابْتِغَآءَ وَجْهِ اللّٰهِ ۗ وَمَا تُنْفِقُوْا مِنْ
خَيْرٍ يُّوَفَّ اِلَيْكُمْ وَاَنْتُمْ لَا تُظْلَمُوْنَ ﴿٢٧٢﴾

2:272

Their guidance is not established [as an obligation] upon you. However, Allah gifts guidance by showing and leading to and along the right way of life to whoever He wills. And whatever you all readily use [of your possessions] from any good benefits [only] yourselves, as it leads to well-being, while you do not readily use [of your possessions] except in an established state of desiring and seeking the honourable presence of Allah [His pleasure]. And whatever you readily use [of your possessions] from any good, its full share [of reward] will be faithfully and completely given to you. And you—you will not suffer any injustice.

Notes:

هُدٰىهُمْ and يَهْدِيْ

Root letters are connected to guidance, direction, showing, being led, being supplied and a way of life

Are connected to gifting and bestowing

Are connected to direction and discovering the right way

يَشَآءُ

Root letters are connected to wanting, willing and wishing

تُنفِقُوا and تُنفِقُونَ

Root letters are connected to disposing of something quickly

Are connected to exhausting, using up and spending

خَيْرٍ

Root letters are connected to good, virtuous and generous

Are connected to a good state and well-being

Are connected to good qualities and actions

فَلِأَنفُسِكُمْ

Root letters are connected to soul, person, mind, human being and an individual

ٱبْتِغَآءَ

Noun indicating an established state

Root letters are connected to seeking, desiring, striving and aspiring for

وَجْهِ

Root letters are connected to face

Are connected to honour, esteem, repute and rank

يُوَفَّ

Root letters are connected to paying in full, complete, give full share and to do full justice

Are connected to doing full justice and carry out fully

Are connected to being faithful and loyal

Faithfully - quality of commitment

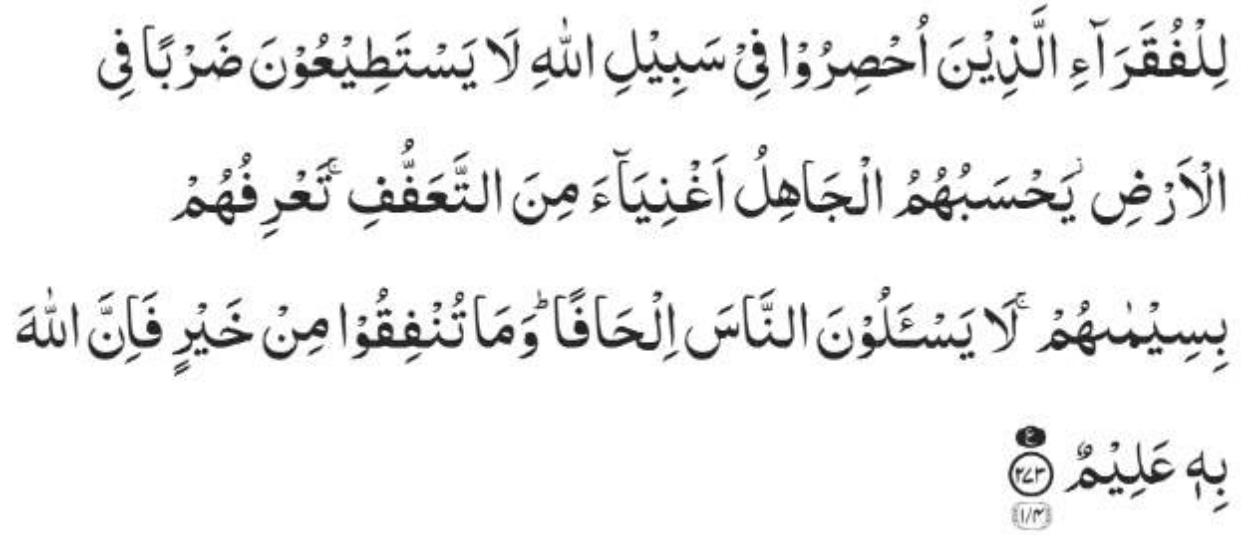
Completely - extent of fulfilment

وَأَنتُمْ لَا تُظْلَمُونَ

Pronoun “you all” is used twice for added emphasis

تُظْلَمُونَ

Root letters are connected to be unjust, act tyrannically, do wrong, do evil, harm, oppress and transgress proper limits


لِلْفُقَرَآءِ الَّذِيْنَ اُحْصِرُوْا فِيْ سَبِيْلِ اللّٰهِ لَا يَسْتَطِيْعُوْنَ ضَرْبًا فِي
الْاَرْضِ يَحْسَبُهُمُ الْجَاهِلُ اَغْنِيَآءَ مِنَ التَّعَفُّفِ ۚ تَعْرِفُهُمْ
بِسِيْمٰهُمْ ۚ لَا يَسْـَٔلُوْنَ النَّاسَ اِلْحَافًا ۗ وَمَا تُنْفِقُوْا مِنْ خَيْرٍ فَاِنَّ اللّٰهَ
بِهٖ عَلِيْمٌ ﴿٢٧٣﴾

2:273

[And whatever you all readily use of your possessions from any good includes[1]] the poor—possessing only the minimum needed to sustain life—those who have been hindered, restrained, or prevented in the path of [obeying] Allah, unable to travel [freely and safely] throughout the land. The one who is firmly established in, and persists in, being unaware and neglectful assumes them to be in a state of self-sufficiency and freedom from need due to [their] shyness and self-restraint. You [can] discover and recognise them by their distinguished characteristic—they do not request or demand from people persistently, causing annoyance. And whatever you readily use [of your possessions] from any good—leading to well-being—then certainly, Allah is innately and eternally the One who, concerning it, completely knows and fully understands.

Notes:

1 - This verse continues from the previous one, Quran 2:271, emphasizing the importance of giving charity to the poor

لِلْفُقَرَآءِ

Root letters are connected to poor, needy, lack and to want

Are connected to possessing only what is sufficient for life

أُحْصِرُوْا

Root letters are connected to preventing, hindering, restraining, withholding, encircling, blocking and surrounding

Hindered - faced with obstacles that make progress difficult

Restrained - held back or limited from acting freely

Prevented - completely stopped or unable to proceed

سَبِيْلِ

Root letters are connected to a way, path and road

يَسْتَطِيْعُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to be in a position to do, to get, carry out, be able and be capable

ضَرْبًا

Root letters are connected to striking, putting forward and travelling

يَحْسَبُهُمُ

Root letters are connected to reckoning, calculating and assuming

الْجَاهِلُ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to ignorant, unaware and neglectful

اَغْنِيَآءَ

Noun indicating an established state

Root letters are connected to rich, wealthy and prosperous

Are connected to sufficiency and adequacy

Are connected to free from want and free of need

Self-sufficiency - possessing enough for oneself; not depending upon others

Freedom of need - being without want, deficiency, or necessity

التَّعَفُّفِ

Root letters are connected to modest, chaste, abstinent, refraining and holding back

Are connected to shyness and being ashamed

تَعْرِفُهُمْ

Root letters are connected to know, recognise, perceive, discover, experience, find out and be aware

Discover - to notice, perceive, or uncover something that was not immediately apparent

Recognise - to identify and understand what that discovered characteristic signifies

بِسِيْمٰهُمْ

Root letters are connected to distinguishing and conferring distinction

Are connected to characteristic, mark, character traits, outward characteristic and features

يَسْـَٔلُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to asking, requesting and demanding

اِلْحَافًا

Root letters are connected to requesting and demanding urgently, being importunate and obtrusive when asking

تُنْفِقُوْا

Root letters are connected to disposing of something quickly

Are connected to exhausting, using up and spending

خَيْرٍ

Root letters are connected to good, virtuous and generous

Are connected to a good state and well-being

Are connected to good qualities and actions

فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ بِهِ عَلِيمٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

عَلِيمٌ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

اَلَّذِيْنَ يُنْفِقُوْنَ اَمْوَالَهُمْ بِالَّيْلِ وَالنَّهَارِ سِرًّا وَّعَلَانِيَةً فَلَهُمْ
اَجْرُهُمْ عِنْدَ رَبِّهِمْ ۚ وَلَا خَوْفٌ عَلَيْهِمْ وَلَا هُمْ يَحْزَنُوْنَ ﴿٢٧٤﴾

2:274

Those who readily use their possessions [in good ways] throughout the night and day, in states of secrecy and public view—for them [especially] is the reward of their efforts in the presence of their nurturing Lord—educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority. And fear of the future will not dominate them, and they—they [in particular] will not grieve or mourn over the past.

Notes:

يُنْفِقُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to disposing of something quickly

Are connected to exhausting, using up and spending

اَمْوَالَهُمْ

Root letters are connected to property, assets, goods, wealth, and possessions

سِرًّا

Root letters are connected to secret, secret though and concealment

عَلَانِيَةً

Root letters are connected to openness, publicity and publicly

لَّهُمْ اَجْرُهُمْ عِنْدَ رَبِّهِمْ

Structure shows a special distinction and entitlement to reward

اَجْرُهُمْ

Root letters are connected to reward, recompense and wages for work done

عِنْدَ

Preposition – with, in the company of, in despite of, together and in the estimation

رَبِّهِمْ

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

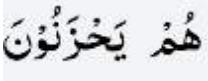
Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

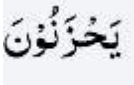
Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended



Root letters are connected to being frightened and scared of a future event



Pronoun “they” is used twice for added emphasis



Root letters are connected to being sad, grieving and mourning over something in the past

Grieve - deep internal sorrow

Mourn - outward expression of sorrow

اَلَّذِيْنَ يَاْكُلُوْنَ الرِّبٰوا لَا يَقُوْمُوْنَ اِلَّا كَمَا يَقُوْمُ الَّذِيْ يَتَخَبَّطُهُ
الشَّيْطٰنُ مِنَ الْمَسِّ ۭ ذٰلِكَ بِاَنَّهُمْ قَالُوْٓا اِنَّمَا الْبَيْعُ مِثْلُ الرِّبٰوا ۘ
وَاَحَلَّ اللّٰهُ الْبَيْعَ وَحَرَّمَ الرِّبٰوا ۭ فَمَنْ جَاۗءَهٗ مَوْعِظَةٌ مِّنْ رَّبِّهٖ فَانْتَهٰى
فَلَهٗ مَا سَلَفَ ۭ وَاَمْرُهٗٓ اِلَى اللّٰهِ ۭ وَمَنْ عَادَ فَاُولٰۗىِٕكَ اَصْحٰبُ النَّارِ ۚ هُمْ
فِيْهَا خٰلِدُوْنَ ۝٢٧٥

2:275

Those who devour and utilise financial interest—seeking excess—do not rise, exist, and manage affairs except like the one who rises, exists and manages affairs in a manner resulting from the Devil striking him, causing him to wander erratically and blindly out of madness. That is because they [boldly] claimed, "Financial business is nothing more than the equivalent of financial interest." Whereas, Allah has made lawful and established financial business, and He has made unlawful financial interest [cutting off harm from you[1]]. Therefore, to whoever a spiritual counsel appealing to conscience, and a warning of negative consequences, has reached from his nurturing Lord—educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority—and has ceased [his unlawful financial activities] and behaves with reason, then for him is whatever has passed [of earnings], and his matter is [left] to Allah. But whoever has returned [to financial interest], re-establishing himself in it, then those [such people] are the inmates of the Fire; they, in it, will be firmly established—abiding forever.

Notes:

1 - Cutting off harm is supported by Islamic teachings e.g. Quran 7:157

يَأْكُلُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to eating up, swallowing, consuming, devouring, destroying, gnaw and eat away

الرِّبٰوا

Root letters are connected to interest, usurious interest and usury

Are connected to increasing, exceeding and growing

Are connected to surplus and excess

يَقُوْمُوْنَ and يَقُوْمُ

Root letters are connected to being situated, existing, standing up, managing affairs, rising and supporting

يَتَخَبَّطُهُ

Root letters are connected to beating, striking and bringing down

Are connected to wandering about, wandering blindly and behaving erratically

Are connected to confusion and madness

الْمَسِّ

Root letters are connected to touching, affliction, insanity and madness

قَالُوْٓا

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

الْبَيْعُ and الْبَيْعَ

Root letters are connected to sale, conclusion of bargain, transaction, business deal and exchanging of property

مِثْلُ

Root letters are connected to imitate, copy and be equal

اَحَلَّ

Root letters are connected to making lawful, making permissible, establishing and stabilizing

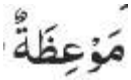
حَرَّمَ

Root letters are connected to declaring unlawful and forbidding

Are connected to cutting off, divesting, taking off, withdrawing and withholding



Root letters are connected to come, produce, confront, set forth and reaching



Root letters are connected to preaching, admonishing and warning

Are connected to spiritual counsel, religious advice and a reminder of consequences

Spiritual counsel - inward moral guidance

Warning - outward consequence alert



Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

فَانْتَهٰى

Root letters are connected to refraining, desisting, abstaining and renouncing

Are connected to being intelligent, understanding, reasonable and wise

سَلَفَ

Root letters are connected to being over, passing, be bygone and preceding

اَمْرُهٗٓ

Root letters are connected to ordering, commanding, instructing and entrusting

عَادَ

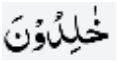
Root letters are connected to returning and repeatedly returning

Are connected to being accustomed, habituated and conditioned

Are connected to reestablishing and resuming

اَصْحٰبُ

Root letters are connected to companionship, association, closely associated, inmates and occupants



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to be everlasting, being immortal and abiding forever

يَمْحَقُ اللّٰهُ الرِّبٰوا وَيُرْبِي الصَّدَقٰتِ ۗ وَاللّٰهُ لَا يُحِبُّ كُلَّ كَفَّارٍ اَثِيْمٍ ﴿٢٧٦﴾

2:276

Allah nullifies the benefits of financial interest, and He cultivates acts of sincere charity. And Allah—He does not like each and every one who is firmly established in, and persists in, neglecting, dissociating from, and denying their obligations to Him—ever firmly established in, and persisting in, intentional sinful behaviour, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them].

Notes:

يَمْحَقُ

Root letters are connected to effacing, blotting out, eradicating, depriving of blessings and withdrawing blessings

الرِّبٰوا

Root letters are connected to interest, usurious interest and usury

Are connected to increasing, exceeding and growing

Are connected to surplus and excess

يُرْبِي

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

الصَّدَقٰتِ

Root letters are connected to donating charity

Are connected to keep one’s word, being sincere and being truthful

وَاللّٰهُ لَا يُحِبُّ

Pronoun “He” is used twice for added emphasis

يُحِبُّ

Root letters are connected liking, loving and wanting

كَفَّارٍ

Structure indicates intensity

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty



Structure indicates intensity

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to sin, err, slip, crime and offense

Are connected to intentional

إِنَّ الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا وَعَمِلُوا الصَّالِحَاتِ وَأَقَامُوا الصَّلَاةَ وَآتَوُا الزَّكَاةَ لَهُمْ
أَجْرُهُمْ عِنْدَ رَبِّهِمْ وَلَا خَوْفٌ عَلَيْهِمْ وَلَا هُمْ يَحْزَنُونَ ﴿٢٧٧﴾

2:277

Certainly, those who have believed, as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith: having strived to be firmly established in, and persist in, acts of righteous conduct; having sincerely established the prayer[1]—each one of them—which disciplines conduct [through the remembrance of the Hereafter], while fulfilling its conditions and etiquettes; and having given the obligatory charity, which purifies the spiritual heart [from greed] and causes increase [in blessings]—for them [alone] is the reward of their efforts in the presence of their nurturing Lord—educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority: spiritual well-being and peace of mind. And fear of the future will not dominate them, and they—they [in particular] will not grieve or mourn over the past.

Notes:

1 - The prayers are mentioned in the singular, indicating that the five obligatory prayers are regarded as one unified act of worship, and therefore none of them can be left out

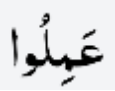
آمَنُوا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit



Root letters are connected to working, doing and acting

Are connected to working with effort and difficulty i.e. striving

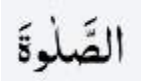


Root letters are connected to being good, just, being in order, being righteous and pious and to do appropriate things



Root letters are connected to guarding, preserving, being sincere, honest, rectifying and establishing

Are connected to doing properly, putting in order and arranging well



Root letters are connected to praying and worshipping

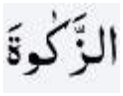
Are connected to straightening something or making it soft by fire

The stages of the prayer mirror the stages of the Hereafter, serving as a continual reminder of it e.g. Quran 83:4-6, 77:48, 68:42-43 and 45:28



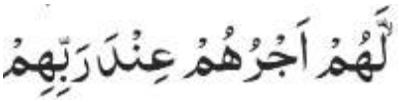
Root letters are connected to coming, arriving, bringing, advancing and accomplishing

Root letters are connected to performing, executing, giving and granting

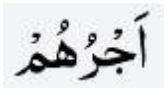


Root letters are connected to growing, increasing, purification and purity of heart

Are connected to the obligatory charity, alms and charity



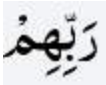
Structure shows exclusivity and entitlement to reward



Root letters are connected to reward, recompense and wages for work done



Preposition – with, in the company of, in despite of, together and in the estimation



Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

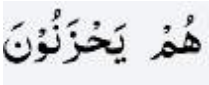
Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

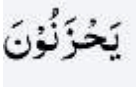
Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended



Root letters are connected to being frightened and scared of a future event



Pronoun “they” is used twice for added emphasis



Root letters are connected to being sad, grieving and mourning over something in the past

Grieve - deep internal sorrow

Mourn - outward expression of sorrow

يٰٓاَيُّهَا الَّذِيْنَ اٰمَنُوا اتَّقُوا اللّٰهَ وَذَرُوْا مَا بَقِيَ مِنَ الرِّبٰٓوا اِنْ كُنْتُمْ مُّؤْمِنِيْنَ ﴿٢٧٨﴾

2:278

Those who have claimed to believe! Devoutly fulfil your duties to Allah—thereby protecting yourselves from harm and arranging all your matters correctly—and abandon whatever traces have remained of financial interest, if you are, in fact, firmly established as those who sincerely fulfil the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind.

Notes:

اٰمَنُوْا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

اتَّقُوا

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious



Root letters are connected leave behind, leave alone, forsake and abandon



Root letters are connected to remaining, maintaining, left behind and lasting

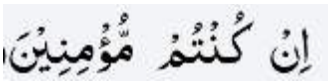
Are connected to remainder, remnant, residue, that which is left, and remain



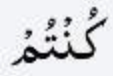
Root letters are connected to interest, usurious interest and usury

Are connected to increasing, exceeding and growing

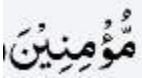
Are connected to surplus and excess



Structure indicates an established state



Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place



Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

فَإِنْ لَّمْ تَفْعَلُوْا فَأْذَنُوْا بِحَرْبٍ مِّنَ اللّٰهِ وَرَسُوْلِهٖ ۚ وَإِنْ تُبْتُمْ فَلَكُمْ
رُءُوْسُ أَمْوَالِكُمْ ۚ لَا تَظْلِمُوْنَ وَلَا تُظْلَمُوْنَ ﴿٢٧٩﴾

2:279

But if you all have not accomplished it [abandoning financial interest], then be informed of a threat—an advanced notice of a war from Allah and His Messenger—who sincerely conveys a divine code of conduct from Allah. Whereas, if you have turned [to Allah] in sincere repentance—abandoning sinful behaviour—then for you is the original amount of your possessions [from the transaction involving financial interest]. You will neither commit injustice—transgressing proper limits—nor will you suffer injustice.

Notes:

تَفْعَلُوْا

Root letters are connected to doing an action, activity and accomplishing a task

فَأْذَنُوْا

Root letters are connected to be informed, learn and hear

Are connected to an announcement, advance notice and threat

بِحَرْبٍ

Root letters are connected to war, fight, combat and battle

وَرَسُوْلِهٖ

Root letters are connected to dispatching, a message and corresponding

Are connected to a messenger, delegate and apostle

Are connected to being friendly, intimate and free of affectation

Are connected to the one who carries by consecutive progressions the relation of the tidings of Him who has sent him

تُبْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to repenting, turning and renouncing disobedience and sins

رُءُوْسُ

Root letters are connected to capital of property, principal of property and capital sum

اَمْوَالِكُمْ

Root letters are connected to property, assets, goods, wealth, and possessions

تَظْلِمُوْنَ and تُظْلَمُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to doing wrong, evil, being unjust, not fulfilling the rights of others

Are connected to misplacing or misusing something

وَاِنْ كَانَ ذُوْ عُسْرَةٍ فَنَظِرَةٌ اِلٰى مَيْسَرَةٍ ؕ وَاَنْ تَصَدَّقُوْا خَيْرٌ لَّكُمْ اِنْ كُنْتُمْ تَعْلَمُوْنَ ﴿۲۸۰﴾

2:280

And if the possessor of difficulty, hardship, and distress is compelled into a state of straightened circumstances, then consideration and postponement [of the debt] until comfortable circumstances [when repayment can be easily accomplished]. Yet that you all [readily] remit it as an act of sincere charity is preferred and better for your well-being, if you are, in fact, firmly established in recognising, knowing, or understanding.

Notes:

كَانَ ذُوْ عُسْرَةٍ

Structure indicates an established state

كَانَ and كُنْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

ذُوْ

Root letters are connected to possessing, owning and being endowed with

عُسْرَةٍ

Root letters are connected to trying situation, hardship, distress, difficulty, straightened circumstances, poverty and hardness

Are connected to being pressed, urged, compelled and forced

Difficulty - an obstacle, challenge, or inconvenience

Hardship - a serious burden, adversity, or deprivation

Distress - suffering, anguish, or discomfort

فَنَظِرَةٌ

Root letters are connected to delay, postponement and deferment

Are connected to considering, to regard and give respite

مَيْسَرَةٍ

Root letters are connected to easily attainable, easily done and easy to accomplish

Are connected to ease, comfort, abundance, easiness of circumstances and sufficiency

تَصَدَّقُوا

The second ت has been dropped, leaving a single ت which can reflect the action occurring quickly

Root letters are connected to donating charity and to remit as charity

Are connected to keep one’s word, being sincere and being truthful

خَيْرٌ

A comparative

Root letters are connected to good, virtuous and generous

Are connected to choosing and preferring

Are connected to something better and superior

Are connected to a good state and well-being

إِنْ كُنْتُمْ تَعْلَمُوْنَ

Structure indicates an established state

تَعْلَمُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

وَاتَّقُوْا يَوْمًا تُرْجَعُوْنَ فِيْهِ اِلَى اللّٰهِ ثُمَّ تُوَفّٰى كُلُّ نَفْسٍ مَّا كَسَبَتْ وَهُمْ لَا يُظْلَمُوْنَ ﴿٢٨١﴾

2:281

And protect yourselves from the harm of a Momentous Day by devoutly fulfilling your duties—thereby arranging all your matters correctly—a Day when you will be returned and presented in it to Allah [alone] for critical examination. Thereafter, each and every person will be given their full share, faithfully and completely, according to what they have earned. And they—they will not suffer any injustice.

Notes:

اتَّقُوْا

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious

يَوْمًا

Root letters are connected to days, age, era and time

Are connected to momentous and important days

تُرْجَعُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to coming back, returning, resorting or reverting to a former place/state/quality

Are connected to present oneself and examine critically

تُرْجَعُوْنَ فِيْهِ اِلَى اللّٰهِ

Structure shows exclusivity

تُوَفّٰى

Root letters are connected to paying in full, complete, give full share and to do full justice

Are connected to doing full justice and carry out fully

Are connected to being faithful and loyal

Faithfully - quality of commitment

Completely - extent of fulfilment

نَفْسٍ

Root letters are connected to soul, person, mind, human being and an individual

كَسَبَتْ

Root letters are connected to acquiring, earning, gathering, obtaining, gaining

وَهُمْ لَا يُظْلَمُونَ

Pronoun “they” is used twice for added emphasis

يُظْلَمُونَ

Root letters are connected to be unjust, act tyrannically, do wrong, do evil, harm, oppress and transgress proper limits

يٰٓاَيُّهَا الَّذِيْنَ اٰمَنُوْٓا اِذَا تَدَايَنْتُمْ بِدَيْنٍ اِلٰٓى اَجَلٍ مُّسَمًّى فَاكْتُبُوْهُ ؕ
وَلْيَكْتُبْ بَّيْنَكُمْ كَاتِبٌۢ بِالْعَدْلِ ۠ وَلَا يَاْبَ كَاتِبٌ اَنْ يَّكْتُبَ كَمَا
عَلَّمَهُ اللّٰهُ فَلْيَكْتُبْ ۚ وَلْيُمْلِلِ الَّذِيْ عَلَيْهِ الْحَقُّ وَلْيَتَّقِ اللّٰهَ رَبَّهٗ
وَلَا يَبْخَسْ مِنْهُ شَيْـًٔا ؕ فَاِنْ كَانَ الَّذِيْ عَلَيْهِ الْحَقُّ سَفِيْهًا اَوْ
ضَعِيْفًا اَوْ لَا يَسْتَطِيْعُ اَنْ يُّمِلَّ هُوَ فَلْيُمْلِلْ وَلِيُّهٗ بِالْعَدْلِ ؕ
وَاسْتَشْهِدُوْا شَهِيْدَيْنِ مِنْ رِّجَالِكُمْ ۚ فَاِنْ لَّمْ يَكُوْنَا رَجُلَيْنِ
فَرَجُلٌ وَّامْرَاَتٰنِ مِمَّنْ تَرْضَوْنَ مِنَ الشُّهَدَآءِ اَنْ تَضِلَّ اِحْدٰىهُمَا
فَتُذَكِّرَ اِحْدٰىهُمَا الْاُخْرٰى ؕ وَلَا يَاْبَ الشُّهَدَآءُ اِذَا مَا دُعُوْا ؕ وَلَا
تَسْـَٔمُوْٓا اَنْ تَكْتُبُوْهُ صَغِيْرًا اَوْ كَبِيْرًا اِلٰٓى اَجَلِهٖ ؕ ذٰلِكُمْ اَقْسَطُ عِنْدَ
اللّٰهِ وَاَقْوَمُ لِلشَّهَادَةِ وَاَدْنٰٓى اَلَّا تَرْتَابُوْٓا اِلَّآ اَنْ تَكُوْنَ تِجَارَةً
حَاضِرَةً تُدِيْرُوْنَهَا بَيْنَكُمْ فَلَيْسَ عَلَيْكُمْ جُنَاحٌ اَلَّا تَكْتُبُوْهَا ؕ
وَاَشْهِدُوْٓا اِذَا تَبَايَعْتُمْ ۪ وَلَا يُضَآرَّ كَاتِبٌ وَّلَا شَهِيْدٌ ؕ وَاِنْ تَفْعَلُوْا
فَاِنَّهٗ فُسُوْقٌۢ بِكُمْ ؕ وَاتَّقُوا اللّٰهَ ؕ وَيُعَلِّمُكُمُ اللّٰهُ ؕ وَاللّٰهُ بِكُلِّ شَيْءٍ
عَلِيْمٌ ﴿٢٨٢﴾

2:282

Those who have claimed to believe! Whenever you mutually engage in any financial transaction involving a debt [to be repaid] by a fixed deadline, then, in that case, make a record of it. The one who records it between you must do so according to honesty, fairness, and straightforwardness. And the one who records should not dislike, disregard, or refuse to record it in the manner Allah has taught and clarified to him; therefore, he should record it. And the one upon whom the obligation [of repayment] rests [the debtor] should dictate, and he must protect himself from harm and arrange all his matters correctly by devoutly fulfilling his duties to Allah, his nurturing Lord—educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority. And he must not neglect or decrease from it [the debt] anything—wrongfully withholding what is due. But if the one upon whom the obligation [of repayment] rests [the debtor] is in a firmly established and persistent state of either possessing limited understanding [of finances] or being intellectually disabled, or is unable to dictate independently, then, in that case, his legal guardian must dictate [on his behalf] according to honesty, fairness, and straightforwardness. And call upon two reliable witnesses from amongst your men to attest [to the transaction]. But if both of them [the reliable witnesses] are not men, then, in that case, a single man and two women from whoever you are pleased with, approve of, and accept as reliable witnesses; so that if one of the two women makes a mistake, then the other can remind and advise her [to the right course][1]. And the reliable witnesses must not dislike, disregard, or refuse no matter when they are summoned [to attest or to give testimony]. And do not dislike, be reluctant, or averse to recording it [any financial transaction involving a debt], whether it is considered insignificant or considerable—burdensome as it may be—recorded according to its deadline. That is more proper and just in the presence of Allah; more upright, established, and reliable as clear evidence; and closer to you not doubting, being disturbed by, suspecting, or questioning it—except when it is established as a fully settled transaction [and not deferred], which you conduct between yourselves, then, in that case, there is no blame upon you in not recording it. But call upon to

witness whenever you conclude a financial transaction with each other. The one who records or the one who witnesses must not harass, harm, or coerce, nor must they be harassed, harmed, or coerced. And if you influence or engage in doing so, then certainly it is an established state of openly transgressing the limits of goodness by means of you, and firmly attached to you. And devoutly fulfil your duties to Allah—thereby protecting yourselves from harm and arranging all your matters correctly—Allah will teach and clarify to you. And Allah is innately and eternally the One who, concerning each and every thing, completely knows and fully understands.

Notes:

1 – Because most women historically did not participate in business transactions, they were unfamiliar with commercial contracts, and their primary role as homemakers left them with little time for legal proceedings. To address this, taking two female witnesses in place of one male witness was advised, ensuring that if both were called upon, at least one would be available and able to testify



Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

تَدَايَنْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to contracting a mutual loan and buying and selling with each other on credit

بِدَيْنٍ

Root letters are connected to debt, financial obligation, financial claim and liability

اَجَلٍ and اَجَلِهٖ

Root letters are connected to appointed time and date, deadline, term, period and specified time

مُّسَمًّى

Root letters are connected to named, called, fixed, specified, marked and known

تَكْتُبُوْهُ , يَّكْتُبَ , كَاتِبٌۢ , لْيَكْتُبْ , فَاكْتُبُوْهُ ؕ

Root letters are connected to write, pen, write down, inscribe and record

بِالْعَدْلِ

Root letters are connected to straightness, straightforward, justice, honesty, uprightness and fair

يَأْبَ

Root letters are connected to refusing, rejecting, turning down, distaining, scorning, disapproving, holding back, hating, refraining and abstaining

عَلَّمَهُ , وَيُعَلِّمُكُمُ and عَلِيْمٌ

Root letters are connected to teaching, instructing and educating

Are connected to distinguishing, differentiating and making apparent

Are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

لْيُمْلِلِ , يُمِلَّ and فَلْيُمْلِلْ

Root letters are connected to dictating

الْحَقُّ

Root letters are connected to duty, right, obligation and claim

وَلْيَتَّقِ and وَاتَّقُوا

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious

رَبَّهُ

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

يَبْخَسْ

Root letters are connected to decreasing, diminishing, reducing, lessening, disregarding, neglecting, making deficient, withholding what is due, injuring, and wronging

شَيْـًٔا

Root letters are connected to a thing, matter or affair

كَانَ الَّذِیْ عَلَیْهِ الْحَقُّ سَفِیْهًا اَوْ ضَعِیْفًا

Structure indicates an established state

كَانَ, يَكُوْنَا and تَكُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

سَفِیْهًا

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to incompetent, weak of judgement and poor in understanding

ضَعِیْفًا

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to weak, feeble, frail and weakness of mind and body

يَسْتَطِيْعُ

Root letters are connected to be in a position to do, to get, carry out, be able and be capable

وَلِيُّهُۥ

Root letters are connected to friend, close associate, legal guardian, legally responsible and protector

وَٱسۡتَشۡهِدُواْ , شَهِيدَيۡنِ , ٱلشُّهَدَآءِ , لِلشَّهَادَةِ , وَأَشۡهِدُوٓاْ and شَهِيدٌ

Root letters are connected to calling upon as a witness, cite as a witness and to attest

Are connected to those who possess knowledge and provide evidence i.e. expert witness

Are connected to those evidence, testimony, witness, statement and declaration

رِّجَالِكُمۡ , رَجُلَيۡنِ and فَرَجُلٞ

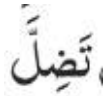
Root letters are connected to a man, assuming masculine manners and qualities and reaching the age of manhood

تَرۡضَوۡنَ

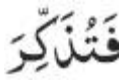
Root letters are connected to being satisfied, pleased, to consent, agree, approve and accept

Pleased with - emotionally satisfied and comforted by

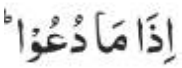
Approve of - regard as correct, fitting, and acceptable



Root letters are connected to erring, be confused and to forget



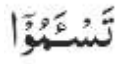
Root letters are connected to reminding, pointing out, giving good advice, calling to attention and admonishing



Structure increases chance of occurring and shows emphasis



Root letters are connected to calling, inviting, summoning and assembling



Root letters are connected to being weary, dislike, tired, fed up, detest, loathe and be averse

Dislike - the emotional response

Be reluctant to - the hesitant response

Be averse to - the settled disposition to avoid it

صَغِيْرًا

Root letters are connected to little, small in estimation, paltry, scanty and insignificant

كَبِيْرًا

Root letters are connected to becoming too great, too distressing and painful, too burdensome, to appear intolerable and insurmountable

Are connected to large, sizeable, bulky, significant, considerable and huge

اَقْسَطُ

A comparative

Root letters are connected to justice, fairness, rightness and correctness

عِنْدَ

Preposition – with, in the company of, in the presence of, in despite of, together and in the estimation

اَقْوَمُ

A comparative

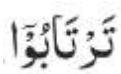
Root letters are connected to upright, established, sincere, honest and upright

Are connected to being sound, proper, in order, correct and right



A comparative

Root letters are connected to closer, nearer and inferior



Root letters are connected to being suspicious, doubting, questioning and disturbance of the mind

Doubt - uncertain between options

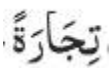
Disturbance - inner unease

Suspicion - leaning toward doubt/negation

Question - seeking clarity through inquiry



Structure indicates an established state



Root letters are connected to commerce, traffic, trade, merchandise and selling and buying

حَاضِرَةً

Root letters are connected to being present, settled, and participating

تُدِيْرُوْنَهَا

Root letters are connected to direct, aim, initiate, set in operation, initiate, direct, conduct and manage

جُنَاحٌ

Root letters are connected to misdemeanor, a minor wrongdoing, a crime, sin, blame and disobedience

تَبَايَعْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to agree on terms of sale, conclude a transaction, make contract between each other and to sell to one another

Are connected to selling, buying, transaction, business deal and exchanging of property

يُضَآرَّ

This can be considered active and passive verb

Root letters are connected to harm, impair, damage, hurt and injure

Are connected to forcing, compelling, coercing and obliging

Harass - to trouble, intimidate, or repeatedly subject someone to unwanted and distressing treatment

Harm - to cause injury, damage, or suffering, whether physical, emotional, or otherwise

Coerce - to compel or pressure someone to act against their will through force, threats, or intimidation

تَفْعَلُوْا

Root letters are connected to doing an action, to influence, activity and accomplishing a task

فَإِنَّهُۥ فُسُوقٌۢ بِكُمْ

Noun sentence indicating an established state

فُسُوقٌۢ

Root letters are connected to straying from right course, deviating, sinful, immoral, transgresses the limits of the law

Are connected to emerging outwardly

وَٱللَّهُ بِكُلِّ شَىْءٍ عَلِيمٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



Root letters are connected to a thing, matter or affair

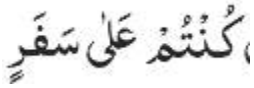
وَاِنْ كُنْتُمْ عَلٰى سَفَرٍ وَّلَمْ تَجِدُوْا كَاتِبًا فَرِهٰنٌ مَّقْبُوْضَةٌ ؕ فَاِنْ اَمِنَ
بَعْضُكُمْ بَعْضًا فَلْيُؤَدِّ الَّذِى اؤْتُمِنَ اَمَانَتَهٗ وَلْيَتَّقِ اللّٰهَ رَبَّهٗ ؕ وَلَا
تَكْتُمُوا الشَّهَادَةَ ؕ وَمَنْ يَّكْتُمْهَا فَاِنَّهٗۤ اٰثِمٌ قَلْبُهٗ ؕ وَاللّٰهُ بِمَا تَعْمَلُوْنَ
عَلِيْمٌ ﴿٢٨٣﴾

2:283

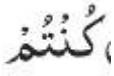
And if you all are in an established state of travel and have not found and obtained someone who can record [the financial transaction involving a debt], then, in that case, a security deposit of pledged assets is taken into possession [by the lender][1]. Then if some of you have trusted and entrusted to others—in that case, the one who has been entrusted must faithfully render and discharge his trust, and he must protect himself from harm and arrange all his matters correctly by devoutly fulfilling his duties to Allah, his nurturing Lord—educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority. And do not withhold, subdue, or conceal the testimony—the witnessing of the terms of the transaction. And whoever withholds, subdues, or conceals it, then certainly his inverted spiritual heart is firmly established in, and persists in, intentional sinful behaviour. And Allah is innately and eternally the One who, with whatever you do, completely knows and fully understands.

Notes:

1 - Pledged assets are items of value owned by a borrower that are transferred to a lender to secure a loan or debt, acting as collateral. While the borrower retains ownership, the lender takes possession—either actual or constructive—and can seize or sell these assets if the debtor defaults on payments



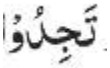
Structure indicates an established state



Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place



Root letters are connected to departure, trip, journey, tour and travelling



Root letters are connected to finding, experiencing and coming across

Are connected to getting and obtaining

Are connected to capacity, capability and ability

Find - actively seeking

Obtain - successfully acquiring or possessing

كَاتِبًا

Root letters are connected to write, pen, write down, inscribe and record

فَرِهٰنٌ

Root letters are connected to pawning, deposit as a security, mortgaging and a pledge

مَّقْبُوْضَةٌ

Root letters are connected to taking possession, apprehending, contracting, grabbing, grasping and gripping

اَمِنَ , اؤْتُمِنَ and اَمَانَتَهٗ

Root letters are connected to entrusting, confiding and trusting

Are connected to faithfulness, loyalty, integrity, reliability, trust, deposit, covenant and a pledge

فَلْيُؤَدِّ

Root letters are connected to discharging, performing, fulfilling, rendering and accomplishing

Rendering - the act of carrying out the contractual duties

Discharge - the end result, signifying that the contract is over and parties are released from further obligations

وَلْيَتَّقِ

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious

رَبَّهُ

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

تَكْتُمُوا and يَكْتُمْهَا

Root words are connected to hiding, subduing, curbing, suppressing, repressing, concealing, making secret and to withhold

Withhold - to hold back or not disclose

Subdue - to suppress, weaken, or keep under control

Conceal - to hide completely from view or knowledge

الشَّهَادَةَ

Root letters are connected to witness, testimony, evidence, decisive information, statement, information of what one witnesses, declaration of what one knows and bearing witness

فَإِنَّهُۥٓ ءَاثِمٌ قَلْبُهُۥ

Noun sentence indicating an established state

ءَاثِمٌ

Noun sentence indicating an established state

Root letters are connected to sin, err, slip, crime and offense

Are connected to intentional and premediated sin

قَلْبُهُۥ

Root letters are connected to turn around, inverse, overturned, transformed and to become perverted

Are connected to being fickle and inconsistent, changeable and fluctuating

Inverted – the internal order is backwards valuing the bad and hating the good

وَاللّٰهُ بِمَا تَعْمَلُوْنَ عَلِيْمٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

تَعْمَلُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to working, doing and acting

عَلِيْمٌ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

لِلّٰهِ مَا فِي السَّمٰوٰتِ وَمَا فِي الْاَرْضِ ۭ وَاِنْ تُبْدُوْا مَا فِيْٓ اَنْفُسِكُمْ اَوْ
تُخْفُوْهُ يُحَاسِبْكُمْ بِهِ اللّٰهُ ۭ فَيَغْفِرُ لِمَنْ يَّشَاۗءُ وَيُعَذِّبُ مَنْ يَّشَاۗءُ ۭ
وَاللّٰهُ عَلٰي كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيْرٌ ۝۲۸۴

2:284

To Allah [alone], innately and eternally, belongs whatever is in the lofty skies and whatever is in the Earth. And if you all openly express or reveal—verbally or physically—whatever is within or amongst yourselves, or you disguise, conceal, or keep it secret—Allah records and holds you accountable concerning it. Then He conceals, forgives, and corrects the affairs of whoever He wills; and He punishes—as a deterrent—whoever He wills. And Allah is innately and eternally the One who has full power, control, and ability over each and every matter, who determines and decrees according to exact measure.

Notes:

لِلّٰهِ مَا فِي السَّمٰوٰتِ وَمَا فِي الْاَرْضِ

Structure indicates exclusivity and totality

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

السَّمٰوٰتِ

Root letters are connected to sky, heaven and ceiling

Are connected to raised, elevated, high, lofty and tall

تُبْدُوْا

Root letters are connected to disclosing, revealing, declaring openly, expressing verbally and physically

Express - to bring something outwardly into manifestation through speech or action

Reveal - to uncover or make something hidden or internal externally visible or known

اَنْفُسِكُمْ

Root letters are connected to soul, person, mind, human being and an individual

تُخْفُوْهُ

Root letters are connected to hiding, concealing, keeping secret

Are connected to disguising

يُحَاسِبْكُمْ

Root letters are connected to reckoning, calculating, counting, charging and taking into account

فَيَغْفِرُ

Root letters are connected to covering, concealing, veiling and hiding

Are connected to forgiving and pardoning

Are connected to correcting and rectifying affairs

يَّشَآءُ

Root letters are connected to wanting, willing and wishing

يُعَذِّبُ

Root letters are connected to prevent, hinder, deter and obstruct

Are connected to punishment and torture

وَاللّٰهُ عَلٰى كُلِّ شَىْءٍ قَدِيْرٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

شَىْءٍ

Root letters are connected to a thing, matter or affair

قَدِيْرٌ

Root letters are connected to possessing control, strength, power and ability

Are connected to determine, decree, ordain, assess, evaluate, calculate and measurement

اٰمَنَ الرَّسُوْلُ بِمَآ اُنْزِلَ اِلَيْهِ مِنْ رَّبِّهٖ وَالْمُؤْمِنُوْنَ ۭ كُلٌّ اٰمَنَ بِاللّٰهِ
وَمَلٰۗىِٕكَتِهٖ وَكُتُبِهٖ وَرُسُلِهٖ ۣ لَا نُفَرِّقُ بَيْنَ اَحَدٍ مِّنْ رُّسُلِهٖ ۣ وَقَالُوْا
سَمِعْنَا وَاَطَعْنَا ڭ غُفْرَانَكَ رَبَّنَا وَاِلَيْكَ الْمَصِيْرُ ۝۲۸۵

2:285

The Messenger—who sincerely conveys a divine code of conduct from Allah—has believed in what has been gradually revealed to him, to hold a special position [of supreme authority], from his nurturing Lord—educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority—and those who are firmly established in, and persist in, sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith have also believed, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind. Every one of them has believed in Allah, His Angels, His divine codes of conduct, and His Messengers, "We do not make any distinction between anyone from amongst His Messengers." And they have declared, "We have learned through listening attentively; and we have submitted and obeyed—Your concealment, forgiveness, and correction of affairs [are sought], our nurturing Lord, and to You [alone] is the journey, destination, and outcome."

Notes:

اٰمَنَ

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

الرَّسُولُ and وَرُسُلِهِۦ

Root letters are connected to dispatching, a message and corresponding

Are connected to a messenger, delegate and apostle

Are connected to being friendly, intimate and free of affectation

Are connected to the one who carries by consecutive progressions the relation of the tidings of Him who has sent him

أُنزِلَ

Root letters are connected to something which is sent down, comes down, descends, stops over and is granted

Are connected to something which is sent down slowly and gradually

Are connected to something which holds a special position or place

رَبِّهِۦ and رَبَّنَا

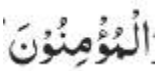
Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended



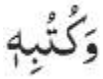
Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

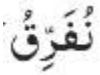
Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

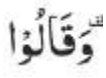
Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit



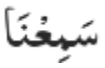
Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document



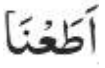
Root letters are connected to separating, distinguishing, parting, dividing and severing



Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging



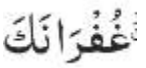
Root letters are connected to hearing, listening, paying attention and learning



Root letters are connected to obey, follow, submit, yield and comply

Submitted - the inward attitude and acceptance of authority

Obeyed - the outward response and implementation



Root letters are connected to covering, concealing, veiling and hiding

Are connected to forgiving and pardoning

Are connected to correcting and rectifying affairs

وَاِلَيْكَ الْمَصِيْرُ

Structure shows exclusivity

الْمَصِيْرُ

Root letters are connected to end, outcome, result, journey, destination and end

Journey - the transition

Destination - the location

Outcome – the finality

لَا يُكَلِّفُ اللّٰهُ نَفْسًا اِلَّا وُسْعَهَا ؕ لَهَا مَا كَسَبَتْ وَعَلَيْهَا مَا اكْتَسَبَتْ ؕ
رَبَّنَا لَا تُؤَاخِذْنَآ اِنْ نَّسِيْنَآ اَوْ اَخْطَاْنَا ۚ رَبَّنَا وَلَا تَحْمِلْ عَلَيْنَآ اِصْرًا كَمَا
حَمَلْتَهٗ عَلَى الَّذِيْنَ مِنْ قَبْلِنَا ۚ رَبَّنَا وَلَا تُحَمِّلْنَا مَا لَا طَاقَةَ لَنَا بِهٖ ۚ
وَاعْفُ عَنَّا ۟ وَاغْفِرْ لَنَا ۟ وَارْحَمْنَا ۟ اَنْتَ مَوْلٰىنَا فَانْصُرْنَا عَلَى الْقَوْمِ
الْكٰفِرِيْنَ ﴿٢٨٦﴾

2:286

Allah does not assign a duty to a person, entrust them with a responsibility, or burden them with any discomfort except according to their means, capability, and strength. For their benefit is whatever [good] they have earned, and against them is whatever [evil] they have worked hard to earn. "Our nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority], do not censure or hold us accountable if we have forgotten or become [unintentionally] unmindful; or if we have made a mistake or missed the mark. Our nurturing Lord, and do not charge upon us a burdensome, restrictive responsibility in the same manner as You charged upon those from before us. Our nurturing Lord, and do not impose upon us what there is absolutely no ability, power, or endurance for us to bear. And overlook and pardon us; and conceal, forgive, and correct our affairs; and grant us mercy, kindness, and relief. You are our powerful protecting Lord who takes responsibility for us; therefore, grant us protection, support, and success against the people [who are firmly established in, and persist in,] neglecting, dissociating from, and denying

their obligations to You, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings You granted them].”

Notes:

يُكَلِّفُ

Root letters are connected to commissioned, charged, entrusted, assigned and imposed a duty

Are connected to a burden and having to bear

Are connected to trouble, discomfort and nuisance

نَفْسًا

Root letters are connected to soul, person, mind, human being and an individual

وُسْعَهَا

Root letters are connected to holding capacity, means, capability, power, ability and strength

Means - the resources available to a person

Capability - the ability or competence to do something

Strength - physical, mental, emotional, and spiritual endurance

كَسَبَتْ

Root letters are connected to acquiring, earning, gathering, obtaining, gaining

Are connected to working hard and diligently

اكْتَسَبَتْ

More intense form of working used

Root letters are connected to acquiring, earning, gathering, obtaining, gaining

Are connected to working hard, diligently and burden oneself

رَبَّنَا

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

تُؤَاخِذْنَآ

Root letters are connected to taking firmly, adhering, obtaining and seizing

Are connected to censuring, blaming, punishing or holding accountable

نَسِيْنَآ

Root letters are connected to forgetting, neglecting, omitting, being oblivious and ignoring

اَخْطَاْنَا

Root letters are connected to committing an error, a mistake, a fault, miss the mark, deviate and miss one’s aim

تَحْمِلْ , حَمَلْتَهٗ and تُحَمِّلْنَا

Root letters are connected to loading, charging and make someone do something

Are connected to making carry and imposing

اِصْرًا

Root letters are connected to restriction, limiting, confining and keeping with certain bounds

Are connected to covenant, compact, contract, obligation and responsibility

Are connected to something burdensome, heavy and weighty

لَا طَاقَةَ

Structure indicates absolute negation

طَاقَةَ

Root letters are connected to ability, capability, endurance, aptitude, capacity, power and strength

Are connected to being able to bear or withstand

Ability - the capacity or competence to do something

Power - the strength or force required to accomplish or overcome something

Endurance - the capacity to withstand hardship, pressure, or prolonged difficulty without giving way

وَاعْفُ

Root letters are connected to wiping out, excusing, obliterating, forgiving, pardoning and overlooking

Excuse - suspend blame (refrain from blaming or holding accountable)

Overlook - avoid dwelling on the offence (ignore or pass over something intentionally)

Forgive - internally release it (release resentment or punishment)

وَاغْفِرْ

Root letters are connected to covering, concealing, veiling and hiding

Are connected to forgiving and pardoning

Are connected to correcting and rectifying affairs

وَارْحَمْنَا

Root letters are connected to having mercy, compassion, sparing, letting off, saving, kindness, tenderness and pity

Mercy – withholds punishment from those who deserve it

Kindness – a broader act of granting blessings

مَوْلٰنَا

Root letters are connected to having power and command

Are connected to protecting, supporting, befriending, managing and assuming responsibility

Are connected to master, lord, patron and owner

فَانْصُرْنَا

Root letters are connected to help, assistance, support and victory

Are connected to protecting and defending

الْكٰفِرِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

Chapter 3 – The Family of Imran





3:1

Alif, Lam, Meem.

Notes:

Certain chapters of the Quran commence with distinct, separate letters, the meanings of which remain unknown to mankind

This concealment of knowledge could serve as a subtle yet powerful reminder for the reader to approach the Quran with humility and reverence. It encourages an attitude of submission to divine wisdom—accepting and acting upon the guidance of Allah, the Exalted, even when some of deeper reasons or hidden meanings behind specific teachings are beyond human comprehension

This verse may also signify the open challenge of the Quran—to produce anything comparable to it in terms of its vast benefits for both individuals

and societies—despite the fact that the Quran is composed of the very letters that people know and use

اللّٰهُ لَآ اِلٰهَ اِلَّا هُوَ اَلْحَیُّ الْقَیُّوْمُ ۝٢

3:2

Allah—there is absolutely no God—the sole recipient of obedience, from where goodness and protection from harm are sought—except Him: innately and eternally the One who is alive—the source of life for all creation, the One who exists independently—preserving and managing the affairs of creation.

Notes:

لَآ اِلٰهَ

Structure indicates absolute negation

اِلٰهَ

Root letters are connected to god, deity, object of worship and obedience

Are connected to granting safety, peace, aid, protection and deliverance from evil

اَللّٰهُ لَآ اِلٰهَ اِلَّا هُوَ اَلْحَیُّ الْقَیُّوْمُ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

اَلْحَيُّ

Root letters are connected to living and deathless

Are connected to giving life, call into existence, reviving, reanimating and giving new life

الْقَيُّوْمُ

Root letters are connected to existing, preserving, manage affairs, established and being independent

نَزَّلَ عَلَيْكَ الْكِتٰبَ بِالْحَقِّ مُصَدِّقًا لِّمَا بَيْنَ يَدَيْهِ وَاَنْزَلَ التَّوْرٰىةَ وَالْاِنْجِيْلَ ۙ﴿۳﴾

3:3

He has gradually sent down to you—to hold a special position [of supreme authority]—the divine code of conduct [the Quran] according to the truth—correct, appropriate, and purposeful—in a firmly established and persistent state of verifying and bearing witness to what came before it: what He revealed—the Torah and the Gospel.

Notes:

نَزَّلَ and اَنْزَلَ

Root letters are connected to something which is sent down, comes down, descends, stops over and is granted

Are connected to something which is sent down slowly and gradually

Are connected to something which holds a special position or place

الْكِتٰبَ

Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document

بِالْحَقِّ

Root letters are connected to what is right, correct, true, proper, suitable, fitting and purposeful

True - matches reality

Correct - accurate and right

Appropriate - properly fitting

Purposeful - meaningful and intentional

مُصَدِّقًا

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to certifying, verifying, confirming, substantiating, attesting and bearing witness

Verifies - confirms correctness, establishes truth

Bears witness to - testifies in favour or against

بَيْنَ يَدَيْهِ

Term refers to something in front, before and in the presence of

مِنْ قَبْلُ هُدًى لِّلنَّاسِ وَاَنْزَلَ الْفُرْقَانَ ؕ اِنَّ الَّذِيْنَ كَفَرُوْا بِاٰيٰتِ اللّٰهِ
لَهُمْ عَذَابٌ شَدِيْدٌ ؕ وَاللّٰهُ عَزِيْزٌ ذُو انْتِقَامٍ ۝٤ ؕ

3:4

[He revealed the Torah and the Gospel] from before—[the Quran[1], which is] in an established state of guidance, which shows and leads to and along the right way of life, for the benefit of all people—He has gradually revealed it—to hold a special position [of supreme authority]—as the Criterion which clearly separates right guidance from misguidance. Certainly, those who have neglected, dissociated from, and denied the miraculous and evident signs of Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them]—for them is an agonising, deterrent punishment—intense and severe. And Allah is innately and eternally the One who overcomes all things, the Owner of respect and nobility, raising in honour and lowering whoever He wills, the Possessor of enacting just retribution.

Notes:

1 – After the Quran was mentioned in the previous verse, this verse returns to discussing it after mentioning the previous divine books

هُدًى

Root letters are connected to guidance, direction, showing, being led, being supplied and a way of life

Are connected to gifting and bestowing

Are connected to direction and discovering the right way

اَنْزَلَ

Root letters are connected to something which is sent down, comes down, descends, stops over and is granted

Are connected to something which is sent down slowly and gradually

Are connected to something which holds a special position or place

الْفُرْقَانَ

Root letters are connected to making a separation, distinction between truth and falsehood, between lawful and unlawful, between good and evil and between right and wrong

Criterion - a standard or measure used to distinguish and judge between things

كَفَرُوْا

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

بِاٰيٰتِ

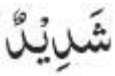
Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof



Root letters are connected to prevent, hinder, deter and obstruct

Are connected to punishment, torture, agony, painful and suffering

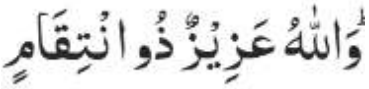
Agonising - causing intense pain and torment



Root letters are connected to becoming firm, intense, solid, hard, strong and harsh

Intense - the strength (powerful and overwhelming)

Severe – the harshness (harsh and uncompromising)



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



Root letters are connected to power, respect, honour and nobility,

Are connected to overwhelming, overcoming and dominating

Are connected to raising in esteem, elevating and exalting

Respect - honour, esteem, and recognised worth

Nobility - elevated rank, dignity, and excellence

ذُو

Root letters are connected to possessing, owning and being endowed with

انْتِقَامٍ

Root letters are connected to revenge, vengeance and penal retribution

إِنَّ اللَّهَ لَا يَخْفَىٰ عَلَيْهِ شَيْءٌ فِي الْأَرْضِ وَلَا فِي السَّمَاءِ ۝٥

3:5

Certainly, Allah—not a single thing is disguised, concealed, or kept secret from Him in the Earth, nor in the lofty sky.

Notes:

يَخْفَىٰ

Root letters are connected to hiding, concealing, keeping secret

Are connected to disguising

شَيْءٌ

Root letters are connected to a thing, matter or affair

السَّمَاءِ

Root letters are connected to sky, heaven and ceiling

Are connected to raised, elevated, high, lofty and tall

هُوَ الَّذِیْ یُصَوِّرُكُمْ فِی الْاَرْحَامِ كَیْفَ یَشَآءُ ؕ لَاۤ اِلٰهَ اِلَّا هُوَ الْعَزِیْزُ الْحَكِیْمُ ۝٦

3:6

He is the One who creates, fashions, and shapes you all within the wombs however He wills. There is absolutely no God—the sole recipient of obedience, from where goodness and protection from harm are sought—except Him: innately and eternally the One who overcomes all things, the Owner of respect and nobility, raising in honour and lowering whoever He wills, the One who rules over and controls everything, determining every affair with perfect wisdom.

Notes:

یُصَوِّرُكُمْ

Root letters are connected to forming, shaping, moulding, fashioning, creating, painting, portraying, depicting, sculpturing and making a figure

Created – brings into existence

Fashioned – gives something a particular form or arrangement; it adds the idea of deliberate formation

Shaped – gives or determines the specific outward/formal configuration

الْأَرْحَامِ

Root letters are connected to womb, relationship and kinship

يَشَآءُ

Root letters are connected to wanting, willing and wishing

لَآ اِلٰهَ

Structure indicates absolute negation

اِلٰهَ

Root letters are connected to god, deity, object of worship and obedience

Are connected to granting safety, peace, aid, protection and deliverance from evil

لَآ اِلٰهَ اِلَّا هُوَ الْعَزِيْزُ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

الْعَزِيْزُ

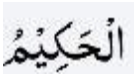
Root letters are connected to power, respect, honour and nobility,

Are connected to overwhelming, overcoming and dominating

Are connected to raising in esteem, elevating and exalting

Respect - honour, esteem, and recognised worth

Nobility - elevated rank, dignity, and excellence



Root letters are connected to judging, deciding and decreeing

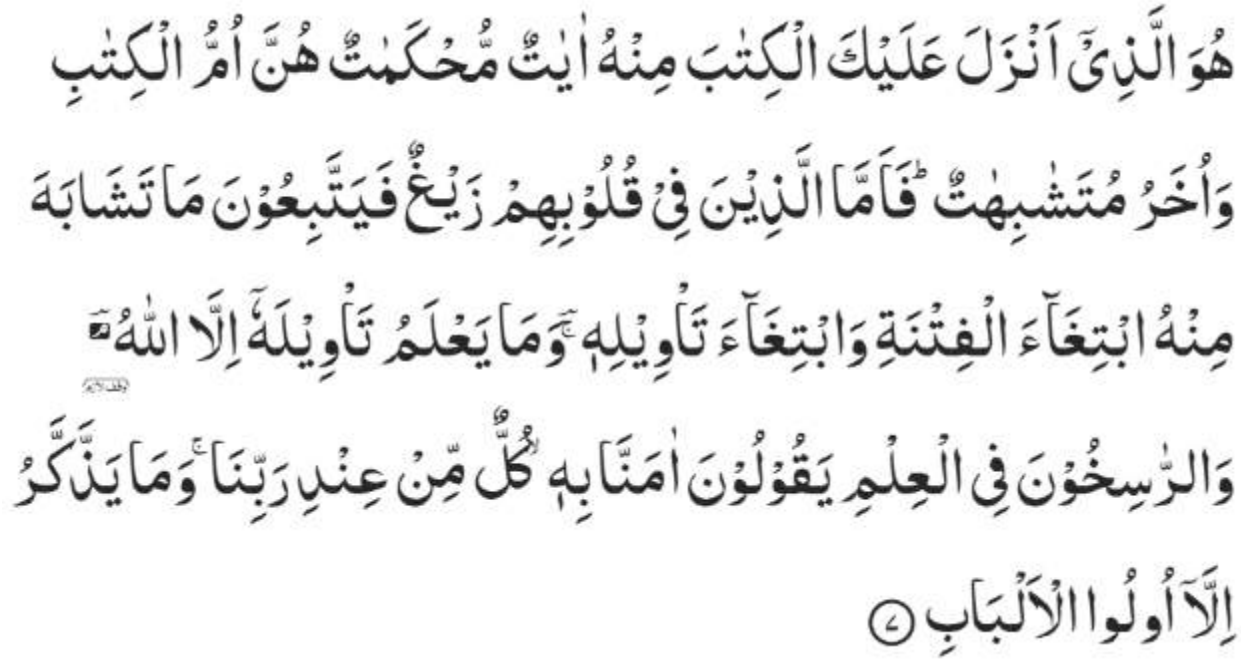
Are connected to wisdom

Are connected to accuracy, perfection and precision

Are connected to governing, ruling, dominating and controlling

Rule - authority and command (who has the right to decide)

Control - execution and outcome (ensuring decisions take effect)


هُوَ الَّذِیۡۤ اَنۡزَلَ عَلَیۡكَ الۡكِتٰبَ مِنۡهُ اٰیٰتٌ مُّحۡكَمٰتٌ هُنَّ اُمُّ الۡكِتٰبِ
وَاُخَرُ مُتَشٰبِهٰتٌ ؕ فَاَمَّا الَّذِیۡنَ فِیۡ قُلُوۡبِهِمۡ زَیۡغٌ فَیَتَّبِعُوۡنَ مَا تَشَابَهَ
مِنۡهُ ابۡتِغَآءَ الۡفِتۡنَةِ وَابۡتِغَآءَ تَاۡوِیۡلِهٖ ۚ وَمَا یَعۡلَمُ تَاۡوِیۡلَهٗۤ اِلَّا اللّٰهُ ۘ
وَالرّٰسِخُوۡنَ فِی الۡعِلۡمِ یَقُوۡلُوۡنَ اٰمَنَّا بِهٖ ۙ كُلٌّ مِّنۡ عِنۡدِ رَبِّنَا ۚ وَمَا یَذَّكَّرُ
اِلَّاۤ اُولُوا الۡاَلۡبَابِ ۝۷

3:7

He is the One who has gradually revealed to you—to hold a special position [of supreme authority]—the divine code of conduct. From it are miraculous and evident signs [verses] that are decisive, clearly expressed, and easy to understand—they are the foundation and essence of the divine code of conduct. And [from it] others that are susceptible to different interpretations and not understood without repeated consideration. Then as for those whose inverted spiritual hearts contain deviation from the right course—they pursue and adhere to what is susceptible to different interpretations and not understood without repeated consideration from it [the divine code of conduct]—in an established state of desiring and seeking to attract, fascinate, and mislead [others] thereby causing dissension; and in an established state of desiring and seeking its [exact] interpretation and result. Yet no one completely knows and fully understands its [exact] interpretation and result except Allah. And those who are firmly established in, and persist in, knowledge, intelligence, and certainty—they declare, "We have believed in it [the divine code of conduct, as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling its duties, thereby attaining

spiritual well-being and peace of mind]—all of it is from the presence of our nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority].” Yet no one will reflect and be mindful except the possessors of good sense, reason, and understanding.

Notes:

اَنْزَلَ

Root letters are connected to something which is sent down, comes down, descends, stops over and is granted

Are connected to something which is sent down slowly and gradually

Are connected to something which holds a special position or place

الْكِتٰبَ and الْكِتٰبِ

Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document

اٰيٰتٌ

Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof

مُّحْكَمٰتٌ

Root letters are connected to precise, exact, something not abrogated, clear, perspicuous, clearly expressed, easy to understand, lucid, void of ambiguity, decisive in meaning, clear and literal

Decisive – firmly determined, conclusive, not open to competing interpretation in the relevant matter

Clearly expressed – made clear or rendered precise

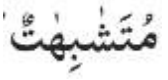
Easy to understand – accessible in meaning and not requiring the same degree of interpretive understanding as other verses



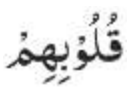
Root letters are connected to source, origin, basis, foundation and essence of something

Foundation – something upon which other things are built or to which they return

Essence – conveys the central, fundamental substance or core of the matter

 and

Root letters are connected to not clearly intelligible, open to many interpretations, not understood without consideration and ambiguous



Root letters are connected to turn around, inverse, overturned, transformed and to become perverted

Are connected to being fickle and inconsistent, changeable and fluctuating

Inverted – the internal order is backwards valuing the bad and hating the good

زَيْغٌ

Root letters are connected to turning aside, departure, deviation, swerving, turning away, turning ones back, deviation from the right course/right direction/the truth

يَتَّبِعُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to following, pursuing, walking behind and adhering

Are connected to being under authority and command

Are connected to concurring, being in agreement and being in conformity

Pursues - actively seeking and following it

Adheres to - remaining firm and consistent upon it

ابْتِغَآءَ

Root letters are connected to seeking, desiring, striving and aspiring for

الْفِتْنَةِ

Root letters are connected to temptation, trial, charm, attractiveness, enchantment, captivation, fascination, enticement, infatuation, deviation from the right way, error, causing to err, misleading, dissension, discord and sedition

Dissension - division within a community (breakdown of unity and harmony)

تَأْوِيلِهِ

Root letters are connected to interpretation, explanation, determination, meaning, result, the end and final sequel

Interpretation - what the matter truly means beneath what is immediately apparent

Result - how that matter ultimately unfolds or comes to its final outcome

يَعْلَمُ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

الرَّاسِخُونَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being firmly established, deeply rooted, being firm, solid, stable, steady, settled, and grounded

الْعِلْمِ

Root letters are connected to knowledge, learning, information, intellect, perception and certainty

Knowledge - possession of true information and understanding

Intelligence - the ability to think, reason, and apply knowledge correctly

Certainty - firm, assured knowledge free from doubt or hesitation

يَقُوْلُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

اٰمَنَّا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

كُلٌّ

Root letters are connected to totality, entirety, everyone, each one, anyone, whole and all

عِنْدِ

Preposition – with, in the company of, in the presence of, in despite of, together and in the estimation

رَبِّنَا

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

يَذَّكَّرُ

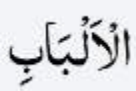
Root letters are connected to thinking, remembering, being mindful, reflecting, and recalling

Reflect - to think deeply and carefully about something, drawing lessons and understanding.

Be mindful - to keep those lessons consciously present, allowing them to influence one's attitude and conduct.

أُولُوا

Root letters are connected to possessing, owning and being endowed with



Root letters are connected to mind, intelligence, reason, understanding and being sensible

Good sense - sound judgement in conduct and decisions

Reason - logical reflection and analysis

Understanding - grasping meanings and consequences

رَبَّنَا لَا تُزِغْ قُلُوبَنَا بَعْدَ إِذْ هَدَيْتَنَا وَهَبْ لَنَا مِن لَّدُنكَ رَحْمَةً ۚ إِنَّكَ
أَنتَ الْوَهَّابُ ﴿٨﴾

3:8

"Our nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority], do not allow[1] our spiritual hearts to deviate from the right course after You have already gifted us guidance [by showing and leading to and along the right way of life]; and gift us from Your presence mercy, kindness, and relief. Certainly, You—You are the One [whose enduring practice is firmly established in, and persists in,] gifting Your blessings universally, repeatedly, and perpetually—without constraint, being earned, or expecting any return.

Notes:

1 - Allah, the Exalted, does not force right guidance or misguidance on anyone and instead allows them to choose one or the other

رَبَّنَا

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

تُزِغْ

Root letters are connected to causing someone to deviate, causing to swerve and render perverse

Are connected to turning aside, departure, deviation, swerving, turning away, turning ones back, deviation from the right course/right direction/the truth

قُلُوبَنَا

Root letters are connected to the heart

هَدَيْتَنَا

Root letters are connected to guidance, direction, showing, being led, being supplied and a way of life

Are connected to gifting and bestowing

Are connected to direction and discovering the right way

هَبْ

Root letters are connected to giving, donating, granting, according, presenting, endowing and giving a thing as a free gift not for any compensation

لَّدُنكَ

Preposition – at, by, near, in the presence of, in the possession of, since and from the time of

رَحْمَةً

Root letters are connected to having mercy, compassion, sparing, letting off, saving, kindness, tenderness and pity

Mercy – withholds punishment from those who deserve it

Kindness – a broader act of granting blessings

إِنَّكَ أَنتَ الْوَهَّابُ

Pronoun “You” is used twice for added emphasis

الْوَهَّابُ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

Structure indicates emphasis

Root letters are connected to giving, donating, granting, according, presenting, endowing and giving a thing as a free gift not for any compensation

رَبَّنَآ اِنَّكَ جَامِعُ النَّاسِ لِيَوْمٍ لَّا رَيْبَ فِيْهِ ۭ اِنَّ اللّٰهَ لَا يُخْلِفُ الْمِيْعَادَ ۝٩

3:9

Our nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority], certainly You are the One [whose enduring practice is firmly established in, and persists in,] gathering together the people, all without exception, for a Momentous Day—there is absolutely no doubt, suspicion, or question concerning it." Certainly, Allah will neither fail to keep nor break the promised appointed time and place.

Notes:

رَبَّنَآ

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

جَامِعُ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

Root letters are connected to collect, gather, unite, combine, bring together, put together, join, compile, rally, accumulate, and assemble

Are connected to whole, entire, all, entirety and altogether

لِيَوْمٍ

Root letters are connected to days, age, era and time

Are connected to momentous and important days

لَا رَيْبَ

Structure indicates absolute negation

رَيْبَ

Root letters are connected to being suspicious, doubting, questioning and disturbance of the mind

Doubt - uncertain between options

Suspicion - leaning toward doubt/negation

Question - seeking clarity through inquiry

يُخْلِفُ

Root letters are connected to breaking, failing to keep, to disappoint and going back on one's word

Fail to keep - omission / neglect / not fulfilling

Break - active violation / going against it

الْمِيْعَادَ

Noun of time and place

Root letters are connected to promise, appointment, date, rendezvous and time or place of an appointment

إِنَّ الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا لَن تُغْنِيَ عَنْهُمْ أَمْوَالُهُمْ وَلَا أَوْلَادُهُم مِّنَ اللَّهِ
شَيْئًا ۖ وَأُولَٰئِكَ هُمْ وَقُودُ النَّارِ ﴿١٠﴾

3:10

Certainly, those who have neglected, dissociated from, and denied their obligations to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them]—never will their possessions, nor will their offspring, help, suffice, or protect them against anything from Allah—nor will they make them independent of Him—at all. And those—they are the fuel of the Fire.

Notes:

كَفَرُوا

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

تُغْنِيَ

Root letters are connected to making free from want, make rich, suffice, be of use, be of help, avail, benefit, help, profit, spare, save, protect and guard

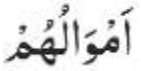
Are connected to self-sufficient, independent, rich and free of need

Help - provide assistance or benefit

Suffice - be enough to meet or satisfy a need; avail against something

Protect - shield or save from harm, punishment, or an adverse consequence

Independent - not needing, relying upon, or being dependent on someone or something else



Root letters are connected to property, assets, goods, wealth, and possessions



Root letters are connected to a child, son, offspring and descendant



Root letters are connected to a thing, matter or affair



Root letters are connected to fuel



Root letters are connected to fire

كَدَاْبِ اٰلِ فِرْعَوْنَ ۙ وَالَّذِيْنَ مِنْ قَبْلِهِمْ ۭ كَذَّبُوْا بِاٰيٰتِنَا ۚ فَاَخَذَهُمُ اللّٰهُ
بِذُنُوْبِهِمْ ۭ وَاللّٰهُ شَدِيْدُ الْعِقَابِ ⑪

3:11

Just as the state, manner, and affair of the followers of Pharaoh, and those from before them—they refuted Our miraculous and evident signs, calling them a lie, seeking to discredit them. Therefore, Allah seized them as punishment because of their transgressions. And Allah is innately and eternally the One who is intense and severe in inflicting punishment.

Notes:

كَدَاْبِ

Root letters are connected to habit, custom, concern, affair, state, condition and work

State - the condition or circumstances in which someone exists or acts

Manner - the way in which someone conducts themselves or something occurs

Affair - the matter, situation, or course of conduct concerning them

اٰلِ

Root letters are connected to family, followers, relatives, kinsfolk, companions and people

كَذَّبُوا

Root letters are connected to disproving, refuting, denying, calling a lie, rejecting, discrediting and repelling

بِاٰيٰتِنَا

Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof

فَاَخَذَهُمُ

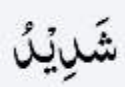
Root letters are connected to seizing, punishing, blaming and censuring

بِذُنُوْبِهِمْ

Root letters are connected to offense, sin, crime, misdeed, fault and transgression

وَاللّٰهُ شَدِيْدُ الْعِقَابِ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



Root letters are connected to becoming firm, intense, solid, hard, strong and harsh

Intense - the strength (powerful and overwhelming)

Severe – the harshness (harsh and uncompromising)



Root letters are connected to inflicting punishment, penalty and requital

قُلْ لِّلَّذِيْنَ كَفَرُوْا سَتُغْلَبُوْنَ وَتُحْشَرُوْنَ اِلٰى جَهَنَّمَ ۗ وَبِئْسَ

الْمِهَادُ ﴿١٢﴾

3:12

Declare to those who have neglected, dissociated from, and denied their obligations to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them], “You will be subdued and defeated; and then assembled and banished to Hell—harsh and repulsive punishment of a great and fiercely burning fire. And how evil is the prepared resting place.”

Notes:

قُلْ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

كَفَرُوْا

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

سَتُغْلَبُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to conquer, subdue, defeat, prevail, beat, be victorious and triumph

تُحْشَرُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to gathering, assembling and rallying

Are connected to expelling, banishing and destroying

جَهَنَّمَ

Root letters are connected to hell, fire, fiercely burning fire and a huge fire

Are connected to something harsh and disgusting

وَبِئْسَ

Root letters are connected to showing the evil of something

Are connected to miserable and wretched

الْمِهَادُ

Root letters are connected to arranging, preparing and making smooth

Are connected to resting place, bed, couch and a place of wide extent

قَدْ كَانَ لَكُمْ اٰيَةٌ فِيْ فِئَتَيْنِ الْتَقَتَا ؕ فِئَةٌ تُقَاتِلُ فِيْ سَبِيْلِ اللّٰهِ
وَاُخْرٰى كَافِرَةٌ يَّرَوْنَهُمْ مِّثْلَيْهِمْ رَاْىَ الْعَيْنِ ؕ وَاللّٰهُ يُؤَيِّدُ بِنَصْرِهٖ
مَنْ يَّشَآءُ ؕ اِنَّ فِيْ ذٰلِكَ لَعِبْرَةً لِّاُولِي الْاَبْصَارِ ﴿۱۳﴾

3:13

Certainly, a miraculous and evident sign exists for the benefit of you all in the two groups when they met each other. A group fighting in the path of [obeying] Allah—weakening the strength of the other [group], who are firmly established in, and persisting in, neglecting, dissociating from, and denying their obligations to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them]. They [the disbelievers[1]] see and consider them [the believers] as equivalent to twice of them—judging by eyesight. And Allah—He supports and makes firm, through His help, protection, and granting of success, whoever He wills. No doubt, in that is certainly an admonition to consider and learn from for the possessors of understanding through perception, reflection, and discernment.

Notes:

The Arabic employs the present tense rhetorically to bring the scene into immediate view and, where applicable, to convey habitual or repeated action

1 – To support the believers once the Battle of Badr commenced, Allah, the Exalted, made them appear twice as numerous as the disbelievers (Imam Ibn Kathir's, the Life of the Prophet, Volume 2, Page 269)

قَدْ

Used for emphasis with past tense action i.e. certainly

كَانَ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

اٰيَةٌ

Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof

فِئَةٌ and فِئَتَيْنِ

Root letters are connected to group, portion, part, division, troop, band and platoon

الْتَقَتَا

Root letters are connected to encounter, meet, meet one another and go to meet

تُقَاتِلُ

Root letters are connected to combat, fighting, battle and opposing

Are connected to weakening the strength or intensity of something

سَبِيْلِ

Root letters are connected to a way, path and road

كَافِرَةٌ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

يَّرَوْنَهُمْ

Root letters are connected to seeing, perceiving, discerning and considering

مِّثْلَيْهِمْ

Root letters are connected to imitate, equivalent, copy and be equal

رَاٰى

Root letters are connected to opinion, view, notion, suggestion, decision, judgement and opining

الْعَيْنِ

Root letters are connected to eye

Are connected to viewing, seeing with one's own eyes, examining and inspecting

وَاللّٰهُ يُؤَيِّدُ

Pronoun "He" is used twice for added emphasis

يُؤَيِّدُ

Root letters are connected to supporting, confirming, endorsing, making firm, and strengthening

Support - external aid

Make firm - internal stability

بِنَصْرِهٖ

Root letters are connected to help, assistance, support and victory

Are connected to protecting and defending



Root letters are connected to wanting, willing and wishing



 used for emphasis

Root letters are connected to admonition, warning, example, lesson, advice, taken into consideration and exhortation by which one takes warning

Are connected to learning a lesson, considering, being warned, and taking an example

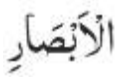
Admonition – something that warns, instructs, or causes a person to reflect and take heed

Consider – carefully reflect upon something and draw understanding from it

Learn from – derive instruction, insight, or a lesson from what has occurred



Root letters are connected to possessing, owning and being endowed with



Root letters are connected to the ability of reasoning, mental perception, understanding, insight, to reflect, learn, perceive and discern

Perceptive – detecting/noticing

Reflection – reviewing/considering

Discerning – judging/evaluating

زُيِّنَ لِلنَّاسِ حُبُّ الشَّهَوٰتِ مِنَ النِّسَآءِ وَالْبَنِيْنَ وَالْقَنَاطِيْرِ
الْمُقَنْطَرَةِ مِنَ الذَّهَبِ وَالْفِضَّةِ وَالْخَيْلِ الْمُسَوَّمَةِ وَالْاَنْعَامِ
وَالْحَرْثِ ؕ ذٰلِكَ مَتَاعُ الْحَيٰوةِ الدُّنْيَا ۚ وَاللّٰهُ عِنْدَهٗ حُسْنُ الْمَاٰبِ ﴿۱۴﴾

3:14

The desire, preference, and love for yearnings, covetous appetites, and passions has been made pleasing[1] to people—consisting of women, descendants, and tremendous sums of possessions from precious gold, crafted silver, branded horses, grazing livestock, and agriculture. [All] that is the enjoyment of the worldly life—the lowest state of living. Whereas, Allah—in His presence, innately and eternally, is the excellent place of ultimate return.

Notes:

1 - The doer has intentionally not been mentioned in order to encompass all possible causes behind the beautification of worldly life, such as Allah, the Exalted, as a test; the Devil as a means of misguidance; one's own desires and inclinations; and external worldly influences

زُيِّنَ

Root letters are connected to adorning, decorating, embellishing, beautifying and making pleasing

حُبُّ

Root letters are connected liking, loving and wanting

Root letters are connected to desiring, preferring, liking

Are connected to wishing, wanting and loving

Are connected to esteeming something or someone

Desire - inward attraction and wanting

Respect - elevating their status and importance

Prefer - giving them practical priority and choosing them over others

Love - deep emotional attachment and devotion

الشَّهَوٰتِ

Root letters are connected to greed, craving, desire, ardent wish, longing, yearning, eagerness, passion, appetite, covetousness and base desires

Yearnings - strong desires or longings for something one wishes to have or experience

Covetous appetites - strong, greedy cravings or appetites for something, with a somewhat stronger sense of an urge or craving

Passions - powerful, emotionally charged desires or appetites that strongly move a person toward something

وَالْبَنِيْنَ

Root letters are connected to son, daughter and descendant

وَالْقَنَاطِيرِ and الْمُقَنْطَرَةِ

Root letters are connected to large unknown quantity, much property heaped up and collected together

Are connected to possessing tremendous riches and possessing large property

الذَّهَبِ

Root letters are connected to gold, gold piece, gold coin

Are connected to precious and excellent

وَالْفِضَّةِ

Root letters are connected to silver and wrought silver

وَالْخَيْلِ

Root letters are connected to horse, horsepower and cavalry

الْمُسَوَّمَةِ

Root letters are connected to marking a horse by branding and providing with a mark

وَالْاَنْعَامِ

Root letters are connected to grazing livestock and cattle

وَالْحَرْثِ

Root letters are connected to tillage, land for agriculture and cultivated land

Are connected to earning wealth, labouring for worldly goods and acquisition

مَتَاعُ

Root letters are connected to things of use, commodities, utensils, goods, property, objects, and stuff

Are connected to enjoying, savoring, relishing, equipping and supplying

الْحَيٰوةِ

Root letters are connected to living, experiencing and witnessing

الدُّنْيَا

A superlative

Root letters are connected to being low and near

Are connected to world, life in this world, worldly existence, temporal things or possessions and earthly things and concerns

عِنْدَ

Preposition – with, in the company of, in the presence of, in despite of, together and in the estimation

حُسْنُ

Root letters are connected to being excellent, good, nice and lovely

الْمَآبِ

Noun for time and place

Root letters are connected to place to which one returns, fixed abode, goal which the course of life ultimately leads and place of ultimate return

قُلْ أَؤُنَبِّئُكُمْ بِخَيْرٍ مِّنْ ذٰلِكُمْ ۭ لِلَّذِيْنَ اتَّقَوْا عِنْدَ رَبِّهِمْ جَنّٰتٌ
تَجْرِيْ مِنْ تَحْتِهَا الْاَنْهٰرُ خٰلِدِيْنَ فِيْهَا وَاَزْوَاجٌ مُّطَهَّرَةٌ وَّرِضْوَانٌ
مِّنَ اللّٰهِ ۭ وَاللّٰهُ بَصِيْرٌۢ بِالْعِبَادِ ۝۱۵

3:15

Declare, "Shall I inform you all of what is preferred and better for your well-being than that[1]—for those who have devoutly fulfilled their duties, thereby protecting themselves from harm and arranging all their matters correctly, in the presence of their nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority] are secure gardens, with streams and rivers flowing abundantly beneath them, remaining firmly established—abiding forever—in them; and purified companions and spouses in body and character; and pleasure, approval, and acceptance from Allah." And Allah is innately and eternally the One who sees all things concerning the slaves, whether apparent or hidden, the One who is perfectly perceptive and discerning.

Notes:

1 – Refers to the things mentioned in the previous verse Quran 3:13

قُلْ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

أَؤُنَبِّئُكُمْ

Root letters are connected to informing, notifying, advising telling and announcing

بِخَيْرٍ

A comparative

Root letters are connected to good, virtuous and generous

Are connected to choosing and preferring

Are connected to something better and superior

Are connected to a good state and well-being

اتَّقَوْا

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious

عِنْدَ

Preposition – with, in the company of, in the presence of, in despite of, together and in the estimation

رَبِّهِمْ

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

جَنّٰتٌ

Root letters are connected to protection, shield and safety

Are connected to a garden and a walled garden

تَجْرِیْ

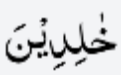
Root letters are connected to flowing, running, rushing, hurrying and passing

الْاَنْهٰرُ

Root letters are connected to flowing copiously and gushing forth

Are connected to river and stream

Are connected to abundant, plentiful and much

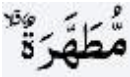


Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to be everlasting, being immortal and abiding forever



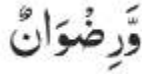
Root letters are connected to pairs, spouses, companions, species and classes



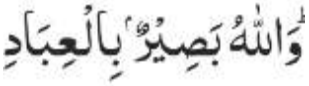
Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to clean and purity

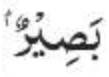
Are connected to chastity, refraining from sins, purification of character and purification from bad habits



Root letters are connected satisfaction, pleasure, a means affording satisfaction, and a cause of pleasure



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

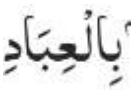


Root letters are connected to seeing, witnessing and perception

Are connected to discerning, understanding, intelligent and mental perception

Perceptive – detecting/noticing

Discerning – judging/evaluating



Root letters are connected to a male servant and male slave

اَلَّذِيْنَ يَقُوْلُوْنَ رَبَّنَآ اِنَّنَآ اٰمَنَّا فَاغْفِرْ لَنَا ذُنُوْبَنَا وَقِنَا عَذَابَ النَّارِ ۚ ﴿١٦﴾

3:16

Those [are the ones] who declare, "Our nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority], certainly we have believed, [as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind] therefore, conceal, forgive, and correct, for our benefit, our transgressions; and protect, preserve, and prevent us from [everything leading to] the agonising punishment of the Fire."

Notes:

يَقُوْلُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

رَبَّنَآ

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

اٰمَنَّا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

فَاغْفِرْ

Root letters are connected to covering, concealing, veiling and hiding

Are connected to forgiving and pardoning

Are connected to correcting and rectifying affairs

ذُنُوْبَنَا

Root letters are connected to offense, sin, crime, misdeed, fault and transgression

قِنَا عَذَابَ النَّارِ

No preposition allows to widen the scope of the protection

عَذَابَ

Root letters are connected to prevent, hinder, deter and obstruct

Are connected to punishment, torture, agony, painful and suffering

Agonising - causing intense pain and torment

اَلصّٰبِرِيْنَ وَالصّٰدِقِيْنَ وَالْقٰنِتِيْنَ وَالْمُنْفِقِيْنَ وَالْمُسْتَغْفِرِيْنَ

بِالْاَسْحَارِ ﴿١٧﴾

3:17

[Those who declare are[1]] in a firmly established and persistent state of patience, perseverance [in obedience], and self-restraint [from complaint]; and are in a firmly established and persistent state of being sincere and truthful; and are in a firmly established and persistent state of humble obedience—pure in heart; and are in a firmly established and persistent state of readily using [their possessions in good ways] to support and bear the cost of others; and are in a firmly established and persistent state of seeking concealment, forgiveness, and correction of affairs from Allah during the last parts of the nights before daybreak.

Notes:

1 - The accusative forms of these nouns may be understood as describing the state and qualities of “those who declare” mentioned in the preceding verse Quran 3:16

اَلصّٰبِرِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to binding and shackling

Are connected to being patient, persevering, forbearing, enduring, refraining, abstaining, desisting and self-control

Patience - enduring difficulty without panic or loss of steadiness

Perseverance - continuing steadily in obedience over time without giving up

Self-restraining [from complaint] - controlling oneself from expressing objection or dissatisfaction

وَالصّٰدِقِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established state

Root letters are connected to being truthful, sincere and keeping one's word

Sincere - pure inner intention

Truthful - outward truth in word and action

وَالْقٰنِتِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected obedience, humility and submission

وَالْمُنْفِقِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to spending, expending, disbursing, using up, providing maintenance and bearing the cost of

Are connected to disposing of something quickly

Are connected to exhausting, using up and spending

وَالْمُسْتَغْفِرِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to covering, concealing, veiling and hiding

Are connected to forgiving and pardoning

Are connected to correcting and rectifying affairs

بِالْاَسْحَارِ

Plural used indicating habitual behaviour

Root letters are connected to time before daybreak, early morning, dawn, early dawn and last part of the night

شَهِدَ اللّٰهُ اَنَّهٗ لَآ اِلٰهَ اِلَّا هُوَ ۙ وَالْمَلٰٓئِكَةُ وَاُولُوا الْعِلْمِ قَآئِمًۢا بِالْقِسْطِ ۭ لَآ
اِلٰهَ اِلَّا هُوَ الْعَزِيْزُ الْحَكِيْمُ ۝١٨
(١/٣)

3:18

Allah has borne witness that there is absolutely no God—the sole recipient of obedience, from where goodness and protection from harm are sought—except Him. And the Angels and the possessors of knowledge, intelligence, and certainty also bear witness—He [Allah[1]] is the One whose enduring practice is firmly established in, and persists in, preserving and managing affairs according to fairness, justice, and exact measure. There is absolutely no God except Him: innately and eternally the One who overcomes all things, the Owner of respect and nobility, raising in honour and lowering whoever He wills, the One who rules over and controls everything, determining every affair with perfect wisdom.

Notes:

1 – The singular noun connects back to Allah, the Exalted, instead of the other two entities mentioned which are plural

شَهِدَ

Root letters are connected to witness, experience personally, eyewitness, attend, give evidence, to testify and to bear witness

لَآ إِلٰهَ

Structure indicates absolute negation

إِلٰهَ

Root letters are connected to god, deity, object of worship and obedience

Are connected to granting safety, peace, aid, protection and deliverance from evil

وَأُولُوا

Root letters are connected to possessing, owning and being endowed with

الْعِلْمِ

Root letters are connected to knowledge, learning, information, intellect, perception and certainty

Knowledge - possession of true information and understanding

Intelligence - the ability to think, reason, and apply knowledge correctly

Certainty - firm, assured knowledge free from doubt or hesitation

قَآئِمًا

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to existing, preserving, manage affairs, established and being independent

بِالْقِسْطِ

Root letters are connected to justice, fairness, equity, rightness, correctness, quantity, amount, measure, extend and right weight and measure

Fairness - treating each person or matter impartially, without favouritism or unjust preference

Justice - giving each person or matter what is rightfully due, in accordance with what is right and equitable

Exact measure - maintaining precise proportion, balance, and due measure, without excess or deficiency

لَآ إِلَٰهَ إِلَّا هُوَ الْعَزِيزُ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

الْعَزِيزُ

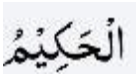
Root letters are connected to power, respect, honour and nobility,

Are connected to overwhelming, overcoming and dominating

Are connected to raising in esteem, elevating and exalting

Respect - honour, esteem, and recognised worth

Nobility - elevated rank, dignity, and excellence



Root letters are connected to judging, deciding and decreeing

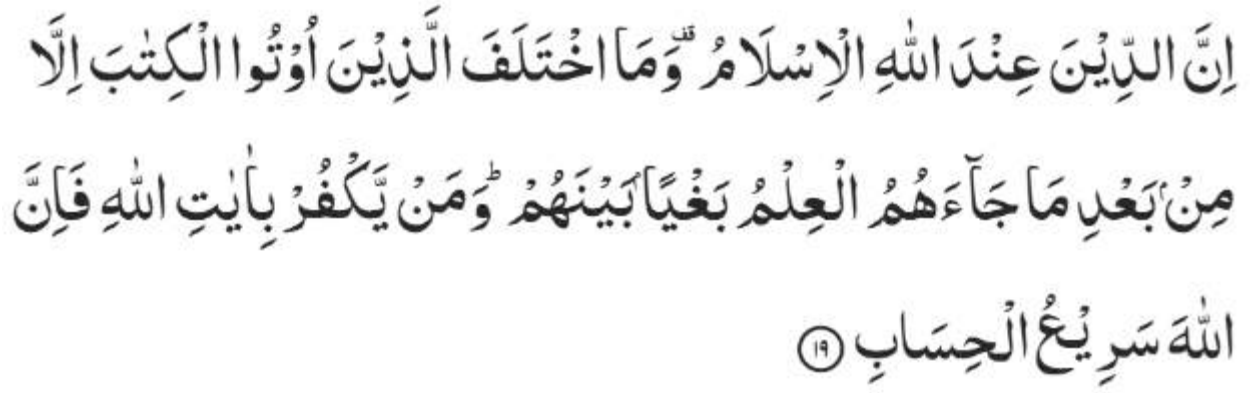
Are connected to wisdom

Are connected to accuracy, perfection and precision

Are connected to governing, ruling, dominating and controlling

Rule - authority and command (who has the right to decide)

Control - execution and outcome (ensuring decisions take effect)


إِنَّ الدِّيْنَ عِنْدَ اللّٰهِ الْإِسْلَامُ ۗ وَمَا اخْتَلَفَ الَّذِيْنَ أُوْتُوا الْكِتٰبَ إِلَّا
مِنْۢ بَعْدِ مَا جَآءَهُمُ الْعِلْمُ بَغْيًۢا بَيْنَهُمْ ۗ وَمَنْ يَّكْفُرْ بِاٰيٰتِ اللّٰهِ فَإِنَّ
اللّٰهَ سَرِيْعُ الْحِسَابِ ⑲

3:19

Certainly, the obedient way of life, in the presence of Allah, is surrendering, submitting, and committing oneself to His obedience, thereby attaining spiritual well-being. And those who have been granted the divine code of conduct [the Torah and Gospel[1]] did not disagree, dispute, and oppose each other except after certain knowledge had reached them—motivated by evil desires, arrogance, and transgression between themselves. And whoever neglects, dissociates from, and denies the miraculous and evident signs of Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them]—then certainly, Allah is innately and eternally the One who is prompt and swift in recording and bringing to account.

Notes:

This verse refers specifically to those who possessed and understood the previous divine scriptures—the scholars—not the ordinary followers, who were not allowed direct access to them. This is evident from history and is supported by the Quran, for example, Quran 2:78

1 - The divine code of conduct is mentioned in the singular form to emphasise the shared and unified divine guidance originally granted through the Torah and affirmed by the Gospel

الدِّيْنَ

Root letters are connected to under power, obedience, owe allegiance and submissive

Are connected to way of acting, doctrine, custom, habit, creed and religion

عِنْدَ

Preposition – with, in the company of, in the presence of, in despite of, together and in the estimation

الْإِسْلَامُ

Root letters are connected to deserting, abandoning, surrendering, submitting, becoming muslim, and committing oneself to the will of Allah

Are connected to being safe, sound, secure and well-being

Surrenders - relinquishing resistance and competing attachments

Submits - places oneself under authority

Commits - actively dedicating oneself to obedience

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

اخْتَلَفَ

Root letters are connected to differ, dispute, argue, disagreeing, different in opinion, debate and opposing

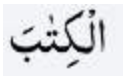
Disagreeing - difference in belief or opinion

Disputing - active argumentative conflict

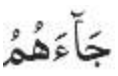
Opposing - entrenched resistance and hostility



Root letters are connected to bring, give, grant and bestow



Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document



Root letters are connected to come, produce, confront, set forth and reaching



Root letters are connected to knowledge, learning, information, intellect, perception and certainty



Root letters are connected to exalting oneself, behaving proudly, transgression, disobedience, wrongdoing and corruption

Are connected to seeking, desiring, coveting and seeking to attain

Evil desires - inner motivation (base, corrupt inclinations)

Arrogance - attitude and mindset (sense of superiority and self-exaltation)

Transgression - outward action (acting beyond what is right or permitted)



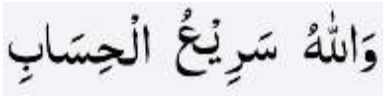
Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

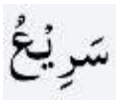
Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty



Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



Root letters are connected to be quick, fast, prompt, rapid and hurry

Swift - acting rapidly

Prompt - responding without hesitation



Root letters are connected to reckoning, calculating, counting, charging and taking into account

Recording - documenting deeds

Bringing to account - judging deeds

فَإِنْ حَآجُّوكَ فَقُلْ أَسْلَمْتُ وَجْهِيَ لِلَّهِ وَمَنِ اتَّبَعَنِ ۗ وَقُلْ لِّلَّذِينَ
أُوتُوا الْكِتَٰبَ وَالْأُمِّيِّـۧنَ ءَأَسْلَمْتُمْ ۚ فَإِنْ أَسْلَمُوا۟ فَقَدِ ٱهْتَدَوا۟ ۖ وَإِن تَوَلَّوْا۟
فَإِنَّمَا عَلَيْكَ ٱلْبَلَٰغُ ۗ وَٱللَّهُ بَصِيرٌۢ بِٱلْعِبَادِ ﴿٢٠﴾

3:20

Then if they have disputed with and raised objections against you with the aim to defeat—declare, "I have surrendered, submitted, and committed my face, by directing my purpose to the obedience of Allah; and whoever has been in agreement with, pursued, and adhered to me, thereby living under its authority [has also done so]." And question those who have been granted the divine code of conduct [the Torah and Gospel[1]] and those who are uneducated, "Have you surrendered, submitted, and committed yourselves to the obedience of Allah?" Then if they have surrendered, submitted, and committed themselves to the obedience of Allah—certainly, they have sought and followed right guidance, thereby attaining spiritual well-being. But if they have refrained and turned away, then upon you is only [the obligation of] proclamation and preaching. And Allah is innately and eternally the One who sees all things concerning the slaves, whether apparent or hidden, the One who is perfectly perceptive and discerning.

Notes:

1 - The divine code of conduct is mentioned in the singular form to emphasise the shared and unified divine guidance originally granted through the Torah and affirmed by the Gospel

حَآجُّوكَ

Root letters are connected to defeating and overcoming

Are connected to disputing, debating and arguing

Are connected to pleading, raising objections and objecting

Dispute with - engage in argument

Raise objections against - challenge specific points

Defeat you with it - aim for rhetorical or argumentative victory

فَقُلْ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

أَسْلَمْتُ , أَسْلَمْتُمْ and أَسْلَمُوا

Root letters are connected to deserting, abandoning, surrendering, submitting, becoming muslim, and committing oneself to the will of Allah

Are connected to being safe, sound, secure and well-being

Surrenders - relinquishing resistance and competing attachments

Submits - places oneself under authority

Commits - actively dedicating oneself to obedience

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

وَجْهِيَ

Root letters are connected to face

Are connected to intention, direction, purpose, aim, goal, objective, mode and method

اتَّبَعَنِ

Root letters are connected to following, pursuing, walking behind and adhering

Are connected to being under authority and command

Are connected to concurring, being in agreement and being in conformity

In agreement - accepting the guidance internally (belief/acceptance)

Pursues - actively seeking and following it

Adheres to - remaining firm and consistent upon it

أُوتُوا

Root letters are connected to bring, give, grant and bestow

الْكِتٰبَ

Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document

وَالْأُمِّيِّينَ

Root letters are connected to someone uneducated, cannot read or write, ignorant, without formal education or knowledge and ignorant of divine scriptures

اهْتَدَوْا

Root letters are connected to guidance, direction, seeking to be rightly guided and following right guidance

تَوَلَّوْا

Root letters are connected to turning, turning away, turning back, fleeing, desisting, refraining and forgoing

الْبَلٰغُ

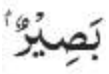
Root letters are connected to communication, information, message, report, announcement, proclamation, communique, statement, preaching, warning, and notification

Proclamation - openly announcing, declaring, and making the message known

Preaching - conveying religious teaching, instruction, and admonition to others

وَاللّٰهُ بَصِيْرٌۢ بِالْعِبَادِ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

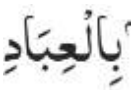


Root letters are connected to seeing, witnessing and perception

Are connected to discerning, understanding, intelligent and mental perception

Perceptive – detecting/noticing

Discerning – judging/evaluating



Root letters are connected to a male servant and male slave

اِنَّ الَّذِيْنَ يَكْفُرُوْنَ بِاٰيٰتِ اللّٰهِ وَيَقْتُلُوْنَ النَّبِيّٖنَ بِغَيْرِ حَقٍّ ۙ
وَّيَقْتُلُوْنَ الَّذِيْنَ يَاْمُرُوْنَ بِالْقِسْطِ مِنَ النَّاسِ ۙ فَبَشِّرْهُمْ بِعَذَابٍ
اَلِيْمٍ ﴿٢١﴾

3:21

Certainly, those who neglect, dissociate from, and deny the miraculous and evident signs of Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them]; and oppose, fight, and murder the honoured Prophets[1]—who conveyed divine knowledge from Allah—without any justification [aiming to weaken the strength of divine guidance]; and oppose, fight, and kill those who instruct in rightness, fairness, and justice from amongst the people. Therefore, give them news of future prospects: a deterring punishment—the utmost degree of pain and suffering.

Notes:

1 - The Arabic employs the present tense rhetorically to bring the scene into immediate view and, where applicable, to convey habitual or repeated action

يَكْفُرُوْنَ

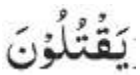
Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

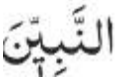


Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof



Root letters are connected to killing

Are connected to fighting, battling, opposing, and combat



Root letters are connected to informing, notifying, advising telling and announcing

Are connected to being high in rank, raised, elevated and prominent

Are connected to someone who receives unseen knowledge from Allah and conveys them to people



Root letters are connected to what is right, correct, proper, suitable, fitting and purposeful

Are connected to being deserving, to be due and to have a claim

يَأْمُرُونَ

Root letters are connected to ordering, commanding, instructing, charging and entrusting

بِالْقِسْطِ،

Root letters are connected to justice, fairness, equity, rightness, correctness, quantity, amount, measure, extend and right weight and measure

Rightness - conformity with what is correct, proper, and morally right.

Fairness - treating each person or matter impartially, without favouritism or unjust preference

Justice - giving each person or matter what is rightfully due, in accordance with what is right and equitable

فَبَشِّرْهُمْ

Root letters are connected to bringing news, forecast, to spread, preach and announce good or bad news

بِعَذَابٍ

Root letters are connected to prevent, hinder, deter and obstruct

Are connected to punishment, torture, agony, painful and suffering

Agonising - causing intense pain and torment



Root letters are connected pain, suffering, grievous pain, excruciating and the utmost degree of pain

Pain - refers to the physical sensation (the body)

Suffering - refers to the emotional or mental distress (the mind/soul)

أُولَٰئِكَ الَّذِينَ حَبِطَتْ أَعْمَالُهُمْ فِي الدُّنْيَا وَالْآخِرَةِ ۖ وَمَا لَهُمْ مِنْ نَاصِرِينَ ﴿٢٢﴾

3:22

Those—the ones whose efforts, actions, and achievements have been futile in the world—the lowest state of living—and in the life of the Hereafter. And there is not for them even a single one from those who are firmly established in, and persist in, protecting, supporting, or granting success.

Notes:

حَبِطَتْ

Root letters are connected to coming to nothing, failing, futile and useless

أَعْمَالُهُمْ

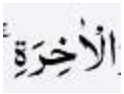
Root letters are connected to work, actions, effort, labour, achievements, activity, service, striving and toiling

الدُّنْيَا

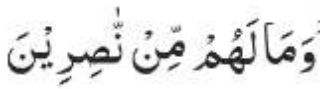
A superlative

Root letters are connected to being low and near

Are connected to world, life in this world, worldly existence, temporal things or possessions and earthly things and concerns

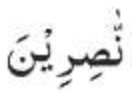


Root letters are connected to the hereafter, the final abode, life to come, and something which is delayed and deferred



Structure gives a strong negation and refutation meaning

And gives an absolute and complete negation in state, time and possibility



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to helping, assisting and rendering victorious

Are connected to defending, saving and protecting

اَلَمۡ تَرَ اِلَى الَّذِيۡنَ اُوۡتُوۡا نَصِيۡبًا مِّنَ الۡكِتٰبِ يُدۡعَوۡنَ اِلٰى كِتٰبِ اللّٰهِ
لِيَحۡكُمَ بَيۡنَهُمۡ ثُمَّ يَتَوَلّٰى فَرِيۡقٌ مِّنۡهُمۡ وَهُمۡ مُّعۡرِضُوۡنَ ﴿۲۳﴾

3:23

Have you not reflected and considered those who have been granted a share from the divine code of conduct [the Torah and Gospel[1]]? They are invited, urged, and summoned to the divine code of conduct of Allah so that it leads and judges between them with perfect wisdom; yet thereafter, a group from amongst them refrain and turn away, while they are in a firmly established and persistent state of aversion, abandonment, and opposition.

Notes:

This verse refers specifically to those who possessed and understood the previous divine scriptures—the scholars—not the ordinary followers, who were not allowed direct access to them. This is evident from history and is supported by the Quran, for example, Quran 2:78

1 - The divine code of conduct is mentioned in the singular form to emphasise the shared and unified divine guidance originally granted through the Torah and affirmed by the Gospel

تَرَ

Root letters are connected to seeing, perceiving, discerning and considering

Reflect - to think deeply and thoughtfully, pondering the significance or lessons of something

Consider - to examine, evaluate, or take something into careful account before reaching an understanding

أُوْتُوْا

Root letters are connected to bring, give, grant and bestow

نَصِيْبًا

Root letters are connected to share and portion

الْكِتٰبَ and كِتٰبِ

Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document

يُدْعَوْنَ

Root letters are connected to calling, summoning, sending for, urging, driving, prompting, assigning and inviting

Invited - called or asked to come toward something willingly

Urged - strongly encouraged or pressed to respond or act

Summoned - called with authority, requiring or demanding attendance or response

لِيَحْكُمَ

Root letters are connected to judging, deciding and decreeing

Are connected to governing, ruling, dominating and controlling

Are connected to wisdom

Are connected to accuracy, perfection and precision

يَتَوَلَّىٰ

Root letters are connected to turning, turning away, turning back, fleeing, desisting, refraining and forgoing

فَرِيقٌ

Root letters are connected to a band, company, troop, detachment, unit, part, faction and team

مُّعْرِضُونَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being averse, disclaiming, abandoning, and discarding

Are connected to opposing, resisting, working against someone and contradicting

Aversion - internal dislike / emotional turning away

Abandonment - practical withdrawal / leaving something behind

Opposition - active resistance / standing against

ذٰلِكَ بِاَنَّهُمْ قَالُوْا لَنْ تَمَسَّنَا النَّارُ اِلَّآ اَيَّامًا مَّعْدُوْدٰتٍ ۖ وَّغَرَّهُمْ فِيْ
دِيْنِهِمْ مَّا كَانُوْا يَفْتَرُوْنَ ﴿٢٤﴾

3:24

That is because they have [boldly] claimed, “The Fire will not touch us except, perhaps, for an extremely limited number of days.” Whereas, what they persist in fabricating concerning their belief, creed, and customs has deceived, blinded, and deluded them with vain hopes—unable to see the right course.

Notes:

قَالُوْا

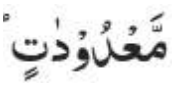
Root letters are connected to saying, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

تَمَسَّنَا

Root letters are connected to touching, touching slightly, to handle, to befall, to be struck

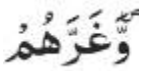
اَيَّامًا

Root letters are connected to days, age, era and time



Structure suggests a small number

Root letters are connected to counting, few, little, reckoning, limited in number, easily countable and numbered

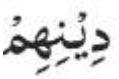


Root letters are connected to misleading, deceiving, beguiling, deluding, gulling, blinding, and deceiving with vain/empty hopes

Deceived – outside reality - caused to accept something false or misleading as true

Blinded - prevented from seeing or recognising what is true or correct

Deluded – inside reality - led into a false belief or mistaken perception, particularly by an illusion or deceptive idea



Root letters are connected to way of acting, doctrine, custom, habit, creed, religion, faith, creed, belief, and rites

Belief - what a person or group accepts as true, particularly in matters of faith

Creed - a formally held set of religious beliefs or doctrines

Customs - established practices, traditions, and habitual ways of conduct followed by a community

مَّا كَانُوا يَفْتَرُونَ

Structure indicates repetitive action

كَانُوا

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

يَفْتَرُونَ

Root letters are connected to invent lyingly, fabricate, trump up, slander, forge a falsehood, and forge a lie

فَكَيْفَ إِذَا جَمَعْنٰهُمْ لِيَوْمٍ لَّا رَيْبَ فِيْهِ ۗ وَوُفِّيَتْ كُلُّ نَفْسٍ مَّا كَسَبَتْ وَهُمْ لَا يُظْلَمُوْنَ ۝٢٥

3:25

Then how will it be when We [inevitably] gather them, all without exception, for a Momentous Day—there is absolutely no doubt, suspicion, or question concerning it? And each and every person will be given their full share, faithfully and completely, according to what they have earned. And they—they will not suffer any injustice.

Notes:

Past tense is used in this verse to emphasise the certainty and inevitability of facing the consequences of one's actions, as though they have already occurred

إِذَا جَمَعْنٰهُمْ

Structure indicates certainty of outcome

جَمَعْنٰهُمْ

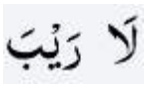
Root letters are connected to collect, gather, unite, combine, bring together, put together, join, compile, rally, accumulate, and assemble

Are connected to whole, entire, all, entirety and altogether



Root letters are connected to days, age, era and time

Are connected to momentous and important day



Structure indicates absolute negation



Root letters are connected to being suspicious, doubting, questioning and disturbance of the mind

Doubt - uncertain between options

Suspicion - leaning toward doubt/negation

Question - seeking clarity through inquiry



Root letters are connected to paying in full, complete, give full share and to do full justice

Are connected to doing full justice and carry out fully

Are connected to being faithful and loyal

Faithfully - quality of commitment

Completely - extent of fulfilment

نَفْسٍ

Root letters are connected to soul, person, mind, human being and an individual

كَسَبَتْ

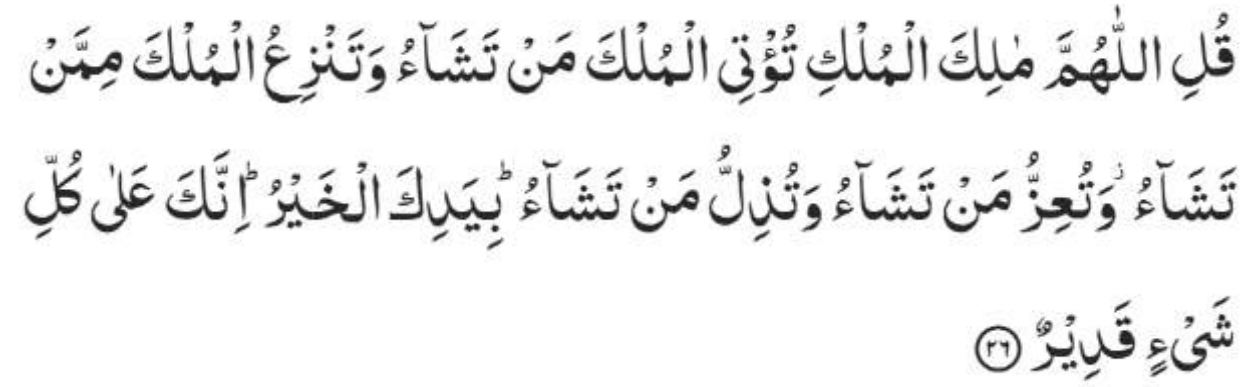
Root letters are connected to acquiring, earning, gathering, obtaining, gaining

وَهُمْ لَا يُظْلَمُونَ

Pronoun “they” is used twice for added emphasis

يُظْلَمُونَ

Root letters are connected to be unjust, act tyrannically, do wrong, do evil, harm, oppress and transgress proper limits


قُلِ اللّٰهُمَّ مٰلِكَ الْمُلْكِ تُؤْتِي الْمُلْكَ مَنْ تَشَآءُ وَتَنْزِعُ الْمُلْكَ مِمَّنْ
تَشَآءُ ۫ وَتُعِزُّ مَنْ تَشَآءُ وَتُذِلُّ مَنْ تَشَآءُ ؕ بِيَدِكَ الْخَيْرُ ؕ اِنَّكَ عَلٰى كُلِّ
شَىْءٍ قَدِيْرٌ ﴿٢٦﴾

3:26

Declare, "Allah—the One who [innately and eternally] owns all things, possessing complete authority and control—the Master of dominion and sovereignty. You grant authority and control to whoever You will; and You deprive, tear away, and divest authority and control from whoever You will. And You aid, strengthen, and honour whoever You will; and You weaken, humble, and abase whoever You will. Through Your Hand of power, authority, and assistance [alone] all good is obtained—leading to well-being. Certainly, You are [innately and eternally] the One who has full power, control, and ability over each and every matter, who determines and decrees according to exact measure.

Notes:


قُلِ

Root letters are connected to saying, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

اللّٰهُمَّ

A form of invocation

مٰلِكَ الْمُلْكِ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

مٰلِكَ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

Root letters are connected to rule, reign, authority, domination and ownership

Are connected to possessor, owner, master, and king

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

Ownership - full possession and belonging

الْمُلْكِ and الْمُلْكَ

Root letters are connected to rule, reign, sovereignty, authority, domination and ownership

Dominion - supreme rule, authority, and control over a territory, people, or realm

Sovereignty - supreme and independent authority to govern, command, and exercise ultimate power

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

تُؤْتِي

Root letters are connected to giving, granting and bestowing

تَشَآءُ

Root letters are connected to wanting, willing and wishing

تَنْزِعُ

Root letters are connected to pulling out, extracting, tearing out, removing, stripping, tearing off, depriving, divesting, wresting and snatching

Deprive – prevent someone from obtaining something

Tear away – to remove something forcefully, abruptly, or violently from its holder

Divest – to strip someone of a possession, authority, office, or power that they previously held

تُعِزُّ

Root letters are connected to making strong, strengthening, fortifying, reinforcing, honouring, esteeming, aiding and helping

Aid - to help, support, or assist someone in overcoming difficulty or opposition

Strengthen - to increase someone's strength, power, position, or ability to withstand opposition

Honour - to confer dignity, esteem, respect, or an elevated status upon someone



Root letters are connected to debasing, degrading, humiliating, humbling, subduing, conquering, despising, and abasing

Weaken - to reduce a person’s strength, power, influence, or ability to resist

Humble - to bring someone down from pride, superiority, or an elevated position

Abase - to lower someone greatly in rank, dignity, honour, or standing



Structure shows exclusivity



Root letters are connected to hand, power, control, influence, authority, assistance, help and aid

Power - ability or capacity to act or carry out something

Authority - recognised right or legitimacy to act or decide

Assistance - help, support, or aid given to bring about or accomplish something

الْخَيْرُ

Root letters are connected to a good thing, good quality, resources, treasures, anything good and blessings

اَنَّ اللّٰهَ عَلٰى كُلِّ شَىْءٍ قَدِيْرٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

شَىْءٍ

Root letters are connected to a thing, matter or affair

قَدِيْرٌ

Root letters are connected to possessing control, strength, power and ability

Are connected to determine, decree, ordain, assess, evaluate, calculate and measurement

تُولِجُ الَّيْلَ فِي النَّهَارِ وَتُولِجُ النَّهَارَ فِي الَّيْلِ ۖ وَتُخْرِجُ الْحَيَّ مِنَ الْمَيِّتِ
وَتُخْرِجُ الْمَيِّتَ مِنَ الْحَيِّ ۖ وَتَرْزُقُ مَنْ تَشَآءُ بِغَيْرِ حِسَابٍ ﴿٢٧﴾

3:27

You make the night enter into the day; and You make the day enter into the night. And You bring forth producing the living being from the dead—the free of sorrow from the deprived; and You bring forth producing the dead from the living being—the deprived from the free of sorrow. And You provide blessings to whoever You will without limit."

Notes:

تُولِجُ ا

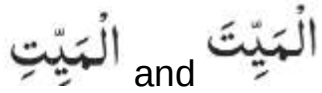
Root letters are connected to make enter, introduce, insert, interpose, intromit and put one thing into another

تُخْرِجُ

Root letters are connected to bringing out, pulling out and producing

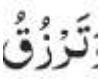
الْحَيَّ

Root letters are connected to living, live, alive, lively, active, unbroken, undaunted, undismayed, free from sorrow, whole and sound

 and

Root letters connected to death, lifelessness and nonexistent

Are connected to being poor, base or abject

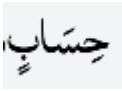


Root letters are connected to means of survival and living, to bestow, to nourish, to provide provision, grant material or spiritual provision, and derive benefit from something

Are connected to bestowing blessings and gifts



Root letters are connected to wanting, willing and wishing



Root letters are connected to reckoning, considering, calculating, counting, charging and taking into account

لَا يَتَّخِذِ الْمُؤْمِنُوْنَ الْكٰفِرِيْنَ اَوْلِيَآءَ مِنْ دُوْنِ الْمُؤْمِنِيْنَ ۚ وَمَنْ
يَّفْعَلْ ذٰلِكَ فَلَيْسَ مِنَ اللّٰهِ فِيْ شَيْءٍ اِلَّآ اَنْ تَتَّقُوْا مِنْهُمْ تُقٰىةً ؕ
وَيُحَذِّرُكُمُ اللّٰهُ نَفْسَهٗ ؕ وَاِلَى اللّٰهِ الْمَصِيْرُ ﴿٢٨﴾

3:28

Those who are firmly established in, and persist in, sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind, must not take or adhere to those who are firmly established in, and persist in, neglecting, dissociating from, and denying their obligations to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them] in a state of close association and seeking support—while disregarding those who are firmly established in, and persist in, sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith. And whoever influences or engages in that, then, in that case, he has no association with Allah in any matter, except in the case when you protect yourselves from them in a state of fear and duress. And Allah cautions you concerning Himself. And to Allah [alone] is the journey, destination, and outcome.

Notes:

يَتَّخِذِ

Root letters are connected to taking firmly, accepting, gripping, seizing, occupying, adhering, adopting, making one’s own, and making use

الْمُؤْمِنُوْنَ and الْمُؤْمِنِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

الْكٰفِرِيْنَ

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

اَوْلِيَآءَ

Root letters are connected to helper, support, benefactor, friend, close associate, relative and protector

Are connected to protecting, supporting, befriending, managing and assuming responsibility

يَّفْعَلْ

Root letters are connected to doing an action, to influence, activity and accomplishing a task

شَيْءٍ

Root letters are connected to a thing, matter or affair

تَتَّقُوْا

Root letters are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

تُقٰىةً

Root letters are connected to fear, caution, prudence, dissimulation of one’s religion in duress or danger

يُحَذِّرُكُمُ

Root letters are connected to warning, cautioning, putting on guard, and inspiring with fear

نَفْسَهٗ

Root letters are connected to soul, person, self, mind, human being and an individual

وَإِلَى اللهِ الْمَصِيْرُ

Structure shows exclusivity

الْمَصِيْرُ

Root letters are connected to end, outcome, result, journey, destination and end

Journey - the transition

Destination - the location

Outcome – the finality

قُلْ اِنْ تُخْفُوْا مَا فِيْ صُدُوْرِكُمْ اَوْ تُبْدُوْهُ يَعْلَمْهُ اللّٰهُ ۭ وَيَعْلَمُ مَا فِي
السَّمٰوٰتِ وَمَا فِي الْاَرْضِ ۭ وَاللّٰهُ عَلٰي كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيْرٌ ۝۲۹

3:29

Declare, "If you disguise, conceal, or keep secret whatever is in your chests or you openly express or reveal it—verbally or physically—Allah completely knows and fully understands it. And He completely knows and fully understands whatever is in the lofty skies and whatever is in the Earth." And Allah is innately and eternally the One who has full power, control, and ability over each and every matter, who determines and decrees according to exact measure.

Notes:

قُلْ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

تُخْفُوْ

Root letters are connected to hiding, concealing, keeping secret

Are connected to disguising

صُدُوْرِكُمْ

Root letters are connected to chest, breast, bust, bosom and heart

تُبْدُوْا

Root letters are connected to disclosing, revealing, declaring openly, expressing verbally and physically

Express - to bring something outwardly into manifestation through speech or action

Reveal - to uncover or make something hidden or internal externally visible or known

يَعْلَمُهُ ا and يَعْلَمُ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

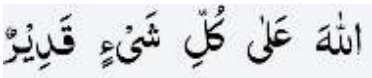
Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

السَّمٰوٰتِ

Root letters are connected to sky, heaven and ceiling

Are connected to raised, elevated, high, lofty and tall



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



Root letters are connected to a thing, matter or affair



Root letters are connected to possessing control, strength, power and ability

Are connected to determine, decree, ordain, assess, evaluate, calculate and measurement

يَوْمَ تَجِدُ كُلُّ نَفْسٍ مَّا عَمِلَتْ مِنْ خَيْرٍ مُّحْضَرًا ۚ وَمَا عَمِلَتْ مِنْ
سُوْٓءٍ ۚ تَوَدُّ لَوْ اَنَّ بَيْنَهَا وَبَيْنَهٗٓ اَمَدًا بَعِيْدًا ۗ وَيُحَذِّرُكُمُ اللّٰهُ نَفْسَهٗ ۗ
وَاللّٰهُ رَءُوْفٌۢ بِالْعِبَادِ ۝٣٠

3:30

On the Momentous Day each and every person will find, obtain, and experience whatever they have done, from any good, in an established state of being prepared and presented. And [also] whatever they have done from any evil—they will love and want that there had been between themselves and it a distant and remote stretch of time. And Allah cautions you all concerning Himself. And Allah is innately and eternally the One who is intensely kind and compassionate with the slaves.

Notes:

يَوْمَ

Root letters are connected to days, age, era and time

Are connected to momentous and important days

تَجِدُ

Root letters are connected to finding, obtaining, meeting with, getting, feeling, sensing, experiencing and coming across

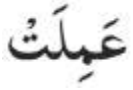
Find - discovery/encounter

Obtain - possession/acquisition

Experience - lived reality and effect



Root letters are connected to soul, person, mind, human being and an individual



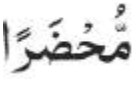
Root letters are connected to working, doing, striving to accomplish, and acting



Root letters are connected to good, virtuous and generous

Are connected to a good state and well-being

Are connected to good qualities and actions



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to getting, bringing, bringing forward, calling for, placing ready, preparing, presenting and making ready



Root letters are connected to evil, torment, harm, damage, calamity, treating badly and an evilness of state or condition



Root letters are connected to loving, liking, wishing and wanting

Love - inward feeling

Want - outward intention



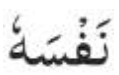
Root letters are connected to goal, end, limit, time, stretch of time and term



Root letters are connected to far away, distant, far, remote, out of the way, extensive and distance in time



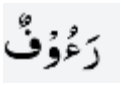
Root letters are connected to warning, cautioning, putting on guard, and inspiring with fear



Root letters are connected to soul, person, self, mind, human being and an individual



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

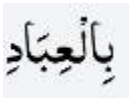


Form used shows intensity

Root letters are connected to showing mercy, pity, kindness and grace

Intensely kind - constantly showing immense goodness and tenderness

Intensely compassionate - greatly caring, relieving hardship and granting mercy



Root letters are connected to a male servant and male slave

قُلْ اِنْ كُنْتُمْ تُحِبُّوْنَ اللّٰهَ فَاتَّبِعُوْنِيْ يُحْبِبْكُمُ اللّٰهُ وَيَغْفِرْ لَكُمْ
ذُنُوْبَكُمْ ۗ وَاللّٰهُ غَفُوْرٌ رَّحِيْمٌ ﴿٣١﴾

3:31

Declare, "If you all are, in fact, [firmly established in] desiring, respecting, preferring, and loving Allah, then be in agreement with, pursue, and adhere to me, thereby living under my authority—Allah will then prefer and love you; and He will conceal, forgive, and correct, for your benefit, your transgressions." And Allah is innately and eternally the One who conceals, forgives, and corrects affairs, the One who especially grants constant mercy, kindness, and relief to those who earn it.

Notes:

قُلْ

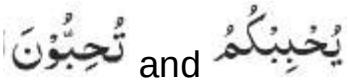
Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

كُنْتُمْ تُحِبُّوْنَ

Structure indicates repetitive action

كُنْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

 and

Root letters are connected to desiring, preferring, liking

Are connected to wishing, wanting and loving

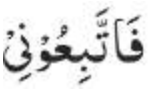
Are connected to esteeming something or someone

Desire - inward attraction and wanting

Respect - elevating their status and importance

Prefer - giving them practical priority and choosing them over others

Love - deep emotional attachment and devotion



Root letters are connected to following, pursuing, walking behind and adhering

Are connected to being under authority and command

Are connected to concurring, being in agreement and being in conformity

In agreement - accepting the guidance internally (belief/acceptance)

Pursues - actively seeking and following it

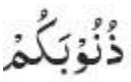
Adheres to - remaining firm and consistent upon it

 and

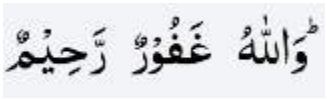
Root letters are connected to covering, concealing, veiling and hiding

Are connected to forgiving and pardoning

Are connected to correcting and rectifying affairs



Root letters are connected to offense, sin, crime, misdeed, fault and transgression



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



Root letters are connected to having mercy, compassion, sparing, letting off, saving, kindness, tenderness and pity

Intense structure form has been used

Specific mercy for those who deserve and earn it

Mercy – withholds punishment from those who deserve it

Kindness – a broader act of granting blessings

قُلْ اَطِيْعُوا اللّٰهَ وَالرَّسُوْلَ ۚ فَاِنْ تَوَلَّوْا فَاِنَّ اللّٰهَ لَا يُحِبُّ الْكٰفِرِيْنَ ﴿٣٢﴾

3:32

Declare, "Submit to and obey Allah and the Messenger—[who sincerely conveys a divine code of conduct from Allah]." But if they have refrained and turned away, then certainly, Allah does not like those who are firmly established in, and persist in, neglecting, dissociating from, and denying their obligations to Him, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them].

Notes:

قُلْ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

اَطِيْعُوا

Root letters are connected to obey, follow, submit, yield and comply

Submitted - the inward attitude and acceptance of authority

Obeyed - the outward response and implementation

الرَّسُوْلَ

Root letters are connected to dispatching, a message and corresponding

Are connected to a messenger, delegate and apostle

Are connected to being friendly, intimate and free of affectation

Are connected to the one who carries by consecutive progressions the relation of the tidings of Him who has sent him

تَوَلَّوْا

Root letters are connected to turning, turning away, turning back, fleeing, desisting, refraining and forgoing

يُحِبُّ

Root letters are connected liking, loving and wanting

الْكٰفِرِيْنَ

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

إِنَّ اللّٰهَ اصْطَفٰٓى اٰدَمَ وَنُوْحًا وَّاٰلَ اِبْرٰهِيْمَ وَاٰلَ عِمْرٰنَ عَلَى الْعٰلَمِيْنَ ﴿٣٣﴾

3:33

Certainly, Allah has judged Adam, Nuh, the relatives and companions of Ibrahim, and the relatives and companions of Imran as sincere and pure—choosing them in preference to all generations [of humans and jinn] endowed with higher-level recognition, knowledge, and understanding—[marked for accountability].

Notes:

اصْطَفٰٓى

Root letters are connected to deeming clear or pure

Are connected to being sincere and honest

Are connected to choosing, selecting, singling out and granting preference over others

Are connected to a sincere friend, best friend and bosom friend

اٰلَ

Root letters are connected to family, followers, relatives, kinsfolk, companions and people

الْعٰلَمِيْنَ

Root letters are connected to generation

Are connected to inquiring, asking and querying

Are connected to something which is marked e.g. landmark – Humans and Jinn are marked for accountability e.g. Quran 55:31

Are connected to knowledge, understanding, recognition, perception, discernment and learning – Humans and Jinn possess higher level of knowledge, intelligence and understanding in respect to divine guidance and accountability and are therefore marked for accountability unlike other creatures

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

Same term used in Quran 25:1 which mentions the Prophet Muhammad, peace and blessings be upon him, being sent as a warner. He was sent only to those marked for accountability as a warner and not the entire creation

ذُرِّيَّةًۢ بَعْضُهَا مِنۢ بَعْضٍ ۗ وَاللّٰهُ سَمِيْعٌ عَلِيْمٌ ۝٣٤

3:34

[Allah has judged them as sincere and pure—choosing them[1],] the descendants—some of them from others. And Allah is innately and eternally the One whose hearing encompasses all things, the One who completely knows and fully understands everything.

Notes:

1 – This verse continues using the verb employed in the previous verse – Quran 3:33

ذُرِّيَّةً

Root letters are connected to children, descendants, young children and offspring

وَاللّٰهُ سَمِيْعٌ عَلِيْمٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

سَمِيْعٌ

Root letters are connected to hearing, listening and paying attention



Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

إِذْ قَالَتِ امْرَأَتُ عِمْرٰنَ رَبِّ إِنِّي نَذَرْتُ لَكَ مَا فِي بَطْنِي مُحَرَّرًا فَتَقَبَّلْ
مِنِّي ۚ إِنَّكَ أَنْتَ السَّمِيعُ الْعَلِيمُ ﴿٣٥﴾

3:35

When the wife of Imran declared, "My nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority], certainly, I have consecrated to You [alone] what is inside my womb in a [firmly established and persistent] state of being set entirely free for Your devoted service. Therefore, approve of and accept from me; certainly, You—You are [innately and eternally] the One whose hearing encompasses all things, the One who completely knows and fully understands everything."

Notes:

قَالَتِ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

رَبِّ

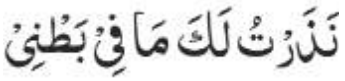
Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

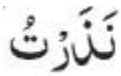
Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended



Structure shows exclusivity



Root letters are connected to dedicating, consecrating and vowing

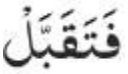


Root letters are connected to stomach, womb, abdomen, inside and interior



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to freeing, setting free, releasing, consecrating to the service of God, giving freedom and emancipating



Root letters are connected to accepting, agreeing and taking

Are connected to approving, acquiesce, agree and consent

إِنَّكَ أَنْتَ

Pronoun “You” is used twice for added emphasis

إِنَّكَ أَنْتَ السَّمِيْعُ الْعَلِيْمُ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

السَّمِيْعُ

Root letters are connected to hearing, listening and paying attention

الْعَلِيْمُ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

فَلَمَّا وَضَعَتْهَا قَالَتْ رَبِّ اِنِّیْ وَضَعْتُهَاۤ اُنْثٰی ؕ وَاللّٰهُ اَعْلَمُ بِمَا وَضَعَتْ ؕ
وَلَیْسَ الذَّكَرُ كَالْاُنْثٰی ۚ وَاِنِّیْ سَمَّیْتُهَا مَرْیَمَ وَاِنِّیْۤ اُعِیْذُهَا بِكَ
وَذُرِّیَّتَهَا مِنَ الشَّیْطٰنِ الرَّجِیْمِ ﴿۳۶﴾

3:36

Then at the very moment she gave birth to her, she exclaimed, "My nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority], certainly, I have given birth to her—a female[1]." Whereas, Allah is more knowing and understanding concerning her giving birth. "And the male is not like the female. And certainly, I have named her Maryam. And certainly, I seek protection and preservation of her with You—her and her descendants—from the Devil, [arrogantly corrupt, who deters others from obeying Allah—ever firmly established in, and persisting in, being] cursed, expelled, and abandoned."

Notes:

1 – At that time, males were usually dedicated to the service of Allah, the Exalted, so she hoped to give birth to a boy

لَمَّا

Root letters are connected to when, since and after

Emphasizes moment of occurrence

وَضَعَتْهَا

Root letters are connected to putting down, unburdening, bearing a child, and giving birth

قَالَتْ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

رَبِّ

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

الذَّكَرُ

Root letters are connected to male

أُنْثٰى

Root letters are connected to a female

اَعْلَمُ

A comparative

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

سَمَّيْتُهَا

Root letters are connected to naming, calling, designating, giving a title, and appointing

اُعِيْذُهَا

Root letters are connected to seek protection, seeking preservation, take refuge and place trust in someone for protection

Protection - being shielded from harm, danger, or wrongdoing

Preservation - being kept safe, maintained, and prevented from corruption or loss

ذُرِّيَّتَهَا

Root letters are connected to children, descendants, young children and offspring

الشَّيْطٰنِ

Root letters are connected to behaving like a devil, rebellious, corrupt and arrogant

Are connected to opposing others, turning them away from their purpose

Are connected to becoming remote and distant from the mercy of Allah, the Exalted

الرَّجِيْمِ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being cursed, stoned, damned, driven away, cast out, thrown out, forsaken, abandoned and cut off from the mercy of Allah, the Exalted

فَتَقَبَّلَهَا رَبُّهَا بِقَبُوْلٍ حَسَنٍ وَّاَنْۢبَتَهَا نَبَاتًا حَسَنًا وَّكَفَّلَهَا زَكَرِيَّا ؕ
كُلَّمَا دَخَلَ عَلَيْهَا زَكَرِيَّا الْمِحْرَابَ ۙ وَجَدَ عِنْدَهَا رِزْقًا ۚ قَالَ يٰمَرْيَمُ
اَنّٰى لَكِ هٰذَا ؕ قَالَتْ هُوَ مِنْ عِنْدِ اللّٰهِ ؕ اِنَّ اللّٰهَ يَرْزُقُ مَنْ يَّشَآءُ بِغَيْرِ
حِسَابٍ ﴿٣٧﴾

3:37

Then her nurturing Lord—educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority—approved and accepted her according to a suitable and excellent approval and acceptance; and nurtured her, causing her to grow and thrive according to a suitable and excellent nurturing: having committed her into the care of Zakariyya. Every time Zakariyya entered upon her in the private prayer chamber, he found and experienced, in her presence, [miraculous] provision as a means of living. He questioned [in amazement], "Maryam! From where and how do you possess this?" She replied, "It is from the presence of Allah. Certainly, Allah provides blessings to whoever He wills without limit."

Notes:

فَتَقَبَّلَهَا and بِقَبُوْلٍ

Root letters are connected to accepting, agreeing and taking

Are connected to approving, acquiesce, agree and consent



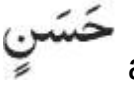
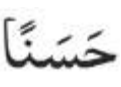
Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

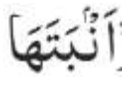
Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

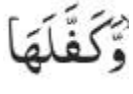
 and 

Root letters are connected to being excellent, good, nice, lovely and beautiful

Are connected to advisable, suitable, be fitting and proper

 and 

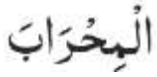
Root letters are connected to cause to sprout, make grow, cultivate, plant, nurture, growth, and make to grow and thrive



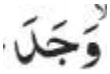
Root letters are connected to feed, support, provide for, commit into care of, and place under someone’s charge



Root letters are connected to entering, taking possession and making one’s own



Root letters are connected to prayer niche, upper end of a house, highest chamber in a house, high place, private chamber, and place of worship



Root letters are connected to finding, obtaining, meeting with, getting, feeling, sensing, experiencing and coming across

Find - discovery/encounter

Experience - lived reality and effect

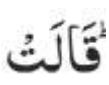


Preposition – with, in the company of, in the presence of, in despite of, together and in the estimation



Root letters are connected to means of survival and living, to bestow, to nourish, to provide provision, grant material or spiritual provision, and derive benefit from something

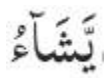
Are connected to bestowing blessings and gifts

 and 

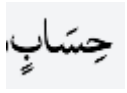
Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging



Structure indicates possession



Root letters are connected to wanting, willing and wishing



Root letters are connected to reckoning, considering, calculating, counting, charging and taking into account

هُنَالِكَ دَعَا زَكَرِيَّا رَبَّهُ ۖ قَالَ رَبِّ هَبْ لِي مِن لَّدُنكَ ذُرِّيَّةً طَيِّبَةً ۖ
إِنَّكَ سَمِيعُ الدُّعَاءِ ﴿٣٨﴾

3:38

In that place, Zakariyya supplicated his nurturing Lord—educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority—saying, "My nurturing Lord, gift me from Your presence a pure and pleasant descendant. Certainly, You are [innately and eternally] the One whose hearing encompasses every request, supplication, and plea."

Notes:

دَعَا and الدُّعَاءِ

Root letters are connected to calling, calling upon, appealing and implore

Are connected to call, invocation, request, plea, and a cry

Requests - things asked for or sought from someone; an expression of a desire for something to be given or done

Supplications - earnest, humble appeals or prayers directed to someone for help, mercy, or something desired

Pleas - urgent, heartfelt appeals made with strong earnestness, especially when seeking help or relief

رَبَّهُۥٓ and رَبِّ

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

قَالَ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

هَبْ

Root letters are connected to giving, donating, granting, according, presenting, endowing and giving a thing as a free gift not for any compensation

ذُرِّيَّةً

Root letters are connected to children, descendants, young children and offspring

طَيِّبَةً

Root letters are connected to something good, pure, pleasant, agreeable, healthy, delightful, delicious and lawful

Pure - free from impurity and corruption

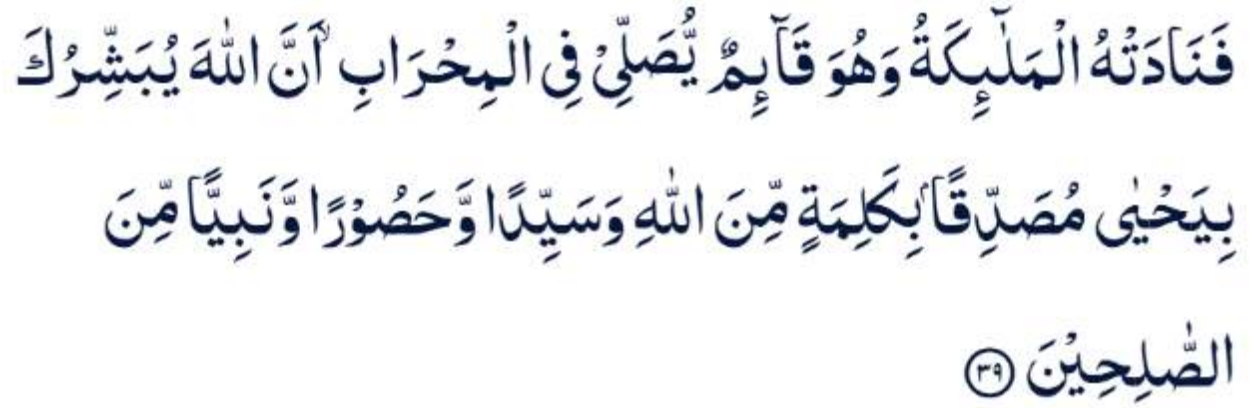
Pleasant - enjoyable and agreeable

إِنَّكَ سَمِيعُ الدُّعَاءِ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

سَمِيعُ

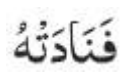
Root letters are connected to hearing, listening and paying attention


فَنَادَتْهُ الْمَلٰٓئِكَةُ وَهُوَ قَآئِمٌ يُّصَلِّيْ فِي الْمِحْرَابِ ۙ اَنَّ اللّٰهَ يُبَشِّرُكَ
بِيَحْيٰى مُصَدِّقًا بِكَلِمَةٍ مِّنَ اللّٰهِ وَسَيِّدًا وَّحَصُوْرًا وَّنَبِيًّا مِّنَ
الصّٰلِحِيْنَ ﴿٣٩﴾

3:39

Then the Angels announced to him, while he was in a firmly established and persistent state of sincerely standing—praying in the private prayer chamber, "Allah announces good news to you of a positive future prospect—Yahyah—who will be in a [firmly established and persistent] state of verifying and bearing witness together with a weighty and powerful authority from Allah; and a leader—possessor of honour, dignity, and forbearance; and chaste and cautious—abstaining from worldly pleasures; and an honoured Prophet, [who conveys divine knowledge from Allah,] from amongst those who are [firmly established in, and persist in, being] righteous in conduct."

Notes:


فَنَادَتْهُ

Root letters are connected to shout, call out, cry out, exclaim, summon, shout, proclaim, announce, and invite to something

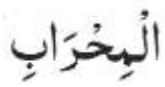


Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

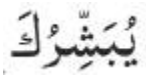
Root letters are connected to standing up, rising, standing still, rest, being sincere, and being honest



Root letters are connected to praying and worshipping



Root letters are connected to prayer niche, upper end of a house, highest chamber in a house, high place, private chamber, and place of worship



Root letters are connected to giving and announcing good news, giving good and hopeful prospects for the future

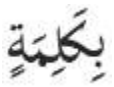


Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to certifying, verifying, confirming, substantiating, attesting and bearing witness

Verifies - confirms correctness, establishes truth

Bears witness to - testifies in favour or against



Root letters are connected to something weighty, powerful position, important, words, prophecy, decree and authority

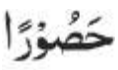


Root letters are connected to a leader, master, mister, lord, prince, superior in rank, excellence, person of distinction, one who possesses honour/dignity/eminence, clement and forbearing

Honour - high respect, esteem, or recognition of worth and standing

Dignity - an elevated sense of worth, nobility, and respectable character

Forbearance - patient self-restraint, especially the ability to tolerate faults, difficulties, or provocation without reacting harshly



Root letters are connected to being chaste, abstaining from things out of fear, shunning worldly pleasures, being cautious and very careful



Root letters are connected to informing, notifying, advising telling and announcing

Are connected to being high in rank, raised, elevated and prominent

Are connected to someone who receives unseen knowledge from Allah and conveys them to people

الصّٰلِحِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being good, just, being in order, being righteous and pious and to do appropriate things

قَالَ رَبِّ اَنّٰى يَكُوْنُ لِيْ غُلٰمٌ وَّقَدْ بَلَغَنِيَ الْكِبَرُ وَامْرَاَتِيْ عَاقِرٌ ؕ قَالَ
كَذٰلِكَ اللّٰهُ يَفْعَلُ مَا يَشَآءُ ۝٤٠

3:40

He questioned [in amazement], “My nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority], how can a boy exist for me when burdening old age has certainly reached me, and my wife is in a [firmly established and persistent] state of being unable to bear a child?” He replied, “In that way, Allah—He accomplishes whatever He wills.”

Notes:

قَالَ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

رَبِّ

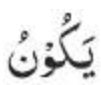
Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended



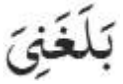
Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place



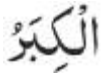
Root letters are connected to boy, youth, lad, slave, servant and waiter



Used for emphasis with past tense action i.e. certainly



Root letters are connected to reaching, getting, arriving and coming



Root letters are connected to being old and advanced in age and senior

Are connected to becoming too great, too distressing and painful, too burdensome, to appear intolerable and insurmountable

عَاقِرٌ

Root letters are connected to sterile, barren, childless and has ceased to conceive

اللهُ يَفْعَلُ

Pronoun “He” is used twice for added emphasis

يَفْعَلُ

Root letters are connected to doing an action, to influence, activity and accomplishing a task

يَشَآءُ

Root letters are connected to wanting, willing and wishing

قَالَ رَبِّ اجْعَلْ لِّيْٓ اٰيَةً ۭ قَالَ اٰيَتُكَ اَلَّا تُكَلِّمَ النَّاسَ ثَلٰثَةَ اَيَّامٍ اِلَّا
رَمْزًا ۭ وَاذْكُرْ رَّبَّكَ كَثِيْرًا وَّسَبِّحْ بِالْعَشِيِّ وَالْاِبْكَارِ ۝۴۱

3:41

He supplicated, “My nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority], appoint for me a miraculous and evident sign.” He replied, “Your miraculous and evident sign is that you will not [be able to] speak to the people for three days except by communicating through sign. And remember and be mindful of your nurturing Lord—continually and abundantly—and constantly declare Him free from every imperfection and quickly respond in obedience to Him throughout every evening and early morning.”

Notes:

قَالَ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

رَبِّ

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

اجْعَلْ

Root letters are connected to placing, setting, inserting, making, preparing, fixing and appointing

اٰيَةً and اٰيٰتُكَ

Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof

تُكَلِّمَ

Root letters are connected to an speaking, conversing, addressing and talking

اَيَّامٍ

Root letters are connected to days, age, era and time

Are connected to momentous and important days

رَمْزًا

Root letters are connected to sign, nod, wink, hint, allusion, linguistic sign, making a sign, express symbolically, and giving a sign by movement of lips/brow/tongue/hand

اذْكُرْ

Root letters are connected to remember, bear in mind, think, keep in mind and be mindful of

Remember - conscious recollection and mention

Be mindful - continual awareness influencing conduct

كَثِيرًا

Root letters are connected to increase, multiply, grow and abundance

Are connected to constantly, always, frequently and doing much

وَسَبِّحْ

Root letters are connected to glorifying Allah by declaring that He is free from all negative things

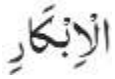
Are connected to moving swiftly in the obedience of Allah

Are connected to swimming constantly on the surface

بِالْعَشِيِّ

Singular indicating every evening

Root letters are connected to evening and late part of evening



Singular indicating every early morning

Root letters are connected to early morning, first part of the day, and the time between dawn and sunrise

وَإِذْ قَالَتِ الْمَلٰٓئِكَةُ يٰمَرْيَمُ إِنَّ اللّٰهَ اصْطَفٰىكِ وَطَهَّرَكِ وَاصْطَفٰىكِ عَلٰى نِسَآءِ الْعٰلَمِيْنَ ﴿٤٢﴾

3:42

And [reflect upon] when the Angels declared, "Maryam! Certainly, Allah has judged you sincere, and He has purified you in body and character—choosing you in preference to the women of all generations [of humans and jinn endowed with higher-level recognition, knowledge, and understanding—marked for accountability].

Notes:

قَالَتِ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

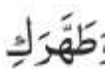
اصْطَفٰىكِ

Root letters are connected to deeming clear or pure

Are connected to being sincere and honest

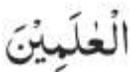
Are connected to choosing, selecting, singling out and granting preference over others

Are connected to a sincere friend, best friend and bosom friend



Root letters are connected to clean and purity

Are connected to chastity, refraining from sins, purification of character and purification from bad habits



Root letters are connected to generation

Are connected to inquiring, asking and querying

Are connected to something which is marked e.g. landmark – Humans and Jinn are marked for accountability e.g. Quran 55:31

Are connected to knowledge, understanding, recognition, perception, discernment and learning – Humans and Jinn possess higher level of knowledge, intelligence and understanding in respect to divine guidance and accountability and are therefore marked for accountability unlike other creatures

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

Same term used in Quran 25:1 which mentions the Prophet Muhammad, peace and blessings be upon him, being sent as a warner. He was sent only to those marked for accountability as a warner and not the entire creation

يٰمَرۡيَمُ اقۡنُتِيۡ لِرَبِّكِ وَاسۡجُدِيۡ وَارۡكَعِيۡ مَعَ الرّٰكِعِيۡنَ ﴿۴۳﴾

3:43

Maryam! Be humbly obedient—pure in heart—to your nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority]: prostrate in submission and worship; and humbly bow down with those who are [firmly established in, and persist in,] humbly bowing down [to Allah in obedience].”

Notes:

اقۡنُتِيۡ

Root letters are connected obedience, humility and submission

Are connected to purity of heart, submitting to Allah, the Exalted, and piety

لِرَبِّكِ

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

وَاسْجُدِىْ

Root letters are connected to bowing down, prostrating, bending down

Are connected to becoming humble, submissive and worship

ارْكَعِىْ

Root letters are connected to bowing down, knelling down and bending the body

Are connected to humbling oneself and worshipping Allah

مَعَ

Preposition – with, in the company of, in despite of, together and in the estimation

الرّٰكِعِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to bowing down, knelling down and bending the body

Are connected to humbling oneself, turning to Allah and worshipping Allah

ذٰلِكَ مِنۡ اَنۡۢبَآءِ الۡغَيۡبِ نُوۡحِيۡهِ اِلَيۡكَ ؕ وَمَا كُنۡتَ لَدَيۡهِمۡ اِذۡ يُلۡقُوۡنَ
اَقۡلَامَهُمۡ اَيُّهُمۡ يَكۡفُلُ مَرۡيَمَ ۖ وَمَا كُنۡتَ لَدَيۡهِمۡ اِذۡ يَخۡتَصِمُوۡنَ ﴿۴۴﴾

3:44

That is from the accounts of the unseen which are beyond the perception of human senses—discoverable only through divine revelation—that We inspire to you through revelation. And you did not exist in their presence when they cast their lots as to which of them would be the responsible guardian of Maryam. And you did not exist in their presence when they argued with one another.

Notes:

The Arabic employs the present tense rhetorically to bring the scene into immediate view and, where applicable, to convey habitual or repeated action

اَنۡۢبَآءِ

Root letters are connected to news, tidings, information, announcement, report, report, message and account

الۡغَيۡبِ

Root letters are connected to something which is absent, hidden, invisible, discoverable through divine revelation and beyond the reach of mental perception

نُوْحِيْهِ

Root letters are connected to inspire, reveal, give an idea, give an impression, to suggest and hint

كُنْتَ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

لَدَيْهِمْ

Preposition - in the presence , by, at and with

يُلْقُوْنَ

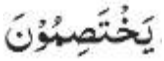
Root letters are connected to throw, cast, submit, extend and plunge

اَقْلَامَهُمْ

Root letters are connected to pen, pencil, item, and a headless arrow used in casting lots

يَكْفُلُ

Root letters are connected to be a legal guardian, sponsor, liable, responsible, and answer for



Root letters are connected to quarrelling, arguing, having a fight, and being in conflict with one another

إِذْ قَالَتِ الْمَلٰٓئِكَةُ يٰمَرْيَمُ إِنَّ اللّٰهَ يُبَشِّرُكِ بِكَلِمَةٍ مِّنْهُ ۖ اسْمُهُ الْمَسِيحُ
عِيسَى ابْنُ مَرْيَمَ وَجِيهًا فِي الدُّنْيَا وَالْآخِرَةِ وَمِنَ الْمُقَرَّبِينَ ﴿٤٥﴾

3:45

When the Angels declared, "Maryam! Certainly, Allah announces good news to you of a weighty and powerful authority from Him. His name is the blessed and appointed Messiah—Eesa, the son of Maryam—in a [ever firmly established and persistent] state of being distinguished, honourable, and prominent in the world [the lowest state of living] and in the life of the Hereafter; and [he is] from amongst those who are [firmly established in, and persist in,] being brought close [to Allah].

Notes:

قَالَتِ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

يُبَشِّرُكِ

Root letters are connected to giving and announcing good news, giving good and hopeful prospects for the future

بِكَلِمَةٍ

Root letters are connected to something weighty, powerful position, important, words, prophecy, decree and authority

ٱسْمُهُ

Root letters are connected to a name and a title for distinction

الْمَسِيْحُ

Root letters are connected to being blessed and goodly

Are connected to anointed, clean, smooth, and the Messiah

وَجِيْهًا

Root letters are connected to distinguished, prominent, high-ranking, notable, person of distinction, honourable, and respected

Distinguished - set apart from others by notable qualities, excellence, or status

Honourable - possessing a high degree of respect, dignity, and moral worth

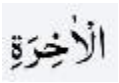
Prominent - occupying a conspicuous, elevated, or influential position among others

الدُّنْيَا

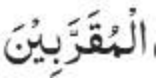
A superlative

Root letters are connected to being low and near

Are connected to world, life in this world, worldly existence, temporal things or possessions and earthly things and concerns



Root letters are connected to the hereafter, the final abode and something which is delayed and deferred



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to allowing to come near, causing to come near, making something approach, bringing close, and bringing near

وَيُكَلِّمُ النَّاسَ فِي الْمَهْدِ وَكَهْلًا وَّمِنَ الصّٰلِحِيْنَ ﴿٤٦﴾

3:46

And he will speak to the people while in the cradle, and when middle-aged[1]. And [he is] from amongst those who are [firmly established in, and persist in being] righteous in conduct."

Notes:

1 – The Prophet Eesa, peace be upon him, ascended to the Heavens before reaching middle-age; therefore, this verse indicates his prophesied return toward the end of time (Sahih Muslim, 7373)

يُكَلِّمُ

Root letters are connected to an speaking, conversing, addressing and talking

الْمَهْدِ

Root letters are connected to bed, cradle, piece of land, and child's bed

كَهْلًا

Root letters are connected to middle-age, man of mature age, elderly, getting the first grey hair, and mature age

الصّٰلِحِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being good, just, being in order, being righteous and pious and to do appropriate things

قَالَتْ رَبِّ اَنّٰى يَكُوْنُ لِيْ وَلَدٌ وَّلَمْ يَمْسَسْنِيْ بَشَرٌ ؕ قَالَ كَذٰلِكِ اللّٰهُ
يَخْلُقُ مَا يَشَآءُ ؕ اِذَا قَضٰۤى اَمْرًا فَاِنَّمَا يَقُوْلُ لَهٗ كُنْ فَيَكُوْنُ ﴿۴۷﴾

3:47

She questioned [in amazement], "My nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority], how can offspring exist for me when a man has not touched me?" He replied, "In that way, Allah—He brings into existence [in a perfectly suitable and precise manner] whatever He wills. Whenever He decisively executes any matter, then He only declares concerning it, "Occur"—then it comes into existence.

Notes:

قَالَتْ and يَقُوْلُ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

رَبِّ

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

يَكُوْنُ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

وَلَدٌ

Root letters are connected to a child, son, offspring and descendant

يَمْسَسْنِيْ

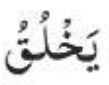
Root letters are connected to touching, touching slightly, to handle, to befall, to be struck

بَشَرٌ

Root letters are connected to man, human being, men, mankind, and human skin

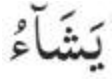
اللّٰهُ يَخْلُقُ

Pronoun “He” is used twice for added emphasis

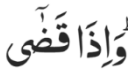


Root letters are connected to creating, originating, making, determining according to specific weight and measure and bringing into existence from nothing

Are connected to being fitting and suitable



Root letters are connected to wanting, willing and wishing



Structure indicates repetitive action



Root letters are connected to discharging, decreeing, fulfilling, judging and executing

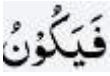


Common instead of proper i.e. any

Root letters are connected to a command, thing, affair, business and a matter



Indicates immediate action and effortless execution

 and 

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

وَيُعَلِّمُهُ الْكِتٰبَ وَالْحِكْمَةَ وَالتَّوْرٰىةَ وَالْاِنْجِيْلَ ﴿٤٨﴾

3:48

And He will teach and clarify to him the divine code of conduct[1] and wisdom [perfect judgement, self-restraint, and leadership—ensuring knowledge is used correctly]: the Torah and the Gospel.

Notes:

1 - The divine code of conduct is mentioned in the singular form to emphasise the shared and unified divine guidance originally granted through the Torah and affirmed by the Gospel

يُعَلِّمُهُ

Root letters are connected to teaching, instructing and educating

Are connected to distinguishing, differentiating and making apparent

الْكِتٰبَ

Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document

وَالْحِكْمَةَ

Root letters are connected to judging, deciding and decreeing

Are connected to governing, ruling, dominating and controlling

Are connected to wisdom

Are connected to accuracy, perfection and precision

Are connected to restraining the intellect from bad things

وَرَسُوْلًا اِلٰى بَنِيْٓ اِسْرَآءِيْلَ ۙ اَنِّيْ قَدْ جِئْتُكُمْ بِاٰيَةٍ مِّنْ رَّبِّكُمْ ۙ اَنِّيْٓ اَخْلُقُ
لَكُمْ مِّنَ الطِّيْنِ كَهَيْـَٔةِ الطَّيْرِ فَاَنْفُخُ فِيْهِ فَيَكُوْنُ طَيْرًا بِاِذْنِ اللّٰهِ ۚ
وَاُبْرِئُ الْاَكْمَهَ وَالْاَبْرَصَ وَاُحْيِ الْمَوْتٰى بِاِذْنِ اللّٰهِ ۚ وَاُنَبِّئُكُمْ بِمَا
تَاْكُلُوْنَ وَمَا تَدَّخِرُوْنَ ۙ فِيْ بُيُوْتِكُمْ ۭ اِنَّ فِيْ ذٰلِكَ لَاٰيَةً لَّكُمْ اِنْ كُنْتُمْ
مُّؤْمِنِيْنَ ۚ﴿۴۹﴾

3:49

And in an established state[1] of being a Messenger [who sincerely conveys a divine code of conduct from Allah] to the descendants of Israel—" "I have certainly come to you all with a miraculous and evident sign from your nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority]: I [repeatedly[2]] produce, for your benefit, from clay a shape resembling birds, then I breathe into it and it becomes and exists as [living] birds, through the authorisation of Allah; and I cure the one who is blind, and the one suffering from leprosy, and I revive the dead, through the authorisation of Allah; and I will inform you concerning whatever you eat or utilise, and whatever you store away in secret within your houses. No doubt, in [all] that is certainly a miraculous and evident sign for your benefit, if you are, in fact, [firmly established as] those who sincerely fulfil the duties of faith [thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind].

Notes:

1 – The grammar connects back to an earlier verse, Quran 3:45, which describes the state of the Prophet Eesa, peace be upon him

2 – Birds is in the plural to indicate that this miracle took place many times

رَسُوْلًا

Root letters are connected to dispatching, a message and corresponding

Are connected to a messenger, delegate and apostle

Are connected to being friendly, intimate and free of affectation

Are connected to the one who carries by consecutive progressions the relation of the tidings of Him who has sent him

بَنِيٓ

Root letters are connected to son, daughter and descendant

وَرَسُوْلًا اِلٰى بَنِيٓ اِسْرَآءِيْلَ ۙ اَنِّيْ قَدْ جِئْتُكُمْ

No conjunction between the two direct speeches

قَدْ

Used for emphasis with past tense action i.e. certainly

جِئْتُكُمْ

Root letters are connected to coming, arriving, producing, accomplishing, bringing, advancing and accomplishing

بِاٰيَةٍ and لَاٰيَةً

Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof

لَ at the beginning is used for added emphasis

رَّبِّكُمْ

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

اَخْلُقُ

Root letters connected to creating, originating, making, producing, shaping, moulding, and forming

الطِّيْنِ

Root letters are connected to clay, potters clay, soil, mud, earth and red chalk

كَهَيْئَةِ

Root letters are connected to form, shape, exterior, appearance, guise, aspect, situation, condition, state, figure, fashion, or garb

الطَّيْرِ and طَيْرًا

Root letters are connected to a bird

فَانْفُخُ

Root letters are connected to blow, breath, puff, inflate, fill with air, and inspire

فَيَكُوْنُ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

بِاِذْنِ

Root letters are connected to permission, authorisation, and leave

أُبْرِئُ

Root letters are connected to absolving, causing to recover, curing and healing

الْأَكْمَهَ

Root letters are connected to blind, born blind, night-blind, and become blind

الْأَبْرَصَ

Root letters are connected to leprous, leper, suffering from leprosy

وَأُحْيِ

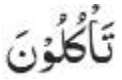
Root letters are connected to giving life, call into existence, reviving, reanimating and giving new life

الْمَوْتٰى

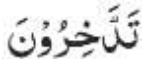
Root letters are connected to dying, perishing, losing life and subsiding

وَأُنَبِّئُكُمْ

Root letters are connected to informing, notifying, advising telling and announcing



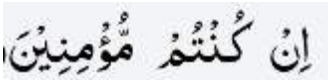
Root letters are connected to eat, swallow, consume, to enjoy and make use of



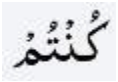
Root letters are connected to preserve, store away, put away something, accumulate, gather, hoard, amass and store in secret



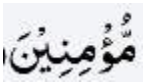
Root letters are connected to a home, house, room and apartment



Structure indicates an established state



Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

وَمُصَدِّقًا لِّمَا بَيْنَ يَدَيَّ مِنَ التَّوْرٰىةِ وَلِاُحِلَّ لَكُمْ بَعْضَ الَّذِيْ حُرِّمَ
عَلَيْكُمْ وَجِئْتُكُمْ بِاٰيَةٍ مِّنْ رَّبِّكُمْ ۗ فَاتَّقُوا اللّٰهَ وَاَطِيْعُوْنِ ۝٥٠

3:50

And in a [firmly established and persistent] state[1] of verifying and bearing witness to what came before me of the Torah—so that I make lawful and establish, for the benefit of you all, some of what was made unlawful for you. And I have come to you with a miraculous and evident sign from your nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority]. Therefore, devoutly fulfil your duties to Allah—thereby protecting yourselves from harm and arranging all your matters correctly: submitting to and obeying me.

Notes:

1 – The grammar connects back to an earlier verse, Quran 3:45, which describes the state of the Prophet Eesa, peace be upon him

مُصَدِّقًا

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to certifying, verifying, confirming, substantiating, attesting and bearing witness

Verifies - confirms correctness, establishes truth

Bears witness to - testifies in favour or against

بَيْنَ يَدَىَّ

Term refers to something in front, before and in the presence of

لِأُحِلَّ

Root letters are connected to making lawful, making permissible, establishing and stabilizing

حُرِّمَ

Root letters are connected to declaring unlawful and forbidding

جِئْتُكُمْ

Root letters are connected to coming, arriving, producing, accomplishing, bringing, advancing and accomplishing

بِـَٔايَةٍ

Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof

رَّبِّكُمْ

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

فَاتَّقُوا

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious

اَطِيْعُوْنِ

Root letters are connected to obey, follow, submit, yield and comply

Submitted - the inward attitude and acceptance of authority

Obeyed - the outward response and implementation

إِنَّ اللَّهَ رَبِّي وَرَبُّكُمْ فَاعْبُدُوهُ ۗ هَٰذَا صِرَاطٌ مُّسْتَقِيمٌ ﴿٥١﴾

3:51

Certainly, Allah is my nurturing Lord and your nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority]; therefore, humbly worship and obey Him—doing only what He approves of and approving of whatever He does. This is a firmly established, upright, and natural open path—ensuring the correct management of all affairs."

Notes:

رَبِّي and وَرَبُّكُمْ

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

فَاعْبُدُوهُ

Root letters are connected to worshipping, serving, adoring, obeying with humility and enslaving

Are connected to only doing what Allah, the Exalted, approves of and approving what He decrees

صِرَاطٌ

Root letters are connected to a long and open way or path

مُّسْتَقِيمٌ

Noun indicating an established state

Root letters are connected to preserve, established, managing affairs, fix and rectify, arrange well, reform, upright and be in a right state

Are connected to natural normal state

فَلَمَّآ اَحَسَّ عِيْسٰى مِنْهُمُ الْكُفْرَ قَالَ مَنْ اَنْصَارِيْٓ اِلَى اللّٰهِ ۭ قَالَ
الْحَوَارِيُّوْنَ نَحْنُ اَنْصَارُ اللّٰهِ ۚ اٰمَنَّا بِاللّٰهِ ۚ وَاشْهَدْ بِاَنَّا مُسْلِمُوْنَ ۝۵۲

3:52

Then at the very moment Eesa sensed, perceived, and experienced from amongst them [the descendants of Israel] neglect of, dissociation from, and denial of the obligations due to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them], he questioned, "Who will be those who are [ever firmly established in, and persist in,] adhering to, following, and supporting me towards [the path of] Allah?" The disciples—sincere and pure of character—replied, "We are [ever firmly established in, and persist in,] adhering to, following, and supporting [the path of] Allah. We have believed in Allah [as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith]; therefore, bear witness that we are [firmly established in, and persist in,] surrendering, submitting, and committing ourselves to the obedience of Allah, [thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind].

Notes:

لَمَّا

Root letters are connected to when, since and after

Emphasizes moment of occurrence

اَحَسَّ

Root letters are connected to perceive, sense, experience, feel, notice, and know for certain

Sensed - became aware of something through subtle signs, impressions, or intuition

Perceived - recognised, noticed, or became consciously aware of something

Experienced - personally encountered or underwent something, rather than merely observing it

الْكُفْرَ

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

قَالَ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

اَنْصَارِىٓ and اَنْصَارُ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Structure shows emphasis

Root letters are connected to helper, defender, supporter, protector, ally, confederate, follower and adherent

Adhering - remaining firmly attached to, committed to, or faithful to someone or something

Following - going after, accompanying, or conforming to someone's direction, example, or way

Supporting - assisting, strengthening, upholding, or giving active backing to someone or something

الْحَوَارِيُّوْنَ

Root letters are connected to disciple, apostle, follower, one free of defects, a pure thing, sincere and true friend, and pure of character

اٰمَنَّا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

وَاشْهَدْ

Root letters are connected to witness, experience personally, eyewitness, attend, give evidence, to testify and to bear witness

مُسْلِمُوْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to deserting, abandoning, surrendering, submitting, becoming muslim, and committing oneself to the will of Allah

Are connected to being safe, sound, secure and well-being

Surrenders - relinquishing resistance and competing attachments

Submits - places oneself under authority

Commits - actively dedicating oneself to obedience

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

رَبَّنَآ اٰمَنَّا بِمَآ اَنْزَلْتَ وَاتَّبَعْنَا الرَّسُوْلَ فَاكْتُبْنَا مَعَ الشّٰهِدِيْنَ ﴿٥٣﴾

3:53

Our nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority], we have believed in whatever You have revealed—to hold a special position [of supreme authority—belief demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind]. And we have been in agreement with, pursued, and adhered to the Messenger [who sincerely conveys a divine code of conduct from You], thereby living under his authority. Therefore, record us with those who are [firmly established in, and persist in,] bearing witness [to the truth].”

Notes:

رَبَّنَآ

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

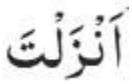


Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

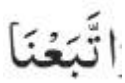
Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit



Root letters are connected to something which is sent down, comes down, descends, stops over and is granted

Are connected to something which is sent down slowly and gradually

Are connected to something which holds a special position or place



Root letters are connected to following, pursuing, walking behind and adhering

Are connected to being under authority and command

Are connected to concurring, being in agreement and being in conformity

In agreement - accepting the guidance internally (belief/acceptance)

Pursues - actively seeking and following it

Adheres to - remaining firm and consistent upon it

الرَّسُوْلَ

Root letters are connected to dispatching, a message and corresponding

Are connected to a messenger, delegate and apostle

Are connected to being friendly, intimate and free of affectation

Are connected to the one who carries by consecutive progressions the relation of the tidings of Him who has sent him

فَاكْتُبْنَا

Root letters are connected to write, pen, write down, inscribe and record

مَعَ

Preposition – with, in the company of, in despite of, together and in the estimation

الشّٰهِدِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to witness, experience personally, eyewitness, attend, give evidence, to testify and to bear witness

وَمَكَرُوْا وَمَكَرَ اللّٰهُ ؕ وَاللّٰهُ خَيْرُ الْمٰكِرِيْنَ ۝٥٤

3:54

And they [the enemies of Prophet Eesa] planned deceitfully, whereas, Allah planned skilfully. And Allah is the most preferred and best of those whose enduring practice is firmly established in, and persists in, planning skilfully in the management of affairs.

Notes:

مَكَرُوْا and مَكَرَ

Root letters are connected to deceive, delude, cheat, dupe, gul, plot a deceitful trick, and exercise skill in the management of affairs

وَاللّٰهُ خَيْرُ الْمٰكِرِيْنَ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

خَيْرُ

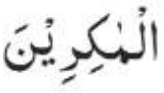
A superlative

Root letters are connected to good, virtuous and generous

Are connected to choosing and preferring

Are connected to something better and superior

Are connected to a good state and well-being



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to deceive, delude, cheat, dupe, gul, plot a deceitful trick, and exercise skill in the management of affairs

اِذْ قَالَ اللّٰهُ يٰعِيْسٰٓى اِنِّيْ مُتَوَفِّيْكَ وَرَافِعُكَ اِلَيَّ وَمُطَهِّرُكَ مِنَ الَّذِيْنَ
كَفَرُوْا وَجَاعِلُ الَّذِيْنَ اتَّبَعُوْكَ فَوْقَ الَّذِيْنَ كَفَرُوْٓا اِلٰى يَوْمِ الْقِيٰمَةِ ۚ
ثُمَّ اِلَيَّ مَرْجِعُكُمْ فَاَحْكُمُ بَيْنَكُمْ فِيْمَا كُنْتُمْ فِيْهِ تَخْتَلِفُوْنَ ﴿٥٥﴾

3:55

When Allah declared, “Eesa! Certainly, I am the One [whose enduring practice is firmly established in, and persists in,] taking you in full: raising you to Myself; and purifying you from those who have neglected, dissociated from, and denied their obligations to Me [thereby persisting in ingratitude by misusing the blessings I granted them]. And I am the One [whose enduring practice is firmly established in, and persists in,] appointing and establishing those who have been in agreement with, pursued, and adhered to you, thereby living under your authority, as superior to those who have neglected, dissociated from, and denied their obligations to Me—superiority, entirely through to the Momentous Day of upheaval, raising of the dead, and rectifying affairs. Thereafter, to Me [alone] is the time and place of all of your return and presentation for critical examination. Then, I will judge with perfect wisdom between you concerning whatever you persist in disagreeing, disputing, and opposing each other over.

Notes:

قَالَ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

مُتَوَفِّيكَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to take in full, exact fully, take one's full share, carry out completely and take or call to one's self

Are connected to be sufficient, suffice, and be adequate

وَرَافِعُكَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to raising, elevating and lifting

مُطَهِّرُكَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to clean and purity

كَفَرُوا

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

جَاعِلُ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to placing, setting, inserting, making, preparing, fixing and appointing

اتَّبَعُوْكَ

Root letters are connected to following, pursuing, walking behind and adhering

Are connected to being under authority and command

Are connected to concurring, being in agreement and being in conformity

In agreement - accepting the guidance internally (belief/acceptance)

Pursues - actively seeking and following it

Adheres to - remaining firm and consistent upon it

يَوْمِ

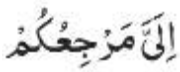
Root letters are connected to days, age, era and time

Are connected to momentous and important days

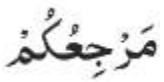
الْقِيٰمَةِ

Root letters are connected to standing, rising up, rectifying and managing affairs

Are connected to resurrection, upheaval, tumult, turmoil and raising the dead



Structure shows exclusivity



Noun indicating time and place

Root letters are connected to coming back, returning, resorting or reverting to a former place/state/quality

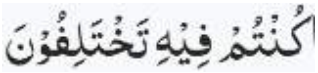
Are connected to present oneself and examine critically



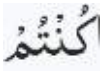
Root letters are connected to judging, deciding and decreeing

Are connected to wisdom

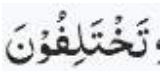
Are connected to accuracy, perfection and precision



Structure indicates repetitive action



Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place



Root letters are connected to differ, dispute, argue, disagreeing, different in opinion, debate and opposing

Disagreeing - difference in belief or opinion

Disputing - active argumentative conflict

Opposing - entrenched resistance and hostility

فَاَمَّا الَّذِيْنَ كَفَرُوْا فَاُعَذِّبُهُمْ عَذَابًا شَدِيْدًا فِى الدُّنْيَا وَالْاٰخِرَةِ ۫ وَمَا لَهُمْ مِّنْ نّٰصِرِيْنَ ﴿٥٦﴾

3:56

Then as for those who have neglected, dissociated from, and denied their obligations to Me [thereby persisting in ingratitude by misusing the blessings I granted them]—I will punish them: an agonising, deterrent punishment—intense and severe—in the world [the lowest state of living] and in the life of the Hereafter. And there is not for them even a single one from those who are firmly established in, and persist in, protecting, supporting, or granting success."

Notes:

كَفَرُوْا

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

فَاُعَذِّبُهُمْ and عَذَابًا

Root letters are connected to prevent, hinder, deter and obstruct

Are connected to punishment, torture, agony, painful and suffering

Agonising - causing intense pain and torment

شَدِيْدًا

Root letters are connected to becoming firm, intense, solid, hard, strong and harsh

Intense - the strength (powerful and overwhelming)

Severe – the harshness (harsh and uncompromising)

الدُّنْيَا

A superlative

Root letters are connected to being low and near

Are connected to world, life in this world, worldly existence, temporal things or possessions and earthly things and concerns

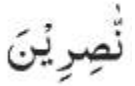
الْاٰخِرَةِ

Root letters are connected to the hereafter, the final abode and something which is delayed and deferred

وَمَا لَهُمْ مِّنْ نّٰصِرِيْنَ

Structure gives a strong negation and refutation meaning

And gives an absolute and complete negation in state, time and possibility



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to helping, assisting and rendering victorious

Are connected to defending, saving and protecting

وَاَمَّا الَّذِيْنَ اٰمَنُوْا وَعَمِلُوا الصّٰلِحٰتِ فَيُوَفِّيْهِمْ اُجُوْرَهُمْ ۭ وَاللّٰهُ لَا يُحِبُّ الظّٰلِمِيْنَ ۝۵۷

3:57

And as for those who have believed, as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith: striving to be firmly established in, and persisting in, acts of righteous conduct—He will give them the full share of the reward of their efforts, faithfully and completely: spiritual well-being and peace of mind. And Allah does not like those who are firmly established in, and persist in, being unjust—transgressing proper limits.

Notes:

اٰمَنُوْا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

عَمِلُوا

Root letters are connected to working, doing and acting

Are connected to working with effort and difficulty i.e. striving

الصّٰلِحٰتِ

Root letters are connected to being good, just, being in order, being righteous and pious and to do appropriate things

فَيُوَفِّيهِمْ

Root letters are connected to paying in full, complete, give full share and to do full justice

Are connected to doing full justice and carry out fully

Are connected to being faithful and loyal

Faithfully - quality of commitment

Completely - extent of fulfilment

أُجُورَهُمْ

Root letters are connected to reward, recompense and wages for work done

يُحِبُّ

Root letters are connected liking, loving and wanting



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to be unjust, act tyrannically, do wrong, do evil, harm, oppress and transgress proper limits

ذٰلِكَ نَتْلُوْهُ عَلَيْكَ مِنَ الْاٰيٰتِ وَالذِّكْرِ الْحَكِيْمِ ﴿٥٨﴾

3:58

That—We recite it to you from the miraculous and evident signs; and from the admonition, explanation, and advice which is ever firmly established in, and persists in, wisdom—perfect judgement, self-restraint, and leadership—ensuring knowledge is used correctly.

Notes:

نَتْلُوْهُ

Root letters are connected to following, reading, reciting, relating and rehearsing

الْاٰيٰتِ

Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof

الذِّكْرِ

Root letters are connected to recollection, remembrance, reminiscence, commemoration, reputation, narration, mentioning, telling and relating

Are connected to reminding, pointing out, giving good advice, calling to attention and admonishing

Admonition - a serious warning or reminder intended to correct conduct and deter wrongdoing

Explanation - making something clear by providing its meaning, reasons, or significance

Advice - guidance about what should be done, especially to promote a right or beneficial course

الْحَكِيْمِ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Structure shows emphasis

Root letters are connected to judging, deciding and decreeing

Are connected to governing, ruling, dominating and controlling

Are connected to wisdom

Are connected to accuracy, perfection and precision

Are connected to restraining the intellect from bad things

إِنَّ مَثَلَ عِيسَىٰ عِندَ اللَّهِ كَمَثَلِ آدَمَ ۖ خَلَقَهُ مِن تُرَابٍ ثُمَّ قَالَ لَهُ كُن فَيَكُونُ ﴿٥٩﴾

3:59

Certainly, the example of the condition of Essa, in the presence of Allah, is like the state of Adam: He created him from earth—without any prior model and in a perfectly suitable and precise manner—thereafter, He declared concerning him, "Occur"—then he comes[1] into existence.

Notes:

1 - The Arabic employs the present tense rhetorically to bring the scene into immediate view and, where applicable, to convey habitual or repeated action

مَثَلَ

Root letters are connected to an example, to resemble, to copy and compare

Are connected to similar case, simile, parable, precedent, state and condition

عِندَ

Preposition – with, in the company of, in the presence of, in despite of, together and in the estimation

خَلَقَهٗ

Root letters are connected to creating, originating, making, determining according to specific weight and measure and bringing into existence from nothing

Are connected to being fitting and suitable

تُرَابٍ

Root letters are connected to dust, earth, dirt, ground and soil

يَقُوْلُ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

كُنْ and فَيَكُوْنُ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

اَلۡحَقُّ مِنۡ رَّبِّكَ فَلَا تَكُنۡ مِّنَ الۡمُمۡتَرِيۡنَ ﴿٦٠﴾

3:60

The truth—correct, appropriate, and purposeful—is from your nurturing Lord—educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority. Therefore, do not become and exist from those who are firmly established in, and persist in, opposition or doubt.

Notes:

اَلۡحَـقُّ

Root letters are connected to what is right, correct, true, proper, suitable, fitting and purposeful

True - matches reality

Correct - accurate and right

Appropriate - properly fitting

Purposeful - meaningful and intentional

رَّبِّكَ

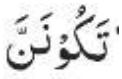
Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

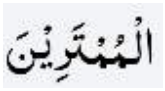
Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended



Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place



Structure gives a strong negation and refutation meaning

Root letters are connected to arguing, disputing, resisting and opposing

Are connected to doubting

فَمَنْ حَآجَّكَ فِيْهِ مِنْۢ بَعْدِ مَا جَآءَكَ مِنَ الْعِلْمِ فَقُلْ تَعَالَوْا نَدْعُ
اَبْنَآءَنَا وَاَبْنَآءَكُمْ وَنِسَآءَنَا وَنِسَآءَكُمْ وَاَنْفُسَنَا وَاَنْفُسَكُمْ ثُمَّ
نَبْتَهِلْ فَنَجْعَلْ لَّعْنَتَ اللّٰهِ عَلَى الْكٰذِبِيْنَ ﴿٦١﴾

3:61

Then whoever has disputed with and raised objections against you concerning him [Prophet Eesa], with the aim to defeat, even after what has reached you from certain knowledge [divine revelation]—declare, "Come forward—we will rally our children, and your children; and our women, and your women; and ourselves, and yourselves—thereafter, we will humbly and sincerely supplicate to place and establish the punishment of Allah—expulsion from good in disgrace—upon those who are [firmly established in, and persist in,] lying, deceiving, or misleading."

Notes:

حَآجَّكَ

Root letters are connected to defeating and overcoming

Are connected to disputing, debating and arguing

Are connected to pleading, raising objections and objecting

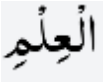
Dispute with - engage in argument

Raise objections against - challenge specific points

Defeat you with it - aim for rhetorical or argumentative victory



Root letters are connected to come, produce, set forth and reaching



Root letters are connected to knowledge, learning, information, intellect, perception and certainty



Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging



Root letters are connected to rise, lift, ascend, and be raised

Are connected to commanding to come here, come on, come forward, and be elevated



Root letters are connected to calling, calling upon, appealing and implore

Are connected to rallying and flocking together

اَبْنَآءَ

Root letters are connected to son, daughter and descendant

اَنْفُسَنَا and اَنْفُسَكُمْ

Root letters are connected to soul, person, mind, human being and an individual

نَبْتَهِلْ

Root letters are connected to supplicate, pray humbly to God, implore, beseech God, sincere in prayer and imprecate

فَنَجْعَلْ

Root letters are connected to placing, setting, inserting, making, preparing, fixing and appointing

لَعْنَةُ

Root letters are connected to cursing, disgracing, expelling and removing someone from good

Are connected to punishing and torturing

الْكٰذِبِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to lying, deceiving, deluding and misleading

Are connected to failing to fulfil or justify a claim

إِنَّ هٰذَا لَهُوَ الْقَصَصُ الْحَقُّ ۚ وَمَا مِنْ إِلٰهٍ إِلَّا اللّٰهُ ۚ وَإِنَّ اللّٰهَ لَهُوَ
الْعَزِيزُ الْحَكِيمُ ﴿٦٢﴾

3:62

No doubt, this is certainly the truthful narrative—correct, appropriate, and purposeful. And there is not even a single God—the sole recipient of obedience, from where goodness and protection from harm are sought—except Allah. And no doubt Allah—He is certainly, innately and eternally, the One who overcomes all things, the Owner of respect and nobility, raising in honour and lowering whoever He wills, the One who rules over and controls everything, determining every affair with perfect wisdom.

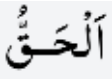
Notes:

لَهُوَ

لَ at the beginning is used for added emphasis

الْقَصَصُ

Root letters are connected to story, history, tale, narrative, piece of news and information



Root letters are connected to what is right, correct, true, proper, suitable, fitting and purposeful

True - matches reality

Correct - accurate and right

Appropriate - properly fitting

Purposeful - meaningful and intentional



Structure gives a strong negation and refutation meaning

And gives an absolute and complete negation in state, time and possibility



Root letters are connected to god, deity, object of worship and obedience

Are connected to granting safety, peace, aid, protection and deliverance from evil



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

Pronoun “He” is used twice for added emphasis



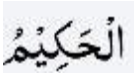
Root letters are connected to power, respect, honour and nobility,

Are connected to overwhelming, overcoming and dominating

Are connected to raising in esteem, elevating and exalting

Respect - honour, esteem, and recognised worth

Nobility - elevated rank, dignity, and excellence



Root letters are connected to judging, deciding and decreeing

Are connected to wisdom

Are connected to accuracy, perfection and precision

Are connected to governing, ruling, dominating and controlling

Rule - authority and command (who has the right to decide)

Control - execution and outcome (ensuring decisions take effect)

فَإِنْ تَوَلَّوْا فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ عَلِيمٌ بِالْمُفْسِدِينَ ﴿٦٣﴾

3:63

Then if they have refrained and turned away—certainly Allah is innately and eternally the One who completely knows and fully understands those who are firmly established in, and persist in, causing and spreading corruption and disorder—removing goodness.

Notes:

تَوَلَّوْا

Root letters are connected to turning, turning away, turning back, fleeing, desisting, refraining and forgoing

فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ عَلِيمٌ بِالْمُفْسِدِينَ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

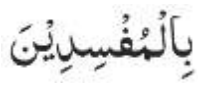
عَلِيمٌ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

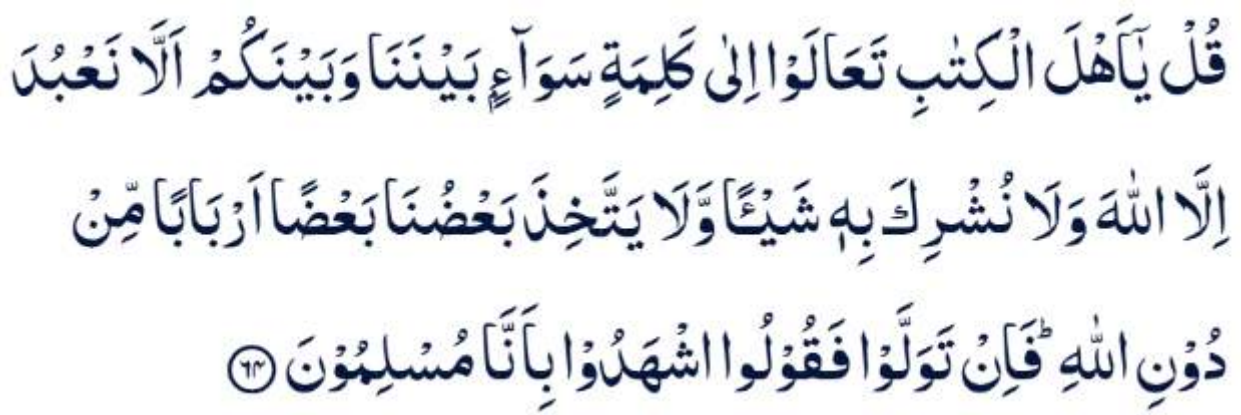


Root letters are connected to spoiling, corruption, causing disorder, rebellion, spreading discord, hostility, trouble and depriving of virtue

Corrupt - moral/ethical degradation

Disordered - structural/functional breakdown

Devoid of good - absence of benefit or blessing


قُلْ يٰٓاَهْلَ الْكِتٰبِ تَعَالَوْا اِلٰى كَلِمَةٍ سَوَآءٍۢ بَيْنَنَا وَبَيْنَكُمْ اَلَّا نَعْبُدَ
اِلَّا اللّٰهَ وَلَا نُشْرِكَ بِهٖ شَيْـًٔا وَّلَا يَتَّخِذَ بَعْضُنَا بَعْضًا اَرْبَابًا مِّنْ
دُوْنِ اللّٰهِ ؕ فَاِنْ تَوَلَّوْا فَقُوْلُوا اشْهَدُوْا بِاَنَّا مُسْلِمُوْنَ ﴿٦٤﴾

3:64

Declare, "Those [the scholars] possessing and familiar with the divine code of conduct [the Torah and Gospel[1]]! Come forward to a weighty and powerful statement—balanced, just, and correct—between us and you: we do not enslave ourselves by obeying and seeking approval except to Allah; and we do not associate partners with Him at all; and some of us do not take or adhere to others as lords—possessing control and authority—from besides Allah." Then if they have refrained and turned away—declare, all of you, "Bear witness that we are [firmly established in, and persisting in,] surrendering, submitting, and committing ourselves to the obedience of Allah [thereby attaining spiritual well-being]."

Notes:

This verse refers specifically to those who possessed and understood the previous divine scriptures—the scholars—not the ordinary followers, who were not allowed direct access to them. This is evident from history and is supported by the Quran, for example, Quran 2:78

1 - The divine code of conduct is mentioned in the singular form to emphasise the shared and unified divine guidance originally granted through the Torah and affirmed by the Gospel

قُلْ and فَقُوْلُوا

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

يَاَهْلَ

Root letters are connected to be on familiar terms with something

Are connected to possessors, adherents and followers

الْكِتٰبِ

Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document

تَعَالَوْا

Root letters are connected to rise, lift, ascend, and be raised

Are connected to commanding to come here, come on, come forward, and be elevated

كَلِمَةٍ

Root letters are connected to something weighty, powerful position, important, words, prophecy, decree and authority

Are connected to word, speech, address, utterance, saying, importance and prophecy

سَوَآءٍ

Root letters are connected to correct, the middle, midst, justice, right, equitable and uniformity

Balanced - avoids extremes and stays in the stable center

Just - built on fairness, truth, and integrity

Correct - free from error and leading to the right destination

نَعۡبُدَ

Root letters are connected to worshipping, serving, adoring, obeying with humility and enslaving

Are connected to only doing what Allah, the Exalted, approves of and approving what He decrees

نُشۡرِكَ

Root letters are connected to making a partner, associating and committing polytheism

يَتَّخِذَ

Root letters are connected to taking firmly, accepting, gripping, seizing, occupying, adhering, adopting and making use

اَرْبَابًا

Root letters are connected to lord, master, control, have command, authority, govern, rule, proprietor, ruler, and governor

تَوَلَّوْا

Root letters are connected to turning, turning away, turning back, fleeing, desisting, refraining and forgoing

اشْهَدُوْا

Root letters are connected to witness, experience personally, eyewitness, attend, give evidence, to testify and to bear witness

مُسْلِمُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to deserting, abandoning, surrendering, submitting, becoming muslim, and committing oneself to the will of Allah

Are connected to being safe, sound, secure and well-being

Surrenders - relinquishing resistance and competing attachments

Submits - places oneself under authority

Commits - actively dedicating oneself to obedience

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

يَٰٓأَهۡلَ ٱلۡكِتَٰبِ لِمَ تُحَآجُّونَ فِيٓ إِبۡرَٰهِيمَ وَمَآ أُنزِلَتِ ٱلتَّوۡرَىٰةُ وَٱلۡإِنجِيلُ إِلَّا مِنۢ بَعۡدِهِۦٓۚ أَفَلَا تَعۡقِلُونَ ٦٥

3:65

Those [the scholars] possessing and familiar with the divine code of conduct [the Torah and Gospel[1]]! Why do you dispute and raise objections concerning Ibrahim, even though the Torah and the Gospel were not revealed—to hold a special position [of authority]—except from after him? Then will you not use your faculties correctly—applying reason and common sense—to understand and refrain [from such behaviour]?

Notes:

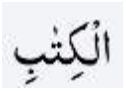
This verse refers specifically to those who possessed and understood the previous divine scriptures—the scholars—not the ordinary followers, who were not allowed direct access to them. This is evident from history and is supported by the Quran, for example, Quran 2:78

1 - The divine code of conduct is mentioned in the singular form to emphasise the shared and unified divine guidance originally granted through the Torah and affirmed by the Gospel

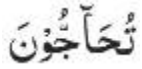
يَٰٓأَهۡلَ

Root letters are connected to be on familiar terms with something

Are connected to possessors, adherents and followers



Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document



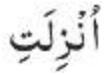
Root letters are connected to defeating and overcoming

Are connected to disputing, debating and arguing

Are connected to pleading, raising objections and objecting

Dispute with - engage in argument

Raise objections against - challenge specific points



Root letters are connected to something which is sent down, comes down, descends, stops over and is granted

Are connected to something which is sent down slowly and gradually

Are connected to something which holds a special position or place



Root letters are connected to arresting, restraining and refraining

Are connected to being reasonable, using intelligence, using common sense

Reason - structured, analytical thinking

Common sense - intuitive, practical application

هَٰٓأَنتُمْ هَٰٓؤُلَآءِ حَٰجَجْتُمْ فِيمَا لَكُم بِهِۦ عِلْمٌ فَلِمَ تُحَآجُّونَ فِيمَا
لَيْسَ لَكُم بِهِۦ عِلْمٌ ۚ وَٱللَّهُ يَعْلَمُ وَأَنتُمْ لَا تَعْلَمُونَ ٦٦

3:66

There you all are—these very people—having disputed and raised objections concerning what you possess [some] knowledge of, but why do you dispute and raise objections concerning what you do not possess knowledge, intelligence, or certainty of? And Allah—He completely knows and fully understands; whereas you do not recognise, know, or understand.

Notes:

حَٰجَجْتُمْ and تُحَآجُّونَ

Root letters are connected to defeating and overcoming

Are connected to disputing, debating and arguing

Are connected to pleading, raising objections and objecting

Dispute with - engage in argument

Raise objections against - challenge specific points

Defeat you with it - aim for rhetorical or argumentative victory

عِلْمٌ،

Root letters are connected to knowledge, learning, information, intellect, perception and certainty

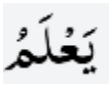
Knowledge - possession of true information and understanding

Intelligence - the ability to think, reason, and apply knowledge correctly

Certainty - firm, assured knowledge free from doubt or hesitation



Pronoun “He” is used twice for added emphasis

 and 

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

مَا كَانَ اِبْرٰهِيْمُ يَهُوْدِيًّا وَّلَا نَصْرَانِيًّا وَّلٰكِنْ كَانَ حَنِيْفًا مُّسْلِمًا ؕ
وَمَا كَانَ مِنَ الْمُشْرِكِيْنَ ﴿٦٧﴾

3:67

And never did Ibrahim become or exist as an adherent to Judaism, nor to Christianity; however, he existed in an ever firmly established and persistent state of inclining to the natural way: surrendering, submitting, and committing himself to the obedience of Allah, thereby attaining spiritual well-being. And never did he become or exist from amongst those who are firmly established in, and persist in, associating partners with Allah.

Notes:

مَا كَانَ اِبْرٰهِيْمُ يَهُوْدِيًّا وَّلَا نَصْرَانِيًّا

Structure gives a strong negation and refutation meaning

كَانَ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

كَانَ حَنِيْفًا مُّسْلِمًا

Structure indicates an established state



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Structure shows emphasis

Root letters are connected to inclining to something and disinclining from something

Are connected to making oneself the servant of Allah and devoting oneself to religious service

Are connected to inclining to the right state and orthodox belief



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to deserting, abandoning, surrendering, submitting, becoming muslim, and committing oneself to the will of Allah

Are connected to being safe, sound, secure and well-being

Surrenders - relinquishing resistance and competing attachments

Submits - places oneself under authority

Commits - actively dedicating oneself to obedience

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

وَمَا كَانَ مِنَ الْمُشْرِكِيْنَ

Structure gives a strong negation and refutation meaning

And gives an absolute and complete negation in state, time and possibility

كَانَ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

الْمُشْرِكِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to making a partner, associating and committing polytheism

إِنَّ أَوْلَى النَّاسِ بِإِبْرٰهِيمَ لَلَّذِينَ اتَّبَعُوهُ وَهٰذَا النَّبِيُّ وَالَّذِينَ
آمَنُوا ۗ وَاللَّهُ وَلِيُّ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ ﴿٦٨﴾

3:68

No doubt, the most deserving of the people concerning Ibrahim are certainly those who were in agreement with, pursued, and adhered to him, thereby living under his authority; and this honoured Prophet, who conveys divine knowledge from Allah; and those who have believed, as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith. And Allah is the One whose enduring practice is firmly established in, and persists in, being a powerful, protecting Friend who takes responsibility for those who are firmly established in, and persist in, sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind.

Notes:

أَوْلَى

A superlative

Root letters are connected to more entitled, worthier, more deserving, more appropriate, more suitable, more adequate, and more fitting

لَلَّذِينَ ا

لَ at the beginning is used for added emphasis

اتَّبَعُوْهُ

Root letters are connected to following, pursuing, walking behind and adhering

Are connected to being under authority and command

Are connected to concurring, being in agreement and being in conformity

In agreement - accepting the guidance internally (belief/acceptance)

Pursues - actively seeking and following it

Adheres to - remaining firm and consistent upon it

النَّبِيَّ

Root letters are connected to informing, notifying, advising telling and announcing

Are connected to being high in rank, raised, elevated and prominent

Are connected to someone who receives unseen knowledge from Allah and conveys them to people

اٰمَنُوْا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit



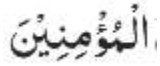
Noun sentence indicating an established and continuous trait



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

Root letters are connected to having power and command

Are connected to protecting, supporting, befriending, managing and assuming responsibility



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

وَدَّتْ طَّآىِٕفَةٌ مِّنْ اَهْلِ الْكِتٰبِ لَوْ يُضِلُّوْنَكُمْ ؕ وَمَا يُضِلُّوْنَ اِلَّآ
اَنْفُسَهُمْ وَمَا يَشْعُرُوْنَ ﴿٦٩﴾

3:69

A specific faction from amongst those [the scholars] possessing and familiar with the divine code of conduct [the Torah and Gospel[1]] have loved and wanted that if only they could lead you all astray through deception—causing you to perish. Yet they do not lead astray through deception except themselves—perishing as a result—and they do not perceive, realise, or become truly aware.

Notes:

This verse refers specifically to those who possessed and understood the previous divine scriptures—the scholars—not the ordinary followers, who were not allowed direct access to them. This is evident from history and is supported by the Quran, for example, Quran 2:78

1 - The divine code of conduct is mentioned in the singular form to emphasise the shared and unified divine guidance originally granted through the Torah and affirmed by the Gospel

وَدَّتْ

Root letters are connected to loving, liking, wishing and wanting

Love - inward feeling

Want - outward intention

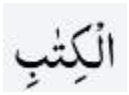


Root letters are connected to a specific group, people, faction, party, and company

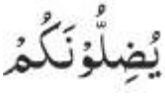


Root letters are connected to be on familiar terms with something

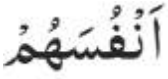
Are connected to possessors, adherents and followers



Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document

 and

Root letters are connected to misleading, leading astray, misguiding, deluding, deceiving, causing to perish, and making someone get lost



Root letters are connected to soul, person, mind, human being and an individual



Root letters are connected to being aware, to notice, realise, to sense, perceive and to understand with depth

Perceive - initial sensing / noticing

Realise - intellectual recognition / understanding

Become aware - conscious acknowledgement

يَٰٓأَهۡلَ ٱلۡكِتَٰبِ لِمَ تَكۡفُرُونَ بِـَٔايَٰتِ ٱللَّهِ وَأَنتُمۡ تَشۡهَدُونَ ٧٠

3:70

Those [the scholars] possessing and familiar with the divine code of conduct [the Torah and Gospel[1]]! Why do you neglect, dissociate from, and deny the miraculous and evident signs[2] of Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted you], even though you bear witness?

Notes:

This verse refers specifically to those who possessed and understood the previous divine scriptures—the scholars—not the ordinary followers, who were not allowed direct access to them. This is evident from history and is supported by the Quran, for example, Quran 2:78

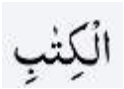
1 - The divine code of conduct is mentioned in the singular form to emphasise the shared and unified divine guidance originally granted through the Torah and affirmed by the Gospel

2 - These include the verses of the Torah, Gospel and the Quran

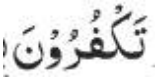
يَٰٓأَهۡلَ

Root letters are connected to be on familiar terms with something

Are connected to possessors, adherents and followers



Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document



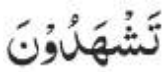
Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty



Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof



Root letters are connected to witness, experience personally, eyewitness, attend, give evidence, to testify and to bear witness

يَٰٓأَهۡلَ ٱلۡكِتَٰبِ لِمَ تَلۡبِسُونَ ٱلۡحَقَّ بِٱلۡبَٰطِلِ وَتَكۡتُمُونَ ٱلۡحَقَّ وَأَنتُمۡ تَعۡلَمُونَ ٧١

3:71

Those [the scholars] possessing and familiar with the divine code of conduct [the Torah and Gospel[1]]! Why do you deceptively cover the truth—correct, appropriate, and purposeful—with what is firmly established in, and persists in, being vain, false, and corrupt, thereby making it unclear and causing confusion? And why do you withhold, subdue, and conceal the truth—even though you recognise, know, and understand?

Notes:

This verse refers specifically to those who possessed and understood the previous divine scriptures—the scholars—not the ordinary followers, who were not allowed direct access to them. This is evident from history and is supported by the Quran, for example, Quran 2:78

1 - The divine code of conduct is mentioned in the singular form to emphasise the shared and unified divine guidance originally granted through the Torah and affirmed by the Gospel

يَٰٓأَهۡلَ

Root letters are connected to be on familiar terms with something

Are connected to possessors, adherents and followers

الْكِتٰبِ

Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document

تَلْبِسُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to dressing, covering, draping

Are connected to making obscure, unclear, confusing, ambiguous and to deceive

Unclear – refers to the condition - not easily understood

Confusion – refers to the consequence - lack of understanding

الْحَقَّ

Root letters are connected to what is right, correct, true, proper, suitable, fitting and purposeful

True - matches reality

Correct - accurate and right

Appropriate - properly fitting

Purposeful - meaningful and intentional

بِالْبَاطِلِ

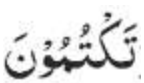
Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to false, vain, worthless, lies, falsehood, unsound and corruption

Vain - lacking real value or benefit

False - not true; contrary to reality

Corrupt - morally or functionally spoiled; distorted from what is right



Root words are connected to hiding, subduing, curbing, suppressing, repressing, concealing, making secret and to withhold

Withhold - to hold back or not disclose

Subdue - to suppress, weaken, or keep under control

Conceal - to hide completely from view or knowledge



Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

وَقَالَتْ طَّآئِفَةٌ مِّنْ اَهْلِ الْكِتٰبِ اٰمِنُوْا بِالَّذِيْٓ اُنْزِلَ عَلَى الَّذِيْنَ اٰمَنُوْا
وَجْهَ النَّهَارِ وَاكْفُرُوْٓا اٰخِرَهٗ لَعَلَّهُمْ يَرْجِعُوْنَ ﴿٧٢﴾

3:72

A specific faction from amongst those [the scholars] possessing and familiar with the divine code of conduct [the Torah and Gospel[1]] said [urging some others], "Believe—all of you—in what has been [gradually] revealed [to hold a special position of supreme authority] upon those who have believed, [as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith] at the beginning of the day, and neglect, dissociate from, and deny [it] at its end, so that perhaps they will return to their former state.

Notes:

This verse refers specifically to those who possessed and understood the previous divine scriptures—the scholars—not the ordinary followers, who were not allowed direct access to them. This is evident from history and is supported by the Quran, for example, Quran 2:78

1 - The divine code of conduct is mentioned in the singular form to emphasise the shared and unified divine guidance originally granted through the Torah and affirmed by the Gospel

قَالَتْ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

طَآئِفَةٌ

Root letters are connected to a specific group, people, faction, party, and company

اَهْلِ

Root letters are connected to be on familiar terms with something

Are connected to possessors, adherents and followers

الْكِتٰبِ

Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document

اٰمِنُوْا and اٰمَنُوْا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

أُنْزِلَ

Root letters are connected to something which is sent down, comes down, descends, stops over and is granted

Are connected to something which is sent down slowly and gradually

Are connected to something which holds a special position or place

وَجْهَ

Root letters are connected to beginning and outset

اكْفُرُوٓا

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

اٰخِرَهٗ

Root letters are connected to last, ultimate, extreme, end, close and later

يَرْجِعُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to coming back, returning, reverting and resorting to a former place/quality/state

وَلَا تُؤْمِنُوٓا اِلَّا لِمَنْ تَبِعَ دِيْنَكُمْ ۭ قُلْ اِنَّ الْهُدٰى هُدَى اللّٰهِ ۙ اَنْ يُّؤْتٰٓى
اَحَدٌ مِّثْلَ مَآ اُوْتِيْتُمْ اَوْ يُحَاۗجُّوْكُمْ عِنْدَ رَبِّكُمْ ۭ قُلْ اِنَّ الْفَضْلَ بِيَدِ
اللّٰهِ ۚ يُؤْتِيْهِ مَنْ يَّشَاۗءُ ۭ وَاللّٰهُ وَاسِعٌ عَلِيْمٌ ۝۷۳ۚ

3:73

And do not believe, trust, or confide except in the one who has been in agreement with, pursued, and adhered to your belief, creed, and customs."—Declare, "Certainly, the [only] guidance [which shows and leads to and along the right way of life] is the guidance of Allah."—"In case anyone be granted similar of what you all have been granted [of divine revelation], or that they [the believers] dispute with, raise objections against, and defeat you in the presence of your nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority]." Declare, "Certainly, favour and kindness is [obtained] through the Hand of Allah—[the Hand of power, authority, and assistance]—He grants it to whoever He wills." And Allah is innately and eternally the One who is infinitely vast in resources, capabilities, and generosity, whose power, authority, and knowledge encompass all things, the One who completely knows and fully understands everything.

Notes:

تُؤْمِنُوٓا

Root letters are connected to trusting, trusting with, showing submission to, and confiding in

Believe - to accept something as true or hold it as a conviction

Trust - to place confidence in someone’s truthfulness, reliability, or intentions

Confide in - to place confidence in someone deeply enough to entrust them with personal matters, secrets, or reliance



Root letters are connected to following, pursuing, walking behind and adhering

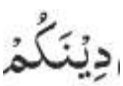
Are connected to being under authority and command

Are connected to concurring, being in agreement and being in conformity

In agreement - accepting the guidance internally (belief/acceptance)

Pursues - actively seeking and following it

Adheres to - remaining firm and consistent upon it



Root letters are connected to way of acting, doctrine, custom, habit, creed, religion, faith, creed, belief, and rites

Belief - what a person or group accepts as true, particularly in matters of faith

Creed - a formally held set of religious beliefs or doctrines

Customs - established practices, traditions, and habitual ways of conduct followed by a community

قُلْ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

هُدَى and الْهُدٰى

Root letters are connected to guidance, direction, showing, being led, being supplied and a way of life

Are connected to gifting and bestowing

Are connected to direction and discovering the right way

يُؤْتَى , اُوْتِيْتُمْ and يُؤْتِيْهِ

Root letters are connected to giving, granting and bestowing

مِّثْلَ

Root letters are connected to an example, to resemble, to copy and compare

Are connected to similar case, simile, parable, precedent, state and condition

يُحَآجُّوكُمْ

Root letters are connected to defeating and overcoming

Are connected to disputing, debating and arguing

Are connected to pleading, raising objections and objecting

Dispute with - engage in argument

Raise objections against - challenge specific points

Defeat you with it - aim for rhetorical or argumentative victory

عِنْدَ

Preposition – with, in the company of, in the presence of, in despite of, together and in the estimation

رَبِّكُمْ

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

الْفَضْلَ

Root letters are connected to grace, favour, kindness, graciousness, grace and bounty

Kindness - the manner of Allah’s dealing (gentle, merciful approach)

Favour - the substance of what is given (blessings, help, protection)

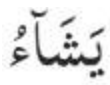


Root letters are connected to hand, power, control, influence, authority, assistance, help and aid

Power - ability or capacity to act or carry out something

Authority - recognised right or legitimacy to act or decide

Assistance - help, support, or aid given to bring about or accomplish



Root letters are connected to wanting, willing and wishing



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



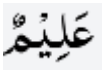
Root letters are connected to vast, wide, extensive, encompass, be able

Are connected to power, strength, capability, authority and ability

Are connected to being rich, wealthy, having vast means, plenty, abundance and generous

Power - ability or capacity to act or carry out something

Authority - recognised right or legitimacy to act or decide



Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

يَّخۡتَصُّ بِرَحۡمَتِهٖ مَنۡ يَّشَآءُ ؕ وَاللّٰهُ ذُو الۡفَضۡلِ الۡعَظِيۡمِ ﴿۷۴﴾

3:74

He distinguishes and favours with His mercy, kindness, and relief whoever He wills. And Allah is innately and eternally the Possessor and Owner of favour and kindness—great and immense.

Notes:

يَخۡتَصُّ

Root letters are connected to distinguishing, favouring and choosing

بِرَحۡمَتِهٖ

Root letters are connected to having mercy, compassion, sparing, letting off, saving, kindness, tenderness and pity

Mercy – withholds punishment from those who deserve it

Kindness – a broader act of granting blessings

يَّشَآءُ

Root letters are connected to wanting, willing and wishing

وَاللّٰهُ ذُو الْفَضْلِ الْعَظِيْمِ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

ذُو

Root letters are connected to possessing, owning and being endowed with

الْفَضْلِ

Root letters are connected to grace, favour, kindness, graciousness, grace and bounty

Kindness - the manner of Allah's dealing (gentle, merciful approach)

Favour - the substance of what is given (blessings, help, protection)

الْعَظِيْمِ

Root letters are connected to something which is great, magnificent, powerful, supreme, immense and mighty

Great - qualitative excellence and rank

Immense - quantitative vastness and scale

وَمِنْ اَهْلِ الْكِتٰبِ مَنْ اِنْ تَاْمَنْهُ بِقِنْطَارٍ يُّؤَدِّهٖٓ اِلَيْكَ ۚ وَمِنْهُمْ مَّنْ اِنْ
تَاْمَنْهُ بِدِيْنَارٍ لَّا يُؤَدِّهٖٓ اِلَيْكَ اِلَّا مَا دُمْتَ عَلَيْهِ قَآئِمًا ۭ ذٰلِكَ بِاَنَّهُمْ
قَالُوْا لَيْسَ عَلَيْنَا فِي الْاُمِّيّٖنَ سَبِيْلٌ ۚ وَيَقُوْلُوْنَ عَلَي اللّٰهِ الْكَذِبَ وَهُمْ
يَعْلَمُوْنَ ۝٧٥

3:75

And from amongst those [the scholars] possessing and familiar with the divine code of conduct [the Torah and Gospel[1]] is the one who, if you entrust him with a tremendous sum [of possessions], will render and discharge it back to you. Whereas, from amongst them is the one who, if you entrust him with a single gold coin, will not render and discharge it back to you, except in the case when you are standing over him in a firmly established and persistent state. That is because they have [boldly] claimed, "There is no reason [of blame] against us concerning those who are uneducated." Whereas, they claim against Allah [what is] the embodiment of falsehood and deceit, even though they recognise, know, and understand.

Notes:

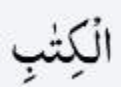
This verse refers specifically to those who possessed and understood the previous divine scriptures—the scholars—not the ordinary followers, who were not allowed direct access to them. This is evident from history and is supported by the Quran, for example, Quran 2:78

1 - The divine code of conduct is mentioned in the singular form to emphasise the shared and unified divine guidance originally granted through the Torah and affirmed by the Gospel



Root letters are connected to be on familiar terms with something

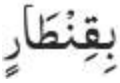
Are connected to possessors, adherents and followers



Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document



Root letters are connected to entrusting, confiding and trusting



Root letters are connected to large unknown quantity, much property heaped up and collected together

Are connected to possessing tremendous riches and possessing large property

يُؤَدِّهِۦٓ

Root letters are connected to discharging, performing, fulfilling, rendering and accomplishing

Rendering - the act of carrying out the contractual duties

Discharge - the end result, signifying that the contract is over and parties are released from further obligations

بِدِينَارٍ

Root letters are connected to an ancient gold coin and a monetary unit

دُمْتَ

Root letters are connected to continuously, persevere, persist and remain

قَآئِمًا

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to standing up, rising, standing still and rest

قَالُوا and يَقُولُونَ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

الْأُمِّيِّنَ

Root letters are connected to someone uneducated, cannot read or write, ignorant, without formal education or knowledge and ignorant of divine scriptures

سَبِيْلٌ

Root letters are connected to way, road, path, reason, cause, and method

الْكَذِبَ

Structure indicates the entire genus and ultimate definition of a lie

Root letters are connected to lie, deceit, falsehood, fraud and untruth

يَعْلَمُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

بَلٰى مَنْ اَوْفٰى بِعَهْدِهٖ وَاتَّقٰى فَاِنَّ اللّٰهَ يُحِبُّ الْمُتَّقِيْنَ ﴿٧٦﴾

3:76

But certainly, whoever has faithfully and completely fulfilled each and every promise, agreement, and responsibility: having devoutly fulfilled his duties—then certainly, Allah prefers and loves those who are firmly established in, and persist in, devoutly fulfilling their duties—thereby protecting themselves from harm and arranging all their matters correctly.

Notes:

اَوْفٰى

Root letters are connected to living up to a promise, redeeming, fulfilling, discharging and compensating fully

Are connected to doing full justice and carry out fully

Are connected to being faithful, sincere, trustworthy, loyal and keep one's word

Faithfully - quality of commitment

Completely - extent of fulfilment

بِعَهْدِهٖ

Singular indicating each and every

Root letters are connected to a charge, injunction, pledge, vow, promise, contract, commitment, covenant, responsibility, agreement and entrusting

Promise - individual commitment (a pledge to do or refrain from something)

Agreement - mutual commitment (an obligation accepted between two or more parties)

Responsibility - entrusted obligation (something for which one is accountable)

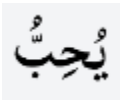


Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

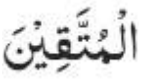
Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious



Root letters are connected to desiring, preferring, liking

Are connected to wishing, wanting and loving



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious

إِنَّ الَّذِينَ يَشْتَرُونَ بِعَهْدِ اللَّهِ وَأَيْمَانِهِمْ ثَمَنًا قَلِيلًا أُولَٰئِكَ لَا
خَلَاقَ لَهُمْ فِي الْآخِرَةِ وَلَا يُكَلِّمُهُمُ اللَّهُ وَلَا يَنظُرُ إِلَيْهِمْ يَوْمَ الْقِيَامَةِ
وَلَا يُزَكِّيهِمْ وَلَهُمْ عَذَابٌ أَلِيمٌ ﴿٧٧﴾

3:77

Certainly, those who persist in exchanging the firm pledge of [obeying] Allah, and their promises and oaths for a small, inferior, and insufficient price, those—there is absolutely no share of good for them in the life of the Hereafter: Allah will not speak to them; and He will show them no consideration, or grant them any respite on the Momentous Day of upheaval, raising of the dead, and rectifying affairs; and He will not praise or purify them. And for them is a punishment—the utmost degree of pain and suffering.

Notes:

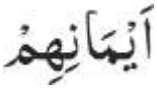
يَشْتَرُونَ

Root letters are connected to buying, acquiring, selling, preferring and exchanging

And are connected to persisting and persevering

بِعَهْدِ

Root letters are connected to a charge, injunction, command, bidding, pledge, vow, promise, contract, commitment and covenant



Root letters are connected to oaths and promises

Are connected to something vain and empty



Root letters are connected to price, cost, value and sum



Root letters are connected to few, inconsiderable, insufficient, sparse, small, little and inferior



Structure indicates absolute negation



Root letters are connected to being fitting and suitable

Are connected to a share, portion and a righteous share

الْاٰخِرَةِ

Root letters are connected to the hereafter, the final abode and something which is delayed and deferred

يُكَلِّمُهُمْ

Root letters are connected to an speaking, addressing and talking

يَنْظُرُ

Root letters are connected to pay attention, pay regard and consideration

Are connected to giving respite and delay

يَوْمَ

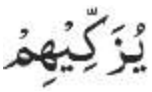
Root letters are connected to days, age, era and time

Are connected to momentous and important days

الْقِيٰمَةِ

Root letters are connected to standing, rising up, rectifying and managing affairs

Are connected to resurrection, upheaval, tumult, turmoil and raising the dead



Root letters are connected to purifying, chastening, commending, praising and validating



Root letters are connected to prevent, hinder, deter and obstruct

Are connected to punishment, torture, agony, painful and suffering



Root letters are connected pain, suffering, grievous pain, excruciating and the utmost degree of pain

Pain - refers to the physical sensation (the body)

Suffering - refers to the emotional or mental distress (the mind/soul)

وَإِنَّ مِنْهُمْ لَفَرِيقًا يَلْوُۥنَ أَلْسِنَتَهُم بِالْكِتَٰبِ لِتَحْسَبُوهُ مِنَ الْكِتَٰبِ
وَمَا هُوَ مِنَ الْكِتَٰبِ ۚ وَيَقُولُونَ هُوَ مِنْ عِندِ اللَّهِ وَمَا هُوَ مِنْ عِندِ اللَّهِ ۚ
وَيَقُولُونَ عَلَى اللَّهِ الْكَذِبَ وَهُمْ يَعْلَمُونَ ﴿٧٨﴾

3:78

And no doubt, from amongst them [the scholars of the Torah and Gospel] is certainly a group who distort their speech in connection with the divine code of conduct [the Torah and Gospel[1]] so that you all assume it is from the divine code of conduct, even though it is not from the divine code of conduct. And they declare, "It is from the presence of Allah," even though it is not from the presence of Allah. Therefore, they claim against Allah [what is] the embodiment of falsehood and deceit, even though they recognise, know, and understand.

Notes:

This verse refers specifically to those who possessed and understood the previous divine scriptures—the scholars—not the ordinary followers, who were not allowed direct access to them. This is evident from history and is supported by the Quran, for example, Quran 2:78

1 - The divine code of conduct is mentioned in the singular form to emphasise the shared and unified divine guidance originally granted through the Torah and affirmed by the Gospel

لَفَرِيقًا

لَ at the beginning is used for added emphasis

Root letters are connected to a band, company, troop, detachment, unit, part, faction and team

يَلْوُۥنَ

Root letters are connected to turn, crook, flex, bend, contort, distort, and pervert

ٱلْسِنَتَهُمْ

Root letters are connected to tongue, language, dialect, and speech

بِٱلْكِتٰبِ

Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document

لِتَحْسَبُوْهُ

Root letters are connected to reckoning, calculating and assuming

وَيَقُوْلُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

عِنْدِ

Preposition – with, in the company of, in the presence of, in despite of, together and in the estimation

الْكَذِبَ

Structure indicates the entire genus and ultimate definition of a lie

Root letters are connected to lie, deceit, falsehood, fraud and untruth

يَعْلَمُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

مَا كَانَ لِبَشَرٍ اَنْ يُّؤْتِيَهُ اللّٰهُ الْكِتٰبَ وَالْحُكْمَ وَالنُّبُوَّةَ ثُمَّ يَقُوْلَ
لِلنَّاسِ كُوْنُوْا عِبَادًا لِّيْ مِنْ دُوْنِ اللّٰهِ وَلٰكِنْ كُوْنُوْا رَبّٰنِيّٖنَ بِمَا كُنْتُمْ
تُعَلِّمُوْنَ الْكِتٰبَ وَبِمَا كُنْتُمْ تَدْرُسُوْنَ ﴿٧٩﴾

3:79

It was never appropriate for any human that Allah grant him the divine code of conduct; and authority and wisdom—perfect judgement, self-restraint, and leadership—ensuring knowledge is used correctly; and prophethood—conveying divine knowledge from Allah—thereafter, he declares to the people, "Be and exist in a state of humble and obedient slavery to me—[doing only what I approve of and approving of whatever I do]—from besides Allah." Rather, [he would declare], "Be and exist in a state of adhering to the devout service of the nurturing Lord, according to what you are [persisting in] teaching and clarifying of the divine code of conduct, and according to what you are [persisting in] studying and learning."

Notes:

مَا كَانَ لِبَشَرٍ اَنْ يُّؤْتِيَهُ

Structure gives a timeless and absolute meaning

لِبَشَرٍ

Root letters are connected to man, human being, men, mankind, and human skin

يُؤْتِيَهُ

Root letters are connected to giving, granting and bestowing

الْكِتٰبَ

Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document

وَالْحُكْمَ

Root letters are connected to judging, deciding and decreeing

Are connected to governing, ruling, dominating and controlling

Are connected to wisdom

Are connected to accuracy, perfection and precision

Are connected to restraining the intellect from bad things

Are connected to command, authority, control, and power

وَالنُّبُوَّةَ

Root letters are connected to prophethood and prophecy

Are connected to informing, notifying, advising telling and announcing

Are connected to being high in rank, raised, elevated and prominent

Are connected to someone who receives unseen knowledge from Allah and conveys them to people

يَقُوْلَ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

كُوْنُوْا and كُنْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

عِبَادًا

Root letters are connected to a male servant and male slave

Are connected to worshipping, serving, adoring, obeying with humility and enslaving

Are connected to only doing what Allah, the Exalted, approves of and approving what He decrees

رَبّٰنِيّٖنَ

Root letters are connected to being pious, learned, devoting oneself to religious service, learned in religious matters, righteous, worshipper of the Lord, and possessing a high rank

Are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

كُنْتُمْ تُعَلِّمُوْنَ and كُنْتُمْ تَدْرُسُوْنَ

Structures indicate repetitive action

تُعَلِّمُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to teaching, instructing and educating

Are connected to distinguishing, differentiating and making apparent

تَدْرُسُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to learning and studying

وَلَا يَأْمُرَكُمْ أَنْ تَتَّخِذُوا الْمَلَٰٓئِكَةَ وَالنَّبِيِّينَ أَرْبَابًا ۚ أَيَأْمُرُكُمْ
بِالْكُفْرِ بَعْدَ إِذْ أَنْتُمْ مُسْلِمُونَ ﴿٨٠﴾

3:80

And he [any Prophet] would not instruct you all to take or adhere to either the Angels or the honoured Prophets, who conveyed divine knowledge from Allah, as lords—possessing control and authority. Would he instruct you to neglect, dissociate from, and deny the obligations due to Allah, thereby encouraging ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted you], after the very point when you are in a firmly established and persistent state of surrendering, submitting, and committing yourselves to the obedience of Allah [thereby attaining spiritual well-being]?

Notes:

يَأْمُرَكُمْ and أَيَأْمُرُكُمْ

Root letters are connected to ordering, commanding, instructing, charging and entrusting

تَتَّخِذُوا

Root letters are connected to taking firmly, accepting, gripping, seizing, occupying, adhering, adopting, making one’s own, and making use

وَالنَّبِيّٖنَ

Root letters are connected to informing, notifying, advising telling and announcing

Are connected to being high in rank, raised, elevated and prominent

Are connected to someone who receives unseen knowledge from Allah and conveys them to people

اَرۡبَابًا

Root letters are connected to lord, master, control, have command, authority, govern, rule, proprietor, ruler, and governor

بِالۡكُفۡرِ

Root letters are connected to burying, covering, hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge and ingratitude

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

مُّسۡلِمُوۡنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to deserting, abandoning, surrendering, submitting, becoming muslim, and committing oneself to the will of Allah

Are connected to being safe, sound, secure and well-being

Surrenders - relinquishing resistance and competing attachments

Submits - places oneself under authority

Commits - actively dedicating oneself to obedience

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

وَاِذْ اَخَذَ اللّٰهُ مِيْثَاقَ النَّبِيّٖنَ لَمَآ اٰتَيْتُكُمْ مِّنْ كِتٰبٍ وَّحِكْمَةٍ ثُمَّ
جَآءَكُمْ رَسُوْلٌ مُّصَدِّقٌ لِّمَا مَعَكُمْ لَتُؤْمِنُنَّ بِهٖ وَلَتَنْصُرُنَّهٗ ؕ قَالَ
ءَاَقْرَرْتُمْ وَاَخَذْتُمْ عَلٰى ذٰلِكُمْ اِصْرِىْ ؕ قَالُوْٓا اَقْرَرْنَا ؕ قَالَ
فَاشْهَدُوْا وَاَنَا مَعَكُمْ مِّنَ الشّٰهِدِيْنَ ﴿٨١﴾

3:81

And [reflect on] when Allah accepted the firmly established pledge of the honoured Prophets, who conveyed divine knowledge from Allah: "Certainly, whatever I have granted you all from any divine code of conduct and wisdom—[perfect judgement, self-restraint, and leadership—ensuring knowledge is used correctly]—thereafter, a Messenger—[who sincerely conveys a divine code of conduct from Me]—has come to you, [firmly established in, and persisting in,] verifying and bearing witness to what is with you—no doubt, you will most certainly believe, trust, and confide in him and no doubt, you will most certainly adhere to, follow, and support him." He questioned, "Have you acknowledged, consented to, and affirmed; and have you accepted, upon that [condition], My heavy responsibility?" They declared, "We have acknowledged, consented to, and affirmed." He declared, "Then bear witness, and I am with you from amongst those who are [firmly established in, and persist in,] bearing witness."

Notes:

اَخَذَ and اَخَذْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to accepting, taking, obtaining and seizing

Are connected to taking firmly, gripping, seizing, occupying, adhering, adopting and making use

مِيْثَاقَ

Root letters are connected to a covenant, agreement, pledge and pact

Are connected to firmly establishing, to tie, to fasten and bind

وَالنَّبِيّٖنَ

Root letters are connected to informing, notifying, advising telling and announcing

Are connected to being high in rank, raised, elevated and prominent

Are connected to someone who receives unseen knowledge from Allah and conveys them to people

لَمَآ

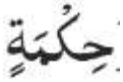
لَ at the beginning is used for added emphasis

اٰتَيْتُكُمْ

Root letters are connected to giving, granting and bestowing



Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document



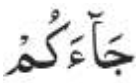
Root letters are connected to judging, deciding and decreeing

Are connected to governing, ruling, dominating and controlling

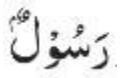
Are connected to wisdom

Are connected to accuracy, perfection and precision

Are connected to restraining the intellect from bad things



Root letters are connected to come, produce, set forth and confront



Root letters are connected to dispatching, a message and corresponding

Are connected to a messenger, delegate and apostle

Are connected to being friendly, intimate and free of affectation

Are connected to the one who carries by consecutive progressions the relation of the tidings of Him who has sent him

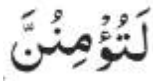


Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to certifying, verifying, confirming, substantiating, attesting and bearing witness

Verifies - confirms correctness, establishes truth

Bears witness to - testifies in favour or against



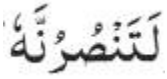
Structure shows three layers of emphasis

Root letters are connected to trusting, trusting with, showing submission to, and confiding in

Believe - to accept something as true or hold it as a conviction

Trust - to place confidence in someone’s truthfulness, reliability, or intentions

Confide in - to place confidence in someone deeply enough to entrust them with personal matters, secrets, or reliance



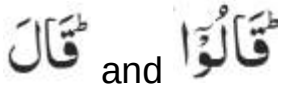
Structure shows three layers of emphasis

Root letters are connected to helper, defender, supporter, protector, ally, confederate, follower and adherent

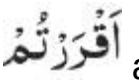
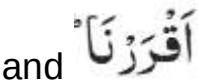
Adhering - remaining firmly attached to, committed to, or faithful to someone or something

Following - going after, accompanying, or conforming to someone's direction, example, or way

Supporting - assisting, strengthening, upholding, or giving active backing to someone or something

 and

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

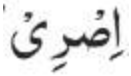
 and 

Root letters are connected to consenting, acknowledging, affirming, establishing, confirming and agreeing

Acknowledged - recognised or admitted something as true

Consented - agreed or gave permission willingly

Affirmed - declared or confirmed something firmly



Root letters are connected to covenant, compact, contract, obligation and responsibility

Are connected to something burdensome, heavy and weighty

فَاشْهَدُوْا

Root letters are connected to witness, experience personally, eyewitness, attend, give evidence, to testify and to bear witness

الشّٰهِدِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to witness, experience personally, eyewitness, attend, give evidence, to testify and to bear witness

فَمَنْ تَوَلّٰى بَعْدَ ذٰلِكَ فَاُولٰٓئِكَ هُمُ الْفٰسِقُوْنَ ﴿٨٢﴾

3:82

Then whoever has refrained and turned away after that, then those—they [in particular] are firmly established in, and persist in, openly transgressing the limits of goodness.

Notes:

تَوَلّٰى

Root letters are connected to turning, turning away, turning back, fleeing, desisting, refraining and forgoing

هُمُ الْفٰسِقُوْنَ

Pronoun “they” is used twice for added emphasis

الْفٰسِقُوْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to straying from right course, deviating, sinful, immoral and transgressing the limits of the law

Are connected to emerging outwardly and openly

اَفَغَيْرَ دِيْنِ اللّٰهِ يَبْغُوْنَ وَلَهٗٓ اَسْلَمَ مَنْ فِي السَّمٰوٰتِ وَالْاَرْضِ طَوْعًا وَّكَرْهًا وَّاِلَيْهِ يُرْجَعُوْنَ ﴿٨٣﴾

3:83

Then is it other than the obedient way of life to Allah they desire and seek, even though, to Him [alone], whoever is in the lofty skies and the Earth has surrendered, submitted, and committed themself in a state of either willing obedience or dislike and aversion—reluctant and unwilling?[1] And to Him [alone] they will be returned and presented for critical examination.

Notes:

1 - The submission mentioned in this verse refers to being under the full control of the decrees of Allah, the Exalted, which are inescapable

دِيْنِ

Root letters are connected to under power, obedience, owe allegiance and submissive

Are connected to way of acting, doctrine, custom, habit, creed and religion

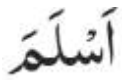
يَبْغُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to seeking, desiring, striving and aspiring for



Structure indicates exclusivity and totality

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



Root letters are connected to deserting, abandoning, surrendering, submitting, becoming muslim, and committing oneself to the will of Allah

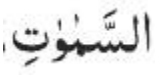
Are connected to being safe, sound, secure and well-being

Surrenders - relinquishing resistance and competing attachments

Submits - places oneself under authority

Commits - actively dedicating oneself to obedience

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit



Root letters are connected to sky, heaven and ceiling

Are connected to raised, elevated, high, lofty and tall

طَوْعًا

Root letters are connected to obedience, voluntarily, of one's own accord, and willingly

وَّكَرْهًا

Root letters are connected to dislike, detest, loathe, abhor, hate and averse

Are connected to unwillingly, reluctantly, grudgingly, under compulsion and against one's will

Dislike - feeling negatively towards

Aversion - tendency to avoid

Reluctant - lacking eagerness

Unwilling - not wanting to do it

وَاِلَيْهِ يُرْجَعُوْنَ

Structure shows exclusivity

يُرْجَعُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to coming back, returning, resorting or reverting to a former place/state/quality

Are connected to present oneself and examine critically

قُلْ اٰمَنَّا بِاللّٰهِ وَمَآ اُنْزِلَ عَلَيْنَا وَمَآ اُنْزِلَ عَلٰٓى اِبْرٰهِيْمَ وَاِسْمٰعِيْلَ
وَاِسْحٰقَ وَيَعْقُوْبَ وَالْاَسْبَاطِ وَمَآ اُوْتِيَ مُوْسٰى وَعِيْسٰى وَالنَّبِيُّوْنَ
مِنْ رَّبِّهِمْ ۖ لَا نُفَرِّقُ بَيْنَ اَحَدٍ مِّنْهُمْ ۡ وَنَحْنُ لَهٗ مُسْلِمُوْنَ ﴿٨٤﴾

3:84

Declare, "We have believed in Allah [as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith]; and in what has been gradually revealed to us [to hold a special position of supreme authority]; and in whatever was revealed to Ibrahim, Ismaeel, Ishaaq, Yaqoob, and the tribes [from amongst their descendants]; and in whatever [divine revelation and miracles] Musa, Eesa[1], and the honoured Prophets [who conveyed divine knowledge] were granted—all originating from their nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority]. We do not make any distinction between anyone from amongst them. And we are [firmly established in, and persist in,] surrendering, submitting, and committing ourselves [only] to His obedience [thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind]."

Notes:

1 - The Prophets Musa and Eesa, peace be upon them, are perhaps mentioned separately as they were the senior Prophets, peace be upon them, sent to the descendants of Israel

قُلْ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

اٰمَنَّا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

اُنْزِلَ

Root letters are connected to something which is sent down, comes down, descends, stops over and is granted

Are connected to something which is sent down slowly and gradually

Are connected to something which holds a special position or place

الْاَسْبَاطِ

Root letters are connected to tribe, progeny and people

أُوتِيَ

Root letters are connected to bring, give, grant and bestow

النَّبِيُّونَ

Root letters are connected to informing, notifying, advising telling and announcing

Are connected to being high in rank, raised, elevated and prominent

رَّبِّهِمْ

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

نُفَرِّقُ

Root letters are connected to separating, distinguishing, parting, dividing and severing

وَنَحْنُ لَهُۥ مُسْلِمُونَ

Structure shows exclusivity



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to deserting, abandoning, surrendering, submitting, becoming muslim, and committing oneself to the will of Allah

Are connected to being safe, sound, secure and well-being

Surrenders - relinquishing resistance and competing attachments

Submits - places oneself under authority

Commits - actively dedicating oneself to obedience

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

وَمَنْ يَّبْتَغِ غَيْرَ الْاِسْلَامِ دِيْنًا فَلَنْ يُّقْبَلَ مِنْهُ ۚ وَهُوَ فِى الْاٰخِرَةِ مِنَ الْخٰسِرِيْنَ ﴿٨٥﴾

3:85

And whoever desires or seeks other than surrendering, submitting, and committing themself to the obedience of Allah, as a way of life—then it will never be allowed or accepted from him, and he will be, in the life of the Hereafter, from amongst those who are firmly established in, and persist in, being misguided losers—heading toward destruction.

Notes:

يَّبْتَغِ

Root letters are connected to seeking, desiring, striving and aspiring for

الْاِسْلَامِ

Root letters are connected to deserting, abandoning, surrendering, submitting, becoming muslim, and committing oneself to the will of Allah

Are connected to being safe, sound, secure and well-being

Surrenders - relinquishing resistance and competing attachments

Submits - places oneself under authority

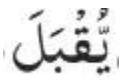
Commits - actively dedicating oneself to obedience

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit



Root letters are connected to under power, obedience, owe allegiance and submissive

Are connected to way of acting, doctrine, custom, habit, creed and religion



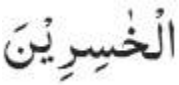
Root letters are connected to accepting, agreeing and taking

Allowed - permitted to occur

Accepted - approved or received



Root letters are connected to the hereafter, the final abode, life to come, and something which is delayed and deferred



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to losing, getting lost and perishing

كَيْفَ يَهْدِى اللّٰهُ قَوْمًا كَفَرُوْا بَعْدَ اِيْمَانِهِمْ وَشَهِدُوْٓا اَنَّ الرَّسُوْلَ
حَقٌّ وَّجَآءَهُمُ الْبَيِّنٰتُ ۭ وَاللّٰهُ لَا يَهْدِى الْقَوْمَ الظّٰلِمِيْنَ ۝٨٦

3:86

How can Allah gift guidance, by showing and leading to and along the right way of life, to a people who have neglected, dissociated from, and denied their obligations to Him, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them]—after their faith, even though they have borne witness that the Messenger, who sincerely conveys a divine code of conduct from Allah, is the embodiment of truth—correct, appropriate, and purposeful; and the clear proofs and explanations have reached them? And Allah—He does not gift guidance to the people who are firmly established in, and persist in, being unjust—transgressing proper limits.

Notes:

يَهْدِى

Root letters are connected to guidance, direction, showing, being led, being supplied and a way of life

Are connected to gifting and bestowing

Are connected to direction and discovering the right way

قَوْمًا

Root letters are connected to people, crowd, tribe and nation

كَفَرُوْا

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

اِيْمَانِهِمْ

Root letters are connected to faith, belief, trust and confidence

وَشَهِدُوْٓا

Root letters are connected to witness, experience personally, eyewitness, attend, give evidence, to testify and to bear witness

الرَّسُوْلَ

Root letters are connected to dispatching, a message and corresponding

Are connected to a messenger, delegate and apostle

Are connected to being friendly, intimate and free of affectation

Are connected to the one who carries by consecutive progressions the relation of the tidings of Him who has sent him



Structure adds emphasis

Root letters are connected to what is right, correct, true, proper, suitable, fitting and purposeful

True - matches reality

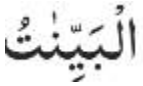
Correct - accurate and right

Appropriate - properly fitting

Purposeful - meaningful and intentional



Root letters are connected to come, produce, set forth and reaching



Root letters are connected to clarification, explanation, clear evidence and proof

Proofs – undeniable evidence that establish truth decisively

Explanations – making meaning clear and understandable



Pronoun “He” is used twice for added emphasis

الظّٰلِمِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to be unjust, act tyrannically, do wrong, do evil, harm, oppress and transgress proper limits

أُولَٰٓئِكَ جَزَآؤُهُمْ أَنَّ عَلَيْهِمْ لَعْنَةَ اللَّهِ وَالْمَلَٰٓئِكَةِ وَالنَّاسِ أَجْمَعِينَ ﴿٨٧﴾

3:87

Those—their recompense is that upon them is the punishment of Allah—expulsion from all good in disgrace—and the criticism, blame, and supplication of the Angels and people, all together in complete unison, for their expulsion from all good.

Notes:

جَزَآؤُهُمْ

Root letters are connected to repaying, recompense, rewarding and punishing

لَعْنَةَ

Root letters are connected to cursing, disgracing, expelling and removing someone from good

Are connected to punishing and torturing

Are connected to being deprived of mercy

Are connected to strongly criticizing and blaming

Criticizing - exposing and condemning the wrongdoing itself

Blaming - assigning responsibility and reproach to the wrongdoer



Root letters are connected to whole, entire, all, entirety and altogether

Indicates together in unison

خٰلِدِيْنَ فِيْهَا ۚ لَا يُخَفَّفُ عَنْهُمُ الْعَذَابُ وَلَا هُمْ يُنْظَرُوْنَ ۝٨٨

3:88

Those [are the ones] who remain firmly established—abiding forever—in it [expulsion from all good[1]]. The agonising, deterrent punishment will not be lightened for them, and they—they [in particular] will be shown no consideration or granted any respite.

Notes:

1 - The expulsion from all good is discussed in the previous verse Quran 3:87

خٰلِدِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to be everlasting, being immortal and abiding forever

يُخَفَّفُ

Root letters are connected to making lighter, reducing the weight, relieving, diminishing and reducing

الْعَذَابُ

Root letters are connected to prevent, hinder, deter and obstruct

Are connected to punishment, torture, agony, painful and suffering

Agonising - causing intense pain and torment

هُمْ يُنْظَرُوْنَ

Pronoun “they” is used twice for added emphasis

يُنْظَرُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to pay attention, pay regard and consideration

Are connected to giving respite and delay

إِلَّا الَّذِينَ تَابُوا مِنْ بَعْدِ ذَٰلِكَ وَأَصْلَحُوا فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ غَفُورٌ رَحِيمٌ ﴿٨٩﴾

3:89

Except those who have turned [to Allah] in sincere repentance—abandoning sinful behaviour from after that, and have reformed themselves through righteous conduct and correctly arranging affairs—then certainly, Allah is innately and eternally the One who conceals, forgives, and corrects affairs, the One who especially grants constant mercy, kindness, and relief to those who earn it.

Notes:

تَابُوا

Root letters are connected to repenting, turning and renouncing disobedience and sins

Are connected to forgiveness, pardon and turning to someone

أَصْلَحُوا

Root letters are connected to reforming, perform good deeds, fixing things, repairing things, amending, arranging correctly, making thrive, making prosperous and putting in a good state

إِنَّ اللَّهَ غَفُورٌ رَحِيمٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



Root letters are connected to covering, concealing, veiling and hiding

Are connected to forgiving and pardoning

Are connected to correcting and rectifying affairs



Root letters are connected to having mercy, compassion, sparing, letting off, saving, kindness, tenderness and pity

Intense structure form has been used

Specific mercy for those who deserve and earn it

Mercy – withholds punishment from those who deserve it

Kindness – a broader act of granting blessings

إِنَّ الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا بَعْدَ إِيمَانِهِمْ ثُمَّ ازْدَادُوا كُفْرًا لَّن تُقْبَلَ
تَوْبَتُهُمْ ۚ وَأُولَٰئِكَ هُمُ الضَّالُّونَ ﴿٩٠﴾

3:90

Certainly, those who have neglected, dissociated from, and denied their obligations to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them]—after their faith, thereafter, they have further intensified in neglect of, dissociation from, and denial of the obligations due to Allah—their repentance [at death[1]] will never be allowed or accepted. And those—they [in particular] are firmly established in, and persist in, misguidance—deviating from the right path, perishing as a result.

Notes:

1 - As discussed in many Islamic teachings, sincere repentance is accepted before death arrives e.g. Quran 4:17-18

كَفَرُوا and كُفْرًا

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

إِيمَانِهِمْ

Root letters are connected to faith, belief, trust and confidence

ازْدَادُوا

Root letters are connected to growing, increasing, multiplying, expanding and intensifying

تُقْبَلَ

Root letters are connected to accepting, agreeing and taking

Allowed - permitted to occur

Accepted - approved or received

تَوْبَتُهُمْ

Root letters are connected to repentance, penitence, contrition, penance, and confession of sins

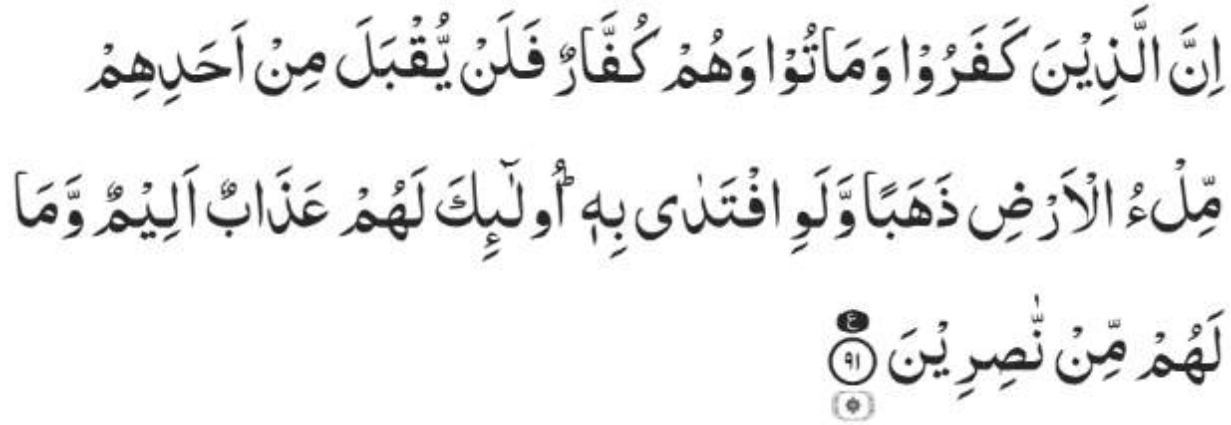
هُمُ الضَّآلُّونَ

Pronoun “they” is used twice for added emphasis

الضَّآلُّونَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent state

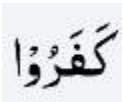
Root letters are connected to stray, err, deviate from right course, to perish and become hidden


إِنَّ الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا وَمَاتُوا وَهُمْ كُفَّارٌ فَلَنْ يُقْبَلَ مِنْ أَحَدِهِمْ
مِلْءُ الْأَرْضِ ذَهَبًا وَلَوِ افْتَدَىٰ بِهِ ۗ أُولَٰئِكَ لَهُمْ عَذَابٌ أَلِيمٌ وَمَا
لَهُمْ مِنْ نَاصِرِينَ ﴿٩١﴾

3:91

Certainly, those who have neglected, dissociated from, and denied their obligations to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them], and have died in a firmly established and persistent state of neglecting, dissociating from, and denying their obligations to Allah—the earth full of precious gold will never be allowed or accepted from anyone of them, even if he offered ransom [for himself] by means of it. Those—for them is a punishment—the utmost degree of pain and suffering, and there is not for them even a single one from those who are firmly established in, and persist in, protecting, supporting, or granting success.

Notes:


كَفَرُوا

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Structure shows emphasis

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

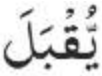
Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty



Root letters are connected to dying, perishing, losing life and subsiding

Are connected to being poor, base or abject



Root letters are connected to accepting, agreeing and taking

Allowed - permitted to occur

Accepted - approved or received



Root letters are connected to filling, quantity contained in something, quantity which fills up, and fulness

ذَهَبًا

Root letters are connected to gold, gold piece, gold coin

Are connected to precious and excellent

افْتَدٰى

Root letters are connected to freeing, ransoming, obtaining something by sacrificing something else and redeeming

عَذَابٌ

Root letters are connected to prevent, hinder, deter and obstruct

Are connected to punishment and torture

اَلِيْمٌ

Root letters are connected pain, suffering, grievous pain, excruciating and the utmost degree of pain

Pain - refers to the physical sensation (the body)

Suffering - refers to the emotional or mental distress (the mind/soul)

وَمَا لَهُم مِّن نَّٰصِرِينَ

Structure gives a strong negation and refutation meaning

And gives an absolute and complete negation in state, time and possibility

نَّٰصِرِينَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to helping, assisting and rendering victorious

Are connected to defending, saving and protecting

لَنْ تَنَالُوا الْبِرَّ حَتّٰى تُنْفِقُوْا مِمَّا تُحِبُّوْنَ ۬ؕ وَمَا تُنْفِقُوْا مِنْ شَيْءٍ
فَاِنَّ اللّٰهَ بِهٖ عَلِيْمٌ ﴿٩٢﴾

3:92

You all will never attain righteous conduct towards Allah and people, until you readily use [in good ways] from what you desire, respect, prefer, and love [of your possessions]. And whatever you readily use [of your possessions] in any matter—then certainly, Allah is innately and eternally the One who, concerning it, completely knows and fully understands.

Notes:

تَنَالُوا

Root letters are connected to obtaining, accomplishing, attaining, possessing and reaching

الْبِرَّ

Root letters are connected to being dutiful, devout, to do good, obey Allah, treat others with respect and good treatment of people

Are connected to piety, reverence and righteousness

تُنْفِقُوْا

Root letters are connected to disposing of something quickly

Are connected to exhausting, using up and spending

تُحِبُّوْنَ

Root letters are connected to desiring, preferring, liking

Are connected to wishing, wanting and loving

Are connected to esteeming something or someone

Desire - inward attraction and wanting

Respect - elevating their status and importance

Prefer - giving them practical priority and choosing them over others

Love - deep emotional attachment and devotion

شَيْءٍ

Root letters are connected to a thing, matter or affair

فَإِنَّ اللّٰهَ بِهٖ عَلِيْمٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

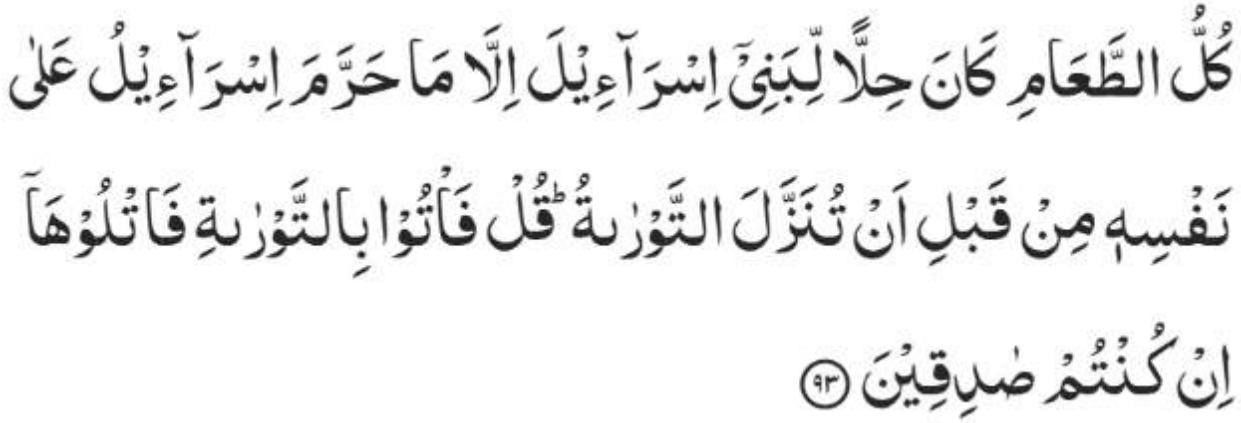
عَلِيْمٌ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications


كُلُّ الطَّعَامِ كَانَ حِلًّا لِّبَنِيٓ اِسۡرَآءِيۡلَ اِلَّا مَا حَرَّمَ اِسۡرَآءِيۡلُ عَلٰى
نَفۡسِهٖ مِنۡ قَبۡلِ اَنۡ تُنَزَّلَ التَّوۡرٰىةُ ؕ قُلۡ فَاۡتُوۡا بِالتَّوۡرٰىةِ فَاتۡلُوۡهَآ
اِنۡ كُنۡتُمۡ صٰدِقِيۡنَ ﴿۹۳﴾

3:93

All types of food were established as lawful for the descendants of Israel, except what Israel [Prophet Yaqoob] made unlawful for himself from before the Torah was sent down—to hold a special position [of authority]. Declare, "Then bring forward—all of you—the Torah, and recite it, if you are, in fact, [firmly established as] those who are sincere and truthful."

Notes:

الطَّعَامِ

Root letters are connected to food, meal and diet

كَانَ and كُنۡتُمۡ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place



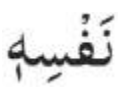
Root letters are connected to anything lawful, permissible, allowed, allowable and legitimate



Root letters are connected to son, daughter and descendant



Root letters are connected to declaring unlawful and forbidding



Root letters are connected to soul, person, mind, human being and an individual



Root letters are connected to something which is sent down, comes down, descends, stops over and is granted

Are connected to something which is sent down slowly and gradually

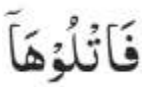
Are connected to something which holds a special position or place



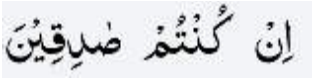
Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging



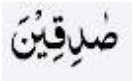
Root letters are connected to coming, arriving, producing, accomplishing, bringing, advancing and accomplishing



Root letters are connected to following, reading, reciting, relating and rehearsing



Structure indicates an established state



Root letters are connected to being truthful, sincere and keeping one’s word

Sincere - pure inner intention

Truthful - outward truth in word and action

فَمَنِ افْتَرٰى عَلَى اللّٰهِ الْكَذِبَ مِنْۢ بَعْدِ ذٰلِكَ فَاُولٰٓئِكَ هُمُ الظّٰلِمُوْنَ ﴿٩٤﴾

3:94

Then whoever has fabricated against Allah [what is] the embodiment of falsehood and deceit even after that[1], then those—they [in particular] are firmly established in, and persist in, being unjust—transgressing proper limits.

Notes:

1 - After confirming the truth from the Torah as discussed in the previous verse - Quran 3:93

افْتَرٰى

Root letters are connected to invent lyingly, fabricate, trump up, slander, forge a falsehood, and forge a lie

الْكَذِبَ

Structure indicates the entire genus and ultimate definition of a lie

Root letters are connected to lie, deceit, falsehood, fraud and untruth



هُمُ الظّٰلِمُوْنَ

Pronoun “they” is used twice for added emphasis



الظّٰلِمُوْنَ

Noun indicating estabilished and persisten trait

Root letters are connected to be unjust, act tyrannically, do wrong, do evil, harm, oppress and transgress proper limits

قُلْ صَدَقَ اللّٰهُ ۟ فَاتَّبِعُوْا مِلَّةَ اِبْرٰهِيْمَ حَنِيْفًا ۭ وَمَا كَانَ مِنَ

الْمُشْرِكِيْنَ ۝٩٥

3:95

Declare, “Allah has spoken and established the truth.” Therefore, all of you be in agreement with, pursue, and adhere to the religious values and principles of Ibrahim, living under this authority—an ever firmly established and persistent state of inclining to the natural way: obedience to Allah. And never did he become or exist from amongst those who are firmly established in, and persist in, associating partners with Allah.

Notes:

قُلْ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

صَدَقَ

Root letters are connected to speaking the truth, being sincere, proving to be true, turning out to be correct, establish the truth, confirm the truth, and being right

فَاتَّبِعُوْا

Root letters are connected to following, pursuing, walking behind and adhering

Are connected to being under authority and command

Are connected to concurring, being in agreement and being in conformity

In agreement - accepting the guidance internally (belief/acceptance)

Pursues - actively seeking and following it

Adheres to - remaining firm and consistent upon it

مِلَّةَ

Root letters are connected to religious community, creed, religion, faith and a way

Values - inward beliefs and priorities

Principles - governing rules and foundations

حَنِيْفًا ؕ

Structure shows emphasis

Root letters are connected to inclining to something and disinclining from something

Are connected to making oneself the servant of Allah and devoting oneself to religious service

Are connected to inclining to the right state and orthodox belief

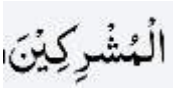


Structure gives a strong negation and refutation meaning

And gives an absolute and complete negation in state, time and possibility

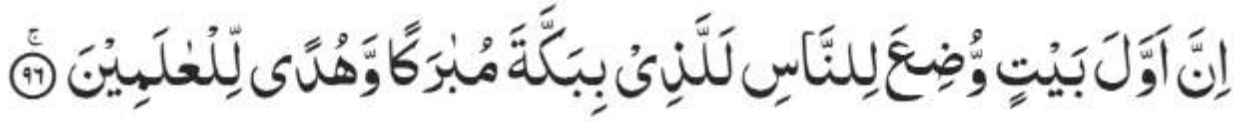


Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to making a partner, associating and committing polytheism



3:96

No doubt, the foremost and most important house established for the benefit of all people is certainly the one firmly situated at Bakkah[1] [meaning Makkah]—in a firmly established and persistent state of being abundantly blessed; and of guidance which shows and leads to and along the right way of life—for the benefit of all generations [of humans and jinn] endowed with higher-level recognition, knowledge, and understanding—[marked for accountability].

Notes:

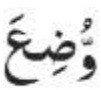
1 - The name used was familiar to the scholars of the people of the book



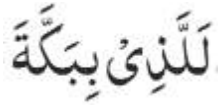
Root letters are connected to being first, foremost, most important, and main



Root letters are connected to a home, house, room and apartment



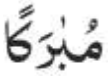
Root letters are connected to erecting, establishing, putting down, setting up, and fixing



Structure suggests a strong and inseparable bond



Refers to Makkah



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to blessed, fortunate, prosperous, and abounding in good

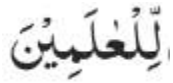
Are connected to abundant good and perpetual good



Root letters are connected to guidance, direction, showing, being led, being supplied and a way of life

Are connected to gifting and bestowing

Are connected to direction and discovering the right way



Root letters are connected to generation

Are connected to inquiring, asking and querying

Are connected to something which is marked e.g. landmark – Humans and Jinn are marked for accountability e.g. Quran 55:31

Are connected to knowledge, understanding, recognition, perception, discernment and learning – Humans and Jinn possess higher level of knowledge, intelligence and understanding in respect to divine guidance and accountability and are therefore marked for accountability unlike other creatures

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

Same term used in Quran 25:1 which mentions the Prophet Muhammad, peace and blessings be upon him, being sent as a warner. He was sent only to those marked for accountability as a warner and not the entire creation

فِيْهِ اٰيٰتٌۢ بَيِّنٰتٌ مَّقَامُ اِبْرٰهِيْمَ ۚ۬ وَمَنْ دَخَلَهٗ كَانَ اٰمِنًا ؕ وَلِلّٰهِ عَلَى
النَّاسِ حِجُّ الْبَيْتِ مَنِ اسْتَطَاعَ اِلَيْهِ سَبِيْلًا ؕ وَمَنْ كَفَرَ فَاِنَّ اللّٰهَ
غَنِيٌّ عَنِ الْعٰلَمِيْنَ ﴿۹۷﴾

3:97

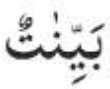
Within it [Makkah] are miraculous and evident signs—clear proofs and explanations: the [physical and spiritual] established station of Ibrahim [as an exemplar—a perfect example of right guidance[1]]. And whoever has entered it is in a firmly established state of peace, protection, and faith. And due to Allah upon all people is the Major Pilgrimage of the House [the Kaaba], established [as an obligation] for whoever has been able to acquire the means and way to accomplishing it. But whoever has neglected, dissociated from, and denied their obligations to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them]—then certainly, Allah is innately and eternally the One who enriches, suffices, and protects—who is self-sufficient, fully independent, and utterly free of need of all generations [of humans and jinn] endowed with higher-level recognition, knowledge, and understanding—[marked for accountability].

Notes:

1 - The Prophet Ibrahim, peace be upon him, being an exemplar is discussed in other verses, such as Quran 2:124



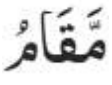
Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof



Root letters are connected to clarification, explanation, clear evidence and proof

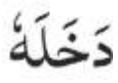
Proofs – undeniable evidence that establish truth decisively

Explanations – making meaning clear and understandable



Noun indicating time and place including a physical and spiritual state

Root letters are connected to standing up, support, being straight, correct, being upright and established



Root letters are connected to entering



Structure indicates an established state

كَانَ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

اٰمِنًا

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to faith, belief, trust and confidence

Are connected to safety, peace, security, protection and freedom from fear

عَلَى النَّاسِ حِجُّ الْبَيْتِ

Noun sentence indicating an established and timeless obligation

حِجًّا

Root letters are connected to performing the pilgrimage to Makkah

الْبَيْتِ

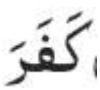
Root letters are connected to a home, house, room and apartment

اسْتَطَاعَ

Root letters are connected to be in a position to do, to get, carry out, be able to acquire and be capable



Root letters are connected to way, road, path, reason, cause, means and way, and method



Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



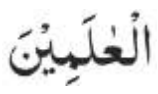
Root letters are connected to self-sufficient, independent, rich and free of need

Are connected to enriching, sufficing, protecting and helping

Self-sufficient - has everything within Himself

Fully independent - not reliant on anything outside Himself

Utterly free of need - negation of any form of dependence



Root letters are connected to generation

Are connected to inquiring, asking and querying

Are connected to something which is marked e.g. landmark – Humans and Jinn are marked for accountability e.g. Quran 55:31

Are connected to knowledge, understanding, recognition, perception, discernment and learning – Humans and Jinn possess higher level of knowledge, intelligence and understanding in respect to divine guidance and accountability and are therefore marked for accountability unlike other creatures

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

Same term used in Quran 25:1 which mentions the Prophet Muhammad, peace and blessings be upon him, being sent as a warner. He was sent only to those marked for accountability as a warner and not the entire creation

قُلْ يٰٓاَهْلَ الْكِتٰبِ لِمَ تَكْفُرُوْنَ بِاٰيٰتِ اللّٰهِ ۖ وَاللّٰهُ شَهِيْدٌ عَلٰى مَا تَعْمَلُوْنَ ﴿٩٨﴾

3:98

Question them, "Those [the scholars] possessing and familiar with the divine code of conduct [the Torah and Gospel[1]]! Why do you neglect, dissociate from, and deny the miraculous and evident signs[2] of Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted you], even though Allah is innately and eternally the One who is present, observes, and bears witness to whatever you do?"

Notes:

This verse refers specifically to those who possessed and understood the previous divine scriptures—the scholars—not the ordinary followers, who were not allowed direct access to them. This is evident from history and is supported by the Quran, for example, Quran 2:78

1 - The divine code of conduct is mentioned in the singular form to emphasise the shared and unified divine guidance originally granted through the Torah and affirmed by the Gospel

2 - These include the verses of the Torah, Gospel and the Quran

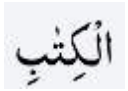
قُلْ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

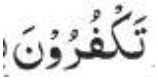


Root letters are connected to be on familiar terms with something

Are connected to possessors, adherents and followers



Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document



Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty



Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof

وَاللّٰهُ شَهِيْدٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

شَهِيْدٌ

Root letters are connected to witness, experience personally, eyewitness, attend, give evidence, to testify, to bear witness, to see, attend, and be present

Are connected to viewing, inspecting, watching and observing

تَعْمَلُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to working, doing and acting

قُلْ يٰٓاَهْلَ الْكِتٰبِ لِمَ تَصُدُّوْنَ عَنْ سَبِيْلِ اللّٰهِ مَنْ اٰمَنَ تَبْغُوْنَهَا
عِوَجًا وَّاَنْتُمْ شُهَدَآءُ ۗ وَمَا اللّٰهُ بِغَافِلٍ عَمَّا تَعْمَلُوْنَ ﴿٩٩﴾

3:99

Question them, "Those [the scholars] possessing and familiar with the divine code of conduct [the Torah and Gospel[1]]! Why do you hinder, obstruct, and divert, from the path of [obeying] Allah, the one who has believed—as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind—desiring and seeking it [the path] to appear abnormal, deviant, and corrupt, even though you are knowledgeable witnesses? And Allah is never—at any time or in any state—the One who is unmindful or disregarding of whatever you do."

Notes:

This verse refers specifically to those who possessed and understood the previous divine scriptures—the scholars—not the ordinary followers, who were not allowed direct access to them. This is evident from history and is supported by the Quran, for example, Quran 2:78

1 - The divine code of conduct is mentioned in the singular form to emphasise the shared and unified divine guidance originally granted through the Torah and affirmed by the Gospel

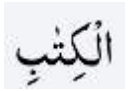
قُلْ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

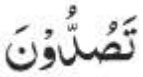


Root letters are connected to be on familiar terms with something

Are connected to possessors, adherents and followers



Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document



Root letters are connected to averting, hindering, turning away, checking, stopping, repulsing and obstruction



Root letters are connected to a way, path and road

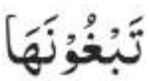


Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit



Root letters are connected to seeking, desiring, striving and aspiring for

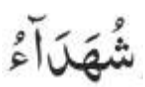


Root letters are connected to crookedness, bending, unevenness, deviation, abnormal, corruption and unhealthy

Abnormal - departing from what is normal, expected, or sound; outside the proper pattern

Deviant - straying or turning away from the correct, accepted, or intended path

Corrupt - spoiled, impaired, or distorted from its proper or sound condition



Root letters are connected to witnessing, attending, experiencing, giving evidence

Are connected to those who possess knowledge and provide evidence

وَمَا اللهُ بِغَافِلٍ عَمَّا تَعْمَلُوْنَ

Structure gives a strong negation and refutation meaning

And gives an absolute and complete negation in state, time and possibility

بِغَافِلٍ

Root letters are connected to neglect, being heedless, disregard, ignore, be unmindful and carelessness

تَعْمَلُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to working, doing and acting

يٰٓاَيُّهَا الَّذِيْنَ اٰمَنُوْٓا اِنْ تُطِيْعُوْا فَرِيْقًا مِّنَ الَّذِيْنَ اُوْتُوا الْكِتٰبَ يَرُدُّوْكُمْ بَعْدَ اِيْمَانِكُمْ كٰفِرِيْنَ ﴿١٠٠﴾

3:100

Those who have claimed to believe! If you submit to and obey a group from amongst those who have been granted the divine code of conduct [the Torah and Gospel[1]], they will drive you back, after your faith—as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling its duties, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind—to a firmly established and persistent state of neglecting, dissociating from, and denying your obligations to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted you].

Notes:

1 - The divine code of conduct is mentioned in the singular form to emphasise the shared and unified divine guidance originally granted through the Torah and affirmed by the Gospel

اٰمَنُوْٓا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit



Root letters are connected to obey, follow, submit, yield and comply

Submitted - the inward attitude and acceptance of authority

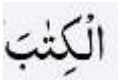
Obeyed - the outward response and implementation



Root letters are connected to a band, company, troop, detachment, unit, part, faction and team



Root letters are connected to bring, give, grant and bestow

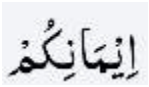


Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document



Root letters are connected to sending back, returning and driving back

Are connected to returning to a former state



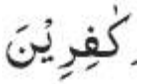
Root letters are connected to faith, belief, trust and confidence

Are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

وَكَيْفَ تَكْفُرُوْنَ وَاَنْتُمْ تُتْلٰى عَلَيْكُمْ اٰيٰتُ اللّٰهِ وَفِيْكُمْ رَسُوْلُهٗ ؕ
وَمَنْ يَّعْتَصِمْ بِاللّٰهِ فَقَدْ هُدِيَ اِلٰى صِرَاطٍ مُّسْتَقِيْمٍ ﴿۱۰۱﴾

3:101

And how can you all neglect, dissociate from, and deny your obligations to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted you], even though the miraculous and evident signs of Allah [verses of the Quran] are being recited and conveyed to you; and amongst you is His Messenger—who sincerely conveys a divine code of conduct from Allah? And whoever takes refuge by holding fast to [the obedience of] Allah—has certainly been gifted guidance by being shown and led to and along the right way of life: a firmly established, upright, and natural open path—ensuring the correct management of all affairs.

Notes:

تَكْفُرُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

تُتْلٰى

Root letters are connected to following, reading, reciting, relating and rehearsing

اٰيٰتُ

Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof

رَسُوْلُهٗ

Root letters are connected to dispatching, a message and corresponding

Are connected to a messenger, delegate and apostle

Are connected to being friendly, intimate and free of affectation

Are connected to the one who carries by consecutive progressions the relation of the tidings of Him who has sent him

يَّعْتَصِمْ

Root letters are connected to clinging, adhering, seeking shelter, seeking refuge, holding fast, resorting to, and cleaving firmly to

هُدِىَ

Root letters are connected to guidance, direction, showing, being led, being supplied and a way of life

Are connected to gifting and bestowing

Are connected to direction and discovering the right way

صِرَاطٍ

No preposition used in the verse so includes towards and upon the path

Root letters are connected to a long and open way or path

مُّسْتَقِيمٍ

Noun indicating an established state

Root letters are connected to preserve, established, managing affairs, fix and rectify, arrange well, reform, upright and be in a right state

Are connected to natural normal state

يٰٓاَيُّهَا الَّذِيْنَ اٰمَنُوا اتَّقُوا اللّٰهَ حَقَّ تُقٰتِهٖ وَلَا تَمُوْتُنَّ اِلَّا وَاَنْتُمْ مُّسْلِمُوْنَ ﴿١٠٢﴾

3:102

Those who have claimed to believe! Devoutly fulfil your duties to Allah—thereby protecting yourselves from harm and arranging all your matters correctly—establishing them according to His due right. And never—under any circumstance—die except while you are in a firmly established and persistent state of surrendering, submitting, and committing yourselves to the obedience of Allah, thereby attaining spiritual well-being.

Notes:

اٰمَنُوْٓا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

اتَّقُوا and تُقٰتِهٖ

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious

حَقَّ

Root letters are connected to what is right, correct, proper, suitable, fitting and purposeful

Are connected to one's due, in a proper manner, be deserving, be due, be entitled to, and a have right

Are connected to implementing, establishing and producing

تَمُوْتُنَّ

Structure shows two levels of emphasis

Root letters are connected to dying, perishing, losing life and subsiding

مُّسْلِمُوْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to deserting, abandoning, surrendering, submitting, becoming muslim, and committing oneself to the will of Allah

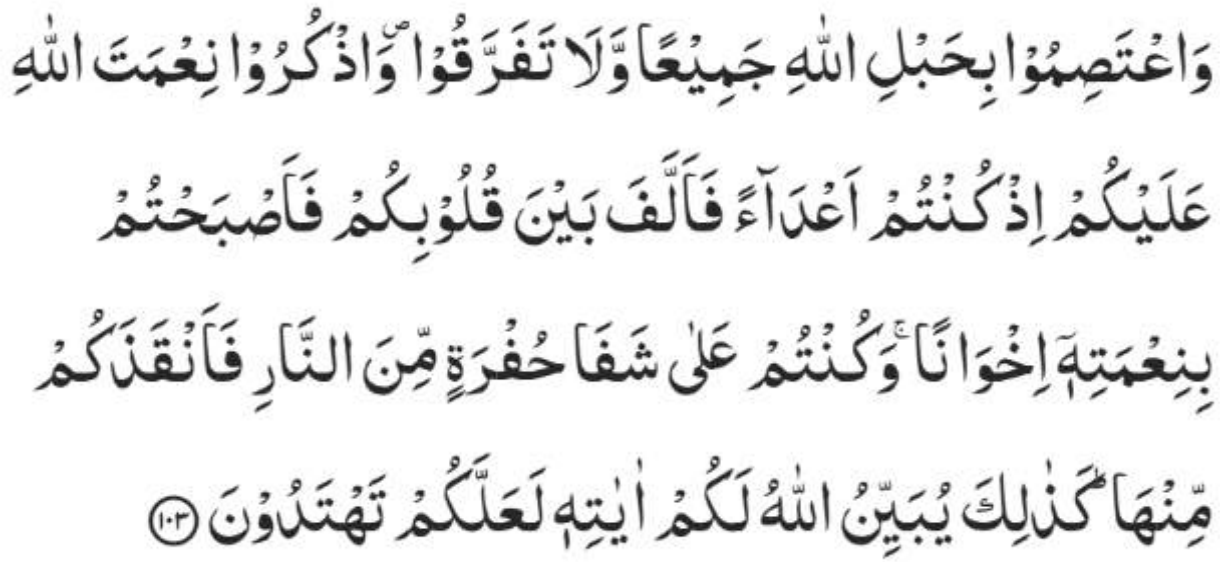
Are connected to being safe, sound, secure and well-being

Surrenders - relinquishing resistance and competing attachments

Submits - places oneself under authority

Commits - actively dedicating oneself to obedience

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit


وَاعْتَصِمُوْا بِحَبْلِ اللّٰهِ جَمِيْعًا وَّلَا تَفَرَّقُوْا ۚ وَاذْكُرُوْا نِعْمَتَ اللّٰهِ
عَلَيْكُمْ اِذْ كُنْتُمْ اَعْدَآءً فَاَلَّفَ بَيْنَ قُلُوْبِكُمْ فَاَصْبَحْتُمْ
بِنِعْمَتِهٖٓ اِخْوَانًا ۚ وَكُنْتُمْ عَلٰى شَفَا حُفْرَةٍ مِّنَ النَّارِ فَاَنْقَذَكُمْ
مِّنْهَا ۗ كَذٰلِكَ يُبَيِّنُ اللّٰهُ لَكُمْ اٰيٰتِهٖ لَعَلَّكُمْ تَهْتَدُوْنَ ﴿١٠٣﴾

3:103

And take refuge by holding fast to the rope[1] of Allah—all of you without exception—and do not fall into dissension becoming disunited. And reflect on and be mindful of the favour of Allah upon you that leads to a pleasant life: when you existed as enemies—exceeding proper bounds through hostility and aggression—then He reconciled your spiritual hearts, uniting you in intimate companionship, and you reached, through His favour, a state of brotherhood. And you existed upon the very edge of a pit containing fire, then He rescued and delivered you from it. In that way, Allah clearly explains, for your benefit, His miraculous and evident signs [verses of the Quran], so that you may seek and follow right guidance.

Notes:

1 – The rope of Allah, the Exalted, is the Quran (Sahih Muslim, 6228)

اعْتَصِمُوْا

Root letters are connected to clinging, adhering, seeking shelter, seeking refuge, holding fast, resorting to, and cleaving firmly to

بِحَبْلِ

Root letters are connected to rope, cable, cord, string, obligation, and covenant

جَمِيْعًا

Root letters are connected to whole, entire, all, entirety and altogether

Indicates all without exception

تَفَرَّقُوْا

Root letters are connected to become separated, split, divided, and disunited

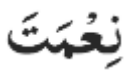
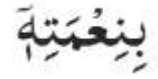
Are connected to separating, distinguish, parting, dividing, severing and dissension

اذْكُرُوْا

Root letters are connected to bearing in mind, thinking, recalling, remembering, studying and reflecting

Reflect on - to think deeply, consider, and recognise

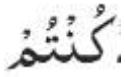
Be mindful of - to actively keep awareness of and not neglect

 and 

Root letters are connected to benefit, blessing, benefaction, favour, grace and kindness

Are connected to making nice, comfortable, pleasant and to bestow favours

Are connected to living in comfort and luxury, leading a life of ease and leading a comfortable life



Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place



Root letters are connected to hostility, violating, aggression, exceeding proper bounds and transgressing

Are connected to treating like an enemy

Enemies - the state of opposition

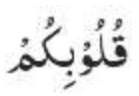
Hostility - inner attitude of enmity

Aggression - outward expression through harmful action

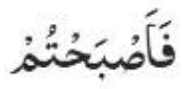


Root letters are connected to uniting, joining, combining, establishing friendship, reconciling, and causing companionship

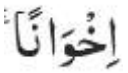
Are connected to intimacy, friendship, love, and affection



Root letters are connected to the heart



Root letters are connected to become, come to be, get into a situation, reach a state, become in state, and become in a condition



Root letters are connected to associating as brothers, brother, fellow man, friend, associate, and companion

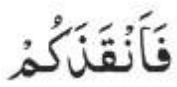


Root letters are connected to edge, rim, border, brink, verge, extremity, and be near

Are connected to being very close, and on the verge



Root letters are connected to a pit, hollow, cavity, excavation, hole, ditch, and grave



Root letters are connected to deliver, save, rescue, salvage, and recover

Rescued - saved from immediate danger or harm

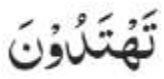
Delivered - ensured arrival at a secure and stable state



Root letters are connected to making clear, showing, explaining, differentiating and distinguishing



Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof



Root letters are connected to guidance, direction, seeking to be rightly guided and following right guidance

وَلْتَكُنْ مِّنْكُمْ اُمَّةٌ يَّدْعُوْنَ اِلَى الْخَيْرِ وَيَاْمُرُوْنَ بِالْمَعْرُوْفِ
وَيَنْهَوْنَ عَنِ الْمُنْكَرِ ؕ وَاُولٰٓئِكَ هُمُ الْمُفْلِحُوْنَ ﴿١٠٤﴾

3:104

And a community, an example of right guidance, must exist from amongst you all—inviting, urging, and summoning to a good state—leading to well-being: instructing to fair, kind, and sincere conduct which is widely recognised by common sense and reason; and forbidding what is considered inappropriate, indecent, and reprehensible by sound intellects. And those—they [in particular] are firmly established in, and persist in, cultivating spiritual well-being and permanent success.

Notes:

لْتَكُنْ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

اُمَّةٌ

Root letters are connected to an exemplar, example, leading the way, leading by example and a person who is imitated

Are connected to a group of people from one religion, a nation, a people and race

يَّدْعُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to calling, summoning, sending for, urging, driving, prompting, assigning and inviting

Invited - called or asked to come toward something willingly

Urged - strongly encouraged or pressed to respond or act

Summoned - called with authority, requiring or demanding attendance or response

الْخَيْرِ

Structure makes it all inclusive

Root letters are connected to a good thing, good quality, resources, treasures, anything good and blessings

يَأْمُرُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to ordering, commanding, instructing, charging and entrusting

بِالْمَعْرُوْفِ

Root letters are connected to being well known, universally accepted, generally recognised by reason and easily recognised

Are connected to which is good, fitting, suitable, courteous, fair, kind, sincere advice and honest advice

Fair - just and impartial

Kind - gentle and compassionate

Sincere - genuine and honest in intention

Common sense - practical sound judgement

Reason - thoughtful understanding and rational reflection

يَنْهَوْنَ

Root letters are connected to forbidding, prohibiting, proscribing, restraining, preventing and hindering

الْمُنْكَرِ

Root letters are connected to not recognised, unacknowledged, disowned, reprehensible, shocking, detestable, atrocity, objectionable, disallowed by sound intellects, unseemly, inappropriate, indecent and unknown

Inappropriate - not suitable, proper, or acceptable for the situation or conduct concerned

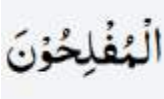
Indecent - lacking proper standards of modesty, propriety, or moral conduct

Reprehensible - deserving strong disapproval or condemnation because of its wrong or objectionable nature

Sound intellects - minds possessing sound judgement, reason, discernment, and freedom from serious corruption or distortion in thinking



Pronoun “they” is used twice for added emphasis



Root letters are connected to cultivating, growing, nurturing

Are connected to achieving success, safety, security, comfort and enjoyment of ease

Are connected to remaining in a good state

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

وَلَا تَكُونُوا كَالَّذِينَ تَفَرَّقُوا وَاخْتَلَفُوا مِنْ بَعْدِ مَا جَاءَهُمُ
الْبَيِّنَاتُ ۚ وَأُولَٰئِكَ لَهُمْ عَذَابٌ عَظِيمٌ ﴿١٠٥﴾

3:105

And do not become or exist like those who have fallen into dissension becoming disunited; and have disagreed, disputed, and opposed each other even after clear proofs and explanations have reached them. And those—for them is an agonising, deterring punishment—greatly terrible and distressing.

Notes:

تَكُونُوا

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

تَفَرَّقُوا

Root letters are connected to become separated, split, divided, and disunited

Are connected to separating, distinguish, parting, dividing, severing and dissension

اخْتَلَفُوا

Root letters are connected to differ, dispute, argue, disagreeing, different in opinion, debate and opposing

Disagreeing - difference in belief or opinion

Disputing - active argumentative conflict

Opposing - entrenched resistance and hostility

جَآءَهُمُ

Root letters are connected to come, produce, confront, set forth and reaching

الْبَيِّنٰتُ

Root letters are connected to clarification, explanation, clear evidence and proof

Proofs – undeniable evidence that establish truth decisively

Explanations – making meaning clear and understandable

عَذَابٌ

Root letters are connected to prevent, hinder, deter and obstruct

Are connected to punishment, torture, agony, painful and suffering

Agonising - causing intense pain and torment



Root letters are connected to something which is great, magnificent, powerful, supreme and mighty

Are connected to something which painful, oppressive, distressing, terrible and grievous

Terrible - extremely fearful and severe

Distressing - causing emotional pain and anguish

يَّوْمَ تَبْيَضُّ وُجُوْهٌ وَّتَسْوَدُّ وُجُوْهٌ ۚ فَاَمَّا الَّذِيْنَ اسْوَدَّتْ وُجُوْهُهُمْ ۫
اَكَفَرْتُمْ بَعْدَ اِيْمَانِكُمْ فَذُوْقُوا الْعَذَابَ بِمَا كُنْتُمْ تَكْفُرُوْنَ ﴿١٠٦﴾

3:106

On a Momentous Day, honourable faces will become bright—expressing joy—whereas, [other] faces will become dark—expressing sorrow. Then as for those whose faces have become dark, "Have you neglected, dissociated from, and denied your obligations to Allah [thereby persisting in ingratitude by misusing the blessings He granted you]—after your faith? Therefore, suffer the agonising punishment because you persisted in neglecting, dissociating from, and denying your obligations to Allah."

Notes:

يَّوْمَ

Root letters are connected to days, age, era and time

Are connected to momentous and important day

تَبْيَضُّ

Root letters are connected to becoming white

Are connected to face expressing joy, cheerfulness, and one's character becoming clear

وُجُوْهٌ and وُجُوْهُهُمْ

Root letters are connected to face

Are connected to honour, esteem, repute and rank

وَّتَسْوَدُّ and اسْوَدَّتْ

Root letters are connected to becoming back, and becoming dark

Are connected to dishonouring someone, expressing sorrow, displeasure, expressing grief and being perplexed

كَفَرْتُمْ and تَكْفُرُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

اِيْمَانِكُمْ

Root letters are connected to faith, belief, trust and confidence

Are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

فَذُوقُوا

Root letters are connected to taste, sample, try out, to test, experience, undergo, suffer and feel

الْعَذَابَ

Root letters are connected to prevent, hinder, deter and obstruct

Are connected to punishment, torture, agony, painful and suffering

Agonising - causing intense pain and torment

كُنتُمْ تَكْفُرُونَ

Structure indicates repetitive action

كُنتُمْ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

وَاَمَّا الَّذِيْنَ ابْيَضَّتْ وُجُوْهُهُمْ فَفِيْ رَحْمَةِ اللّٰهِ ؕ هُمْ فِيْهَا خٰلِدُوْنَ ﴿۱۰۷﴾

3:107

And as for those whose honourable faces have become bright—expressing joy—then encompassed by the mercy, kindness, and relief from Allah; they, in it, will be firmly established—abiding forever.

Notes:

ابْيَضَّتْ

Root letters are connected to becoming white

Are connected to face expressing joy, cheerfulness, and one's character becoming clear

وُجُوْهُهُمْ

Root letters are connected to face

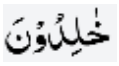
Are connected to honour, esteem, repute and rank

رَحْمَةِ

Root letters are connected to having mercy, compassion, sparing, letting off, saving, kindness, tenderness and pity

Mercy – withholds punishment from those who deserve it

Kindness – a broader act of granting blessings



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to be everlasting, being immortal and abiding forever

تِلْكَ اٰيٰتُ اللّٰهِ نَتْلُوْهَا عَلَيْكَ بِالْحَقِّ ۗ وَمَا اللّٰهُ يُرِيْدُ ظُلْمًا لِّلْعٰلَمِيْنَ ﴿١٠٨﴾

3:108

Those are the miraculous and evident signs of Allah. We recite them to you according to the truth—correct, appropriate, and purposeful. And never does Allah intend transgression, unfairness, or oppression for all generations [of humans and jinn] endowed with higher-level recognition, knowledge, and understanding—[marked for accountability].

Notes:

اٰيٰتُ

Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof

نَتْلُوْهُ

Root letters are connected to following, reading, reciting, relating and rehearsing

بِالْحَقِّ

Root letters are connected to what is right, correct, true, proper, suitable, fitting and purposeful

True - matches reality

Correct - accurate and right

Appropriate - properly fitting

Purposeful - meaningful and intentional

وَمَا اللّٰهُ يُرِيْدُ

Structure gives a strong negation and refutation meaning

يُرِيْدُ

Root letters are connected to wanting, having in mind, desiring, intending, aiming at and purpose

ظُلْمًا

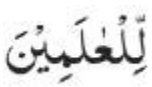
Root letters are connected to injustice, inequity, unfairness, oppression, tyranny, and wrong

Are connected to be unjust, act tyrannically, do wrong, do evil, harm, oppress and transgress proper limits

Transgression - going beyond proper limits, boundaries, or what is permitted

Unfairness - treating someone inequitably or without due fairness

Oppression - exercising unjust power or authority in a way that burdens, suppresses, subjugates, or wrongfully harms others



Root letters are connected to generation

Are connected to inquiring, asking and querying

Are connected to something which is marked e.g. landmark – Humans and Jinn are marked for accountability e.g. Quran 55:31

Are connected to knowledge, understanding, recognition, perception, discernment and learning – Humans and Jinn possess higher level of knowledge, intelligence and understanding in respect to divine guidance and accountability and are therefore marked for accountability unlike other creatures

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

Same term used in Quran 25:1 which mentions the Prophet Muhammad, peace and blessings be upon him, being sent as a warner. He was sent only to those marked for accountability as a warner and not the entire creation

وَلِلّٰهِ مَا فِي السَّمٰوٰتِ وَمَا فِي الْاَرْضِ ۭ وَاِلَى اللّٰهِ تُرْجَعُ الْاُمُوْرُ ۝١٠٩

3:109

And to Allah [alone], innately and eternally, belongs whatever is in the lofty skies and whatever is in the Earth. And to Allah [alone] all matters are returned and presented for critical examination.

Notes:

لِلّٰهِ مَا فِي السَّمٰوٰتِ وَمَا فِي الْاَرْضِ

Structure indicates exclusivity and totality

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

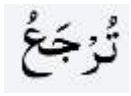
السَّمٰوٰتِ

Root letters are connected to sky, heaven and ceiling

Are connected to raised, elevated, high, lofty and tall

وَاِلَى اللّٰهِ تُرْجَعُ الْاُمُوْرُ

Structure creates exclusivity and totality meaning



Root letters are connected to coming back, returning, resorting or reverting to a former place/state/quality

Are connected to present oneself and examine critically



Root letters are connected to a command, thing, affair, business and a matter

كُنْتُمْ خَيْرَ اُمَّةٍ اُخْرِجَتْ لِلنَّاسِ تَاْمُرُوْنَ بِالْمَعْرُوْفِ وَتَنْهَوْنَ
عَنِ الْمُنْكَرِ وَتُؤْمِنُوْنَ بِاللّٰهِ ؕ وَلَوْ اٰمَنَ اَهْلُ الْكِتٰبِ لَكَانَ خَيْرًا
لَّهُمْ ؕ مِنْهُمُ الْمُؤْمِنُوْنَ وَاَكْثَرُهُمُ الْفٰسِقُوْنَ ﴿۱۱۰﴾

3:110

You all exist as the most preferred and best community produced and brought forth for the benefit of all people—an example of right guidance: instructing to fair, kind, and sincere conduct which is widely recognised by common sense and reason; and forbidding what is considered inappropriate, indecent, and reprehensible by sound intellects. Therefore, you believe in Allah, as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind. And had those [the scholars] possessing and familiar with the divine code of conduct [the Torah and Gospel[1]] believed, it would have certainly been established as preferred and better for their well-being. From amongst them are those who are firmly established in, and persist in, sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith. Whereas, most of them are firmly established in, and persist in, openly transgressing the limits of goodness.

Notes:

This verse refers specifically to those who possessed and understood the previous divine scriptures—the scholars—not the ordinary followers, who were not allowed direct access to them. This is evident from history and is supported by the Quran, for example, Quran 2:78

1 - The divine code of conduct is mentioned in the singular form to emphasise the shared and unified divine guidance originally granted through the Torah and affirmed by the Gospel

كُنْتُمْ and لَكَانَ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

خَيْرَ

A superlative

Root letters are connected to good, virtuous and generous

Are connected to choosing and preferring

Are connected to something better and superior

Are connected to a good state and well-being

أُمَّةٍ

Root letters are connected to an exemplar, example, leading the way, leading by example and a person who is imitated

Are connected to a group of people from one religion, a nation, a people and race

أُخْرِجَتْ

Root letters are connected to bringing out, pulling out and producing

تَأْمُرُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to ordering, commanding, instructing, charging and entrusting

بِالْمَعْرُوْفِ

Root letters are connected to being well known, universally accepted, generally recognised by reason and easily recognised

Are connected to which is good, fitting, suitable, courteous, fair, kind, sincere advice and honest advice

Fair - just and impartial

Kind - gentle and compassionate

Sincere - genuine and honest in intention

Common sense - practical sound judgement

Reason - thoughtful understanding and rational reflection

تَنْهَوْنَ

Root letters are connected to forbidding, prohibiting, proscribing, restraining, preventing and hindering

الْمُنْكَرِ

Root letters are connected to not recognised, unacknowledged, disowned, reprehensible, shocking, detestable, atrocity, objectionable, disallowed by sound intellects, unseemly, inappropriate, indecent and unknown

Inappropriate - not suitable, proper, or acceptable for the situation or conduct concerned

Indecent - lacking proper standards of modesty, propriety, or moral conduct

Reprehensible - deserving strong disapproval or condemnation because of its wrong or objectionable nature

Sound intellects - minds possessing sound judgement, reason, discernment, and freedom from serious corruption or distortion in thinking

تُؤْمِنُوْنَ and اٰمَنَ

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

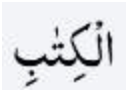
Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

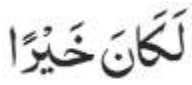
اَهْلُ

Root letters are connected to be on familiar terms with something

Are connected to possessors, adherents and followers



Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document



Structure indicates an established state



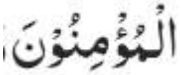
A comparative

Root letters are connected to good, virtuous and generous

Are connected to choosing and preferring

Are connected to something better and superior

Are connected to a good state and well-being



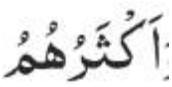
Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit



A superlative

Root letters are connected to numerous, to be more and to increase



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to straying from right course, deviating, sinful, immoral and transgressing the limits of the law

Are connected to emerging outwardly and openly

لَنْ يَّضُرُّوْكُمْ اِلَّآ اَذًى ؕ وَاِنْ يُّقَاتِلُوْكُمْ يُوَلُّوْكُمُ الْاَدْبَارَ ثُمَّ لَا يُنْصَرُوْنَ ﴿۱۱۱﴾

3:111

They will not harass, harm, or coerce you all, except for some pain and distress. And if they fight you—they will turn their backs to you, fleeing; thereafter, they will not be protected, supported, or granted success.

Notes:

يَّضُرُّوْكُمْ

Root letters are connected to harm, impair, damage, hurt and injure

Are connected to forcing, compelling, coercing and obliging

Harass - to trouble, intimidate, or repeatedly subject someone to unwanted and distressing treatment

Harm - to cause injury, damage, or suffering, whether physical, emotional, or otherwise

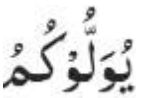
Coerce - to compel or pressure someone to act against their will through force, threats, or intimidation

اَذًى

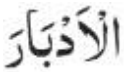
Root letters are connected to harm, offense, insult, annoying, troublesome, damage, pain and injury



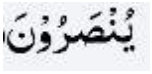
Root letters are connected to combat, fighting, battle and opposing



Root letters are connected to turning to, turning away, turning back and fleeing



Root letters are connected to backside, posteriors, rear part, back, last part, and tail



Root letters are connected to helping, assisting, victory and success

Are connected to protecting and defending

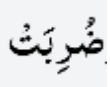
ضُرِبَتْ عَلَيْهِمُ الذِّلَّةُ اَيْنَ مَا ثُقِفُوْٓا اِلَّا بِحَبْلٍ مِّنَ اللّٰهِ وَحَبْلٍ
مِّنَ النَّاسِ وَبَآءُوْ بِغَضَبٍ مِّنَ اللّٰهِ وَضُرِبَتْ عَلَيْهِمُ الْمَسْكَنَةُ ؕ
ذٰلِكَ بِاَنَّهُمْ كَانُوْا يَكْفُرُوْنَ بِاٰيٰتِ اللّٰهِ وَيَقْتُلُوْنَ الْاَنْۢبِيَآءَ بِغَيْرِ
حَقٍّ ؕ ذٰلِكَ بِمَا عَصَوْا وَّكَانُوْا يَعْتَدُوْنَ ﴿۱۱۲﴾

3:112

Weakness, humiliation, and subjugation have been imposed upon them no matter where they have been found, except through either a covenant from Allah or a covenant from people—assuring security. And they have arrogantly drawn upon themselves wrath from Allah; therefore, spiritual and material poverty have been imposed upon them—an evil state. That is because they persist in neglecting, dissociating from, and denying the miraculous and evident signs of Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them]; and persist in opposing, fighting, and murdering the honoured Prophets[1]—who conveyed divine knowledge from Allah—without any justification [aiming to weaken the strength of divine guidance]. That is due to their having stubbornly abandoned obedience [to Allah], and persisting in exceeding proper bounds through hostility and aggression.

Notes:

1 - The Arabic employs the present tense rhetorically to bring the scene into immediate view and, where applicable, to convey habitual or repeated action



Root letters are connected to striking, hitting and imposing

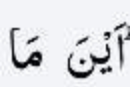


Root letters are connected to being lowly, submissive, subdued, conquered, despised, disgraced, humiliated and weak

Subjugation - external control

Weakness - internal incapacity

Humiliation - loss of dignity and status



Structure indicates time, place, state and shows emphasis



Root letters are connected to finding and meeting

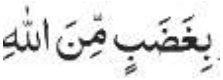


Root letters are connected to rope, cable, cord, string, obligation, assurance of security, protection and covenant



Root letters are connected to taking upon oneself, bearing the burden, drawing upon oneself and brining in

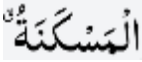
Are connected to being proud and arrogant



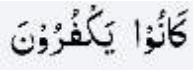
Indicates source and origin, not possession; “wrath from Allah” emphasizes a manifestation sent upon them rather than defining wrath as an abstract attribute



Root letters are connected to being angry, irritated, furious and wrath



Root letters are connected to abasement, poverty, destitution, evil state/condition, poverty of the mind, and lowliness



Structure indicates repetitive action

كَانُوْا

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

يَكْفُرُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

بِاٰيٰتِ

Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof

يَقْتُلُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to killing and murdering

Are connected to fighting, battling, opposing, and combat

Are connected to weakening the strength or intensity of something

الْاَنْۢبِيَآءَ

Root letters are connected to informing, notifying, advising telling and announcing

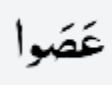
Are connected to being high in rank, raised, elevated and prominent

Are connected to someone who receives unseen knowledge from Allah and conveys them to people



Root letters are connected to what is right, correct, proper, suitable, fitting and purposeful

Are connected to being deserving, to be due and to have a claim

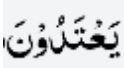


Root letters are connected to disobeying, defying, renouncing obedience and rebelling

Are connected to becoming difficult and stubborn



Structure indicates repetitive action



Root letters are connected to hostility, violating, aggression, exceeding proper bounds and transgressing

Are connected to treating like an enemy

Hostility - inner attitude of enmity

Aggression - outward expression through harmful action

لَيْسُوْا سَوَآءً ؕ مِنْ اَهْلِ الْكِتٰبِ اُمَّةٌ قَآئِمَةٌ يَّتْلُوْنَ اٰيٰتِ اللّٰهِ اٰنَآءَ
الَّيْلِ وَهُمْ يَسْجُدُوْنَ ﴿۱۱۳﴾

3:113

[Yet] they are not all the same—from amongst those [the scholars] possessing and familiar with the divine code of conduct [the Torah and Gospel[1]] is a community—an example of right guidance—firmly established in, and persisting in, sincerely and correctly managing affairs: reciting, studying, and following the miraculous and evident signs of Allah [divine revelation] throughout the night in a state of prostrating in submission and worship.

Notes:

This verse refers specifically to those who possessed and understood the previous divine scriptures—the scholars—not the ordinary followers, who were not allowed direct access to them. This is evident from history and is supported by the Quran, for example, Quran 2:78

1 - The divine code of conduct is mentioned in the singular form to emphasise the shared and unified divine guidance originally granted through the Torah and affirmed by the Gospel

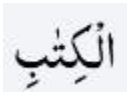
سَوَآءً

Root letters are connected to equal, sameness, and all the same



Root letters are connected to be on familiar terms with something

Are connected to possessors, adherents and followers

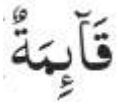


Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document



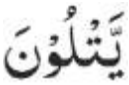
Root letters are connected to an exemplar, example, leading the way, leading by example and a person who is imitated

Are connected to a group of people from one religion, a nation, a people and race



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to standing up, rising, standing still, rest, managing affairs, being sincere, and being honest



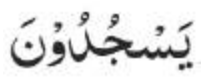
Root letters are connected to following, reading, reciting, relating and rehearsing



Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof



Root letters are connected to time period



Root letters are connected to bowing down, prostrating, bending down

Are connected to becoming humble, submissive and worship

يُؤْمِنُوْنَ بِاللّٰهِ وَالْيَوْمِ الْاٰخِرِ وَيَاْمُرُوْنَ بِالْمَعْرُوْفِ وَيَنْهَوْنَ عَنِ
الْمُنْكَرِ وَيُسَارِعُوْنَ فِي الْخَيْرٰتِ ؕ وَاُولٰٓئِكَ مِنَ الصّٰلِحِيْنَ ﴿۱۱۴﴾

3:114

They believe in Allah and the Last Momentous Day, as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith: instructing to fair, kind, and sincere conduct which is widely recognised by common sense and reason; and forbidding what is considered inappropriate, indecent, and reprehensible by sound intellects; and striving hard with haste in good qualities and actions. And those are from amongst the ones who are firmly established in, and persist in, righteous conduct—thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind.

Notes:

يُؤْمِنُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

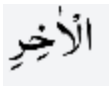
Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit



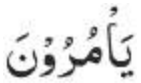
Root letters are connected to days, age, era and time

Are connected to momentous and important days

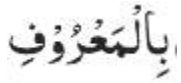


Root letters are connected to something that is last, ultimate, end, utmost and extreme

The Last Momentous Day refers to the Day of Judgement as eternity begins after that



Root letters are connected to ordering, commanding, instructing, charging and entrusting



Root letters are connected to being well known, universally accepted, generally recognised by reason and easily recognised

Are connected to which is good, fitting, suitable, courteous, fair, kind, sincere advice and honest advice

Fair - just and impartial

Kind - gentle and compassionate

Sincere - genuine and honest in intention

Common sense - practical sound judgement

Reason - thoughtful understanding and rational reflection

يَنْهَوْنَ

Root letters are connected to forbidding, prohibiting, proscribing, restraining, preventing and hindering

الْمُنْكَرِ

Root letters are connected to not recognised, unacknowledged, disowned, reprehensible, shocking, detestable, atrocity, objectionable, disallowed by sound intellects, unseemly, inappropriate, indecent and unknown

Inappropriate - not suitable, proper, or acceptable for the situation or conduct concerned

Indecent - lacking proper standards of modesty, propriety, or moral conduct

Reprehensible - deserving strong disapproval or condemnation because of its wrong or objectionable nature

Sound intellects - minds possessing sound judgement, reason, discernment, and freedom from serious corruption or distortion in thinking

يُسَارِعُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to rushing, running, hurrying, hastening, vying in speed, hastening towards, striving hard, endeavoring and hastening

الْخَيْرٰتِ

Root letters are connected to good, virtuous and generous

Are connected to a good state and well-being

Are connected to good qualities and actions

الصّٰلِحِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being good, just, being in order, being righteous and pious and to do appropriate things

وَمَا يَفْعَلُوْا مِنْ خَيْرٍ فَلَنْ يُّكْفَرُوْهُ ۗ وَاللّٰهُ عَلِيْمٌۢ بِالْمُتَّقِيْنَ ﴿١١٥﴾

3:115

And whatever they do from any good—leading to well-being—they will never be neglected: dissociated from or denied it. And Allah is innately and eternally the One who completely knows and fully understands those who are firmly established in, and persist in, devoutly fulfilling their duties—thereby protecting themselves from harm and arranging all their matters correctly.

Notes:



Root letters are connected to doing an action, to influence, activity and accomplishing a task



Root letters are connected to good, virtuous and generous

Are connected to a good state and well-being

Are connected to good qualities and actions

يُكۡفَرُوهُ

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

وَٱللَّهُ عَلِيمُۢ بِٱلۡمُتَّقِينَ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

عَلِيمُۢ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

بِٱلۡمُتَّقِينَ

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious

إِنَّ الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا لَن تُغْنِيَ عَنْهُمْ أَمْوَالُهُمْ وَلَا أَوْلَادُهُم مِّنَ اللَّهِ
شَيْئًا ۖ وَأُولَٰئِكَ أَصْحَابُ النَّارِ ۖ هُمْ فِيهَا خَالِدُونَ ﴿١١٦﴾

3:116

Certainly, those who have neglected, dissociated from, and denied their obligations to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them]—never will their possessions, nor will their offspring, help, suffice, or protect them against anything from Allah—nor will they make them independent of Him—at all. And those are the inmates of the Fire; they, in it, will be firmly established—abiding forever.

Notes:

كَفَرُوا

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

تُغْنِيَ

Root letters are connected to making free from want, make rich, suffice, be of use, be of help, avail, benefit, help, profit, spare, save, protect and guard

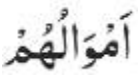
Are connected to self-sufficient, independent, rich and free of need

Help - provide assistance or benefit

Suffice - be enough to meet or satisfy a need; avail against something

Protect - shield or save from harm, punishment, or an adverse consequence

Independent - not needing, relying upon, or being dependent on someone or something else



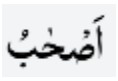
Root letters are connected to property, assets, goods, wealth, and possessions



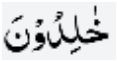
Root letters are connected to a child, son, offspring and descendant



Root letters are connected to a thing, matter or affair



Root letters are connected to companionship, association, closely associated, inmates and occupants



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to be everlasting, being immortal and abiding forever

مَثَلُ مَا يُنْفِقُوْنَ فِيْ هٰذِهِ الْحَيٰوةِ الدُّنْيَا كَمَثَلِ رِيْحٍ فِيْهَا صِرٌّ
اَصَابَتْ حَرْثَ قَوْمٍ ظَلَمُوْٓا اَنْفُسَهُمْ فَاَهْلَكَتْهُ ؕ وَمَا ظَلَمَهُمُ اللّٰهُ
وَلٰكِنْ اَنْفُسَهُمْ يَظْلِمُوْنَ ﴿۱۱۷﴾

3:117

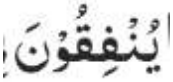
The example of the condition of whatever they use [of their possessions] in this worldly life—the lowest state of living—is like the state of a wind containing intense cold, which has intentionally and unavoidably struck the agriculture of a people who have committed injustice to and amongst themselves—then it destroyed and ruined it. And never was Allah unjust to them; however, it is to and amongst themselves they are committing injustice—transgressing proper limits.

Notes:

مَثَلُ

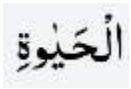
Root letters are connected to an example, to resemble, to copy and compare

Are connected to similar case, simile, parable, precedent, state and condition

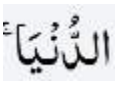


Root letters are connected to disposing of something quickly

Are connected to exhausting, using up and spending



Root letters are connected to living, experiencing and witnessing



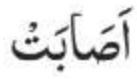
A superlative

Root letters are connected to being low and near

Are connected to world, life in this world, worldly existence, temporal things or possessions and earthly things and concerns



Root letters are connected intense cold, cold, fire, and hoar frost



Root letters are connected to hitting, injuring, reaching, befalling, hitting the mark, to be afflicted and hitting the intended target

حَرْثَ

Root letters are connected to tillage, land for agriculture and cultivated land

Are connected to earning wealth, labouring for worldly goods and acquisition

قَوْمٍ

Root letters are connected to people, crowd, tribe and nation

ظَلَمُوٓا , ظَلَمَهُمْ and يَظْلِمُونَ

Root letters are connected to be unjust, act tyrannically, do wrong, do evil, harm, oppress and transgress proper limits

اَنْفُسَهُمْ

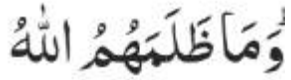
Root letters are connected to soul, person, mind, human being and an individual

فَاَهْلَكْتُهُ

Root letters are connected to ruin, danger, perdition, destruction and total loss

Destruction - collapse or perishing

Ruin - lasting loss and damage



Structure gives a strong negation and refutation meaning

يٰٓاَيُّهَا الَّذِيْنَ اٰمَنُوْا لَا تَتَّخِذُوْا بِطَانَةً مِّنْ دُوْنِكُمْ لَا يَاْلُوْنَكُمْ خَبَالًا ؕ
وَدُّوْا مَا عَنِتُّمْ ۚ قَدْ بَدَتِ الْبَغْضَآءُ مِنْ اَفْوَاهِهِمْ ۖۚ وَمَا تُخْفِيْ
صُدُوْرُهُمْ اَكْبَرُ ؕ قَدْ بَيَّنَّا لَكُمُ الْاٰيٰتِ اِنْ كُنْتُمْ تَعْقِلُوْنَ ﴿۱۱۸﴾

3:118

Those who have claimed to believe! Do not take or adhere to [even] a single confidant—sharing the inward state of your affairs with—other than the one from amongst yourselves: they do not neglect, refrain, or desist from causing you affliction, corruption, and destruction. They have loved and wanted that you suffer hardship and distress. Certainly, extreme hatred has become manifest through their mouths, but what their chests disguise, conceal, and keep secret is greater, more grievous, and more intolerable. Certainly, We have clearly explained, for your benefit, the miraculous and evident signs [verses of the Quran], if you are, in fact, persisting in using your faculties correctly—applying reason and common sense—in order to understand.

Notes:

اٰمَنُوْا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

تَتَّخِذُوا

Root letters are connected to taking firmly, accepting, gripping, seizing, occupying, adhering, adopting, making one's own, and making use

بِطَانَةً

Singular

Root letters are connected to inner side, inner lining of a garment, entourage, intimate friend, close friend knowing the inward state of one's affairs, a confidential friend, and a person who is consulted in respect to one's affairs

يَأْلُونَكُمْ

Root letters are connected to fail to do, neglect, desist, refrain, quit, cease, fall short, and remiss

Neglect - fail to give something the attention, care, or consideration it requires

Refrain - hold oneself back from doing something

Desist - stop or cease an action already being undertaken

خَبَالًا

Root letters are connected to corruptness, unsoundness, disordered state, hindrance, state of perdition, state of destruction, fatigue, weariness, distress, affliction, embarrassment, trouble and difficulty

Affliction - causing distress, suffering, or serious harm

Corruption - causing something to become impaired, disordered, spoiled, or unsound

Destruction - causing severe damage or ruin

وَدُّوا

Root letters are connected to loving, liking, wishing and wanting

Love - inward feeling

Want - outward intention

عَنِتُّمْ

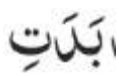
Root letters are connected to falling on evil days, coming to grief, meeting with hardship, being in distress, and suffering adversity

Hardship - difficult, burdensome, or adverse circumstances that cause suffering or make life difficult

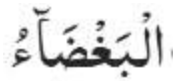
Distress - intense emotional or mental suffering, anguish, or anxiety caused by a troubling situation

قَدْ

Used for emphasis with past tense action i.e. certainly



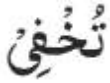
Root letters are connected to appearing, showing, becoming evident, clear, plain, manifest, and coming to light



Root letters are connected to hatred, hate, violent hatred, and vehement hatred

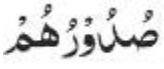


Root letters are connected to mouth

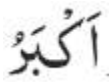


Root letters are connected to hiding, concealing, keeping secret

Are connected to disguising



Root letters are connected to chest, breast, bust, bosom and heart



A comparative

Root letters are connected to becoming too great, too distressing and painful, too burdensome, becoming too oppressive, to appear intolerable and insurmountable

Are connected to big, large and great

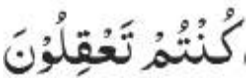


Root letters are connected to making clear, showing, explaining, differentiating and distinguishing

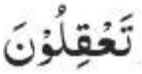


First one is common instead of proper i.e. any

Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof



Structure indicates repetitive action



Root letters are connected to being reasonable, using intelligence, using common sense, using one’s senses and understanding

Reason - structured, analytical thinking

Common sense - intuitive, practical application

هَآ أَنتُمْ أُولَآءِ تُحِبُّونَهُمْ وَلَا يُحِبُّونَكُمْ وَتُؤْمِنُونَ بِالْكِتَٰبِ كُلِّهِۦ ۖ
وَإِذَا لَقُوكُمْ قَالُوٓا۟ ءَامَنَّا ۖ وَإِذَا خَلَوْا۟ عَضُّوا۟ عَلَيْكُمُ ٱلْأَنَامِلَ مِنَ
ٱلْغَيْظِ ۚ قُلْ مُوتُوا۟ بِغَيْظِكُمْ ۗ إِنَّ ٱللَّهَ عَلِيمٌۢ بِذَاتِ ٱلصُّدُورِ ﴿١١٩﴾

3:119

There you all are—these very people—respecting, preferring, and loving them; whereas, they do not respect, prefer, or love you, even though you believe in the divine code of conduct[1]—all of it, as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind. And whenever they encounter you, they declare, "We have believed." Whereas, whenever they withdraw, they bite their fingertips out of rage at you—having no power to exercise it. Declare, "Be deprived and die through your rage." Certainly, Allah is innately and eternally the One who completely knows and fully understands the nature and essence of the chests.

Notes:

1 – This could be referring to the Quran, which the people of the book selectively agreed with while denying other parts

تُحِبُّونَهُمْ and يُحِبُّونَكُمْ

Root letters are connected to desiring, preferring, liking

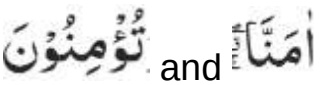
Are connected to wishing, wanting and loving

Are connected to esteeming something or someone

Respect - elevating their status and importance

Prefer - giving them practical priority and choosing them over others

Love - deep emotional attachment and devotion

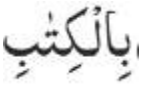
 and

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

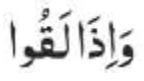
Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit



Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document



Structure indicates repetitive action

قَالُوٓا

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

خَلَوْا

Root letters are connected to withdraw to take counsel, to seclude, be alone, withdraw, devote oneself and give one’s attention

عَضُّوا

Root letters are connected to grabbing with the teeth, biting, and holding on

الْأَنَامِلَ

Root letters are connected to fingertips

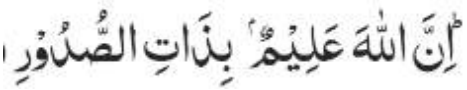
الْغَيْظِ and اِبِغَيْظِكُمْ

Root letters are connected to wrath, anger, fury, rage, vehement anger, anger affecting the one who has no power to exercise it

مُوتُوا

Root letters are connected to dying, perishing, losing life and subsiding

Are connected to being poor, base or abject



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications



Root letters are connected to being, essence, nature, self, and person

Nature - what something is like by its inherent character

Essence - what something fundamentally is at its deepest level



Root letters are connected to chest, breast, bust, bosom and heart

إِنْ تَمْسَسْكُمْ حَسَنَةٌ تَسُؤْهُمْ وَإِنْ تُصِبْكُمْ سَيِّئَةٌ يَفْرَحُوا بِهَا ۖ
وَإِنْ تَصْبِرُوا وَتَتَّقُوا لَا يَضُرُّكُمْ كَيْدُهُمْ شَيْئًا ۗ إِنَّ اللَّهَ بِمَا
يَعْمَلُونَ مُحِيطٌ ﴿١٢٠﴾

3:120

If any good even slightly touches you all, it grieves them. Whereas, if any evil strikes you, they exult over it—behaving insolently. But if you demonstrate patience, perseverance [in obedience], and self-restraint [from complaint]; and devoutly fulfil your duties—thereby protecting yourselves from harm and arranging all your matters correctly—their cunning and deceptive strategy will not harass, harm, or coerce you at all. Certainly, Allah is innately and eternally the One who, concerning whatever they do, completely encompasses it in authority and control, and in knowledge and understanding.

Notes:

تَمْسَسْكُمْ

Root letters are connected to touching, touching slightly, to handle, to befall, to be struck

حَسَنَةٌ

Common

Root letters are connected to good deed, a good thing, good, good work, and a good benefit

تَسُؤْهُمْ

Root letters are connected to grieve, sadden, hurt, vex, offend, torment, trouble and pain

تُصِبْكُمْ

Root letters are connected to hitting, injuring, reaching, befalling, hitting the mark, to be afflicted and hitting the intended target

سَيِّئَةٌ

Common

Root letters are connected to sin, offense, evil and evilness of state or condition

يَّفْرَحُوْا

Root letters are connected to being glad, happy, delighted, exultant, behaving insolently, and rejoicing above measure

تَصْبِرُوْا

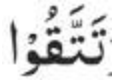
Root letters are connected to binding and shackling

Are connected to being patient, persevering, forbearing, enduring, refraining, abstaining, desisting and self-control

Patience - enduring difficulty without panic or loss of steadiness

Perseverance - continuing steadily in obedience over time without giving up

Self-restraining [from complaint] - controlling oneself from expressing objection or dissatisfaction



Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious



Root letters are connected to harm, impair, damage, hurt and injure

Are connected to forcing, compelling, coercing and obliging

Harass - to trouble, intimidate, or repeatedly subject someone to unwanted and distressing treatment

Harm - to cause injury, damage, or suffering, whether physical, emotional, or otherwise

Coerce - to compel or pressure someone to act against their will through force, threats, or intimidation

كَيْدُهُمْ

Root letters are connected to ruse, artifice, stratagem, slyness, cunning, deception, artful plot, trick, snare, fraud, and plan

Cunning - the craftiness and cleverness of the strategy

Deceptive - its misleading and dishonest character

شَيْـًٔا

Root letters are connected to a thing, matter or affair

إِنَّ اللَّهَ بِمَا يَعْمَلُونَ مُحِيطٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

يَعْمَلُونَ

Root letters are connected to working, doing and acting

مُحِيطٌ

Noun indicating an established and persistent state

Root letters are connected to encompassing, enclosing and surrounding

Are connected to know thoroughly, understand fully, within grasp and control

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

Knowing - awareness of information

Understanding - grasping its meaning, significance, and connections

وَاِذْ غَدَوْتَ مِنْ اَهْلِكَ تُبَوِّئُ الْمُؤْمِنِيْنَ مَقَاعِدَ لِلْقِتَالِ ۗ وَاللّٰهُ سَمِيْعٌ عَلِيْمٌ ۙ﴿۱۲۱﴾

3:121

And [reflect on] when you departed early in the morning from your family—positioning those who are firmly established in, and persist in, sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind, in their stations for fighting—weakening the strength [of the enemy]. And Allah is innately and eternally the One whose hearing encompasses all things, the One who completely knows and fully understands everything.

Notes:

غَدَوْتَ

Root letters are connected to going or coming in the early morning

اَهْلِكَ

Root letters are connected to family, native, resident, indigenous, inhabitant and home

تُبَوِّئُ

Root letters are connected to providing accommodation, settling down, taking a place, locating somebody, and preparing a dwelling

الْمُؤْمِنِينَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

مَقَاعِدَ

Noun indicating place

Root letters are connected to space of siting, sat, station and encampment

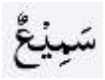
لِلْقِتَالِ

Root letters are connected to combat, fighting, battle and opposing

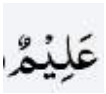
Are connected to weakening the strength or intensity of something

وَاللَّهُ سَمِيعٌ عَلِيمٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



Root letters are connected to hearing, listening and paying attention



Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

إِذْ هَمَّتْ طَّآئِفَتٰنِ مِنْكُمْ اَنْ تَفْشَلَا ۙ وَاللّٰهُ وَلِيُّهُمَا ؕ وَعَلَى اللّٰهِ
فَلْيَتَوَكَّلِ الْمُؤْمِنُوْنَ ﴿۱۲۲﴾

3:122

When two specific factions from amongst you all were filled with anxiety and on the verge of losing courage—yet Allah is the One whose enduring practice is firmly established in, and persists in, being a powerful, protecting Friend who takes responsibility for both of them. And upon Allah [alone] must those who are firmly established in, and persist in, sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, trust and rely—thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind.

Notes:

هَمَّتْ

Root letters are connected to filling with anxiety, distress, grieve, concern, be on someone's mind, to worry, to consider, thinking of doing something, be on the point of doing something and desiring to do a thing

طَّآئِفَتٰنِ

Root letters are connected to a specific group, people, faction, party, and company

تَفْشَلَا

Root letters are connected to losing courage, becoming cowardly, becoming fainthearted, losing heart, despairing, and being timorous

وَعَلَى اللّٰهِ فَلْيَتَوَكَّلِ الْمُؤْمِنُوْنَ

Structure shows exclusivity

فَلْيَتَوَكَّلِ

Root letters are connected to rely, depend, place one's confidence, confide one's affairs to, and trust entirely in

Trust - to have inward confidence in someone's reliability, care, wisdom, or ability to act rightly

Rely - to practically depend upon someone for support, help, protection, or the fulfilment of what is needed

الْمُؤْمِنُوْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

وَلَقَدْ نَصَرَكُمُ اللّٰهُ بِبَدْرٍ وَّاَنْتُمْ اَذِلَّةٌ ۚ فَاتَّقُوا اللّٰهَ لَعَلَّكُمْ تَشْكُرُوْنَ ﴿١٢٣﴾

3:123

And there is absolutely no doubt that Allah had granted you all protection, support, and victory specifically at Badr while you were in a state of weakness. Therefore, devoutly fulfil your duties to Allah so that you may show gratitude [by using your blessings in His obedience]—thereby protecting yourselves from harm and arranging all your matters correctly.

Notes:

لَقَدْ

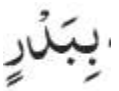
لَ added for emphasis

قَدْ Used for emphasis with past tense action i.e. certainly

نَصَرَكُمُ

Root letters are connected to help, assistance, support and victory

Are connected to protecting and defending



Structure shows specific and restricted location i.e. specifically



Structure shows few in number

Root letters are connected to lowly, paltry, and weak

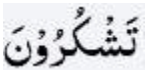


Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious



Root letters are connected to being thankful, grateful, and praising

Are connected to showing gratitude with the heart, tongue and limbs

اِذْ تَقُوْلُ لِلْمُؤْمِنِيْنَ اَلَنْ يَّكْفِيَكُمْ اَنْ يُّمِدَّكُمْ رَبُّكُمْ بِثَلٰثَةِ اٰلٰفٍ مِّنَ الْمَلٰٓئِكَةِ مُنْزَلِيْنَ ﴿١٢٤﴾

3:124

When you declared to those who are firmly established in, and persist in, sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind, "Will it not [in every case[1]] protect and suffice you that your nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority] will reinforce you through three thousand Angels, in a firmly established and persistent state of being sent down?"

Notes:

1 - The clarifier is not mentioned i.e. sufficing in respect to what, thereby indicating sufficiency in every case and situation, and the mode and scope of sufficiency is left open i.e. no noun is used such as against

تَقُوْلُ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

لِلْمُؤْمِنِيْنَ

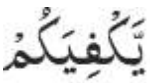
Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

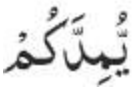
Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

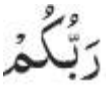
Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit



Root letters are connected to protecting, saving, sparing, sufficing and being enough



Root letters are connected to helping, aiding, assisting, supporting, providing, and reinforcing



Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

مُنْزَلِينَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to sending down, to abide, to stay, to bestow and grant

بَلٰٓى اِنْ تَصْبِرُوْا وَتَتَّقُوْا وَيَاْتُوْكُمْ مِّنْ فَوْرِهِمْ هٰذَا يُمْدِدْكُمْ
رَبُّكُمْ بِخَمْسَةِ اٰلٰفٍ مِّنَ الْمَلٰٓئِكَةِ مُسَوِّمِيْنَ ﴿١٢٥﴾
١/٤

3:125

But certainly, if you all demonstrate patience, perseverance [in obedience], and self-restraint [from complaint]; and devoutly fulfil your duties, thereby protecting yourselves from harm and arranging all your matters correctly, and they advance against you immediately after this—your nurturing Lord—educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority—will reinforce you through five thousand Angels, in a firmly established and persistent state of being marked [for fighting].

Notes:

تَصْبِرُوْا

Root letters are connected to binding and shackling

Are connected to being patient, persevering, forbearing, enduring, refraining, abstaining, desisting and self-control

Patience - enduring difficulty without panic or loss of steadiness

Perseverance - continuing steadily in obedience over time without giving up

Self-restraining [from complaint] - controlling oneself from expressing objection or dissatisfaction

تَتَّقُوْا

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious

يَأْتُوْكُمْ

Root letters are connected to coming, arriving, producing, accomplishing, bringing, advancing and accomplishing

فَوْرِهِمْ

Root letters are connected to at once, right away, instantly, forthwith, without delay, promptly, and immediately after

يُمْدِدْكُمْ

Root letters are connected to helping, aiding, assisting, supporting, providing, and reinforcing

رَبُّكُمْ

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

مُسَوِّمِينَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to marking a horse by branding and providing with a mark

وَمَا جَعَلَهُ اللّٰهُ اِلَّا بُشْرٰى لَكُمْ وَلِتَطْمَئِنَّ قُلُوْبُكُمْ بِهٖ ؕ وَمَا
النَّصْرُ اِلَّا مِنْ عِنْدِ اللّٰهِ الْعَزِيْزِ الْحَكِيْمِ ۙ﴿۱۲۶﴾

3:126

Allah had not appointed and established it except as good news of positive future prospects for you all, and so that your spiritual hearts be filled with assurance by means of it, thereby attaining certainty. And there is no protection, support, and victory except from the presence of Allah—innately and eternally the One who overcomes all things, the Owner of respect and nobility, raising in honour and lowering whoever He wills, the One who rules over and controls everything, determining every affair with perfect wisdom.

Notes:

جَعَلَهُ

Root letters are connected to placing, setting, inserting, making, preparing, fixing and appointing

بُشْرٰى

Root letters are connected to giving and announcing good news, giving good and hopeful prospects for the future

لِتَطْمَئِنَّ

Root letters are connected to fill with confidence, set mind at rest and reassure

Are connected to be certain

قُلُوبُكُمْ

Root letters are connected to the heart

النَّصْرُ

Root letters are connected to help, assistance, support and victory

Are connected to protecting and defending

عِنْدَ

Preposition – with, in the company of, in the presence of, in despite of, together and in the estimation

اللهِ الْعَزِيزِ الْحَكِيمِ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

الْعَزِيْزِ

Root letters are connected to power, respect, honour and nobility,

Are connected to overwhelming, overcoming and dominating

Are connected to raising in esteem, elevating and exalting

Respect - honour, esteem, and recognised worth

Nobility - elevated rank, dignity, and excellence

الْحَكِيْمِ

Root letters are connected to judging, deciding and decreeing

Are connected to wisdom

Are connected to accuracy, perfection and precision

Are connected to governing, ruling, dominating and controlling

Rule - authority and command (who has the right to decide)

Control - execution and outcome (ensuring decisions take effect)

لِيَقْطَعَ طَرَفًا مِّنَ الَّذِيْنَ كَفَرُوْٓا اَوْ يَكْبِتَهُمْ فَيَنْقَلِبُوْا خَاۤىِٕبِيْنَ ﴿١٢٧﴾

3:127

And so that He hinders, suppresses, and cuts down some of those who have neglected, dissociated from, and denied their obligations to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them]; or He abases and breaks them—therefore, they are upset, overthrown, and turn back to a firmly established and persistent state of being frustrated, disappointed, and unsuccessful.

Notes:

لِيَقْطَعَ

Root letters are connected to disjoining, dividing, tearing apart, dividing, hindering, preventing, suppressing, breaking, depriving, and affecting deeply

طَرَفًا

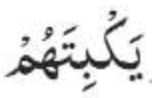
Root letters are connected to a part of, a bit of, some of, and a party

كَفَرُوْٓا

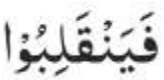
Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty



Root letters are connected to putting down, crushing, stifling, subduing, restraining, repelling, abasing, debasing, averting and destroying

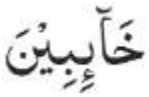


Root letters are connected to be turned, turned around, upturned, be reversed, overturned, overthrown, changed, upset, altered, and transformed

Upset - disturbed or thrown into a state of disorder, defeat, or emotional disturbance

Overthrown - forcibly brought down from a position of power, success, or advantage

Turn back - return or retreat from the course, direction, or position previously pursued



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to failing, being unsuccessful, frustrated, disappointed, suffering a loss, frustrated, and being in a hopeless state

Frustrated - prevented from achieving what one sought or intended

Disappointed - experiencing distress or dissatisfaction because an expected or desired outcome did not occur

Unsuccessful - failing to achieve the intended or desired result

لَيْسَ لَكَ مِنَ الْاَمْرِ شَيْءٌ اَوْ يَتُوْبَ عَلَيْهِمْ اَوْ يُعَذِّبَهُمْ فَاِنَّهُمْ ظٰلِمُوْنَ ﴿١٢٨﴾

3:128

There is nothing under your control concerning the decree: whether He turns to them with pardon and mercy, or He punishes them—as a deterrent—certainly, they are firmly established in, and persist in, being unjust—transgressing proper limits.

Notes:

الْاَمْرِ

Root letters are connected to order, affair, course of action, management, decree, and ordinance

شَيْءٌ

Root letters are connected to a thing, matter or affair

يَتُوْبَ

Root letters are connected to forgiveness, pardon and turning to someone

يُعَذِّبَهُمْ

Root letters are connected to prevent, hinder, deter and obstruct

Are connected to punishment and torture

ظٰلِمُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to be unjust, act tyrannically, do wrong, do evil, harm, oppress and transgress proper limits

وَلِلّٰهِ مَا فِي السَّمٰوٰتِ وَمَا فِي الْاَرْضِ ۭ يَغْفِرُ لِمَنْ يَّشَاۗءُ وَيُعَذِّبُ مَنْ يَّشَاۗءُ ۭ وَاللّٰهُ غَفُوْرٌ رَّحِيْمٌ ﴿١٢٩﴾

3:129

And to Allah [alone], innately and eternally, belongs whatever is in the lofty skies and whatever is in the Earth. He conceals, forgives, and corrects the affairs of whoever He wills; and He punishes—as a deterrent—whoever He wills. And Allah is innately and eternally the One who conceals, forgives, and corrects affairs, the One who especially grants constant mercy, kindness, and relief to those who earn it.

Notes:

لِلّٰهِ مَا فِي السَّمٰوٰتِ وَمَا فِي الْاَرْضِ

Structure indicates exclusivity and totality

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

السَّمٰوٰتِ

Root letters are connected to sky, heaven and ceiling

Are connected to raised, elevated, high, lofty and tall

يَغْفِرُ

Root letters are connected to covering, concealing, veiling and hiding

Are connected to forgiving and pardoning

Are connected to correcting and rectifying affairs

يَّشَآءُ

Root letters are connected to wanting, willing and wishing

يُعَذِّبُ

Root letters are connected to prevent, hinder, deter and obstruct

Are connected to punishment and torture

وَاللّٰهُ غَفُوْرٌ رَّحِيْمٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

غَفُوْرٌ

Root letters are connected to covering, concealing, veiling and hiding

Are connected to forgiving and pardoning

Are connected to correcting and rectifying affairs

رَّحِيمٌ

Root letters are connected to having mercy, compassion, sparing, letting off, saving, kindness, tenderness and pity

Intense structure form has been used

Specific mercy for those who deserve and earn it

Mercy – withholds punishment from those who deserve it

Kindness – a broader act of granting blessings

يٰٓاَيُّهَا الَّذِيْنَ اٰمَنُوْا لَا تَاْكُلُوا الرِّبٰٓوا اَضْعَافًا مُّضٰعَفَةً ۠ وَّاتَّقُوا اللّٰهَ لَعَلَّكُمْ تُفْلِحُوْنَ ۚ ﴿١٣٠﴾

3:130

Those who have claimed to believe! Do not devour and utilise financial interest—seeking excess—compounded many times over. And devoutly fulfil your duties to Allah—thereby protecting yourselves from harm and arranging all your matters correctly, so that you may cultivate spiritual well-being and permanent success.

Notes:

اٰمَنُوْا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

تَاْكُلُوا

Root letters are connected to eating up, swallowing, consuming, devouring, destroying, gnaw and eat away

الرِّبٰوا

Root letters are connected to interest, usurious interest and usury

Are connected to increasing, exceeding and growing

Are connected to surplus and excess

اَضْعَافًا and مُّضٰعَفَةً

Root letters are connected to doubling, multiplying and compounding

وَّاتَّقُوا

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious

تُفْلِحُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to cultivating, growing, nurturing

Are connected to achieving success, safety, security, comfort and enjoyment of ease

Are connected to remaining in a good state

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

وَاتَّقُوا النَّارَ الَّتِيٓ أُعِدَّتْ لِلْكٰفِرِينَ ﴿١٣١﴾

3:131

And protect yourselves from the harm of the Fire by devoutly fulfilling your duties—thereby arranging all your matters correctly—the Fire which is prepared accurately for those who are firmly established in, and persist in, neglecting, dissociating from, and denying their obligations to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them].

Notes:

وَاتَّقُوا

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious

النَّارَ

Root letters are connected to fire

أُعِدَّتْ

Root letters are connected to preparing, getting ready and adjusting

Are connected to counting, numbering, reckoning, enumerating, computing and calculating

لِلْكٰفِرِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent state

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge and ingratitude

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

وَاَطِيْعُوا اللّٰهَ وَالرَّسُوْلَ لَعَلَّكُمْ تُرْحَمُوْنَ ﴿١٣٢﴾

3:132

And submit to and obey Allah and the Messenger—who sincerely conveys a divine code of conduct from Allah—so that you all may be granted mercy, kindness, and relief.

Notes:

اَطِيْعُوا

Root letters are connected to obey, follow, submit, yield and comply

Submitted - the inward attitude and acceptance of authority

Obeyed - the outward response and implementation

الرَّسُوْلَ

Root letters are connected to dispatching, a message and corresponding

Are connected to a messenger, delegate and apostle

Are connected to being friendly, intimate and free of affectation

Are connected to the one who carries by consecutive progressions the relation of the tidings of Him who has sent him

تُرْحَمُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to having mercy, compassion, sparing, letting off, saving, kindness, tenderness and pity

Mercy – withholds punishment from those who deserve it

Kindness – a broader act of granting blessings

وَسَارِعُوٓا۟ إِلَىٰ مَغْفِرَةٍ مِّن رَّبِّكُمْ وَجَنَّةٍ عَرْضُهَا ٱلسَّمَٰوَٰتُ وَٱلْأَرْضُ أُعِدَّتْ لِلْمُتَّقِينَ ﴿١٣٣﴾

3:133

And strive hard with haste—all of you—to concealment, forgiveness, and correction of affairs from your nurturing Lord—educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority, and to a Secure Garden—Paradise—the vastness of which is the lofty skies and the Earth—prepared accurately for those who are firmly established in, and persist in, devoutly fulfilling their duties—thereby protecting themselves from harm and arranging all their matters correctly.

Notes:

وَسَارِعُوٓا۟

Root letters are connected to rushing, running, hurrying, hastening, vying in speed, hastening towards, striving hard, endeavoring and hastening

مَغْفِرَةٍ

Root letters are connected to covering, concealing, veiling and hiding

Are connected to forgiving and pardoning

Are connected to correcting and rectifying affairs



Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

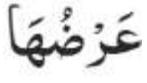
Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended



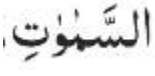
Root letters are connected to Paradise

Are connected to protection, shield and safety

Are connected to a garden and a walled garden

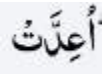


Root letters are connected to breadth, width, extend, and vastness



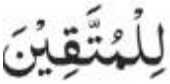
Root letters are connected to sky, heaven and ceiling

Are connected to raised, elevated, high, lofty and tall



Root letters are connected to preparing, getting ready and adjusting

Are connected to counting, numbering, reckoning, enumerating, computing and calculating



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious

الَّذِيْنَ يُنْفِقُوْنَ فِي السَّرَّآءِ وَالضَّرَّآءِ وَالْكٰظِمِيْنَ الْغَيْظَ
وَالْعَافِيْنَ عَنِ النَّاسِ ۭ وَاللّٰهُ يُحِبُّ الْمُحْسِنِيْنَ ۝۱۳۴ۚ

3:134

Those [are the ones] who readily use [their possessions in good ways] during states of happiness and prosperity; and during states of harassment, harm, and loss. And they are firmly established in, and persist in, restraining and suppressing irritation, anger, and rage. And they are firmly established in, and persist in, excusing, overlooking, and forgiving people. And Allah—He prefers and loves those who are firmly established in, and persist in, showing excellent conduct—leading to a good state.

Notes:

يُنْفِقُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to disposing of something quickly

Are connected to exhausting, using up and spending

السَّرَّآءِ

Root letters are connected to happiness, prosperity, joyful state, and pleasantness

الضَّرَّآءِ

Root letters are connected to harm, impair, damage, hurt and injure

Are connected to harassing

Harass - to trouble, intimidate, or repeatedly subject someone to unwanted and distressing treatment

Harm - to cause injury, damage, or suffering, whether physical, emotional, or otherwise

Loss – to cause deprivation and ruin

الْكٰظِمِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters to conceal, suppress, keep silent, restrain, and obstruct

Restraining - controlling and holding back

Suppressing - actively preventing its expression or release

الْغَيْظَ

Root letters are connected to wrath, anger, fury, rage, and vehement anger

Are connected to irritate, exasperate, vex and offend

Irritation - a mild feeling of annoyance or displeasure caused by something bothersome

Anger - a stronger emotional response to perceived wrong, offence, or frustration

Rage - an extreme and intense form of anger that can overwhelm normal restraint



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to wiping out, excusing, obliterating, forgiving, pardoning and overlooking

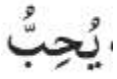
Excuse - suspend blame (refrain from blaming or holding accountable)

Overlook - avoid dwelling on the offence (ignore or pass over something intentionally)

Forgive - internally release it (release resentment or punishment)

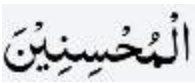


Pronoun “He” is used twice for added emphasis



Root letters are connected to desiring, preferring, liking

Are connected to wishing, wanting and loving



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being excellent, good, nice and lovely

Are connected to suitable, be in a proper state and in a desirable condition

وَالَّذِيْنَ اِذَا فَعَلُوْا فَاحِشَةً اَوْ ظَلَمُوْٓا اَنْفُسَهُمْ ذَكَرُوا اللّٰهَ
فَاسْتَغْفَرُوْا لِذُنُوْبِهِمْ ۫ وَمَنْ يَّغْفِرُ الذُّنُوْبَ اِلَّا اللّٰهُ ۫ وَلَمْ يُصِرُّوْا
عَلٰى مَا فَعَلُوْا وَهُمْ يَعْلَمُوْنَ ﴿١٣٥﴾

3:135

Those [are the ones] who, whenever they influence or engage in obscene behaviour—crossing the limits of modesty and decency—or commit injustice, transgressing proper limits, to and amongst themselves—they remember and become mindful of Allah, then seek concealment, forgiveness, and correction of their transgressions. And who conceals, forgives, or corrects transgressions other than Allah? Yet they are not stubbornly determined to persist in what they have influenced or engaged in doing, while they recognise, know, and understand.

Notes:

اِذَا فَعَلُوْا

Structure indicates habitual action

فَعَلُوْا

Root letters are connected to doing an action, to influence, activity and accomplishing a task

فَاحِشَةً

Root letters are connected to being monstrous, excessive and exorbitant

Are connected to being obscene, vile, disgusting, lewd, indecent, shameless, and exceeding the bounds of goodness

Modesty - inward and personal dimension (humility and reserve in behaviour)

Decency - outward and social dimension (proper and respectable conduct)

ظَلَمُوٓا

Root letters are connected to be unjust, act tyrannically, do wrong, do evil, harm, oppress and transgress proper limits

اَنْفُسَهُمْ

Root letters are connected to soul, person, mind, human being and an individual

ذَكَرُوا

Root letters are connected to remember, bear in mind, think, keep in mind and be mindful of

Remember - conscious recollection and mention

Be mindful - continual awareness influencing conduct

فَاسْتَغْفَرُوْا and يَّغْفِرُ

Root letters are connected to covering, concealing, veiling and hiding

Are connected to forgiving and pardoning

Are connected to correcting and rectifying affairs

لِذُنُوْبِهِمْ and الذُّنُوْبَ

Root letters are connected to offense, sin, crime, misdeed, fault and transgression

يُصِرُّوْا

Root letters are connected to persist, insist, resolve, determined, decided, try to accomplish and be obstinate

يَعْلَمُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

أُولَٰئِكَ جَزَآؤُهُم مَّغْفِرَةٌ مِّن رَّبِّهِمْ وَجَنَّٰتٌ تَجْرِي مِن تَحْتِهَا
الْأَنْهَٰرُ خَٰلِدِينَ فِيهَا ۗ وَنِعْمَ أَجْرُ الْعَٰمِلِينَ ﴿١٣٦﴾

3:136

Those—their recompense is concealment, forgiveness, and correction of affairs from their nurturing Lord—educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority—and secure gardens, with streams and rivers flowing abundantly beneath them, remaining firmly established—abiding forever—in them. And how excellent is the reward of the efforts of those who are firmly established in, and persist in, striving: a pleasant life.

Notes:

جَزَآؤُهُم

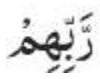
Root letters are connected to repaying, recompense, rewarding and punishing

مَّغْفِرَةٌ

Root letters are connected to covering, concealing, veiling and hiding

Are connected to forgiving and pardoning

Are connected to correcting and rectifying affairs



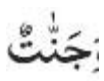
Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

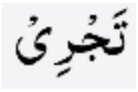
Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

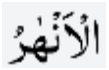


Root letters are connected to protection, shield and safety

Are connected to a garden and a walled garden



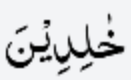
Root letters are connected to flowing, running, rushing, hurrying and passing



Root letters are connected to flowing copiously and gushing forth

Are connected to river and stream

Are connected to abundant, plentiful and much



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to be everlasting, being immortal and abiding forever

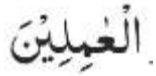


A phrase of praise

Root letters are connected to blessing someone with a life of ease and comfort, a blissful life and peace of mind – e.g. Quran 82:13



Root letters are connected to reward, recompense and wages for work done



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to working, doing, striving to accomplish, and acting

Are connected to working with effort and difficulty, taking pains, exerting effort and laboring

قَدْ خَلَتْ مِنْ قَبْلِكُمْ سُنَنٌ فَسِيرُوا فِي الْأَرْضِ فَانْظُرُوا كَيْفَ كَانَ عَاقِبَةُ الْمُكَذِّبِينَ ﴿١٣٧﴾

3:137

Certainly, the ways of life, precedents, and examples have passed by from before you all. Therefore, journey throughout the land and direct your attention to and consider how the consequence and end exist for those who are firmly established in, and persist in, denying [the truth].

Notes:

قَدْ

Used for emphasis with past tense action i.e. certainly

خَلَتْ

Root letters are connected to passing on, passing by, abandoning and freeing oneself

سُنَنٌ

Root letters are connected to habitual practice, way of life, manner of life, law, ordinance, precedent, example, and law

Ways of life - the established patterns themselves

Precedents - those patterns as established by what occurred previously

Examples - those previous occurrences as illustrative cases from which lessons can be drawn

فَسِيرُوا

Root letters are connected to move on, strike out, move along, travel, journey, and proceed

فَانظُرُوا

Root letters are connected to view, see, observe, pay attention, consider, regard and direct one's attention

كَانَ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

عَاقِبَةُ

Root letters are connected to end, outcome, issue, effect, result, and consequence

الْمُكَذِّبِينَ

Root letters are connected to disproving, refuting, denying, calling a lie, rejecting, discrediting and repelling

هٰذَا بَيَانٌ لِّلنَّاسِ وَهُدًى وَّمَوْعِظَةٌ لِّلْمُتَّقِيْنَ ﴿١٣٨﴾

3:138

This is a clearly evident and eloquent explanation and declaration for the benefit of all people; and a guidance which shows and leads to and along the right way of life; and a spiritual counsel appealing to conscience and a warning of negative consequences, for those who are firmly established in, and persist in, devoutly fulfilling their duties—thereby protecting themselves from harm and arranging all their matters correctly.

Notes:

بَيَانٌ

Root letters are connected to clearness, patency, statement, declaration, announcement, explanation, demonstration, eloquence, argument, plain and manifest

Evident - clarity of what is presented

Eloquent - quality and force of its expression

Explanation - making the matter understood

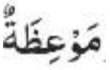
Declaration - openly and authoritatively making it known

هُدًى

Root letters are connected to guidance, direction, showing, being led, being supplied and a way of life

Are connected to gifting and bestowing

Are connected to direction and discovering the right way

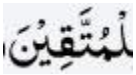


Root letters are connected to preaching, admonishing and warning

Are connected to spiritual counsel, religious advice and a reminder of consequences

Spiritual counsel - inward moral guidance

Warning - outward consequence alert



Noun indicating an established and persistent state

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious

وَلَا تَهِنُوْا وَلَا تَحْزَنُوْا وَاَنْتُمُ الْاَعْلَوْنَ اِنْ كُنْتُمْ مُّؤْمِنِيْنَ ﴿١٣٩﴾

3:139

And do not lose courage or slacken—becoming weak—and do not grieve or mourn over the past, while you all are in a state of superiority, excellence, and nobility—if you are, in fact, firmly established as those who sincerely fulfil the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind.

Notes:

تَهِنُوْا

Root letters are connected to being weak, feeble, lacking strength, being incapable, lose vigor, lose courage, remiss and slacken

Lose courage - reduced inner resolve and morale

Slacken - reduced effort or vigour

Becoming weak - diminished strength and ability to persist

تَحْزَنُوْا

Root letters are connected to being sad, grieving and mourning over something in the past

Grieve - deep internal sorrow

Mourn - outward expression of sorrow

الْأَعْلَوْنَ

A superlative

Root letters are connected to higher, upper, exalted

Are connected to elevated, excellent, eminent, noble and dignified

Superior - The positional layer - represents being higher in status, rank, or dominance—standing victorious over hardship

Excellent - The functional layer - represents being the best in quality, character, virtue, and standard of conduct

Noble - The essential layer - represents possessing high moral worth, dignity, and honour

إِنْ كُنْتُمْ مُؤْمِنِينَ

Structure indicates an established state

كُنْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

مُؤْمِنِينَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

إِنْ يَّمْسَسْكُمْ قَرْحٌ فَقَدْ مَسَّ الْقَوْمَ قَرْحٌ مِّثْلُهٗ ؕ وَتِلْكَ الْاَيَّامُ
نُدَاوِلُهَا بَيْنَ النَّاسِ ۚ وَلِيَعْلَمَ اللّٰهُ الَّذِيْنَ اٰمَنُوْا وَيَتَّخِذَ مِنْكُمْ
شُهَدَآءَ ؕ وَاللّٰهُ لَا يُحِبُّ الظّٰلِمِيْنَ ۙ﴿۱۴۰﴾

3:140

If a painful injury acutely touches and afflicts you all, then certainly, a painful injury similar to it has acutely touched and afflicted the group of people [your enemy]. And those significant days, We cause to alternate between people variations in circumstances so that Allah makes apparent those who have believed, as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind; and so that He singles out and takes from amongst you those killed in His obedience. And Allah—He does not like those who are firmly established in, and persist in, being unjust—transgressing proper limits.

Notes:

يَّمْسَسْكُمْ and مَسَّ

Root letters are connected to touching, touching slightly, to handle, to befall and to be struck

Acutely touched - impacted them deeply

Afflicted - caused them suffering

قَرْحٌ

Root letters are connected to wound, ulcer, sore, hurt and pain

قَدْ

Used for emphasis with past tense action i.e. certainly

مِّثْلُهُ

Root letters are connected to imitate, copy and be equal

الْقَوْمَ

Root letters are connected to people, crowd, tribe, nation, and group of people

الْأَيَّامُ

Root letters are connected to days, age, era and time

Are connected to momentous and important days

نُدَاوِلُهَا

Root letters are connected to rotating someone or something, causing to succeed by turns, follow one another, alternate between, and follow each other

Are connected to undergoing vicissitudes

لِيَعْلَمَ

Root letters are connected to distinguishing, differentiating and making apparent

اٰمَنُوْا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

يَتَّخِذَ

Root letters are connected to take firmly, assume, occupy, single out, make use of, and take

شُهَدَآءَ

Root letters are connected to martyr, killed in action and a witness

وَاللّٰهُ لَا يُحِبُّ

Pronoun “He” is used twice for added emphasis

يُحِبُّ

Root letters are connected liking, loving and wanting

الظّٰلِمِيْنَ

Root letters are connected to be unjust, act tyrannically, do wrong, do evil, harm, oppress and transgress proper limits

وَلِيُمَحِّصَ اللّٰهُ الَّذِيْنَ اٰمَنُوْا وَيَمْحَقَ الْكٰفِرِيْنَ ﴿١٤١﴾

3:141

And so that Allah tests, rectifies, and purifies those who have believed, as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind; and so that He deprives of blessings those who are firmly established in, and persist in, neglecting, dissociating from, and denying their obligations to Him—thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them]—thus destroying them.

Notes:

لِيُمَحِّصَ

Root letters are connected to rectifying, putting right, putting to the test, to test, examine closely, to prove, and render pure

Are connected to purifying

Tests - puts someone through circumstances that reveal, examine, or demonstrate the quality and strength of their faith

Rectifies - corrects, sets right, or removes faults and deficiencies

Purifies - removes impurities, flaws, or unwanted elements, leaving something sound and refined

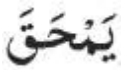
اٰمَنُوْا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

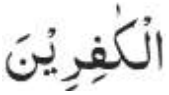
Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit



Root letters are connected to blot out, effect, erase, eradicate, exterminate, annihilate, destroy, render deficient, deprive of blessings and render unfortunate



Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

اَمۡ حَسِبۡتُمۡ اَنۡ تَدۡخُلُوا الۡجَنَّةَ وَلَمَّا يَعۡلَمِ اللّٰهُ الَّذِيۡنَ جٰهَدُوۡا مِنۡكُمۡ وَيَعۡلَمَ الصّٰبِرِيۡنَ ﴿۱۴۲﴾

3:142

Or have you all assumed that you will enter and take possession of the Secure Garden—Paradise—even though Allah has not yet made apparent those who have strived according to their utmost ability [in obeying Him] from amongst you: so that He makes apparent those who are firmly established in, and persist in, patience, perseverance [in obedience], and self-restraint [from complaint]?

Notes:

حَسِبۡتُمۡ

Root letters are connected to reckoning, calculating and assuming

تَدۡخُلُوا

Root letters are connected to entering, taking possession and making one’s own

الۡجَنَّةَ

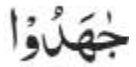
Root letters are connected to Paradise

Are connected to protection, shield and safety

Are connected to a garden and a walled garden

 and

Root letters are connected to distinguishing, differentiating and making apparent



Root letters are connected to endeavor and strive

Are connected to taking pains, to overwork, exhaust and fatigue



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to binding and shackling

Are connected to being patient, persevering, forbearing, enduring, refraining, abstaining, desisting and self-control

Patience - enduring difficulty without panic or loss of steadiness

Perseverance - continuing steadily in obedience over time without giving up

Self-restraining [from complaint] - controlling oneself from expressing objection or dissatisfaction

وَلَقَدْ كُنْتُمْ تَمَنَّوْنَ الْمَوْتَ مِنْ قَبْلِ اَنْ تَلْقَوْهُ فَقَدْ رَاَيْتُمُوْهُ وَاَنْتُمْ تَنْظُرُوْنَ ﴿۱۴۳﴾

3:143

And there is absolutely no doubt that you all persisted in desiring, wishing for, and demanding death [in battle] from before you encountered it. Then certainly, you have seen it, while you were looking on in contemplation.

Notes:

لَقَدْ

لَ added for emphasis

قَدْ Used for emphasis with past tense action i.e. certainly

كُنْتُمْ تَمَنَّوْنَ

Structure indicates repetitive action

تَمَنَّوْنَ

Root letters are connected to desiring and wishing

Are connected to hoping and demanding

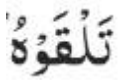
Desire - inner feeling (an internal inclination toward something)

Wish for - conscious expression (a conscious, expressed wanting)

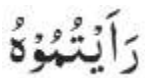
Demand - outward insistence (a strong, forceful request)



Root letters are connected to dying, perishing, losing life and subsiding



Root letters are connected to encountering and meeting, to perceive and lean upon



Root letters are connected to seeing, perceiving, discerning and considering



Root letters are connected to looking, gazing, directing one’s attention, observing, contemplating, reflecting and examining

وَمَا مُحَمَّدٌ اِلَّا رَسُوْلٌ ۚ قَدْ خَلَتْ مِنْ قَبْلِهِ الرُّسُلُ ۭ اَفَاْىِٕنْ مَّاتَ اَوْ
قُتِلَ انْقَلَبْتُمْ عَلٰٓى اَعْقَابِكُمْ ۭ وَمَنْ يَّنْقَلِبْ عَلٰي عَقِبَيْهِ فَلَنْ
يَّضُرَّ اللّٰهَ شَيْـــًٔا ۭ وَسَيَجْزِي اللّٰهُ الشّٰكِرِيْنَ ١٤٤

3:144

And Muhammad is nothing except a Messenger—who sincerely conveys a divine code of conduct from Allah. Certainly, Messengers have passed away from before him. Then if he has died or has been murdered, will you all turn back upon your heels? And whoever turns back upon his heels—then certainly, it will never harass, harm, or cause loss to [the cause of] Allah at all. And Allah will recompense—sufficing, satisfying, and pleasing—those who are firmly established in, and persist in, showing gratitude [by using their blessings in His obedience].

Notes:

رَسُوْلٌ and الرُّسُلُ

Root letters are connected to dispatching, a message and corresponding

Are connected to a messenger, delegate and apostle

Are connected to being friendly, intimate and free of affectation

Are connected to the one who carries by consecutive progressions the relation of the tidings of Him who has sent him

قَدْ

Used for emphasis with past tense action i.e. certainly

خَلَتْ

Root letters are connected to passing on, passing by, abandoning and freeing oneself

مَّاتَ

Root letters are connected to dying, perishing, losing life and subsiding

قُتِلَ

Root letters are connected to killing and murdering

انْقَلَبْتُمْ and يَّنْقَلِبْ

Root letters are connected to being turned, turned around, upturned, be reversed, be changed, altered, converted, change, shift instantly and change over

اَعْقَابِكُمْ and عَقِبَيْهِ

Root letters are connected to heels

يَّضُرَّ

Root letters are connected to harming, damaging, hurting and injuring

Are connected to forcing, compelling and coercing

Are connected to adversity, loss and harm

Harassment - repeated trouble or pressure from others

Harm - pain, injury, and suffering

Loss - deprivation and ruin

شَيْـًٔا

Root letters are connected to a thing, matter or affair

سَيَجْزِى

Root letters are connected to recompensing, sufficing, satisfying, contending, rewarding, repaying, and offsetting

Sufficing - being enough to meet a need

Satisfying - fulfilling a need or desire

Pleasing - giving satisfaction or contentment

الشّٰكِرِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being thankful, grateful, and praising

Are connected to showing gratitude with the heart, tongue and limbs

وَمَا كَانَ لِنَفْسٍ اَنْ تَمُوْتَ اِلَّا بِاِذْنِ اللّٰهِ كِتٰبًا مُّؤَجَّلًا ؕ وَمَنْ يُّرِدْ
ثَوَابَ الدُّنْيَا نُؤْتِهٖ مِنْهَا ۚ وَمَنْ يُّرِدْ ثَوَابَ الْاٰخِرَةِ نُؤْتِهٖ مِنْهَا ؕ
وَسَنَجْزِى الشّٰكِرِيْنَ ﴿۱۴۵﴾

3:145

And it was never possible for any person to die except through the authorisation of Allah—a firmly established and fixed recorded decree. And whoever intends and seeks the recompense of the temporal things of the world—the lowest state of living—We will grant him from it. And whoever intends and seeks the reward of the life of the Hereafter—We will grant him from it. And We will recompense—sufficing, satisfying, and pleasing—those who are firmly established in, and persist in, showing gratitude [by using their blessings in Our obedience].

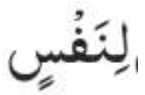
Notes:

مَا كَانَ لِنَفْسٍ اَنْ

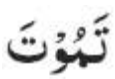
Structure indices denial of capability

كَانَ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place



Root letters are connected to soul, person, mind, human being and an individual

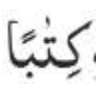


Root letters are connected to dying, perishing, losing life and subsiding



Root letters are connected to permission, authorisation, and leave

Are connected to announcing and notifying



Root letters are connected to divine judgement, prescribe, recorded, decreed and ordained



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to appointed time and date, term, period and specified time

Firmly established - the decree is securely and decisively determined

Fixed - the decree is set and unchanging

يُّرِدُ

Root letters are connected to have in mind, desire, intend, mean, aim at, purpose, be bound, to drive, strive and plan to do

Intend - internal decision to act

Seek - an external effort to obtain a specific result

ثَوَابَ

Root letters are connected to requital, recompense, reward, merit, compensation, and credit

الدُّنْيَا

A superlative

Root letters are connected to being low and near

Are connected to world, life in this world, worldly existence, temporal things or possessions and earthly things and concerns

نُؤْتِهِ

Root letters are connected to giving, granting and bestowing

الْاٰخِرَةِ

Root letters are connected to the hereafter, the final abode, life to come, and something which is delayed and deferred

سَنَجْزِى

Root letters are connected to recompensing, sufficing, satisfying, contending, rewarding, repaying, and offsetting

Sufficing - being enough to meet a need

Satisfying - fulfilling a need or desire

Pleasing - giving satisfaction or contentment

الشّٰكِرِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being thankful, grateful, and praising

Are connected to showing gratitude with the heart, tongue and limbs

وَكَاَيِّنْ مِّنْ نَّبِيٍّ قٰتَلَ ۙ مَعَهٗ رِبِّيُّوْنَ كَثِيْرٌ ۚ فَمَا وَهَنُوْا لِمَآ اَصَابَهُمْ فِيْ
سَبِيْلِ اللّٰهِ وَمَا ضَعُفُوْا وَمَا اسْتَكَانُوْا ۗ وَاللّٰهُ يُحِبُّ الصّٰبِرِيْنَ ﴿١٤٦﴾

3:146

And how many a unique honoured Prophet, who conveyed divine knowledge from Allah, has fought—weakening the strength [of the enemy]—together with many large companies of pious devotees. Then never did they lose courage or slacken concerning whatever struck them in the path of [obeying] Allah; and never did they become weak; and never did they yield or surrender—humiliating themselves. And Allah—He prefers and loves those who are firmly established in, and persist in, patience, perseverance [in obedience], and self-restraint [from complaint].

Notes:

مِّنْ نَّبِيٍّ

Singular form indicating each and every one

نَّبِيٍّ

Root letters are connected to informing, notifying, advising telling and announcing

Are connected to being high in rank, raised, elevated and prominent

Are connected to someone who receives unseen knowledge from Allah and conveys them to people



Root letters are connected to combat, fighting, battle and opposing

Are connected to weakening the strength or intensity of something



Preposition – with, in the company of, in despite of, together and in the estimation



Root letters are connected to large company of men, numerous companies, learned, pious, and patient

Are connected to being pious, learned, devoting oneself to religious service, learned in religious matters, righteous, worshipper of the Lord, and possessing a high rank



Root letters are connected to increase, plentiful, multiply, grow, many, a great many and abundance

فَمَا وَهَنُوْا , مَا ضَعُفُوْا and مَا اسْتَكَانُوْا

Structures gives a strong negation and refutation meaning

وَهَنُوْا

Root letters are connected to being weak, feeble, lacking strength, being incapable, lose vigor, lose courage, remiss and slacken

Lose courage - reduced inner resolve and morale

Slacken - reduced effort or vigour

Becoming weak - diminished strength and ability to persist

اَصَابَهُمْ

Root letters are connected to hitting, injuring, reaching, befalling, hitting the mark, to be afflicted and hitting the intended target

سَبِيْلِ

Root letters are connected to a way, path and road

ضَعُفُوْا

Root letters are connected to be weak, feeble, delicate, impotent, slack, and grow weak

اسْتَكَانُوا

Root letters are connected to becoming lowly, humble, submitting, yielding, surrendering, humiliating oneself, and humbling oneself

وَاللَّهُ يُحِبُّ

Pronoun “He” is used twice for added emphasis

يُحِبُّ

Root letters are connected to desiring, preferring, liking

Are connected to wishing, wanting and loving

الصَّٰبِرِينَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to binding and shackling

Are connected to being patient, persevering, forbearing, enduring, refraining, abstaining, desisting and self-control

Patience - enduring difficulty without panic or loss of steadiness

Perseverance - continuing steadily in obedience over time without giving up

Self-restraining [from complaint] - controlling oneself from expressing objection or dissatisfaction

وَمَا كَانَ قَوْلَهُمْ إِلَّآ أَن قَالُوا۟ رَبَّنَا ٱغْفِرْ لَنَا ذُنُوبَنَا وَإِسْرَافَنَا فِىٓ
أَمْرِنَا وَثَبِّتْ أَقْدَامَنَا وَٱنصُرْنَا عَلَى ٱلْقَوْمِ ٱلْكَٰفِرِينَ ﴿١٤٧﴾

3:147

And their speech was nothing except that they declared, "Our nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority], conceal, forgive, and correct, for our benefit, our transgressions and our acts which exceed bounds in our matter; and stabilise and strengthen our footing—ensuring steadfastness; and grant us protection, support, and success against the people [who are firmly established in, and persist in,] neglecting, dissociating from, and denying their obligations to You, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings You granted them]."

Notes:

كَانَ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

قَوْلَهُمْ and قَالُوا

Root letters are connected to a word, speech, saying, remark, statement and declaration

Are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

رَبَّنَا

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

اغْفِرْ

Root letters are connected to covering, concealing, veiling and hiding

Are connected to forgiving and pardoning

Are connected to correcting and rectifying affairs

ذُنُوبَنَا

Root letters are connected to offense, sin, crime, misdeed, fault and transgression

وَإِسْرَافَنَا

Root letters are connected to exaggeration, waste, dissipation, extravagance, acts of exceeding bounds, transgression, and immoderateness

اَمْرِنَا

Root letters are connected to a command, thing, affair, business and a matter

ثَبِّتْ

Root letters are connected to strengthening, stabilising, establishing and making firm

Are connected to steadfast, certainty, constancy and perseverance

اَقْدَامَنَا

Root letters are connected to foot, step, footing and footsteps

انْصُرْنَا

Root letters are connected to help, assistance, support and victory

Are connected to protecting and defending

الْكٰفِرِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

فَاٰتٰىهُمُ اللّٰهُ ثَوَابَ الدُّنْيَا وَحُسْنَ ثَوَابِ الْاٰخِرَةِ ؕ وَاللّٰهُ يُحِبُّ الْمُحْسِنِيْنَ ﴿۱۴۸﴾

3:148

Therefore, Allah granted them the recompense of the temporal things of the world—the lowest state of living—and the superior and perfect reward of the life of the Hereafter. And Allah—He prefers and loves those who are firmly established in, and persist in, showing excellent conduct—leading to a good state.

Notes:

فَاٰتٰىهُمُ

Root letters are connected to giving, granting and bestowing

ثَوَابَ

Root letters are connected to requital, recompense, reward, merit, compensation, and credit

الدُّنْيَا

A superlative

Root letters are connected to being low and near

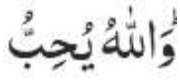
Are connected to world, life in this world, worldly existence, temporal things or possessions and earthly things and concerns



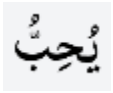
Root letters are connected to beauty, loveliness, excellence, superiority, perfection, goodness, and kindness



Root letters are connected to the hereafter, the final abode, life to come, and something which is delayed and deferred

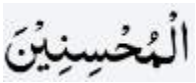


Pronoun “He” is used twice for added emphasis



Root letters are connected to desiring, preferring, liking

Are connected to wishing, wanting and loving



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being excellent, good, nice and lovely

Are connected to suitable, be in a proper state and in a desirable condition

يٰٓاَيُّهَا الَّذِيْنَ اٰمَنُوْٓا اِنْ تُطِيْعُوا الَّذِيْنَ كَفَرُوْا يَرُدُّوْكُمْ عَلٰٓى
اَعْقَابِكُمْ فَتَنْقَلِبُوْا خٰسِرِيْنَ ﴿١٤٩﴾

3:149

Those who have claimed to believe! If you submit to and obey those who have neglected, dissociated from, and denied their obligations to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them], they will drive you back upon your heels—then you will be upset, overthrown, and turn back to a firmly established and persistent state of being misguided losers—heading toward destruction.

Notes:

اٰمَنُوْٓا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

تُطِيْعُوْا

Root letters are connected to obey, follow, submit, yield and comply

Submitted - the inward attitude and acceptance of authority

Obeyed - the outward response and implementation

كَفَرُوْا

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

يَرُدُّوْكُمْ

Root letters are connected to sending back, returning and driving back

Are connected to returning to a former state

اَعْقَابِكُمْ

Root letters are connected to heels

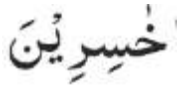
فَتَنْقَلِبُوْا

Root letters are connected to be turned, turned around, upturned, be reversed, overturned, overthrown, changed, upset, altered, and transformed

Upset - disturbed or thrown into a state of disorder, defeat, or emotional disturbance

Overthrown - forcibly brought down from a position of power, success, or advantage

Turn back - return or retreat from the course, direction, or position previously pursued



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to losing, getting lost and perishing

بَلِ اللّٰهُ مَوْلٰىكُمْ ۚ وَهُوَ خَيْرُ النّٰصِرِيْنَ ﴿١٥٠﴾

3:150

But certainly, Allah is the powerful protecting Lord who takes responsibility for you all. And He is the most preferred and best of those whose enduring practice is firmly established in, and persists in, protecting, supporting, and granting success.

Notes:

مَوْلٰىكُمْ

Root letters are connected to having power and command

Are connected to protecting, supporting, befriending, managing and assuming responsibility

Are connected to master, lord, patron and owner

وَهُوَ خَيْرُ النّٰصِرِيْنَ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

خَيْرُ

A superlative

Root letters are connected to good, virtuous and generous

Are connected to choosing and preferring

Are connected to something better and superior

Are connected to a good state and well-being

النّٰصِرِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to helping, assisting and rendering victorious

Are connected to defending, saving and protecting

سَنُلْقِيْ فِيْ قُلُوْبِ الَّذِيْنَ كَفَرُوا الرُّعْبَ بِمَآ اَشْرَكُوْا بِاللّٰهِ مَا لَمْ
يُنَزِّلْ بِهٖ سُلْطٰنًا ۚ وَمَاْوٰىهُمُ النَّارُ ۭ وَبِئْسَ مَثْوَى الظّٰلِمِيْنَ ۝١٥١

3:151

We will cast into the inverted spiritual hearts of those who have neglected, dissociated from, and denied their obligations to Us, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings We granted them], fear and dismay—burdening them—because they have associated partners with Allah, for which He has not sent down concerning it any authority or convincing proof. Therefore, their abode is the Fire. And how evil is the habitation of those who are firmly established in, and persist in, being unjust—transgressing proper limits.

Notes:

سَنُلْقِيْ

Root letters are connected to throw, cast, submit, extend, plunge and burden

Burdening them - placing a heavy emotional or psychological weight upon them, making them feel heavily distressed or overwhelmed

قُلُوْبِ

Root letters are connected to turn around, inverse, overturned, transformed and to become perverted

Are connected to being fickle and inconsistent, changeable and fluctuating

Inverted – the internal order is backwards valuing the bad and hating the good

كَفَرُوْا

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

الرُّعْبَ

Root letters are connected to fright, alarm, dismay, fear and terror

Fear – an emotional response of apprehension, alarm, or expectation of danger or harm

Dismay – a sudden loss of confidence or courage accompanied by distress, alarm, or consternation

اَشْرَكُوْا

Root letters are connected to making a partner, associating and committing polytheism

يُنَزِّلَ

Root letters are connected to something which is sent down, comes down, descends, stops over and is granted

سُلْطَٰنًا

Root letters are connected to absolute power, dominion, violence, power, authority, argument, convincing proof, strength and force

Authority – legitimate power, warrant, or authoritative basis giving something validity or the right to be accepted or acted upon

Convincing proof – clear and compelling evidence or argument that establishes something as true or valid

مَأْوَىٰهُمُ

A noun of place

Root letters are connected to place of refuge, retreat, shelter, abode, resting place, dwelling, lodging place, and place of resort

بِئْسَ

Root letters are connected to showing the evil of something

Are connected to miserable and wretched

مَثْوَى

A noun of place

Root letters are connected to abode, habitation, dwelling, place of rest, and place of alighting

الظّٰلِمِيْنَ

Root letters are connected to be unjust, act tyrannically, do wrong, do evil, harm, oppress and transgress proper limits

وَلَقَدْ صَدَقَكُمُ اللّٰهُ وَعْدَهٗٓ اِذْ تَحُسُّوْنَهُمْ بِاِذْنِهٖ ۚ حَتّٰٓى اِذَا فَشِلْتُمْ
وَتَنَازَعْتُمْ فِى الْاَمْرِ وَعَصَيْتُمْ مِّنْۢ بَعْدِ مَآ اَرٰىكُمْ مَّا تُحِبُّوْنَ ؕ
مِنْكُمْ مَّنْ يُّرِيْدُ الدُّنْيَا وَمِنْكُمْ مَّنْ يُّرِيْدُ الْاٰخِرَةَ ۚ ثُمَّ
صَرَفَكُمْ عَنْهُمْ لِيَبْتَلِيَكُمْ ۚ وَلَقَدْ عَفَا عَنْكُمْ ؕ وَاللّٰهُ ذُوْ فَضْلٍ
عَلَى الْمُؤْمِنِيْنَ ﴿۱۵۲﴾

3:152

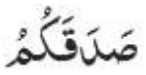
And there is absolutely no doubt that Allah held true to His promise to you all when you were annihilating them through His permission, until you became negligent and relaxed; and disputed with one another concerning the command and authority; and abandoned obedience from after He showed you what you desire, prefer, and love [of the spoils of war]. From amongst you is the one who intends and seeks the temporal things of the world—the lowest state of living—and from amongst you is the one who intends and seeks the life of the Hereafter. Thereafter, it [the spoils of war] distracted and diverted you from them [the enemy], so that He tests you—purifying, toughening, and proving your worth. And there is absolutely no doubt that He has overlooked [the mistake], pardoned, and erased it from you. And Allah is innately and eternally the Possessor and Owner of favour and kindness directed upon those who are firmly established in, and persist in, sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind.

Notes:

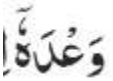


 added for emphasis

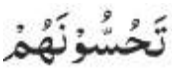
 Used for emphasis with past tense action i.e. certainly



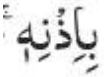
Root letters are connected to speaking truth, being sincere, proving to be true, holding true, keeping one's word, and observing a promise faithfully



Root letters are connected to promise, pledge, engagement, appointment and prediction



Root letters are connected to annihilate, to trod underfoot and despise, kill, utterly destroy and extirpating



Root letters are connected to permission

فَشِلْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to remiss, flagging, languid, and relaxed

تَنَازَعْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to contending with one another, disagreeing with one another, and disputing with another

الْاَمْرِ

Root letters are connected to order, affair, course of action, management, decree, ordinance, command, instruction, order, authority, and power

عَصَيْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to disobeying, defying, renouncing obedience and rebelling

اَرٰىكُمْ

Root letters are connected to showing, demonstrating and pointing out

تُحِبُّوْنَ

Root letters are connected to desiring, preferring, liking

Are connected to wishing, wanting and loving

Are connected to esteeming something or someone

Desire - inward attraction and wanting

Prefer - giving them practical priority and choosing them over others

Love - deep emotional attachment and devotion



Root letters are connected to have in mind, desire, intend, mean, aim at, purpose, be bound, to drive, strive and plan to do

Intend - internal decision to act

Seek - an external effort to obtain a specific result



A superlative

Root letters are connected to being low and near

Are connected to world, life in this world, worldly existence, temporal things or possessions and earthly things and concerns



Root letters are connected to the hereafter, the final abode, life to come, and something which is delayed and deferred

صَرَفَكُمْ

Root letters are connected to turn away, avert, divert, distract, and dismiss

لِيَبْتَلِيَكُمْ

Root letters are connected to trying, testing, putting to the test, cleansing and proving the worth of someone through tests and trials

Are connected to inuring, toughening and conditioning

Are connected to affliction, distress, tribal and tribulation

عَفَا

Root letters are connected to wiping out, excusing, obliterating, forgiving, pardoning and overlooking

وَاللّٰهُ ذُوْ فَضْلٍ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

ذُوْ

Root letters are connected to possessing, owning and being endowed with

فَضْلٍ

Root letters are connected to grace, favour, kindness, graciousness, grace and bounty

Kindness - the manner of Allah's dealing (gentle, merciful approach)

Favour - the substance of what is given (blessings, help, protection)

الْمُؤْمِنِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

إِذْ تُصْعِدُونَ وَلَا تَلْوُۥنَ عَلَىٰٓ أَحَدٍ وَٱلرَّسُولُ يَدْعُوكُمْ فِىٓ أُخْرَىٰكُمْ
فَأَثَٰبَكُمْ غَمًّۢا بِغَمٍّ لِّكَيْلَا تَحْزَنُوا۟ عَلَىٰ مَا فَاتَكُمْ وَلَا مَآ أَصَابَكُمْ ۗ
وَٱللَّهُ خَبِيرٌۢ بِمَا تَعْمَلُونَ ﴿١٥٣﴾

3:153

When you were all moving away in different directions and did not pay attention or turn to anyone, while the Messenger—who sincerely conveys a divine code of conduct from Allah—was urging and summoning you from amongst your rear. Therefore, He repaid you—affliction by means of sorrow[1] so that you do not grieve or mourn over what escaped you [from the spoils of war], nor over what struck you [of harm]. And Allah is innately and eternally the One who is fully acquainted with the apparent and hidden realities of whatever you do.

Notes:

1 – The false rumour the Prophet Muhamamd, peace and blessings be upon him, had been killed during the Battle of Uhud

تُصْعِدُونَ

Root letters are connected to advancing, raising, ascending, travelling, advancing, going far, and going away in any direction

تَلْوُۥنَ

Root letters are connected to turning, turning, averting, turning to face, thinking back, paying attention, caring, bothering, and heeding

ٱلرَّسُولُ

Root letters are connected to dispatching, a message and corresponding

Are connected to a messenger, delegate and apostle

Are connected to being friendly, intimate and free of affectation

Are connected to the one who carries by consecutive progressions the relation of the tidings of Him who has sent him

يَدْعُوكُمْ

Root letters are connected to calling, summoning, sending for, urging, driving, prompting, assigning and inviting

Urged - strongly encouraged or pressed to respond or act

Summoned - called with authority, requiring or demanding attendance or response

أُخْرَىٰكُمْ

Root letters are connected to behind, from behind, and rear

فَاَثَابَكُمْ

Root letters are connected to causing to return, requiting, rewarding, recompensing and compensating

غَمًّا and بِغَمٍّ

Root letters are connected to grief, affliction, sorrow, distress, worry, anxiety, anguish

تَحْزَنُوْا

Root letters are connected to being sad, grieving and mourning over something in the past

Grieve - deep internal sorrow

Mourn - outward expression of sorrow

فَاَتَكُمْ

Root letters are connected to passing away, vanishing, be past, escape, elude, and slip away

اَصَابَكُمْ

Root letters are connected to hitting, injuring, reaching, befalling, hitting the mark, to be afflicted and hitting the intended target

وَاللَّهُ خَبِيرٌ بِمَا تَعْمَلُونَ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

خَبِيرٌ

Root letters are connected to being familiar, well-acquainted, possessing knowledge, and an expert

Are connected to knowledge of the internal and real state of things

Are connected to intelligence, report, communication, message, affair and matter

تَعْمَلُونَ

Root letters are connected to working, doing and acting

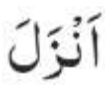
ثُمَّ اَنْزَلَ عَلَيْكُمْ مِّنْۢ بَعْدِ الْغَمِّ اَمَنَةً نُّعَاسًا يَّغْشٰى طَآىِٕفَةً
مِّنْكُمْ ۙ وَطَآىِٕفَةٌ قَدْ اَهَمَّتْهُمْ اَنْفُسُهُمْ يَظُنُّوْنَ بِاللّٰهِ غَيْرَ الْحَقِّ
ظَنَّ الْجَاهِلِيَّةِ ؕ يَقُوْلُوْنَ هَلْ لَّنَا مِنَ الْاَمْرِ مِنْ شَيْءٍ ؕ قُلْ اِنَّ
الْاَمْرَ كُلَّهٗ لِلّٰهِ ؕ يُخْفُوْنَ فِيْۤ اَنْفُسِهِمْ مَّا لَا يُبْدُوْنَ لَكَ ؕ يَقُوْلُوْنَ لَوْ
كَانَ لَنَا مِنَ الْاَمْرِ شَيْءٌ مَّا قُتِلْنَا هٰهُنَا ؕ قُلْ لَّوْ كُنْتُمْ فِيْ بُيُوْتِكُمْ
لَبَرَزَ الَّذِيْنَ كُتِبَ عَلَيْهِمُ الْقَتْلُ اِلٰى مَضَاجِعِهِمْ ۚ وَلِيَبْتَلِيَ اللّٰهُ
مَا فِيْ صُدُوْرِكُمْ وَلِيُمَحِّصَ مَا فِيْ قُلُوْبِكُمْ ؕ وَاللّٰهُ عَلِيْمٌۢ بِذَاتِ
الصُّدُوْرِ ﴿۱۵۴﴾

3:154

Thereafter, He sent down upon you all from after affliction, peace: drowsiness enveloping a specific faction from amongst you. And certainly, a specific faction—their souls and inclinations filled them with anxiety and they were on the verge of assuming, concerning Allah, other than the truth—correct, appropriate, and purposeful—the assumption of ignorance. They question, “Is there for our benefit concerning the decree anything at all?” Declare, “Certainly, the decree—all of it—belongs to Allah.” They

disguise, conceal, and keep secret within and amongst themselves what they do not openly express or reveal to you [Prophet]—verbally or physically. They claim, "Had anything from the decree existed for our benefit, we would not have been killed in this place." Declare, "Had you been established within your houses, those upon whom killing was decreed would have certainly come out to their places and times of lying down [in death]." And [all this occurred] so that Allah purifies, toughens, and proves the worth of what is in your chests through a difficult test—in order to rectify what is in your spiritual hearts. And Allah is innately and eternally the One who completely knows and fully understands the nature and essence of the chests.

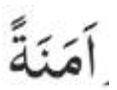
Notes:



Root letters are connected to sending down, to abide, to stay, to bestow and grant



Root letters are connected to grief, affliction, sorrow, distress, worry, anxiety, anguish



Root letters are connected to security, peace, and freedom of fear

نُّعَاسًا

Root letters are connected to sleepiness, drowsiness, lethargy, slumber and languor in the senses

يَّغْشٰى

Root letters are connected to cover, wrap, veil, envelop, overcome and overwhelm

طَآئِفَةٌ and طَآئِفَةً

Root letters are connected to a specific group, people, faction, party, and company

اَهَمَّتْهُمْ

Root letters are connected to filling with anxiety, distress, grieve, concern, be on someone's mind, to worry, to consider, thinking of doing something, be on the point of doing something and desiring to do a thing

اَنْفُسِهِمْ and اَنْفُسُهُمْ

Root letters are connected to soul, person, liking, appetite, desire, wish, will, desire and inclination

يَظُنُّوْنَ and ظَنَّ

Root letters are connected to suspecting, supposing, assuming, deeming, holding and conjecture

الْحَقِّ

Root letters are connected to what is right, correct, true, proper, suitable, fitting and purposeful

True - matches reality

Correct - accurate and right

Appropriate - properly fitting

Purposeful - meaningful and intentional

الْجَاهِلِيَّةِ

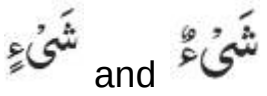
Root letters are connected to state of ignorance, pre-islamic paganism, and barbarism

يُقُوْلُوْنَ and قُلْ

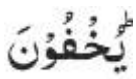
Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

الْاَمْرِ and الْاَمْرَ

Root letters are connected to order, affair, course of action, management, decree, and ordinance

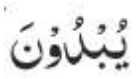
 and

Root letters are connected to a thing, matter or affair



Root letters are connected to hiding, concealing, keeping secret

Are connected to disguising



Root letters are connected to disclosing, revealing, declaring openly, expressing verbally and physically

Express - to bring something outwardly into manifestation through speech or action

Reveal - to uncover or make something hidden or internal externally visible or known

 and

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

قُتِلْنَا and الْقَتْلُ

Root letters are connected to killing and murdering

بُيُوْتِكُمْ

Root letters are connected to a home, house, room and apartment

لَبَرَزَ

Root letters are connected coming out, showing, appearing, coming into view, emerging and stepping out

كُتِبَ

Root letters are connected to recording, to destine, foreordain, decree and prescribe

مَضَاجِعِهِمْ

Noun of time and place

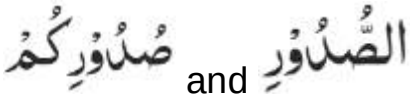
Root letters are connected to lying down, reclining, sleeping, slumber, and resting

لِيَبْتَلِيَ

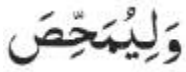
Root letters are connected to trying, testing, putting to the test, cleansing and proving the worth of someone through tests and trials

Are connected to inuring, toughening and conditioning

Are connected to affliction, distress, tribal and tribulation

 and

Root letters are connected to chest, breast, bust, bosom and heart



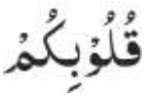
Root letters are connected to rectifying, putting right, putting to the test, to test, examine closely, to prove, and render pure

Are connected to purifying

Tests - puts someone through circumstances that reveal, examine, or demonstrate the quality and strength of their faith

Rectifies - corrects, sets right, or removes faults and deficiencies

Purifies - removes impurities, flaws, or unwanted elements, leaving something sound and refined



Root letters are connected to the heart

وَاللّٰهُ عَلِيْمٌۢ بِذَاتِ الصُّدُوْرِ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

عَلِيْمٌۢ

Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

بِذَاتِ

Root letters are connected to being, essence, nature, self, and person

Nature - what something is like by its inherent character

Essence - what something fundamentally is at its deepest level

إِنَّ الَّذِينَ تَوَلَّوْا مِنكُمْ يَوْمَ الْتَقَى الْجَمْعَانِ إِنَّمَا اسْتَزَلَّهُمُ
الشَّيْطَانُ بِبَعْضِ مَا كَسَبُوا ۖ وَلَقَدْ عَفَا اللَّهُ عَنْهُمْ ۗ إِنَّ اللَّهَ غَفُورٌ
حَلِيمٌ ﴿١٥٥﴾

3:155

Certainly, those who turned away from amongst you all on the day when the two parties met each other—only the Devil, arrogantly corrupt who deters others from obeying Allah, caused them to stumble by means of some of what they had earned. And there is absolutely no doubt that Allah has overlooked [the mistake], pardoned, and erased it from them. Certainly, Allah is innately and eternally the One who conceals, forgives, and corrects affairs, the One who is lenient and forbearing—restrained in punishment despite disobedience.

Notes:

تَوَلَّوْا

Root letters are connected to turning, turning away, turning back, fleeing, desisting, refraining and forgoing

الْتَقَى

Root letters are connected to encounter, meet, meet one another and go to meet

الْجَمْعٰنِ

Root letters are connected to military force, pack, assembly, troop, gang, and party

اسْتَزَلَّهُمُ

Root letters are connected to making someone slip, stumble, trip up and fall

الشَّيْطٰنُ

Root letters are connected to behaving like a devil, rebellious, corrupt and arrogant

Are connected to opposing others, turning them away from their purpose

Are connected to becoming remote and distant from the mercy of Allah, the Exalted

كَسَبُوْا

Root letters are connected to acquiring, earning, gathering, obtaining and gaining

لَقَدْ

لَ added for emphasis

قَدْ Used for emphasis with past tense action i.e. certainly

عَفَا

Root letters are connected to wiping out, excusing, obliterating, forgiving, pardoning and overlooking

إِنَّ اللَّهَ غَفُورٌ حَلِيمٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

غَفُورٌ

Root letters are connected to covering, concealing, veiling and hiding

Are connected to forgiving and pardoning

Are connected to correcting and rectifying affairs

حَلِيمٌ

Root letters are connected to gentleness, clemency, forbearance and patience

Lenient - gentle in dealing with people

Forbearing - patient despite wrongdoing

يٰٓاَيُّهَا الَّذِيْنَ اٰمَنُوْا لَا تَكُوْنُوْا كَالَّذِيْنَ كَفَرُوْا وَقَالُوْا لِاِخْوَانِهِمْ
اِذَا ضَرَبُوْا فِي الْاَرْضِ اَوْ كَانُوْا غُزًّى لَّوْ كَانُوْا عِنْدَنَا مَا مَاتُوْا وَمَا
قُتِلُوْا ۚ لِيَجْعَلَ اللّٰهُ ذٰلِكَ حَسْرَةً فِيْ قُلُوْبِهِمْ ۗ وَاللّٰهُ يُحْيٖ وَيُمِيْتُ ۗ
وَاللّٰهُ بِمَا تَعْمَلُوْنَ بَصِيْرٌ ﴿١٥٦﴾

3:156

Those who have claimed to believe! Do not become or exist like those who have neglected, dissociated from, and denied their obligations to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them]—who claim concerning their brotherly companions, whenever they travel throughout the land or are in a firmly established state of being combatants during a military expedition, "Had they been in our company, they would not have died nor been killed"—so that Allah appoints and establishes that as a distress, sorrow, and regret within their spiritual hearts. And Allah—He brings life into existence and decrees death. And Allah is innately and eternally the One who sees whatever you do, whether apparent or hidden, the One who is perfectly perceptive and discerning.

Notes:

اٰمَنُوْٓا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

تَكُونُوا

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

كَفَرُوا

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

وَقَالُوا

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

لِإِخْوَانِهِمْ

Root letters are connected to associating as brothers, brother, fellow man, friend, associate, and companion

ضَرَبُوْا

Root letters are connected to striking, putting forward and travelling

كَانُوْا غُزًّى

Structure indicates an established state

غُزًّى

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

عِنْدَنَا

Preposition – with, in the company of, in the presence of, in despite of, together and in the estimation

مَاتُوْا

Root letters are connected to dying, perishing, losing life and subsiding

قُتِلُوْا

Root letters are connected to killing and murdering

لِيَجْعَلَ

Root letters are connected to placing, setting, inserting, making, preparing, fixing and appointing

حَسْرَةً

Root letters are connected to unveiling, removing and uncovering

Are connected to sorrow, distress, pain, grief and regret

Distress - immediate anguish

Sorrow - emotional grief

Regret - painful reflection on past actions

قُلُوْبِهِمْ

Root letters are connected to the heart

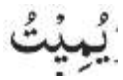
وَاللّٰهُ يُحْيٖ وَيُمِيْتُ

Pronoun “He” is used twice for added emphasis

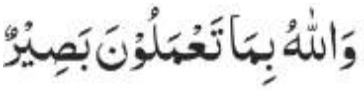
يُحْيٖ

Root letters are connected to giving life, call into existence, reviving, reanimating and giving new life

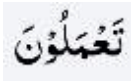
Are connected to experiencing and witnessing



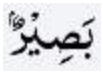
Root letters connected to death, lifelessness and nonexistent



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



Root letters are connected to working, doing and acting



Root letters are connected to seeing, witnessing and perception

Are connected to discerning, understanding, intelligent and mental perception

Perceptive – detecting/noticing

Discerning – judging/evaluating

وَلَئِنْ قُتِلْتُمْ فِي سَبِيلِ اللَّهِ أَوْ مُتُّمْ لَمَغْفِرَةٌ مِنَ اللَّهِ وَرَحْمَةٌ
خَيْرٌ مِمَّا يَجْمَعُونَ ﴿١٥٧﴾

3:157

And no doubt, if you all have been killed in the path of [obeying] Allah or have died [in that state]—certainly, concealment, forgiveness, and correction of affairs from Allah; and mercy, kindness, and relief are preferred and better for your well-being than whatever they[1] amass.

Notes:

1 – Refers to those who abstain from striving in the path of obeying Allah, the Exalted

قُتِلْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to killing and murdering

سَبِيلِ

Root letters are connected to way, road, path, reason, cause, and method

مُتُّمْ

Root letters are connected to dying, perishing, losing life and subsiding

لَمَغْفِرَةٌ

لَ added for emphasis

Root letters are connected to covering, concealing, veiling and hiding

Are connected to forgiving and pardoning

Are connected to correcting and rectifying affairs

رَحْمَةٌ

Root letters are connected to having mercy, compassion, sparing, letting off, saving, kindness, tenderness and pity

Mercy – withholds punishment from those who deserve it

Kindness – a broader act of granting blessings

خَيْرٌ

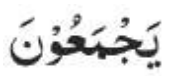
A comparative

Root letters are connected to good, virtuous and generous

Are connected to choosing and preferring

Are connected to something better and superior

Are connected to a good state and well-being



Root letters are connected to collect, gather, pile up, amass, and accumulate

وَلَئِنْ مُّتُّمْ اَوْ قُتِلْتُمْ لَاِاِلَى اللّٰهِ تُحْشَرُوْنَ ﴿۱۵۸﴾

3:158

And no doubt, if you all have died or have been killed—certainly, to Allah [alone] you will be assembled.

Notes:

مُتُّمْ

Root letters are connected to dying, perishing, losing life and subsiding

قُتِلْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to killing and murdering

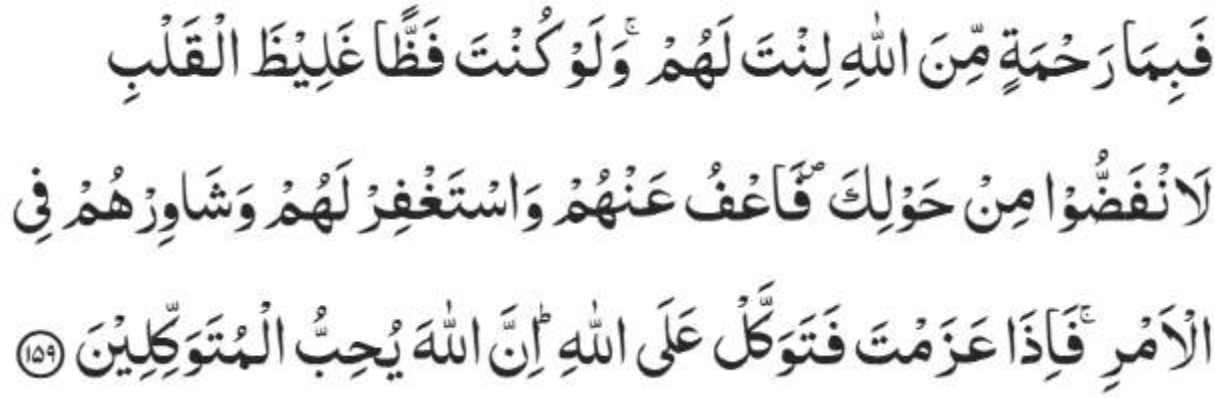
لَاِاِلَى اللّٰهِ تُحْشَرُوْنَ

لَ added for emphasis

Structure shows exclusivity

تُحْشَرُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to gathering, assembling and rallying


فَبِمَا رَحْمَةٍ مِّنَ اللّٰهِ لِنْتَ لَهُمْ ۚ وَلَوْ كُنْتَ فَظًّا غَلِيْظَ الْقَلْبِ
لَانْفَضُّوْا مِنْ حَوْلِكَ ۖ فَاعْفُ عَنْهُمْ وَاسْتَغْفِرْ لَهُمْ وَشَاوِرْهُمْ فِي
الْاَمْرِ ۚ فَاِذَا عَزَمْتَ فَتَوَكَّلْ عَلَى اللّٰهِ ۭ اِنَّ اللّٰهَ يُحِبُّ الْمُتَوَكِّلِيْنَ ﴿١٥٩﴾

3:159

Then by means of the grand and special mercy, kindness, and relief from Allah, you [Prophet] have been tender, gentle, and kind to them. And had you existed as the one who is ever firmly established in, and persists in, being ill-natured and bad-mannered—harsh of heart—certainly, they would have broken apart and dispersed from around you. Then excuse, overlook, and forgive them; and seek concealment, forgiveness, and correction of affairs on their behalf from Allah; and seek counsel from them concerning the course of action. Then when you are firm in decision—trust and rely upon Allah. Certainly, Allah prefers and loves those who are firmly established in, and persist in, trusting and relying [upon Him].

Notes:

فَبِمَا

مَا indicates magnification and specialization

رَحْمَةٍ

Root letters are connected to having mercy, compassion, sparing, letting off, saving, kindness, tenderness and pity

Mercy – withholds punishment from those who deserve it

Kindness – a broader act of granting blessings

لِنْتَ

Root letters are connected to tender, gentle, mild, flexible, soft, and mild

Are connected to kind and friendly

Tender - soft-hearted, highly empathetic, and deeply moved by the feelings or vulnerabilities of others

Gentle - the physical and behavioral restraint - translates that internal tenderness into careful, mild actions

Kind - takes the emotion and the carefulness and turns them into purposeful, outward goodwill. Kindness implies a choice to do good, offer help, or show generosity

كُنْتَ

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

فَظًّا

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to crude, rude, coarse, impolite, uncivil, ill natured, hard to deal with, hard hearted, severe and harsh

Ill-natured - bitter, spiteful, or naturally hostile personality

Bad-mannered - rude, disrespectful, or socially unacceptable behavior

غَلِيظَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to coarse, crude, rough, rugged, harsh, callous and rude

لَانْفَضُّوا

Root letters are connected to be broken, scattered, dispersed, disband, break up, dissolve and undone

Broken apart - separated or divided from one another, so that a group or gathering loses its unity

Dispersed - scattered or moved away in different directions, so that the group is no longer gathered together

فَاعْفُ

Root letters are connected to wiping out, excusing, obliterating, forgiving, pardoning and overlooking

Excuse - suspend blame (refrain from blaming or holding accountable)

Overlook - avoid dwelling on the offence (ignore or pass over something intentionally)

Forgive - internally release it (release resentment or punishment)

وَاسْتَغْفِرْ

Root letters are connected to covering, concealing, veiling and hiding

Are connected to forgiving and pardoning

Are connected to correcting and rectifying affairs

شَاوِرْهُمْ

Root letters are connected to asking for advice, consulting, taking counsel, and deliberation with one another

الْأَمْرِ

Root letters are connected to order, affair, course of action, management, decree, ordinance, command, instruction, order, authority, and power

عَزَمْتَ

Root letters are connected to decide, resolve, be determined and firm in decision

فَتَوَكَّلْ

Root letters are connected to rely, depend, place one’s confidence, confide one’s affairs to, and trust entirely in

Trust - to have inward confidence in someone’s reliability, care, wisdom, or ability to act rightly

Rely - to practically depend upon someone for support, help, protection, or the fulfilment of what is needed

يُحِبُّ

Root letters are connected to liking, loving and wanting

Are connected to desiring, preferring, liking

الْمُتَوَكِّلِينَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to rely, depend, place one’s confidence, confide one’s affairs to, and trust entirely in

Trust - to have inward confidence in someone’s reliability, care, wisdom, or ability to act rightly

Rely - to practically depend upon someone for support, help, protection, or the fulfilment of what is needed

إِنْ يَّنْصُرْكُمُ اللّٰهُ فَلَا غَالِبَ لَكُمْ ۚ وَإِنْ يَّخْذُلْكُمْ فَمَنْ ذَا الَّذِيْ
يَنْصُرُكُمْ مِّنْ بَعْدِهٖ ۗ وَعَلَى اللّٰهِ فَلْيَتَوَكَّلِ الْمُؤْمِنُوْنَ ﴿١٦٠﴾

3:160

If Allah protects, supports, and grants you all success, then there is absolutely no one who is firmly established in, and persists in, subduing or defeating you. Whereas, if He refrains from aiding you, then who will be this one—the one who protects, supports, or grants you success from after Him? And upon Allah [alone] must those who are firmly established in, and persist in, sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, trust and rely—thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind.

Notes:

يَّنْصُرْكُمْ and يَنْصُرُكُمْ

Root letters are connected to helping, assisting, victory and success

Are connected to protecting and defending

لَا غَالِبَ

Structure indicates absolute negation

غَالِبَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

يَّخْذُلْكُمْ

Root letters are connected to abandoning, forsaking, deserting, leaving in the lurch, refraining from aiding, and leaving without assistance

ذَا

This is derived from a pointer meaning “this”

وَعَلَى اللّٰهِ فَلْيَتَوَكَّلِ الْمُؤْمِنُوْنَ

Structure shows exclusivity

فَلْيَتَوَكَّلِ

Root letters are connected to rely, depend, place one’s confidence, confide one’s affairs to, and trust entirely in

Trust - to have inward confidence in someone’s reliability, care, wisdom, or ability to act rightly

Rely - to practically depend upon someone for support, help, protection, or the fulfilment of what is needed

الْمُؤْمِنُوْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

وَمَا كَانَ لِنَبِيٍّ اَنْ يَّغُلَّ ؕ وَمَنْ يَّغْلُلْ يَاْتِ بِمَا غَلَّ يَوْمَ الْقِيٰمَةِ ۚ ثُمَّ
تُوَفّٰى كُلُّ نَفْسٍ مَّا كَسَبَتْ وَهُمْ لَا يُظْلَمُوْنَ ﴿۱۶۱﴾

3:161

And it was never possible for any honoured Prophet, who conveyed divine knowledge from Allah, to act unfaithfully with respect to the spoils of war. And whoever acts unfaithfully with respect to the spoils of war will arrive with whatever he has acted unfaithfully with on the Momentous Day of upheaval, raising of the dead, and rectifying affairs. Thereafter, each and every person will be given their full share, faithfully and completely, according to what they have earned. And they—they will not suffer any injustice.

Notes:

وَمَا كَانَ لِنَبِيٍّ اَنْ يَّغُلَّ

Structure indices denial of capability

لِنَبِيٍّ

Root letters are connected to informing, notifying, advising telling and announcing

Are connected to being high in rank, raised, elevated and prominent

Are connected to someone who receives unseen knowledge from Allah and conveys them to people

 , and

Root letters are connected to taking part of the war booty, deceit, defraud, treachery, embezzle, and act unfaithful to the war booty



Root letters are connected to coming, arriving, producing, accomplishing, bringing, advancing and accomplishing



Root letters are connected to days, age, era and time

Are connected to momentous and important day



Root letters are connected to standing, rising up, rectifying and managing affairs

Are connected to resurrection, upheaval, tumult, turmoil and raising the dead

تُوَفّٰى

Root letters are connected to paying in full, complete, give full share and to do full justice

Are connected to doing full justice and carry out fully

Are connected to being faithful and loyal

Faithfully - quality of commitment

Completely - extent of fulfilment

نَفْسٍ

Root letters are connected to soul, person, mind, human being and an individual

كَسَبَتْ

Root letters are connected to acquiring, earning, gathering, obtaining, gaining

وَهُمْ لَا يُظْلَمُوْنَ

Pronoun “they” is used twice for added emphasis

يُظْلَمُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to be unjust, act tyrannically, do wrong, do evil, harm, oppress and transgress proper limits

اَفَمَنِ اتَّبَعَ رِضْوَانَ اللّٰهِ كَمَنْۢ بَآءَ بِسَخَطٍ مِّنَ اللّٰهِ وَمَاْوٰىهُ
جَهَنَّمُ ؕ وَبِئْسَ الْمَصِيْرُ ﴿١٦٢﴾

3:162

Then is the one who has been in agreement with, pursued, and adhered to the pleasure, approval, and acceptance of Allah, thereby living under this authority, like the one who has arrogantly drawn upon himself displeasure and anger from Allah? Therefore, his abode is Hell—harsh and repulsive punishment of a great and fiercely burning fire. And how evil is the journey, destination, and outcome.

Notes:

اتَّبَعَ

Root letters are connected to following, pursuing, walking behind and adhering

Are connected to being under authority and command

Are connected to concurring, being in agreement and being in conformity

In agreement - accepting the guidance internally (belief/acceptance)

Pursues - actively seeking and following it

Adheres to - remaining firm and consistent upon it

رِضْوَانَ

Root letters are connected satisfaction, pleasure, a means affording satisfaction, and a cause of pleasure

بَآءَ بِسَخَطٍ مِّنَ اللهِ

Indicates source and origin, not possession; “displeasure and anger from Allah” emphasizes a manifestation sent upon them rather than defining wrath as an abstract attribute

بَآءَ

Root letters are connected to taking upon oneself, bearing the burden, drawing upon oneself and brining in

Are connected to being proud and arrogant

بِسَخَطٍ

Root letters are connected to discontent, annoyance, displeasure, indignation, anger, wrath, and exasperation

Displeasure - a state of being unsatisfied, disapproving, or not pleased with something

Anger - a stronger emotional response of severe disapproval or wrath arising from serious wrongdoing

مَأْوٰىهُ

A noun of place

Root letters are connected to place of refuge, retreat, shelter, abode, resting place, dwelling, lodging place, and place of resort

جَهَنَّمُ

Root letters are connected to hell, fire, fiercely burning fire and a huge fire

Are connected to something harsh and disgusting

بِئْسَ

Root letters are connected to showing the evil of something

Are connected to miserable and wretched

الْمَصِيْرُ

Root letters are connected to end, outcome, result, journey, destination and end

Journey - the transition

Destination - the location

Outcome – the finality

هُمْ دَرَجٰتٌ عِنْدَ اللّٰهِ ؕ وَاللّٰهُ بَصِيْرٌۢ بِمَا يَعْمَلُوْنَ ﴿۱۶۳﴾

3:163

There are established degrees in the presence of Allah. And Allah is innately and eternally the One who sees whatever they do, whether apparent or hidden, the One who is perfectly perceptive and discerning.

Notes:

هُمْ دَرَجٰتٌ عِنْدَ اللّٰهِ

Noun sentence indicates something which is established

دَرَجٰتٌ

Root letters are connected to step, stair, degree, grade, rank, condition and station

عِنْدَ

Preposition – with, in the company of, in despite of, together and in the estimation

وَاللّٰهُ بَصِيْرٌۢ بِمَا يَعْمَلُوْنَ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

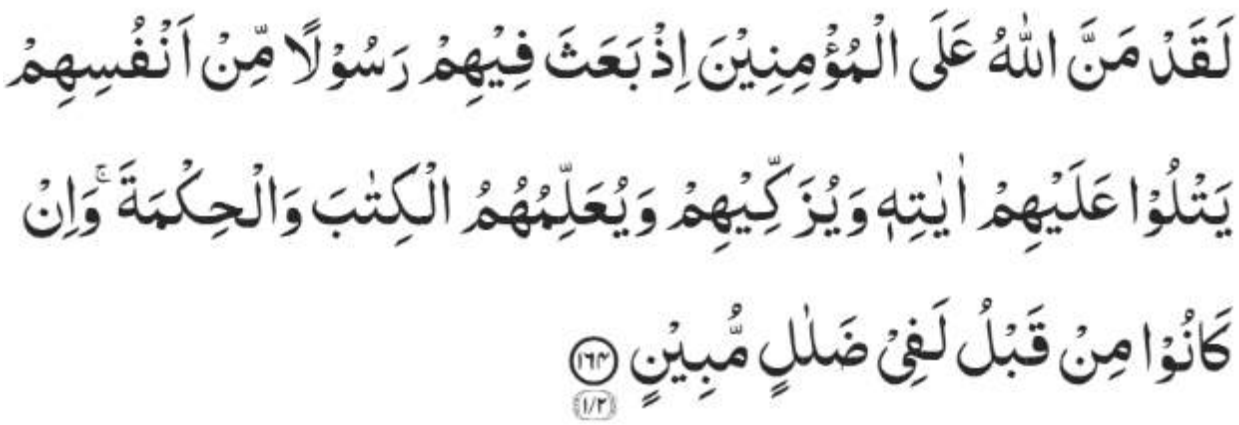


Root letters are connected to seeing, witnessing and perception

Are connected to discerning, understanding, intelligent and mental perception



Root letters are connected to working, doing and acting


لَقَدْ مَنَّ اللّٰهُ عَلَى الْمُؤْمِنِيْنَ اِذْ بَعَثَ فِيْهِمْ رَسُوْلًا مِّنْ اَنْفُسِهِمْ
يَتْلُوْا عَلَيْهِمْ اٰيٰتِهٖ وَيُزَكِّيْهِمْ وَيُعَلِّمُهُمُ الْكِتٰبَ وَالْحِكْمَةَ ۚ وَاِنْ
كَانُوْا مِنْ قَبْلُ لَفِيْ ضَلٰلٍ مُّبِيْنٍ ﴿١٦٤﴾
١/٢

3:164

And there is absolutely no doubt that Allah has graciously bestowed upon those who are firmly established in, and persist in, sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, when He appointed and dispatched from within them [the residents of Makkah] a Messenger—who sincerely conveys a divine code of conduct from Allah—from amongst themselves [in lineage][1], following and reciting to them His miraculous and evident signs [verses of the Quran], increasing them in spiritual purity and right conduct, leading to a pleasant life: teaching and clarifying to them the divine code of conduct and wisdom—perfect judgement, self-restraint, and leadership—ensuring knowledge is used correctly. And certainly they existed, from before, entrenched in clear and evident misguidance, loss, and destruction.

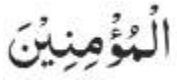
Notes:

The Prophet Muhammad, peace and blessings be upon him, is the final Messenger, peace be upon them, sent to all of mankind. Although he was appointed from amongst the Arabs, he was dispatched to all people without exception

1 - The Prophet Muhammad, peace and blessings be upon him, was both a resident of Makkah and from its people by lineage, thereby ensuring that his entire life was an open book for all to witness



Root letters are connected to being kind, gracious, benevolent, granting a favour, presenting, conferring and bestowing graciously



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

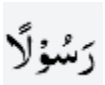
Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit



Root letters are connected to raising, sending out, dispatching, delegating and appointing

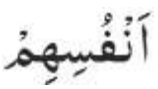


Root letters are connected to dispatching, a message and corresponding

Are connected to a messenger, delegate and apostle

Are connected to being friendly, intimate and free of affectation

Are connected to the one who carries by consecutive progressions the relation of the tidings of Him who has sent him



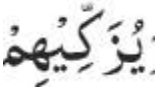
Root letters are connected to soul, person, mind, human being and an individual



Root letters are connected to following, reading, reciting, relating and rehearsing



Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof



Root letters are connected to be just, righteous, good, be fit, suitable and be pure in heart

Are connected to increasing, making grow, purifying and chastening

Are connected to enjoying a plentiful and pleasant life



Root letters are connected to teaching, instructing and educating

Are connected to distinguishing, differentiating and making apparent

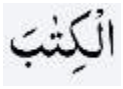
Are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

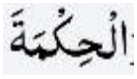
Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications



Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document



Root letters are connected to judging, deciding and decreeing

Are connected to governing, ruling, dominating and controlling

Are connected to wisdom

Are connected to accuracy, perfection and precision

Are connected to restraining the intellect from bad things

كَانُوْا

Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place

ضَلٰلٍ

Root letters are connected to stray, err, deviate from right course, to perish and become hidden

مُّبِيْنٍ

Root letters are connected to clear, plain, evident, obvious, patent, open and manifest

Clear - leaving no confusion

Evident - presence of signs and proofs that make the truth observable

اَوَلَمَّآ اَصَابَتْكُمْ مُّصِيْبَةٌ قَدْ اَصَبْتُمْ مِّثْلَيْهَا ۙ قُلْتُمْ اَنّٰى هٰذَا ؕ قُلْ
هُوَ مِنْ عِنْدِ اَنْفُسِكُمْ ؕ اِنَّ اللّٰهَ عَلٰى كُلِّ شَىْءٍ قَدِيْرٌ ﴿١٦٥﴾

3:165

And have you all then, at the very moment a hardship has afflicted you—even though you have certainly caused affliction equivalent to twice of it [to the enemy]—questioned, "From where and how is this [outcome]?" Declare, "It is from the presence of yourselves." Certainly, Allah is innately and eternally the One who has full power, control, and ability over each and every matter, who determines and decrees according to exact measure.

Notes:

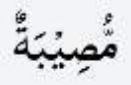
لَمَّا

Root letters are connected to when, since and after

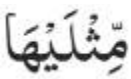
Emphasizes moment of occurrence

اَصَابَتْكُمْ and اَصَبْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to hitting, injuring, reaching, befalling, hitting the mark, to afflict and hitting the intended target



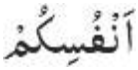
Root letters are connected to affliction, calamity, misfortune and disaster



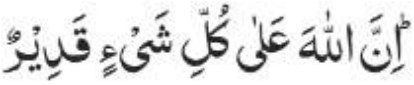
Root letters are connected to imitate, equivalent, copy and be equal



Preposition – with, in the company of, in the presence of, in despite of, together and in the estimation



Root letters are connected to soul, person, mind, human being and an individual



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



Root letters are connected to a thing, matter or affair



Root letters are connected to possessing control, strength, power and ability

Are connected to determine, decree, ordain, assess, evaluate, calculate and measurement

وَمَآ اَصَابَكُمْ يَوْمَ الْتَقَى الْجَمْعٰنِ فَبِاِذْنِ اللّٰهِ وَلِيَعْلَمَ

الْمُؤْمِنِيْنَ ۙ﴿۱۶۶﴾

3:166

And whatever afflicted you all on the day when the two parties met each other was through the permission of Allah—so that He makes apparent those who are firmly established in, and persist in, sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind.

Notes:

اَصَابَكُمْ

Root letters are connected to hitting, injuring, reaching, befalling, hitting the mark, to afflict and hitting the intended target

الْتَقَى

Root letters are connected to encounter, meet, meet one another and go to meet

الْجَمْعٰنِ

Root letters are connected to military force, pack, assembly, troop, gang, and party

فَبِاِذْنِ

Root letters are connected to permission, authorisation, and leave

لِيَعْلَمَ

Root letters are connected to distinguishing, differentiating and making apparent

الْمُؤْمِنِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

وَلِيَعْلَمَ الَّذِيْنَ نَافَقُوْا ۚۖ وَقِيْلَ لَهُمْ تَعَالَوْا قَاتِلُوْا فِيْ سَبِيْلِ اللّٰهِ
اَوِ ادْفَعُوْا ؕ قَالُوْا لَوْ نَعْلَمُ قِتَالًا لَّا تَّبَعْنٰكُمْ ؕ هُمْ لِلْكُفْرِ يَوْمَئِذٍ
اَقْرَبُ مِنْهُمْ لِلْاِيْمَانِ ۚ يَقُوْلُوْنَ بِاَفْوَاهِهِمْ مَّا لَيْسَ فِيْ قُلُوْبِهِمْ ؕ
وَاللّٰهُ اَعْلَمُ بِمَا يَكْتُمُوْنَ ﴿۱۶۷﴾

3:167

And so that He makes apparent those who have committed religious hypocrisy: it was declared to them, "Come forward—fight in the path of [obeying] Allah, [weakening the strength of the enemy] or [at least] defend—repelling harm by force." They [boldly] claimed, "Had we recognised, known, and understood fighting [would occur], we would have certainly been in agreement with, pursued, and adhered to you all." They were, in relation to neglect of, dissociation from, and denial of their obligations due to Allah, on that day, closer than they were to faith, as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling its duties. They declare with their mouths what is not within their inverted spiritual hearts. And Allah is more knowing and understanding of whatever they withhold, subdue, or conceal.

Notes:

لِيَعْلَمَ and نَعْلَمُ

Root letters are connected to distinguishing, differentiating and making apparent

Are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Recognise - perceiving reality outwardly

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications

نَافَقُوْا

Root letters are connected to dissimulate, be a hypocrite, show hypocrisy, change creed, and commit religious hypocrisy

وَقِيْلَ , قَالُوْا and يَقُوْلُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

تَعَالَوْا

Root letters are connected to rise, lift, ascend, and be raised

Are connected to commanding to come here, come on, come forward, and be elevated

قَاتِلُوْا and قِتَالًا

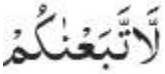
Root letters are connected to combat, fighting, battle and opposing

Are connected to weakening the strength or intensity of something



Root letters are connected to defending, driving back, driving away, repelling and averting harm with force

Are connected to resist, oppose and withstand



 added for emphasis

Root letters are connected to following, pursuing, walking behind and adhering

Are connected to being under authority and command

Are connected to concurring, being in agreement and being in conformity

In agreement - accepting the guidance internally (belief/acceptance)

Pursues - actively seeking and following it

Adheres to - remaining firm and consistent upon it



Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty



A comparative

Root letters are connected to coming near, close and approaching in respect time and place



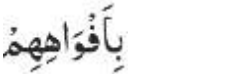
Root letters are connected to faith, belief, trust and confidence

Are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit



Root letters are connected to mouth



Root letters are connected to turn around, inverse, overturned, transformed and to become perverted

Are connected to being fickle and inconsistent, changeable and fluctuating

Inverted – the internal order is backwards valuing the bad and hating the good

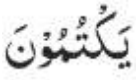


Root letters are connected to having knowledge and to understand

Are connected to perceiving and recognising

Know - holding it as internal certainty

Understand - grasping meaning and implications



Root words are connected to hiding, subduing, curbing, suppressing, repressing, concealing, making secret and to withhold

Withhold - to hold back or not disclose

Subdue - to suppress, weaken, or keep under control

Conceal - to hide completely from view or knowledge

اَلَّذِيْنَ قَالُوْا لِاِخْوَانِهِمْ وَقَعَدُوْا لَوْ اَطَاعُوْنَا مَا قُتِلُوْا ؕ قُلْ

فَادْرَءُوْا عَنْ اَنْفُسِكُمُ الْمَوْتَ اِنْ كُنْتُمْ صٰدِقِيْنَ ﴿۱۶۸﴾

3:168

Those [are the ones] who claimed concerning their brotherly companions, while they [themselves] remained inactive, "Had they submitted to and obeyed us, they would not have been killed." Declare, "Then prevent, repel, or avert from and amongst yourselves death, if you are, in fact, [firmly established as] those who are sincere and truthful."

Notes:

قَالُوْا and ؕ قُلْ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

لِاِخْوَانِهِمْ

Root letters are connected to associating as brothers, brother, fellow man, friend, associate, and companion

قَعَدُوْا

Root letters are connected to sitting down, desisting, abstaining, refraining, and remaining seated

اَطَاعُوْنَا

Root letters are connected to obey, follow, submit, yield and comply

Submitted - the inward attitude and acceptance of authority

Obeyed - the outward response and implementation

قُتِلُوْا

Root letters are connected to killing and murdering

فَادْرَءُوْا

Root letters are connected to prevent, repel, avert, push away, ward off, push back and drive away

Prevent - stop something from happening or occurring

Repel - drive something away or keep it from reaching or affecting you

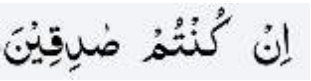
Avert - turn something away or prevent an impending harmful event from occurring

اَنْفُسِكُمُ

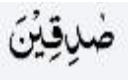
Root letters are connected to soul, person, mind, human being and an individual



Root letters are connected to dying, perishing, losing life and subsiding



Structure indicates an established state



Noun indicating an established state

Root letters are connected to being truthful, sincere and keeping one’s word

Sincere - pure inner intention

Truthful - outward truth in word and action

وَلَا تَحْسَبَنَّ الَّذِيْنَ قُتِلُوْا فِيْ سَبِيْلِ اللّٰهِ اَمْوَاتًا ۗبَلْ اَحْيَآءٌ عِنْدَ رَبِّهِمْ يُرْزَقُوْنَ ۙ﴿۱۶۹﴾

3:169

And never assume—under any circumstance—that those who have been killed in the path of [obeying] Allah are dead or deprived. Rather, they are alive, unbroken, and free from sorrow in the presence of their nurturing Lord—educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority—in a state of being provided with provision, materially[1] and spiritually, as a blessing.

Notes:

1 - In Paradise, food is not consumed for survival, but purely for enjoyment

تَحْسَبَنَّ

Structure shows two levels of emphasis

Root letters are connected to reckoning, calculating and assuming

قُتِلُوْا

Root letters are connected to killing and murdering

سَبِيْلِ

Root letters are connected to a way, path and road

اَمْوَاتًا

Root letters are connected to dying, perishing, losing life and subsiding

Are connected to being poor, base or abject

اَحْيَآءٌ

Root letters are connected to living, live, alive, lively, active, unbroken, undaunted, undismayed, free from sorrow, whole and sound

عِنْدَ

Preposition – with, in the company of, in the presence of, in despite of, together and in the estimation

رَبِّهِمْ

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended



Root letters are connected to means of survival and living, to bestow, to nourish, to provide provision, grant material or spiritual provision, and derive benefit from something

Are connected to boon, blessing and gift

Material provision – physical things e.g. food, shelter and clothing

Spiritual provision – inward qualities e.g. wisdom, knowledge, peace and inner strength

فَرِحِيْنَ بِمَآ اٰتٰىهُمُ اللّٰهُ مِنْ فَضْلِهٖ ۙ وَيَسْتَبْشِرُوْنَ بِالَّذِيْنَ لَمْ
يَلْحَقُوْا بِهِمْ مِّنْ خَلْفِهِمْ ۙ اَلَّا خَوْفٌ عَلَيْهِمْ وَلَا هُمْ يَحْزَنُوْنَ ﴿١٧٠﴾

3:170

In a firmly established and persistent state of rejoicing beyond measure because of what Allah has granted them from His favour and kindness. And they delight over the good news concerning those who have not [yet] reached them from behind them—fear of the future will not dominate them, and they—they [in particular] will not grieve or mourn over the past. [1]

Notes:

1 - The one who adheres to divine guidance may feel fear but will not be dominated by it; they may feel sadness but will not fall into grief and despair

فَرِحِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being glad, happy, delighted, rejoice, merry, cheerful, exult and rejoicing above measure

اٰتٰىهُمُ

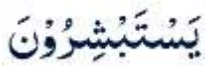
Root letters are connected to giving, granting and bestowing



Root letters are connected to grace, favour, kindness, graciousness, grace and bounty

Kindness - the manner of Allah’s dealing (gentle, merciful approach)

Favour - the substance of what is given (blessings, help, protection)



Root letters are connected to being delighted, gladden by good news, and to welcome



Root letters are connected to catch up, overtake, reach, join, and go after



Root letters are connected to successors and after



Root letters are connected to being frightened and scared of a future event

هُمْ يَحْزَنُوْنَ

Pronoun “they” is used twice for added emphasis

يَحْزَنُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to being sad, grieving and mourning over something in the past

Grieve - deep internal sorrow

Mourn - outward expression of sorrow

يَسْتَبْشِرُوْنَ بِنِعْمَةٍ مِّنَ اللّٰهِ وَفَضْلٍ ۙ وَّاَنَّ اللّٰهَ لَا يُضِيْعُ اَجْرَ
الْمُؤْمِنِيْنَ ۚ ﴿١٧١﴾

3:171

They delight over the favour—that leads to a pleasant life—from Allah, and kindness; and that Allah does not waste the reward of the efforts of those who are firmly established in, and persist in, sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind.

Notes:

يَسْتَبْشِرُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to being delighted, gladden by good news, and to welcome

بِنِعْمَةٍ

Root letters are connected to benefit, blessing, benefaction, favour, grace and kindness

Are connected to making nice, comfortable, pleasant and to bestow favours

Are connected to living in comfort and luxury, leading a life of ease and leading a comfortable life

فَضْلٍ

Root letters are connected to grace, favour, kindness, graciousness, grace and bounty

Kindness - the manner of Allah's dealing (gentle, merciful approach)

Favour - the substance of what is given (blessings, help, protection)

يُضِيْعُ

Root letters are connected to being in vain, allowing to perish, causing to vanish and wasting

اَجْرَ

Root letters are connected to reward, recompense and wages for work done

الْمُؤْمِنِيْنَ

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

اَلَّذِيْنَ اسْتَجَابُوْا لِلّٰهِ وَالرَّسُوْلِ مِنْۢ بَعْدِ مَآ اَصَابَهُمُ الْقَرْحُ ۛ
لِلَّذِيْنَ اَحْسَنُوْا مِنْهُمْ وَاتَّقَوْا اَجْرٌ عَظِيْمٌ ۚ ﴿١٧٢﴾

3:172

Those who strived to comply with Allah and the Messenger, who sincerely conveys a divine code of conduct from Allah, from after the painful injury afflicted them—for those who have shown excellent conduct [towards Allah and people] from amongst them; and have devoutly fulfilled their duties—thereby protecting themselves from harm and arranging all their matters correctly—is a great and immense reward for their efforts.

Notes:

اسْتَجَابُوْا

Structure indicates to try and strive for

Root letters are connected to answering, replying, complying, responding and reacting positively

الرَّسُوْلِ

Root letters are connected to dispatching, a message and corresponding

Are connected to a messenger, delegate and apostle

Are connected to being friendly, intimate and free of affectation

Are connected to the one who carries by consecutive progressions the relation of the tidings of Him who has sent him

اَصَابَهُمُ

Root letters are connected to hitting, injuring, reaching, befalling, hitting the mark, to afflict and hitting the intended target

الْقَرْحُ

Root letters are connected to wound, ulcer, sore, hurt and pain

اَحْسَنُوْا

Root letters are connected to being excellent, good, nice and lovely

Are connected to suitable, be in a proper state and in a desirable condition

اِتَّقَوْا

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious

اَجْرٌ

Root letters are connected to reward, recompense and wages for work done



Root letters are connected to something which is great, imposing, magnificent, powerful, supreme, immense and mighty

Great - qualitative excellence and rank

Immense - quantitative vastness and scale

اَلَّذِيْنَ قَالَ لَهُمُ النَّاسُ اِنَّ النَّاسَ قَدْ جَمَعُوْا لَكُمْ فَاخْشَوْهُمْ
فَزَادَهُمْ اِيْمَانًا ۖ وَّقَالُوْا حَسْبُنَا اللّٰهُ وَنِعْمَ الْوَكِيْلُ ﴿۱۷۳﴾

3:173

Those [are the ones] who the people declared to, "No doubt, the men have certainly united [only] to rally against you; therefore, fear and revere them." But it [only] further intensified them in faith, as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling its duties, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind, and they declared, "Sufficient for us is Allah, and how excellent is [the One who is innately and eternally] the Trustee—managing and disposing of affairs."

Notes:

قَالَ and قَالُوْا

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

قَدْ

Used for emphasis with past tense action i.e. certainly

جَمَعُوْا لَكُمْ

Structure indicates a single purpose of uniting together

Root letters are connected to gather, unite, combine, rally, and assemble

فَاخْشَوْهُمْ

Root letters are connected to fear, anxiety and dread

Are connected to deep respect, reverence and honour

Fear - response to power and authority

Reverence - response to greatness and majesty

فَزَادَهُمْ

Root letters are connected to growing, increasing, multiplying, expanding and intensifying

اِيْمَانًا

Root letters are connected to faith, belief, trust and confidence

Are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

حَسْبُنَا

Root letters are connected to sufficiency and satisfaction

وَنِعْمَ

A phrase of praise

Root letters are connected to blessing someone with a life of ease and comfort, a blissful life and peace of mind – e.g. Quran 82:13

الْوَكِيْلُ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

Root letters are connected to trustee, agent, authorised representative, guardian of one's interests, disposer of affairs, guardian, and protector

Trustee - one entrusted with responsibility for safeguarding, overseeing, or managing what has been placed in their care

Managing affairs - overseeing how matters are handle

Disposing of affairs - determining how those matters are arranged, settled, or carried through

فَانْقَلَبُوْا بِنِعْمَةٍ مِّنَ اللّٰهِ وَفَضْلٍ لَّمْ يَمْسَسْهُمْ سُوْٓءٌ ۙ وَّاتَّبَعُوْا رِضْوَانَ اللّٰهِ ۗ وَاللّٰهُ ذُوْ فَضْلٍ عَظِيْمٍ ﴿١٧٤﴾

3:174

Therefore, they turned back with favour, that leads to a pleasant life, from Allah, and kindness—while evil, disgrace, or harm did not touch them. And they have been in agreement with, pursued, and adhered to the pleasure, approval, and acceptance of Allah, thereby living under this authority. And Allah is innately and eternally the Possessor and Owner of favour and kindness—great and immense.

Notes:

فَانْقَلَبُوْا

Root letters are connected to being turned, turned around, upturned, be reversed, be changed, altered, converted, change, shift instantly and change over

بِنِعْمَةٍ

Root letters are connected to benefit, blessing, benefaction, favour, grace and kindness

Are connected to making nice, comfortable, pleasant and to bestow favours

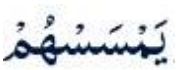
Are connected to living in comfort and luxury, leading a life of ease and leading a comfortable life



Root letters are connected to grace, favour, kindness, graciousness, grace and bounty

Kindness - the manner of Allah's dealing (gentle, merciful approach)

Favour - the substance of what is given (blessings, help, protection)



Root letters are connected to touching, touching slightly, to handle, to befall, to be struck



Root letters are connected to evil, torment, harm, damage, calamity, treating badly and an evilness of state or condition

Are connected to disadvantage, offense and sin

Are connected to disgrace and shame

Evil - morally wrong and sinful

Disgrace - shame and dishonour

Harm - injury and damage



Root letters are connected to following, pursuing, walking behind and adhering

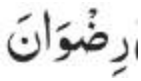
Are connected to being under authority and command

Are connected to concurring, being in agreement and being in conformity

In agreement - accepting the guidance internally (belief/acceptance)

Pursues - actively seeking and following it

Adheres to - remaining firm and consistent upon it



Root letters are connected satisfaction, pleasure, a means affording satisfaction, and a cause of pleasure



Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



Root letters are connected to possessing, owning and being endowed with



Root letters are connected to grace, favour, kindness, graciousness, grace and bounty

Kindness - the manner of Allah’s dealing (gentle, merciful approach)

Favour - the substance of what is given (blessings, help, protection)



Root letters are connected to something which is great, magnificent, powerful, supreme, immense and mighty

Great - qualitative excellence and rank

Immense - quantitative vastness and scale

إِنَّمَا ذٰلِكُمُ الشَّيْطٰنُ يُخَوِّفُ اَوْلِيَآءَهٗ ۠ فَلَا تَخَافُوْهُمْ وَخَافُوْنِ اِنْ كُنْتُمْ مُّؤْمِنِيْنَ ﴿١٧٥﴾

3:175

That is only the Devil—arrogantly corrupt, who deters others from obeying Allah—who fills his close associates and supporters with fear [concerning you all]. Therefore, do not fear them; and [instead] fear Me, if you are, in fact, firmly established as those who sincerely fulfil the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind.

Notes:

الشَّيْطٰنُ

Root letters are connected to behaving like a devil, rebellious, corrupt and arrogant

Are connected to opposing others, turning them away from their purpose

Are connected to becoming remote and distant from the mercy of Allah, the Exalted

يُخَوِّفُ

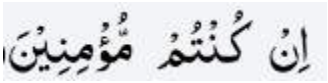
Root letters are connected to frightening, scaring, alarming, fill with fear, and terrify



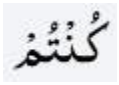
Root letters are connected to helper, support, benefactor, friend, close associate, relative and protector

 and

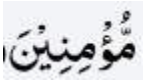
Root letters are connected to being frightened and scared of a future event



Structure indicates an established state



Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place



Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

وَلَا يَحْزُنْكَ الَّذِيْنَ يُسَارِعُوْنَ فِي الْكُفْرِ ۚ اِنَّهُمْ لَنْ يَّضُرُّوا اللّٰهَ
شَيْـًٔا ۭ يُرِيْدُ اللّٰهُ اَلَّا يَجْعَلَ لَهُمْ حَظًّا فِي الْاٰخِرَةِ ۚ وَلَهُمْ عَذَابٌ
عَظِيْمٌ ﴿١٧٦﴾

3:176

And you should not grieve or mourn over those who strive hard with haste in the neglect of, dissociation from, and denial of the obligations due to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them]. Certainly, they will never harass, harm, or cause loss to [the cause of] Allah at all. Allah intends not to appoint or establish for their benefit a good share in the life of the Hereafter. And for them is an agonising, deterring punishment—greatly terrible and distressing.

Notes:

يَحْزُنْكَ

Root letters are connected to being sad, grieving and mourning over something in the past

Grieve - deep internal sorrow

Mourn - outward expression of sorrow

يُسَارِعُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to rushing, running, hurrying, hastening, vying in speed, hastening towards, striving hard, endeavoring and hastening

الْكُفْرِ

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

يَّضُرُّوا

Root letters are connected to harming, damaging, hurting and injuring

Are connected to forcing, compelling and coercing

Are connected to adversity, loss and harm

Harassment - repeated trouble or pressure from others

Harm - pain, injury, and suffering

Loss - deprivation and ruin

شَيْـًٔا

Root letters are connected to a thing, matter or affair



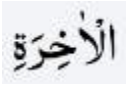
Root letters are connected to wanting, having in mind, desiring, intending, aiming at and purpose



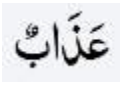
Root letters are connected to placing, setting, inserting, making, preparing, fixing and appointing



Root letters are connected to a part, portion, share, allotment, good luck, good fortune, prosperity, pleasure, and something good



Root letters are connected to the hereafter, the final abode, life to come, and something which is delayed and deferred



Root letters are connected to prevent, hinder, deter and obstruct

Are connected to punishment, torture, agony, painful and suffering

Agonising - causing intense pain and torment



Root letters are connected to something which is great, magnificent, powerful, supreme and mighty

Are connected to something which painful, oppressive, distressing, terrible and grievous

Terrible - extremely fearful and severe

Distressing - causing emotional pain and anguish

إِنَّ الَّذِينَ اشْتَرَوُا الْكُفْرَ بِالْإِيمَانِ لَن يَضُرُّوا اللَّهَ شَيْئًا ۖ وَلَهُمْ عَذَابٌ أَلِيمٌ ﴿١٧٧﴾

3:177

Certainly, those who have persisted in preferring and purchasing neglect of, dissociation from, and denial of the obligations due to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them], in exchange for faith, as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling its duties, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind—they will never harass, harm, or cause loss to [the cause of] Allah at all. And for them is a deterring punishment—the utmost degree of pain and suffering.

Notes:

اشْتَرَوُا

Root letters are connected to buying, acquiring, selling, preferring and exchanging

And are connected to persisting and persevering

الْكُفْرَ

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

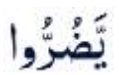


Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit



Root letters are connected to harming, damaging, hurting and injuring

Are connected to forcing, compelling and coercing

Are connected to adversity, loss and harm

Harassment - repeated trouble or pressure from others

Harm - pain, injury, and suffering

Loss - deprivation and ruin



Root letters are connected to a thing, matter or affair

عَذَابٌ

Root letters are connected to prevent, hinder, deter and obstruct

Are connected to punishment and torture

Agonising - causing intense pain and torment

اَلِيْمٌ

Root letters are connected pain, suffering, grievous pain, excruciating and the utmost degree of pain

Pain - refers to the physical sensation (the body)

Suffering - refers to the emotional or mental distress (the mind/soul)

وَلَا يَحْسَبَنَّ الَّذِيْنَ كَفَرُوْٓا اَنَّمَا نُمْلِيْ لَهُمْ خَيْرٌ لِّاَنْفُسِهِمْ ۭ اِنَّمَا
نُمْلِيْ لَهُمْ لِيَزْدَادُوْٓا اِثْمًا ۚ وَلَهُمْ عَذَابٌ مُّهِيْنٌ ﴿١٧٨﴾

3:178

And those who have neglected, dissociated from, and denied their obligations to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them], must never assume—under any circumstance—that whatever respite We grant them is preferred and better for their well-being. [Rather,] We only grant them respite so that they further intensify in intentional sinful behaviour. And for them is an agonising, deterring punishment in disdain and humiliation.

Notes:

يَحْسَبَنَّ

Structure shows two layers of emphasis

Root letters are connected to reckoning, calculating and assuming

كَفَرُوْٓا

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty



Root letters are connected to grant respite, and be indulgent and patient



A comparative

Root letters are connected to good, virtuous and generous

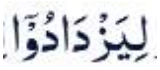
Are connected to choosing and preferring

Are connected to something better and superior

Are connected to a good state and well-being



Root letters are connected to soul, person, mind, human being and an individual



Root letters are connected to growing, increasing, multiplying, expanding and intensifying



Root letters are connected to sin, err, slip, crime and offense

Are connected to intentional sin



Root letters are connected to prevent, hinder, deter and obstruct

Are connected to punishment, torture, agony, painful and suffering

Agonising - causing intense pain and torment



Root letters are connected to disgrace, disdain, despise, degrade and humiliate

Disdain - looked down upon as unworthy

Humiliation - being lowered in dignity and honour

مَا كَانَ اللّٰهُ لِيَذَرَ الْمُؤْمِنِيْنَ عَلٰى مَآ اَنْتُمْ عَلَيْهِ حَتّٰى يَمِيْزَ
الْخَبِيْثَ مِنَ الطَّيِّبِ ؕ وَمَا كَانَ اللّٰهُ لِيُطْلِعَكُمْ عَلَى الْغَيْبِ وَلٰكِنَّ
اللّٰهَ يَجْتَبِيْ مِنْ رُّسُلِهٖ مَنْ يَّشَآءُ ۪ فَاٰمِنُوْا بِاللّٰهِ وَرُسُلِهٖ ۚ وَاِنْ
تُؤْمِنُوْا وَتَتَّقُوْا فَلَكُمْ اَجْرٌ عَظِيْمٌ ﴿۱۷۹﴾

3:179

Allah is never one to leave those who are firmly established in, and persist in, sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, upon the state you all are in, until He differentiates and separates the corrupt from the pure. And Allah is never one to disclose to you the unseen things which are beyond the perception of human senses—discoverable only through divine revelation—except that Allah selects from His Messengers—who sincerely conveyed a divine code of conduct from Him—whoever He wills. Therefore, believe in Allah and His Messengers. And if you believe: devoutly fulfilling your duties, thereby protecting yourselves from harm and arranging all your matters correctly, then for you is a great and immense reward for your efforts: spiritual well-being and peace of mind.

Notes:

مَا كَانَ اللّٰهُ لِيَذَرَ and وَمَا كَانَ اللّٰهُ لِيُطْلِعَكُمْ

Structures gives a strong negation and refutation meaning

And give an absolute and complete negation in state, time and possibility

لِيَذَرَ

Root letters are connected leave behind, leave alone, forsake and abandon

تُؤْمِنُوْا and قَاٰمِنُوْا , الْمُؤْمِنِيْنَ

The first is a noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

يَمِيْزَ

Root letters are connected to separating, keeping apart, distinguishing, severing, and discriminating

الْخَبِيْثَ

Root letters are connected to vicious, injurious, harmful, offensive, repulsive, disgusting, disapproved, hated, bad, corrupt and unlawful

الطَّيِّبِ

Root letters are connected to something good, pure, pleasant, agreeable, healthy, delightful, delicious and lawful

لِيُطْلِعَكُمْ

Root letters are connected to acquaint, inform, apprise, notify, point out, disclose, and make manifest

الْغَيْبِ

Root letters are connected to something which is absent, hidden, invisible, discoverable through divine revelation and beyond the reach of mental perception

يَجْتَبِي

Root letters are connected to pick, choose, elect and select

رُّسُلِهِ

Root letters are connected to dispatching, a message and corresponding

Are connected to a messenger, delegate and apostle

Are connected to being friendly, intimate and free of affectation

Are connected to the one who carries by consecutive progressions the relation of the tidings of Him who has sent him

يَّشَآءُ

Root letters are connected to wanting, willing and wishing

تَتَّقُوْا

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious

اَجْرٌ

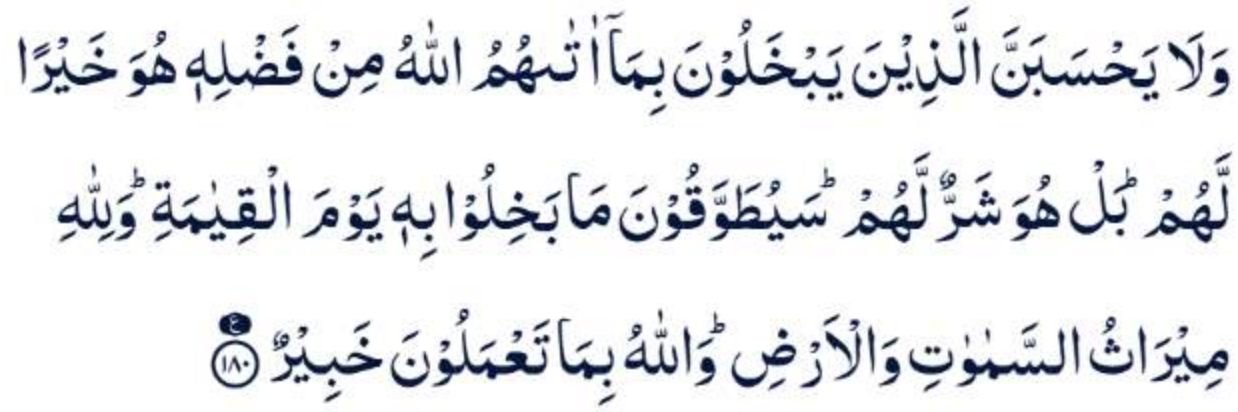
Root letters are connected to reward, recompense and wages for work done

عَظِيْمٌ

Root letters are connected to something which is great, imposing, magnificent, powerful, supreme, immense and mighty

Great - qualitative excellence and rank

Immense - quantitative vastness and scale


وَلَا يَحْسَبَنَّ الَّذِيْنَ يَبْخَلُوْنَ بِمَآ اٰتٰىهُمُ اللّٰهُ مِنْ فَضْلِهٖ هُوَ خَيْرًا
لَّهُمْ ۭ بَلْ هُوَ شَرٌّ لَّهُمْ ۭ سَيُطَوَّقُوْنَ مَا بَخِلُوْا بِهٖ يَوْمَ الْقِيٰمَةِ ۭ وَلِلّٰهِ
مِيْرَاثُ السَّمٰوٰتِ وَالْاَرْضِ ۭ وَاللّٰهُ بِمَا تَعْمَلُوْنَ خَبِيْرٌ ۝١٨٠

3:180

And those who are greedy and stingy with what Allah has granted them from His favour and kindness, must never assume—under any circumstance—that it is preferred and better for their well-being. Rather, it is more harmful for them—they will be encompassed by whatever they have been greedy and stingy with on the Momentous Day of upheaval, raising of the dead, and rectifying affairs. And to Allah [alone], innately and eternally, belongs the inheritance of the lofty skies and the Earth. And Allah is innately and eternally the One who, with whatever you all do, is fully acquainted with its apparent and hidden realities.

Notes:

يَحْسَبَنَّ

Structure shows two layers of emphasis

Root letters are connected to reckoning, calculating and assuming

يَبْخَلُوْنَ and بَخِلُوْا

Root letters are connected to being niggardly, stingy, stint, avaricious, and covetous

Greedy - excessive desire for possession and personal gain

Stingy - unwillingness to part with or share what one possesses

اٰتٰىهُمُ

Root letters are connected to giving, granting and bestowing

فَضْلِهٖ

Root letters are connected to grace, favour, kindness, graciousness, grace and bounty

Kindness - the manner of Allah’s dealing (gentle, merciful approach)

Favour - the substance of what is given (blessings, help, protection)

خَيْرٌ

A comparative

Root letters are connected to good, virtuous and generous

Are connected to choosing and preferring

Are connected to something better and superior

Are connected to a good state and well-being

شَرٌّ

A comparative

Root letters are connected to bead, evil, wicked, harm and damage

سَيُطَوَّقُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to putting on a necklace, surround, enwrap, ring, encompass, enclose, and encircle

يَوْمَ

Root letters are connected to days, age, era and time

Are connected to momentous and important days

الْقِيٰمَةِ

Root letters are connected to standing, rising up, rectifying and managing affairs

Are connected to resurrection, upheaval, tumult, turmoil and raising the dead

وَلِلّٰهِ مِيْرَاثُ السَّمٰوٰتِ وَالْاَرْضِ

Structure indicates exclusivity and totality

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

مِيْرَاثُ

Root letters are connected to heritage, inheritance, legacy, and estate

السَّمٰوٰتِ

Root letters are connected to sky, heaven and ceiling

Are connected to raised, elevated, high, lofty and tall

وَاللّٰهُ بِمَا تَعْمَلُوْنَ خَبِيْرٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

تَعْمَلُوْنَ

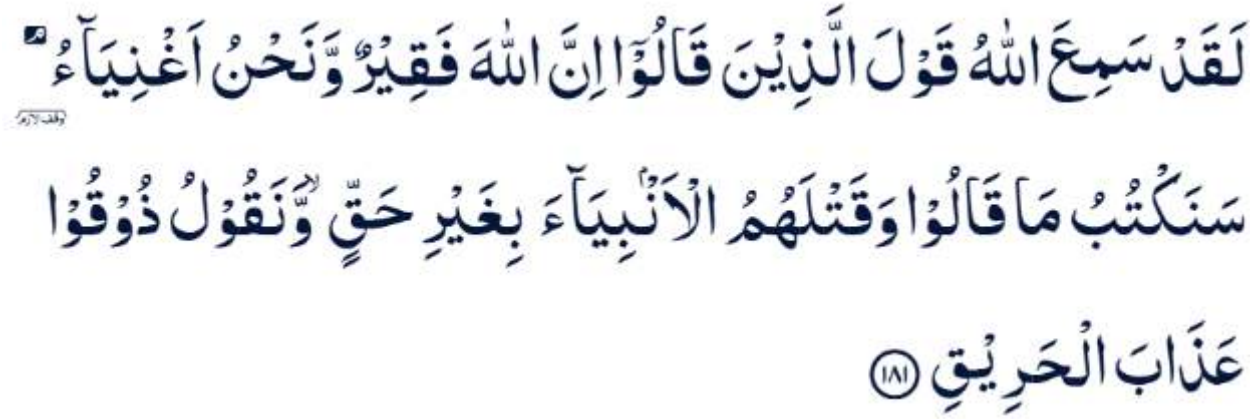
Root letters are connected to working, doing and acting

خَبِيْرٌ

Root letters are connected to being familiar, well-acquainted, possessing knowledge, and an expert

Are connected to knowledge of the internal and real state of things

Are connected to intelligence, report, communication, message, affair and matter


لَقَدْ سَمِعَ اللّٰهُ قَوْلَ الَّذِيْنَ قَالُوْٓا اِنَّ اللّٰهَ فَقِيْرٌ وَّنَحْنُ اَغْنِيَآءُ ۘ
سَنَكْتُبُ مَا قَالُوْا وَقَتْلَهُمُ الْاَنْۢبِيَآءَ بِغَيْرِ حَقٍّ ۙ وَّنَقُوْلُ ذُوْقُوْا
عَذَابَ الْحَرِيْقِ ﴿١٨١﴾

3:181

And there is absolutely no doubt that Allah has heard the statement of those who declared, "Certainly, Allah is needy; whereas, we are in a state of self-sufficiency and freedom from need[1]." We will record whatever they have said, and their opposition to, fighting against, and murder of the honoured Prophets—who conveyed divine knowledge from Allah—without any justification [aiming to weaken the strength of divine guidance]. And We will declare, "Suffer the agonising punishment of the large and destructive fire."

Notes:

1 – This statement was made aiming to criticise Islamic teachings which encourage giving charity (Imam Wahidi's, Asbab Al Nuzul, Page 60, 3:181)

لَقَدْ

لَ added for emphasis

قَدْ Used for emphasis with past tense action i.e. certainly

سَمِعَ

Root letters are connected to hearing, listening, paying attention and learning

قَوْلَ , قَالُوْا and نَقُوْلُ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

فَقِيْرٌ

Root letters are connected to poor, needy, lack and to want

Are connected to possessing only what is sufficient for life

اَغْنِيَآءُ

Noun indicating an established state

Root letters are connected to rich, wealthy and prosperous

Are connected to sufficiency and adequacy

Are connected to free from want and free of need

Self-sufficiency - possessing enough for oneself; not depending upon others

Freedom of need - being without want, deficiency, or necessity



Root letters are connected to write, pen, write down, inscribe and record



Root letters are connected to killing and murdering

Are connected to fighting, battling, opposing, and combat

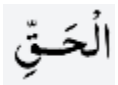
Are connected to weakening the strength or intensity of something



Root letters are connected to informing, notifying, advising telling and announcing

Are connected to being high in rank, raised, elevated and prominent

Are connected to someone who receives unseen knowledge from Allah and conveys them to people



Root letters are connected to what is right, correct, proper, suitable, fitting and purposeful

Are connected to being deserving, to be due and to have a claim

ذُوقُوا

Root letters are connected to taste, sample, try out, to test, experience, undergo, suffer and feel

الْعَذَابَ

Root letters are connected to prevent, hinder, deter and obstruct

Are connected to punishment, torture, agony, painful and suffering

Agonising - causing intense pain and torment

الْحَرِيقِ

Root letters are connected to fire, flame, burning, and a large, highly destructive fire

ذٰلِكَ بِمَا قَدَّمَتْ اَيْدِيْكُمْ وَاَنَّ اللّٰهَ لَيْسَ بِظَلَّامٍ لِّلْعَبِيْدِ ﴿١٨٢﴾

3:182

That [punishment] is because of what your hands of power, authority, and influence have preferred and boldly sent forward in preparation for the future [the Hereafter]; and because Allah is never, at any time or in any state, the One who is unjust to the slaves—transgressing proper limits.

Notes:

قَدَّمَتْ

Root letters are connected to send forward, send ahead and send on in advance

Are connected to preparing

Are connected to preferring and prioritizing

Are connected to being bold, audacious and daring

اَيْدِيْهِمْ

Root letters are connected to hand, power, control, influence and authority

Power - ability or capacity to act or carry out something

Authority - recognised right or legitimacy to act or decide

Influence - ability to affect or shape others’ thoughts or actions



Structure gives a strong negation and refutation meaning

And gives an absolute and complete negation in state, time and possibility



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to be unjust, act tyrannically, do wrong, do evil, harm, oppress and transgress proper limits



Root letters are connected to a male servant and male slave

اَلَّذِيْنَ قَالُوْٓا اِنَّ اللّٰهَ عَهِدَ اِلَيْنَآ اَلَّا نُؤْمِنَ لِرَسُوْلٍ حَتّٰى يَاْتِيَنَا
بِقُرْبَانٍ تَاْكُلُهُ النَّارُ ۭ قُلْ قَدْ جَاۗءَكُمْ رُسُلٌ مِّنْ قَبْلِيْ بِالْبَيِّنٰتِ
وَبِالَّذِيْ قُلْتُمْ فَلِمَ قَتَلْتُمُوْهُمْ اِنْ كُنْتُمْ صٰدِقِيْنَ ۝۱۸۳

3:183

Those who have declared, "Certainly, Allah has obligated us not to believe, trust, or confide in any Messenger [who sincerely conveys a divine code of conduct from Allah], until he produces for us a sacrifice [offered to Allah] that the fire consumes. Reply, "Certainly, Messengers came to you from before me with clear proofs and explanations; and with what you have claimed, then why did you oppose, fight, and murder them, if you are, in fact, [firmly established as] those who are sincere and truthful?"

Notes:

قَالُوْٓا and قُلْتُمْ

Root letters are connected to saying, asserting, professing, declaring, claiming, advocating and alleging

عَهِدَ

Root letters are connected to charging, entrusting, assigning, obligating, and imposing

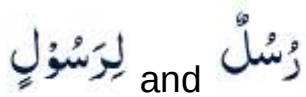


Root letters are connected to trusting, trusting with, showing submission to, and confiding in

Believe - to accept something as true or hold it as a conviction

Trust - to place confidence in someone's truthfulness, reliability, or intentions

Confide in - to place confidence in someone deeply enough to entrust them with personal matters, secrets, or reliance

 and

Root letters are connected to dispatching, a message and corresponding

Are connected to a messenger, delegate and apostle

Are connected to being friendly, intimate and free of affectation

Are connected to the one who carries by consecutive progressions the relation of the tidings of Him who has sent him



Root letters are connected to coming, arriving, producing, advancing, accomplishing, and achieving



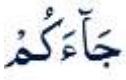
Root letters are connected to sacrifice, offering, immolation, oblation, and gift offered to God



Root letters are connected to eating up, swallowing, consuming, devouring, destroying, gnaw and eat away



Used for emphasis with past tense action i.e. certainly



Root letters are connected to come, produce, set forth and reaching



Root letters are connected to clarification, explanation, clear evidence and proof

Proofs – undeniable evidence that establish truth decisively

Explanations – making meaning clear and understandable



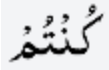
Root letters are connected to killing and murdering

Are connected to fighting, battling, opposing, and combat

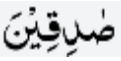
Are connected to weakening the strength or intensity of something



Structure indicates an established state



Root letters are connected to being, existing, happening, occurring, coming into existence, and taking place



Root letters are connected to being truthful, sincere and keeping one’s word

Sincere - pure inner intention

Truthful - outward truth in word and action

فَإِنْ كَذَّبُوكَ فَقَدْ كُذِّبَ رُسُلٌ مِّنْ قَبْلِكَ جَآءُو بِالْبَيِّنٰتِ وَالزُّبُرِ
وَالْكِتٰبِ الْمُنِيرِ ﴿١٨٤﴾

3:184

Then if they have refuted you, declaring you a liar—seeking to discredit you—then certainly, Messengers from before you were [also] refuted and declared liars—those who came with the clear proofs and explanations; and the divine scriptures; and the divine code of conduct—firmly established in, and persisting in, illuminating and enlightening.

Notes:

كَذَّبُوكَ and كُذِّبَ

Root letters are connected to disproving, refuting, denying, calling a lie, rejecting, discrediting and repelling

قَدْ

Used for emphasis with past tense action i.e. certainly

رُسُلٌ

Root letters are connected to dispatching, a message and corresponding

Are connected to a messenger, delegate and apostle

Are connected to being friendly, intimate and free of affectation

Are connected to the one who carries by consecutive progressions the relation of the tidings of Him who has sent him



Root letters are connected to come, produce, set forth and reaching



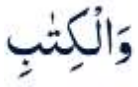
Root letters are connected to clarification, explanation, clear evidence and proof

Proofs – undeniable evidence that establish truth decisively

Explanations – making meaning clear and understandable



Root letters are connected to writings, book, scripture, and book of wisdoms



Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document

الْمُنِيرِ

Root letters are connected to illuminate, fill with light, come to light, show, appear, disclose, reveal, explain, clarify, and enlighten

Illuminating - explains a difficult subject perfectly

Enlightening - changes the way the reader thinks or lives

كُلُّ نَفْسٍ ذَآئِقَةُ الْمَوْتِ ۗ وَإِنَّمَا تُوَفَّوْنَ أُجُورَكُمْ يَوْمَ الْقِيٰمَةِ ۖ فَمَنْ
زُحْزِحَ عَنِ النَّارِ وَأُدْخِلَ الْجَنَّةَ فَقَدْ فَازَ ۗ وَمَا الْحَيٰوةُ الدُّنْيَآ إِلَّا
مَتَاعُ الْغُرُورِ ﴿١٨٥﴾

3:185

Each and every person is firmly established in, and persists in, the experience of tasting death. And you all will only be given the full share of the rewards of your efforts, faithfully and completely, on the Momentous Day of upheaval, raising of the dead, and rectifying affairs. Then whoever has been turned away from the Fire, and has been admitted into the Secure Garden—Paradise—has certainly become safe and secure, attaining triumph. The temporal things of the worldly life—the lowest state of living—are nothing except objects of deception, delusion, and vain hopes.

Notes:

نَفْسٍ

Root letters are connected to soul, person, mind, human being and an individual

ذَآئِقَةُ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to taste, sample, try out, to test, experience, undergo, suffer and feel

الْمَوْتِ

Root letters are connected to dying, perishing, losing life and subsiding

تُوَفَّوْنَ

Root letters are connected to paying in full, complete, give full share and to do full justice

Are connected to doing full justice and carry out fully

Are connected to being faithful and loyal

Faithfully - quality of commitment

Completely - extent of fulfilment

أُجُوْرَكُمْ

Root letters are connected to reward, recompense and wages for work done

يَوْمَ

Root letters are connected to days, age, era and time

Are connected to momentous and important day

الْقِيٰمَةِ

Root letters are connected to standing, rising up, rectifying and managing affairs

Are connected to resurrection, upheaval, tumult, turmoil and raising the dead

زُحْزِحَ

Root letters are connected to remove, push away, thrust away, and turn away

وَاُدْخِلَ

Root letters are connected to make or let enter, bring in, let in, admit, lead in and show in

الْجَـنَّةَ

Root letters are connected to Paradise

Are connected to protection, shield and safety

Are connected to a garden and a walled garden

قَدْ

Used for emphasis with past tense action i.e. certainly

فَازَ

Root letters are connected to being successful, victorious, triumph, attaining good fortune, attaining desire, being secure, and being safe

Safe - free from danger, harm, or threat

Secure - firmly protected, stable, and free from fear of loss, attack, or disruption

الْحَيٰوةُ

Root letters are connected to living, experiencing and witnessing

الدُّنْيَا

A superlative

Root letters are connected to being low and near

Are connected to world, life in this world, worldly existence, temporal things or possessions and earthly things and concerns

مَتَاعُ

Root letters are connected to things of use, commodities, utensils, goods, property, objects, and stuff

Are connected to enjoying, savoring, relishing, equipping and supplying

الْغُرُوْرِ

Root letters are connected to misleading, deceiving, beguiling, deluding, gulling, blinding, and deceiving with vain/empty hopes

Deceived – outside reality - caused to accept something false or misleading as true

Deluded – inside reality - led into a false belief or mistaken perception, particularly by an illusion or deceptive idea

Vain hopes - empty or useless wishes that have no realistic chance of coming true

لَتُبْلَوُنَّ فِيْٓ اَمْوَالِكُمْ وَاَنْفُسِكُمْ ۫ وَلَتَسْمَعُنَّ مِنَ الَّذِيْنَ اُوْتُوا
الْكِتٰبَ مِنْ قَبْلِكُمْ وَمِنَ الَّذِيْنَ اَشْرَكُوْٓا اَذًى كَثِيْرًا ۭ وَاِنْ
تَصْبِرُوْا وَتَتَّقُوْا فَاِنَّ ذٰلِكَ مِنْ عَزْمِ الْاُمُوْرِ ۝١٨٦

3:186

And no doubt, you all will most certainly be purified, toughened, and your worth proven through difficult tests involving your possessions; and your precious people, privileges, and wishes. And no doubt, you will most certainly hear from those who have been granted the divine code of conduct [the Torah and Gospel[1]] from before you; and from those who have associated partners with Allah—continuous and abundant offensive behaviour. But if you demonstrate patience, perseverance [in obedience], and self-restraint [from complaint]; and devoutly fulfil your duties—thereby protecting yourselves from harm and arranging all your matters correctly—then certainly that is from the firm determination of affairs.

Notes:

1 - The divine code of conduct is mentioned in the singular form to emphasise the shared and unified divine guidance originally granted through the Torah and affirmed by the Gospel

لَتُبْلَوُنَّ

Structure shows three layers of emphasis

Root letters are connected to trying, testing, putting to the test, cleansing and proving the worth of someone through tests and trials

Are connected to inuring, toughening and conditioning

Are connected to affliction, distress, tribal and tribulation

اَمْوَالِكُمْ

Root letters are connected to property, assets, goods, wealth, and possessions

اَنْفُسِكُمْ

Root letters are connected to soul and person

Are connected to something valuable and precious

Are connected to freedom, liberty and conveniences

Are connected to wishes, appetites, desires and pride

لَتَسْمَعُنَّ

Structure shows three layers of emphasis

Root letters are connected to hearing, listening, paying attention and learning

اُوْتُوا

Root letters are connected to bring, give, grant and bestow

الْكِتٰبَ

Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document

اَشْرَكُوْا

Root letters are connected to making a partner, associating and committing polytheism

اَذًى

Root letters are connected to harm, offense, insult, annoying, troublesome, damage, pain and injury

كَثِيْرًا

Root letters are connected to increase, multiply, grow and abundance

Are connected to constantly, always, frequently and doing much

تَصْبِرُوْا

Root letters are connected to binding and shackling

Are connected to being patient, persevering, forbearing, enduring, refraining, abstaining, desisting and self-control

Patience - enduring difficulty without panic or loss of steadiness

Perseverance - continuing steadily in obedience over time without giving up

Self-restraining [from complaint] - controlling oneself from expressing objection or dissatisfaction

تَتَّقُوْا

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious

عَزْمِ

Root letters are connected to determination, firm will, firm intention, decision ,resolution, and fixed determination

الْاُمُوْرِ

Root letters are connected to order, affair, course of action, management, decree, ordinance, command, instruction, order, authority, and power

وَإِذْ أَخَذَ اللَّهُ مِيثَاقَ الَّذِينَ أُوتُوا الْكِتَابَ لَتُبَيِّنُنَّهُ لِلنَّاسِ وَلَا
تَكْتُمُونَهُ فَنَبَذُوهُ وَرَاءَ ظُهُورِهِمْ وَاشْتَرَوْا بِهِ ثَمَنًا قَلِيلًا ۖ فَبِئْسَ
مَا يَشْتَرُونَ ﴿١٨٧﴾

3:187

And [reflect on] when Allah accepted the firmly established pledge of those [the scholars] who have been granted the divine code of conduct [the Torah and Gospel[1]]: "No doubt, you will most certainly clearly explain it to all people; and not withhold, subdue, or conceal it." Then they violated, discarded, and abandoned it behind their backs—persisting in exchanging it for a small, inferior, and insufficient price. Then how evil is what they persistently prefer and purchase.

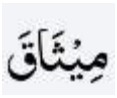
Notes:

This verse refers specifically to those who possessed and understood the previous divine scriptures—the scholars—not the ordinary followers, who were not allowed direct access to them. This is evident from history and is supported by the Quran, for example, Quran 2:78

1 - The divine code of conduct is mentioned in the singular form to emphasise the shared and unified divine guidance originally granted through the Torah and affirmed by the Gospel



Root letters are connected to accepting, taking, obtaining and seizing

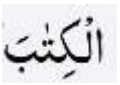


Root letters are connected to a covenant, agreement, pledge and pact

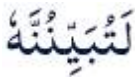
Are connected to firmly establishing, to tie, to fasten and bind



Root letters are connected to bring, give, grant and bestow

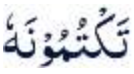


Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document



Structure shows three layers of emphasis

Root letters are connected to making clear, showing, explaining, differentiating and distinguishing



Root words are connected to hiding, subduing, curbing, suppressing, repressing, concealing, making secret and to withhold

Withhold - to hold back or not disclose

Subdue - to suppress, weaken, or keep under control

Conceal - to hide completely from view or knowledge

فَنَبَذُوهُ

Root letters are connected to violating, breaking, discarding, rejecting, dismissing, abandoning and giving no value to something

Violated - broke or went against the terms

Discarded - treated as unimportant or worthless

Abandoned - completely left behind

ظُهُورِهِمْ

Root letters are connected to back, reverse, rear, rear part and reverse

وَاشْتَرَوْا and يَشْتَرُونَ

Root letters are connected to buying, selling, preferring and exchanging

And are connected to persisting and persevering

ثَمَنًا

Root letters are connected to price, cost, value and sum



Root letters are connected to few, inconsiderable, insufficient, sparse, small, little and inferior



Root letters are connected to showing the evil of something

Are connected to miserable and wretched

لَا تَحْسَبَنَّ الَّذِيْنَ يَفْرَحُوْنَ بِمَآ اَتَوْا وَّيُحِبُّوْنَ اَنْ يُّحْمَدُوْا بِمَا
لَمْ يَفْعَلُوْا فَلَا تَحْسَبَنَّهُمْ بِمَفَازَةٍ مِّنَ الْعَذَابِ ۚ وَلَهُمْ عَذَابٌ
اَلِيْمٌ ﴿١٨٨﴾

3:188

Never assume, under any circumstance, that those who exult over what they have accomplished—behaving insolently; and desire, respect, prefer, and love that they be praised, thanked, and rewarded for what they have not influenced or engaged in doing—never assume, under any circumstance, that they are in a state of safety and security from the agonising, deterrent punishment. And for them is a punishment—the utmost degree of pain and suffering.

Notes:

تَحْسَبَنَّ and تَحْسَبَنَّهُمْ

Structure shows two levels of emphasis

Root letters are connected to reckoning, calculating and assuming

يَفْرَحُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to being glad, happy, delighted, exultant, behaving insolently, and rejoicing above measure

اَتَوْا

Root letters are connected to producing, accomplishing, achieving, performing, carrying out, perpetrating, and committing

يُحِبُّوْنَ

Root letters are connected to liking, loving and wanting

Root letters are connected to desiring, preferring, liking

Are connected to wishing, wanting and loving

Are connected to esteeming something or someone

Desire - inward attraction and wanting

Respect - elevating status and importance

Prefer - giving practical priority and choosing over other things

Love - deep emotional attachment and devotion

يُّحْمَدُوْا

Root letters are connected to praising, eulogizing, commending, lauding, extolling, thanking, speaking well of, requiting, giving due and rewarding

Praised - having one’s qualities, actions, or achievements expressed as worthy of admiration and approval

Thanked - having gratitude expressed toward oneself in recognition of a benefit or favour supposedly provided

Rewarded - receiving something beneficial or desirable in return for an action, contribution, or achievement

يَفْعَلُوْا

Root letters are connected to doing an action, to influence, activity and accomplishing a task

بِمَفَازَةٍ

بِ indicates a state

A noun indicating place

Root letters are connected to being successful, victorious, triumph, attaining good fortune, attaining desire, being secure, and being safe

Safe - free from danger, harm, or threat

Secure - firmly protected, stable, and free from fear of loss, attack, or disruption

الْعَذَابِ and عَذَابٌ

Root letters are connected to prevent, hinder, deter and obstruct

Are connected to punishment, torture, agony, painful and suffering

Agonising - causing intense pain and torment

اَلِيْمٌ

Root letters are connected pain, suffering, grievous pain, excruciating and the utmost degree of pain

Pain - refers to the physical sensation (the body)

Suffering - refers to the emotional or mental distress (the mind/soul)

وَلِلّٰهِ مُلْكُ السَّمٰوٰتِ وَالْاَرْضِ ؕ وَاللّٰهُ عَلٰى كُلِّ شَىْءٍ قَدِيْرٌ ﴿۱۸۹﴾

3:189

And to Allah [alone], innately and eternally, belongs supreme authority, control, and ownership of the lofty skies and the Earth. And Allah is innately and eternally the One who has full power, control, and ability over each and every matter, who determines and decrees according to exact measure.

Notes:

وَلِلّٰهِ مُلْكُ السَّمٰوٰتِ وَالْاَرْضِ

Structure creates meaning of exclusivity

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

مُلْكُ

Root letters are connected to rule, reign, authority, domination and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

Ownership - full possession and belonging

السَّمٰوٰتِ

Root letters are connected to sky, heaven and ceiling

Are connected to raised, elevated, high, lofty and tall

وَاللّٰهُ عَلٰى كُلِّ شَیْءٍ قَدِیْرٌ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

شَیْءٍ

Root letters are connected to a thing, matter or affair

قَدِیْرٌ

Root letters are connected to possessing control, strength, power and ability

Are connected to determine, decree, ordain, assess, evaluate, calculate and measurement

إِنَّ فِي خَلْقِ السَّمٰوٰتِ وَالْأَرْضِ وَاخْتِلَافِ الَّيْلِ وَالنَّهَارِ لَاٰيٰتٍ
لِّأُولِي الْأَلْبَابِ ﴿١٩٠﴾

3:190

Certainly, in the creation of the lofty skies and the Earth, without any prior model and in a perfectly suitable and precise manner; and in the frequent alternation of the night and day—are certainly miraculous and evident signs for the possessors of good sense, reason, and understanding.

Notes:

خَلْقِ

Root letters are connected to creating, originating, making, determining according to specific weight and measure and bringing into existence from nothing

Are connected to being fitting and suitable

السَّمٰوٰتِ

Root letters are connected to sky, heaven and ceiling

Are connected to raised, elevated, high, lofty and tall



Root letters are connected to coming and going frequently, alternation and moving in turns

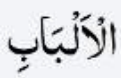


 used for emphasis

Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof



Root letters are connected to possessing, owning and being endowed with



Root letters are connected to mind, intelligence, reason, understanding and being sensible

Good sense - sound judgement in conduct and decisions

Reason - logical reflection and analysis

Understanding - grasping meanings and consequences

الَّذِيْنَ يَذْكُرُوْنَ اللّٰهَ قِيٰمًا وَّقُعُوْدًا وَّعَلٰى جُنُوْبِهِمْ وَيَتَفَكَّرُوْنَ فِيْ
خَلْقِ السَّمٰوٰتِ وَالْاَرْضِ ۚ رَبَّنَا مَا خَلَقْتَ هٰذَا بَاطِلًا ۚ سُبْحٰنَكَ
فَقِنَا عَذَابَ النَّارِ ﴿١٩١﴾

3:191

Those [are the ones] who remember and are mindful of Allah in states of rising, existing, and managing affairs; and sitting inactively; and [lying] upon their sides. And they examine and reflect on whatever is within the creation of the lofty skies and the Earth—created without any prior model and in a perfectly suitable and precise manner—"Our nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority], You have not created [all] this in a [firmly established and persistent] state of being vain, false, or corrupt. [Rather], You are free from every imperfection, then protect, preserve, and prevent us from [everything leading to] the agonising punishment of the Fire.

Notes:

يَذْكُرُوْنَ

Root letters are connected to remember, bear in mind, think, keep in mind and be mindful of

Remember - conscious recollection and mention

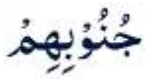
Be mindful - continual awareness influencing conduct



Root letters are connected to standing up, rising, standing still, rest, managing affairs, being sincere, and being honest



Root letters are connected to sitting down, desisting, abstaining, refraining, and remaining seated



Root letters are connected to side, flank and half of the body



Root letters are connected to reflecting, meditating, pondering examining and considering

 and 

Root letters are connected to creating, originating, making, determining according to specific weight and measure and bringing into existence from nothing

Are connected to being fitting and suitable

السَّمٰوٰتِ

Root letters are connected to sky, heaven and ceiling

Are connected to raised, elevated, high, lofty and tall

رَبَّنَا

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

بَاطِلًا

Noun indicates established state

Root letters are connected to false, vain, worthless, lies, falsehood, unsound and corruption

Vain - lacking real value or benefit

False - not true; contrary to reality

Corrupt - morally or functionally spoiled; distorted from what is right

سُبْحٰنَكَ

Root letters are connected to glorifying Allah by declaring that He is free from all negative things

Are connected to moving swiftly in the obedience of Allah

قِنَا

Root letters are connected to protecting, preserving, preventing, taking good care, avoiding danger, safeguarding, shielding and sheltering

قِنَا عَذَابَ النَّارِ

No preposition allows to widen the scope of the protection

عَذَابَ

Root letters are connected to prevent, hinder, deter and obstruct

Are connected to punishment, torture, agony, painful and suffering

Agonising - causing intense pain and torment

رَبَّنَآ اِنَّكَ مَنْ تُدْخِلِ النَّارَ فَقَدْ اَخْزَيْتَهٗ ؕ وَمَا لِلظّٰلِمِيْنَ مِنْ اَنْصَارٍ ﴿۱۹۲﴾

3:192

Our nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority], no doubt You—whoever You admit into the Fire, You have certainly disgraced and abased. And there is not for those who are firmly established in, and persist in, being unjust—transgressing proper limits—even a single one from those who are ever firmly established in, and persist in, protecting, supporting, or granting success.

Notes:

رَبَّنَا

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

اِنَّكَ مَنْ تُدْخِلِ

Pronoun “You” is used twice for added emphasis

تُدْخِلِ

Root letters are connected to make or let enter, bring in, let in, admit, lead in and show in

اَخْزَيْتَهٗ

Root letters are connected to disgrace, dishonour and abasement

Disgrace - social humiliation / loss of honour

Abasement - being lowered in status / degradation

وَمَا لِلظّٰلِمِيْنَ مِنْ اَنْصَارٍ

Noun sentence indicating established state and a strong negation

لِلظّٰلِمِيْنَ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to be unjust, act tyrannically, do wrong, do evil, harm, oppress and transgress proper limits

اَنْصَارٍ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to helping, assisting and rendering victorious

Are connected to defending, saving and protecting

رَبَّنَآ اِنَّنَا سَمِعۡنَا مُنَادِيًا يُّنَادِىۡ لِلۡاِيۡمَانِ اَنۡ اٰمِنُوۡا بِرَبِّكُمۡ فَاٰمَنَّا ۖ
رَبَّنَا فَاغۡفِرۡ لَنَا ذُنُوۡبَنَا وَكَفِّرۡ عَنَّا سَيِّاٰتِنَا وَتَوَفَّنَا مَعَ الۡاَبۡرَارِ ۚ ﴿۱۹۳﴾

3:193

Our nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority], certainly we have learned through listening attentively to a proclaimer—[firmly established in, and persisting in,] inviting to the benefit of faith: "Believe in your nurturing Lord [as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith, thereby attaining spiritual well-being and peace of mind]," therefore, we have believed. Our nurturing Lord, then conceal, forgive, and correct, for our benefit, our transgressions; and cover, bury, and forgive for us our sins and their evil consequences; and take us in death in the company of those who are [firmly established in, and persist in,] demonstrating righteous conduct towards You and people.

Notes:

رَبَّنَا and بِرَبِّكُمۡ

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

سَمِعْنَا

Root letters are connected to hearing, listening, paying attention and learning

مُنَادِيًا

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to shout, call out, cry out, exclaim, summon, proclaim, announce, and invite to something

يُنَادِىْ

Root letters are connected to shout, call out, cry out, exclaim, summon, proclaim, announce, and invite to something

لِلْاِيْمَانِ , اٰمِنُوْا and فَاٰمَنَّا

Root letters are connected to faith, belief, trust and confidence

Are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

فَاغْفِرْ

Root letters are connected to covering, concealing, veiling and hiding

Are connected to forgiving and pardoning

Are connected to correcting and rectifying affairs

ذُنُوبَنَا

Root letters are connected to offense, sin, crime, misdeed, fault and transgression

وَكَفِّرْ

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to forgiving, effacing and pardoning

سَيِّاٰتِنَا

Root letters are connected to sins, misdeed, offense, crime and recompense of evil deeds

تَوَفَّنَا

Root letters are connected to be taken by death and dying

مَعَ

Preposition – with, in the company of, in despite of, together and in the estimation

الْأَبْرَارِ

Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being dutiful, devout, to do good, obey Allah, treat others with respect and good treatment of people

Are connected to piety, reverence and righteousness

رَبَّنَا وَاٰتِنَا مَا وَعَدْتَّنَا عَلٰى رُسُلِكَ وَلَا تُخْزِنَا يَوْمَ الْقِيٰمَةِ ؕ اِنَّكَ لَا
تُخْلِفُ الْمِيْعَادَ ﴿۱۹۴﴾

3:194

Our nurturing Lord [educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority], and grant us what you have promised us through Your Messengers [who sincerely conveyed a divine code of conduct from You]; and do not disgrace or abase us on the Momentous Day of upheaval, raising of the dead, and rectifying affairs. Certainly, You will neither fail to keep nor break the promised appointed time and place."

Notes:

رَبَّنَا

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

اٰتِنَا

Root letters are connected to giving, granting and bestowing

وَعَدْتَّنَا

Root letters are connected to making a promise and to threaten

رُسُلِكَ

Root letters are connected to dispatching, a message and corresponding

Are connected to a messenger, delegate and apostle

Are connected to being friendly, intimate and free of affectation

Are connected to the one who carries by consecutive progressions the relation of the tidings of Him who has sent him

تُخْزِنَا

Root letters are connected to disgrace, dishonour and abasement

Disgrace - social humiliation / loss of honour

Abasement - being lowered in status / degradation

يَوْمَ

Root letters are connected to days, age, era and time

Are connected to momentous and important days

الْقِيٰمَةِ

Root letters are connected to standing, rising up, rectifying and managing affairs

Are connected to resurrection, upheaval, tumult, turmoil and raising the dead

تُخْلِفُ

Root letters are connected to breaking, failing to keep, to disappoint and going back on one's word

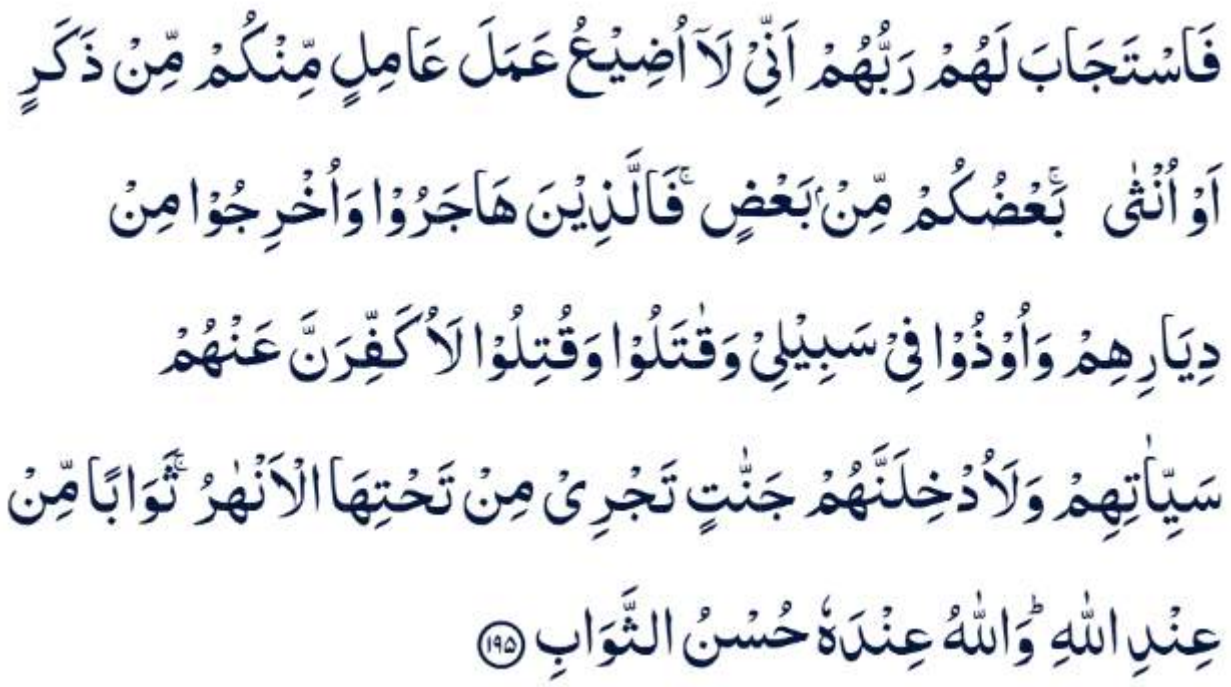
Fail to keep - omission / neglect / not fulfilling

Break - active violation / going against it

الْمِيْعَادَ

Noun of time and place

Root letters are connected to promise, appointment, date, rendezvous and time or place of an appointment


فَاسْتَجَابَ لَهُمْ رَبُّهُمْ اَنِّيْ لَآ اُضِيْعُ عَمَلَ عَامِلٍ مِّنْكُمْ مِّنْ ذَكَرٍ
اَوْ اُنْثٰى ۚ بَعْضُكُمْ مِّنْۢ بَعْضٍ ۚ فَالَّذِيْنَ هَاجَرُوْا وَاُخْرِجُوْا مِنْ
دِيَارِهِمْ وَاُوْذُوْا فِيْ سَبِيْلِيْ وَقٰتَلُوْا وَقُتِلُوْا لَاُكَفِّرَنَّ عَنْهُمْ
سَيِّاٰتِهِمْ وَلَاُدْخِلَنَّهُمْ جَنّٰتٍ تَجْرِيْ مِنْ تَحْتِهَا الْاَنْهٰرُ ثَوَابًا مِّنْ
عِنْدِ اللّٰهِ ۭ وَاللّٰهُ عِنْدَهٗ حُسْنُ الثَّوَابِ ﴿١٩٥﴾

3:195

Therefore, their nurturing Lord—educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority—has given special attention and responded positively to them: "I am not unmindful of, nor cause to be in vain any effort, action, or achievement of the one who is [firmly established in, and persists in,] striving, from amongst you—male or female—any one of you being equal to the others. Therefore, those who have emigrated, leaving behind their homeland; and have been expelled from their homes and land; and have endured offensive behaviour—wrong, harm, and torture—in [following] My path; and have opposed and fought—weakening the strength [of the enemy]; and have been opposed, fought, and killed—no doubt, I will most certainly cover, bury, and forgive for them their sins and their evil consequences; and no doubt, I will most certainly admit them into secure gardens, with streams and rivers flowing abundantly beneath them": reward from the presence of Allah. And Allah—in His presence, innately and eternally, is the excellent reward.

Notes:

فَاسْتَجَابَ

Root letters are connected to answering, replying, responding and reacting positively

Are connected to hearing, paying attention and showing interest

رَبُّهُمْ

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

أُضِيعُ

Root letters are connected to being in vain, allowing to perish, causing to vanish and wasting

Are connected to neglecting and being unmindful

عَمَلَ

Root letters are connected to work, actions, effort, labour, achievements, activity, service, striving and toiling

Efforts - striving and exertion

Actions - deeds and conduct

Achievements - results and acquired outcomes



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to working, doing, striving to accomplish, and acting

Are connected to working with effort and difficulty, taking pains, exerting effort and laboring



Root letters are connected to male



Root letters are connected to a female



Structure reflects gender equality

هَاجَرُوْا

Root letters are connected to dissociating, parting ways, separating and renouncing

Are connected to emigrating from one's homeland and migrating from one place to another

أُخْرِجُوْا

Root letters are connected to bringing out, pulling out, dislodging and expelling

Are connected to segregating and separating

دِيَارِهِمْ

Root letters are connected to an abode, home, habitation, area, region, land, city, country and town

وَأُوْذُوْا

Root letters are connected to harm, offense, torture, wrong, insult, annoying, troublesome, damage, pain and injury

Wrong - unjust or improper treatment that violates what is right or deserved

Harm - injury, damage, or suffering inflicted upon someone, whether physical, emotional, or otherwise

Torture - the deliberate infliction of severe physical or psychological pain and suffering

سَبِيْلِيْ

Root letters are connected to way, road, path, reason, cause, means and way, and method

قٰتَلُوْا and قُتِلُوْا

Root letters are connected to combat, fighting, battle and opposing

Are connected to weakening the strength or intensity of something

Are connected to killing

لَاُكَفِّرَنَّ

Structure shows three layers of emphasis

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to forgiving, effacing and pardoning

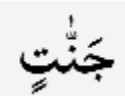
سَيِّاٰتِهِمْ

Root letters are connected to sins, misdeed, offense, crime and recompense of evil deeds

لَاُدْخِلَنَّهُمْ

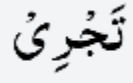
Structure shows three layers of emphasis

Root letters are connected to make or let enter, bring in, let in, admit, lead in and show in

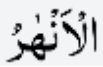


Root letters are connected to protection, shield and safety

Are connected to a garden and a walled garden



Root letters are connected to flowing, running, rushing, hurrying and passing



Root letters are connected to flowing copiously and gushing forth

Are connected to river and stream

Are connected to abundant, plentiful and much

 and

Root letters are connected to requital, recompense, reward, merit, compensation, and credit



Preposition – with, in the company of, in the presence of, in despite of, together and in the estimation

وَاللَّهُ عِنْدَهُ حُسْنُ الثَّوَابِ

Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute

حُسْنُ

Root letters are connected to being excellent, good, nice and lovely

لَا يَغُرَّنَّكَ تَقَلُّبُ الَّذِيْنَ كَفَرُوْا فِي الْبِلَادِ ١٩٦

3:196

The varied movements of those who have neglected, dissociated from, and denied their obligations to Allah, thereby persisting in ingratitude [by misusing the blessings He granted them], throughout the cities should not deceive, blind, or delude you.

Notes:

يَغُرَّنَّكَ

Root letters are connected to misleading, deceiving, beguiling, deluding, gulling, blinding, and deceiving with vain/empty hopes

Deceived – outside reality - caused to accept something false or misleading as true

Blinded - prevented from seeing or recognising what is true or correct

Deluded – inside reality - led into a false belief or mistaken perception, particularly by an illusion or deceptive idea

تَقَلُّبُ

Root letters are connected to turn around, inverse, overturned, fluctuate, variable, move, change, and alternate

كَفَرُوْا

Root letters are connected to burying, covering and hiding something

Are connected to declaring oneself quit of something, disbelieving, denying, failing to acknowledge, ingratitude and denying the grace of Allah

Are connected to being remiss, neglectful and falling short of duty

الْبِلَادِ

Root letters are connected to country, town, city, place, community, village and land

مَتَاعٌ قَلِيلٌ ثُمَّ مَأْوٰىهُمْ جَهَنَّمُ ۚ وَبِئْسَ الْمِهَادُ ﴿١٩٧﴾

3:197

Objects of enjoyment—little and insignificant. Thereafter, their abode is Hell—harsh and repulsive punishment of a great and fiercely burning fire. And how evil is the prepared resting place.

Notes:

مَتَاعٌ

Root letters are connected to things of use, commodities, utensils, goods, property, objects, and stuff

Are connected to enjoying, savoring, relishing, equipping and supplying

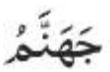
قَلِيلٌ

Root letters are connected to few, inconsiderable, insignificant, insufficient, sparse, small, little and inferior

مَأْوٰىهُمْ

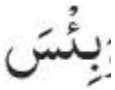
A noun of place

Root letters are connected to place of refuge, retreat, shelter, abode, resting place, dwelling, lodging place, and place of resort



Root letters are connected to hell, fire, fiercely burning fire and a huge fire

Are connected to something harsh and disgusting



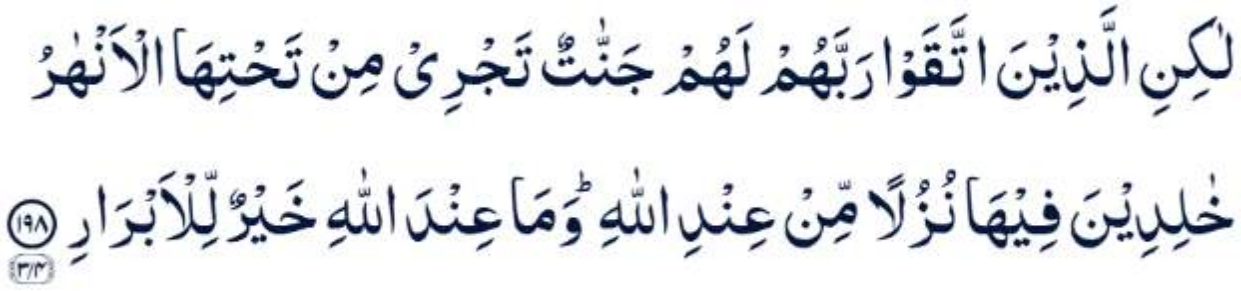
Root letters are connected to showing the evil of something

Are connected to miserable and wretched



Root letters are connected to arranging, preparing and making smooth

Are connected to resting place, bed, couch and a place of wide extent


لٰكِنِ الَّذِيْنَ اتَّقَوْا رَبَّهُمْ لَهُمْ جَنّٰتٌ تَجْرِيْ مِنْ تَحْتِهَا الْاَنْهٰرُ
خٰلِدِيْنَ فِيْهَا نُزُلًا مِّنْ عِنْدِ اللّٰهِ ۗ وَمَا عِنْدَ اللّٰهِ خَيْرٌ لِّلْاَبْرَارِ ﴿١٩٨﴾

3:198

Whereas, those who have devoutly fulfilled their duties to their nurturing Lord, educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority, thereby protecting themselves from harm and arranging all their matters correctly—for them are secure gardens, with streams and rivers flowing abundantly beneath them, remaining firmly established—abiding forever—in them: an abode of hospitality from the presence of Allah. And what is in the presence of Allah is preferred and better for the well-being of those who are firmly established in, and persist in, righteous conduct towards Allah and people.

Notes:

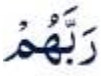

اتَّقَوْا

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious



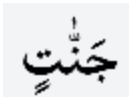
Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

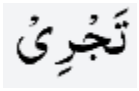
Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended

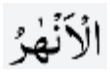


Root letters are connected to protection, shield and safety

Are connected to a garden and a walled garden



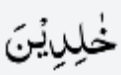
Root letters are connected to flowing, running, rushing, hurrying and passing



Root letters are connected to flowing copiously and gushing forth

Are connected to river and stream

Are connected to abundant, plentiful and much



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to be everlasting, being immortal and abiding forever



Root letters are connected to place of hospital reception, something prepared for a guest, an abode, provision, lodging, and hospitality



Preposition – with, in the company of, in the presence of, in despite of, together and in the estimation



A comparative

Root letters are connected to good, virtuous and generous

Are connected to choosing and preferring

Are connected to something better and superior

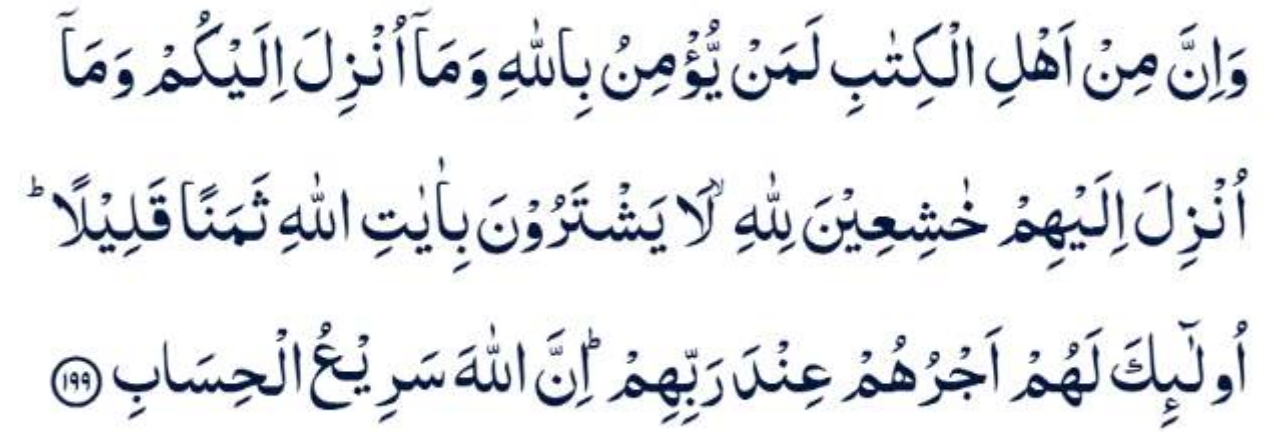
Are connected to a good state and well-being



Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being dutiful, devout, to do good, obey Allah, treat others with respect and good treatment of people

Are connected to piety, reverence and righteousness


وَاِنَّ مِنۡ اَهۡلِ الۡكِتٰبِ لَمَنۡ يُّؤۡمِنُ بِاللّٰهِ وَمَاۤ اُنۡزِلَ اِلَيۡكُمۡ وَمَاۤ
اُنۡزِلَ اِلَيۡهِمۡ خٰشِعِيۡنَ لِلّٰهِ ۙ لَا يَشۡتَرُوۡنَ بِاٰيٰتِ اللّٰهِ ثَمَنًا قَلِيۡلًا ؕ
اُولٰٓئِكَ لَهُمۡ اَجۡرُهُمۡ عِنۡدَ رَبِّهِمۡ ؕ اِنَّ اللّٰهَ سَرِيۡعُ الۡحِسَابِ ﴿۱۹۹﴾

3:199

And no doubt, from amongst those [the scholars] possessing and familiar with the divine code of conduct [the Torah and Gospel[1]], is certainly the one who believes in Allah; and in what has been gradually revealed to you all—to hold a special position [of supreme authority]; and in whatever was revealed to them, as demonstrated through sincerely fulfilling the duties of faith—those are in a firmly established and persistent state of humble submission to Allah. They do not exchange the miraculous and evident signs of Allah [divine revelation] for a small, inferior, and insufficient price. Those—for them [especially] is the reward of their efforts in the presence of their nurturing Lord—educating with love and care, the Possessor of full control and authority: spiritual well-being and peace of mind. Certainly, Allah is innately and eternally the One who is prompt and swift in recording and bringing to account.

Notes:

This verse refers specifically to those who possessed and understood the previous divine scriptures—the scholars—not the ordinary followers, who

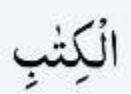
were not allowed direct access to them. This is evident from history and is supported by the Quran, for example, Quran 2:78

1 - The divine code of conduct is mentioned in the singular form to emphasise the shared and unified divine guidance originally granted through the Torah and affirmed by the Gospel



Root letters are connected to be on familiar terms with something

Are connected to possessors, adherents and followers



Root letters are connected to a divine guideline, code of conduct, law, divine book, ordinance, letter and document



Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one’s word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit



Root letters are connected to something which is sent down, comes down, descends, stops over and is granted

Are connected to something which is sent down slowly and gradually

Are connected to something which holds a special position or place

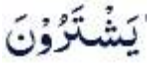


Noun indicating an established and persistent trait

Root letters are connected to being humble, submissive and lowering oneself

Humility – inward quality recognising one's real worth and dependence on Allah, the Exalted

Submissive – practically submitting to the obedience of Allah, the Exalted



Root letters are connected to buying, selling, preferring and exchanging

And are connected to persisting and persevering



Root letters are connected to a mark, miracle, wonder, verses, signs, evidence and proof

ثَمَنًا

Root letters are connected to price, cost, value and sum

قَلِيْلًا

Root letters are connected to few, inconsiderable, insufficient, sparse, small, little and inferior

لَّهُمْ اَجْرُهُمْ عِنْدَ رَبِّهِمْ

Structure shows a special distinction and entitlement to reward

اَجْرُهُمْ

Root letters are connected to reward, recompense and wages for work done

عِنْدَ

Preposition – with, in the company of, in despite of, together and in the estimation

رَبِّهِمْ

Root letters are connected to one nourishing, cultivating and raising another

Are connected to educating, teaching and instructing

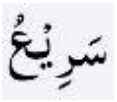
Are connected to master, lord, having possession, control, authority and ownership

Authority - the right and power to make decisions and command

Control - the ability to direct and ensure outcomes occur as intended



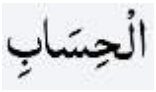
Noun sentence indicates permeance and an inherent attribute



Root letters are connected to be quick, fast, prompt, rapid and hurry

Swift - acting rapidly

Prompt - responding without hesitation



Root letters are connected to reckoning, calculating, counting, charging and taking into account

Recording - documenting deeds

Bringing to account - judging deeds

يٰٓاَيُّهَا الَّذِيْنَ اٰمَنُوا اصْبِرُوْا وَصَابِرُوْا وَرَابِطُوْا وَّاتَّقُوا اللّٰهَ لَعَلَّكُمْ تُفْلِحُوْنَ ﴿٢٠٠﴾

3:200

Those who have claimed to believe! Demonstrate patience, perseverance [in obedience], and self-restraint [from complaint]; and compete in patience—excelling in bearing hardships with endurance; and remain firmly stationed [in obedience] and on guard [against disobedience]: devoutly fulfil your duties to Allah—thereby protecting yourselves from harm and arranging all your matters correctly—so that you may cultivate spiritual well-being and permanent success.

Notes:

اٰمَنُوا

Root letters are connected to being faithful, reliable, trustworthy, to believe, to be true to one's word

Are connected to fulfilling the trust given by Allah

Are connected to peace, set mind at rest, assure, reassure, safety and security

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

اصْبِرُوْا and صَابِرُوْا

Root letters are connected to binding and shackling

Are connected to being patient, persevering, forbearing, enduring, refraining, abstaining, desisting and self-control

Patience - enduring difficulty without panic or loss of steadiness

Perseverance - about achieving - keep taking action toward a specific goal, even when you face failures, delays, or setbacks

Self-restraining [from complaint] - controlling oneself from expressing objection or dissatisfaction

Are connected to vying in patience, bearing stoutly, having patience with, excelling in patience and vying in endurance

Endurance - about withstanding - capacity to tolerate pain, hardship, stress, or a heavy burden over time without breaking down

رَابِطُوْا

Root letters are connected to posting, stationed, lining up, take up positions, persevere in a thing, be on guard, station, be firm and constant

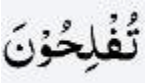
وَاتَّقُوا

Root letters are connected to reforming, arranging and setting things right

Are connected to guarding, protecting, avoiding danger and evil

Are connected to carefully fulfilling religious duties

Are connected to being devout and pious



Root letters are connected to cultivating, growing, nurturing

Are connected to achieving success, safety, security, comfort and enjoyment of ease

Are connected to remaining in a good state

Spiritual well-being leads to a more resilient, purposeful, and balanced life by integrating mind, body, and spirit

Over 500 Free eBooks on Peace of Mind

500+ FREE English Books & Audiobooks / كتب عربية / اردو كتب/ Buku Melayu / বাংলা বই / Libros En Español / Livres En Français / Libri Italiani / Deutsche Bücher / Livros Portugueses:

https://shaykhpod.com/books/

Backup Sites for eBooks: https://shaykhpod.wordpress.com

https://shaykhpodbooks.wordpress.com/books/
https://shaykhpodbooks.wixsite.com/books
https://shaykhpod.weebly.com
https://archive.org/details/@shaykhpod

YouTube: https://www.youtube.com/@ShaykhPod/playlists

AudioBooks, Blogs, Infographics & Podcasts: https://shaykhpod.com/

Other ShaykhPod Media

Daily Blogs: www.ShaykhPod.com/Blogs
AudioBooks: https://shaykhpod.com/books/#audio

Pics: https://shaykhpod.com/pics
General Podcasts: https://shaykhpod.com/general-podcasts
PodWoman: https://shaykhpod.com/podwoman
PodKid: https://shaykhpod.com/podkid
Urdu Podcasts: https://shaykhpod.com/urdu-podcasts

Live Podcasts: https://shaykhpod.com/live

Subscribe to Receive Daily Blogs & Updates Via Email:
http://shaykhpod.com/subscribe

